

**Brian A Blanchard**

11/12/2002 03:19 PM

To: Registered PPM Holders  
cc:  
cc:  
Subject: January 2003 PPM Corrections

Registered PPM Holders:

The following PPM pages have been issued as "Corrected Copy - January 2003":

PPM Volume I, Chapter 20 Plans Processing and Revisions, Page 20-11  
PPM Volume I, Chapter 22 Lump Sum Project Guidelines, Page 22-5  
PPM Volume II, Chapter 7 Summary of Quantities, Page 7-5 (Corrected Pay Item Numbers)  
PPM Volume II, Chapter 7 Summary of Quantities, Page 7-6  
PPM Volume II, Chapter 19 Work Zone Traffic Control, Page 19-2  
PPM Volume II, Chapter 23 Signing and Pavement Marking Plans, Page 23-3  
PPM Volume II, Chapter 23 Signing and Pavement Marking Plans, Page 23-11

The above correction to Volume I, Chapter 20 Plans Processing and Revisions, addresses an error on Page 20-11. The original edition of the PPM January 2003 update included a revision indicating the District Cost Estimate is required in the Contract File Index only for Federal Aid Oversight projects. This is incorrect. The District Cost Estimate is required for ALL Federal Aid projects and Page 20-11 has been corrected accordingly.

The remainder of the above corrections (except page 7-5) address the conflicting instructions previously issued on paint quantities for pavement markings. This includes new pay item notes, plan notes, and guidance. In addition, the 2003 Basis of Estimates Handbook Summary of Major Changes dated October 1, 2003 has been corrected to be consistent with the PPM corrections above, and is posted on both the Roadway Design Office web site (Roadway Updates) and the State Estimates Office web site.

Roadway Design Office Web Site: <http://www11.myflorida.com/rddesign/default.htm>

Estimates Office Web Site: <http://www11.myflorida.com/estimates/>

No hardcopy version of these corrected pages are being sent. PPM holders should download and print the electronic version of these pages from the 2003 PPM web site (or the Roadway Updates page) to replace pages in the hardcopy edition.

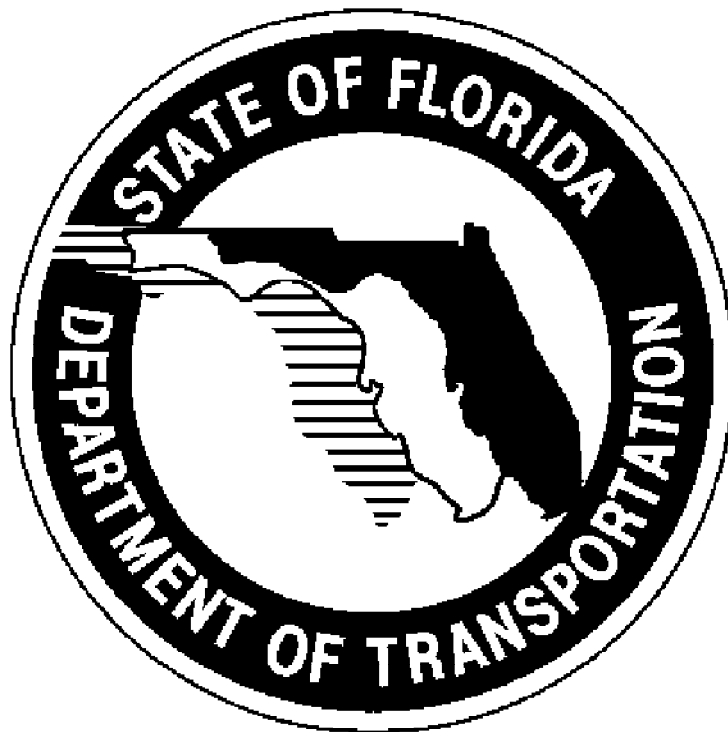
2003 PPM Web Site: <http://www11.myflorida.com/rddesign/PPM%20Manual/2003/PPM.htm>

If you have any questions concerning these corrections, please contact this office.

Brian A. Blanchard, P.E.  
Florida Department of Transportation  
State Roadway Design Engineer  
(850) 414-4377  
email: [brian.blanchard@dot.state.fl.us](mailto:brian.blanchard@dot.state.fl.us)

# PLANS PREPARATION MANUAL

## VOLUME I



**ROADWAY DESIGN OFFICE**

TALLAHASSEE, FLORIDA

JANUARY 2003

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

# 2003 PLANS PREPARATION MANUAL

## REGISTRATION FORM

Please complete this form and return to the address below. This will ensure that you are registered as a PPM holder and receive all addenda and revisions. **If you are currently a holder, you may update your customer information using this form.**

---

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Firm Name or DOT District: \_\_\_\_\_

Business Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_ Zip Code \_\_\_\_\_

Phone Number: ( ) \_\_\_\_\_ SC \_\_\_\_\_ Fax ( ) \_\_\_\_\_

E-Mail Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**What is your primary area of responsibility? (CHECK ONLY ONE)**

Roadway     Estimates     Structures     Project Management   
Drainage     Utilities

**What are the areas of responsibility for which you would like to receive information regarding updates and training? (CHECK AS MANY AS APPLY)**

Roadway     Estimates     Structures     Project Management   
Drainage     Utilities

---

**Return Address:**

**Florida Department of Transportation  
Roadway Design Office - Mail Station 32  
605 Suwannee Street  
Tallahassee, Florida 32399-0450  
Telephone: (850) 414-4329      Fax: (850) 922-9293  
SC: 994-4329      SC Fax: 292-9293**

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

STATE OF FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

**SUGGESTIONS AND COMMENTS  
PLANS PREPARATION MANUAL  
VOLUME I**

NAME OF FIRM OR  
FDOT DEPARTMENT:

---

---

ADDRESS:

---

---

---

---

NAME OF PERSON  
RESPONSIBLE FOR  
SUGGESTIONS OR  
COMMENTS:

---

TELEPHONE NO.:

---

FAX NO.:

---

SUGGESTIONS  
OR COMMENTS:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

(Comments or Suggestions may be attached as marked up copies of pages from the manual)

Please complete the requested information on a copy of this sheet and return to:

FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION  
ROADWAY DESIGN OFFICE  
MAIL STATION 32  
605 SUWANNEE STREET  
TALLAHASSEE, FLORIDA 32399-0450  
FAX NUMBER (850) 922-9293

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>Plans Preparation Manual, Volume I</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Design Controls</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Design Geometrics and Criteria</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Earthwork</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Roadside Safety</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Utilities</b>
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Railroad Crossing</b>
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Signing, Marking, Lighting and Signals</b>
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities</b>
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Landscaping</b>
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Work Zone Traffic Control</b>
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan</b>
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Right of Way</b>
<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>Initial Engineering Design Process</b>
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Final Engineering Design Process</b>
<b>Chapter 15</b>	<b>Update Engineering Design Process</b>
<b>Chapter 16</b>	<b>Design Submittals</b>
<b>Chapter 17</b>	<b>Engineering Design Estimate Process</b>
<b>Chapter 18</b>	<b>Quality Assurance and Quality Control</b>
<b>Chapter 19</b>	<b>Sealing Design Documents</b>
<b>Chapter 20</b>	<b>Plans Processing and Revisions</b>
<b>Chapter 21</b>	<b>Transportation Design for Livable Communities</b>
<b>Chapter 22</b>	<b>Lump Sum Project Guidelines</b>
<b>Chapter 23</b>	<b>Design Exceptions and Design Variations</b>
<b>Chapter 24</b>	<b>Federal Aid Project Certification</b>
<b>Chapter 25</b>	<b>Florida’s Design Criteria for Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation (RRR) of Streets and Highways</b>
<b>Chapter 26</b>	<b>Bridge Project Development</b>
<b>Chapter 27</b>	<b>Hydraulic Data and U.S. Coast Guard Permits</b>
<b>Chapter 28</b>	<b>Shop and Erection Drawings</b>
<b>Chapter 29</b>	<b>Miscellaneous Structures</b>
<b>Chapter 30</b>	<b>Retaining Walls</b>
<b>Chapter 31</b>	<b>Geosynthetic Design</b>



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Introduction

# Plans Preparation Manual, Volume I

### PURPOSE:

This *Plans Preparation Manual, Volume 1* sets forth geometric and other design criteria, as well as procedures, for Florida Department of Transportation (FDOT) projects. The information contained herein applies to the preparation of contract plans for roadways and structures.

### AUTHORITY:

*Section 334.044(2), Florida Statutes.*

### SCOPE:

This procedure impacts anyone preparing roadway and structures construction plans for the Department.

### GENERAL INFORMATION:

*Chapter 334* of the *Florida Statutes*, as part of the *Florida Transportation Code*, establishes the responsibilities of the State, counties, and municipalities for the planning and development of the transportation systems serving the people of Florida, with the objective of assuring development of an integrated, balanced statewide system. The Code's purpose is to protect the safety and general welfare of the people of the State and to preserve and improve all transportation facilities in Florida. Under *Section 334.044*, the Code sets forth the powers and duties of the Department of Transportation including to adopt rules, procedures and standards for the conduct of its business operations and the implementation of any provisions of law for which the Department is responsible.

### PROCEDURE:

The criteria in this manual represent requirements for the State Highway System which must be met for the design of FDOT projects unless approved exceptions or variations are obtained in accordance with procedures outlined in this manual.

Roadway and structures design is primarily a matter of sound application of acceptable engineering criteria and standards. While the criteria contained in this manual provide a basis for uniform design practice for typical roadway design situations, precise standards which would apply to individual situations must rely on good engineering practice and analyses.

Situations will exist where these criteria will not apply. The inappropriate use of and adherence to these criteria does not exempt the engineer from the professional responsibility of developing an appropriate design. The engineer is responsible for identifying those criteria which may not apply to a particular design, and for obtaining the necessary exception or variation to achieve proper design.

1. **PLANS PREPARATION MANUAL, VOLUME I - MANUAL ORGANIZATION**

a. Background

The Florida Department of Transportation **Plans Preparation Manual (PPM)** was published in the current format in January 1998. The criteria in the 1998 PPM was given in metric units.

b. Organization

The **Plans Preparation Manual** is a two-volume manual. **Volume I** contains the design criteria and process and **Volume II** contains material concerning plans preparation and assembly.

2. **DISTRIBUTION**

This document is distributed through **FDOT Maps and Publications Sales**.

Copies may be obtained from:

Florida Department of Transportation  
Maps and Publications Sales, Mail Station 12  
605 Suwannee Street  
Tallahassee, FL 32399-0450  
Telephone (850) 414-4050 SUNCOM 994-4050  
FAX Number (850) 487-4099  
<http://www11.myflorida.com/MapsAndPublications/>

For updates and manual registration information contact:

Roadway Design Office, Mail Station 32  
Telephone (850) 414-4310 SUNCOM 994-4310  
FAX Number (850) 922-9293  
<http://www11.myflorida.com/rddesign/>

### 3. REVISIONS AND UPDATES

**Plans Preparation Manual** holders are encouraged to submit comments and suggestions for changes to the manual to the Roadway Design Office. When ideas or suggestions are received they will be reviewed by appropriate Roadway and/or Structures Design staff in a timely manner and will be coordinated with other offices affected by the proposed change. Items warranting immediate change will be made with the approval of the State Roadway Design Engineer in the form of a Design Bulletin.

**Design Bulletins** for the **Plans Preparation Manual** are numbered and distributed to all official **Plans Preparation Manual** holders. Design Bulletins have a maximum life of two hundred seventy (270) days. Within this time period either an official manual revision will be distributed or the Design Bulletin will become void.

Structures design issues, which are subject to modification and revision, will be processed in coordination with the Structures Design Office.

Proposed revisions are distributed in draft form to the District Design Engineers (DDE). The DDE coordinates the review of the proposed revisions with other affected district offices such as Structures Design. The goal is to obtain a majority opinion before revisions are made.

The Roadway Design Office will also coordinate proposed revisions or additions with affected offices within the Central Office. Substantive revisions that result in policy change will be coordinated with the Executive Committee for concurrence.

Revisions are voted on jointly by the District Design Engineers and the State Roadway Design Engineer (for Roadway Design issues) or the State Structures Design Engineer (for Structures Design issues). Each district will have one vote and the central office will have two votes; for a total of ten votes. Requirements mandated by FHWA or State Rules will not be subject to this majority vote.

All revisions and updates will be coordinated with the Organization and Procedures Office prior to distribution to ensure conformance with and incorporation into the Department's Standard Operating System.

The adopted revisions and addenda will be distributed to registered holders of the manual.

## **TRAINING:**

None required.

## **FORMS ACCESS:**

Documents marked as **SAMPLES** provide only a starting point allowing users to change or alter the document as needed to fit specific situations. Samples are not official forms of the Department.

# Chapter 1

## Design Controls

1.1	General.....	1-1
1.2	Traffic .....	1-1
1.3	Capacity and Level of Service.....	1-3
1.4	Roadway Functional Classification.....	1-4
1.5	RRR Design.....	1-5
1.6	Design Consistency and Driver Expectancy.....	1-6
1.7	Transportation Design for Livable Communities (TDLC).....	1-8
	1.7.1 Policy Statement .....	1-8
	1.7.2 Aesthetics.....	1-8
1.8	Access Management.....	1-10
1.9	Design Speed .....	1-15
1.10	Public Involvement .....	1-17
Tables		
Table 1.8.1	Freeway Interchange Spacing.....	1-13
Table 1.8.2	Arterial Access Management Classifications & Standards .....	1-13

Table 1.8.3	Interim Standards (Newly constructed or transferred roads) .....	1-14
Table 1.8.4	Corner Clearance at Intersections Isolated Corner Properties .....	1-14
Table 1.9.1	Design Speed State Highway System - Non-FIHS Facilities .....	1-16
Table 1.9.2	Minimum Design Speed Florida Intrastate Highway System Facilities .....	1-16

# Chapter 1

## Design Controls

### 1.1 General

Designs for highway and street projects are normally based on established design controls for the various elements of the project such as width of roadway, side slopes, horizontal and vertical alignment, drainage considerations and intersecting roads. Selection of the appropriate criteria and standards is influenced by traffic volume and composition, desired levels of service, functional classification, terrain features, roadside developments, environmental considerations and other individual characteristics.

The identification of applicable design controls is basic to providing the desired level of service, optimum safety, and cost effectiveness.

### 1.2 Traffic

It is the Department's responsibility to provide for an interconnected transportation system to insure the mobility of people and goods. In order to achieve these objectives, designers must determine if the proposed improvements will satisfy future needs by comparing the forecast directional hourly volume with the traffic handling capacity of an improved facility. Project traffic forecasts and capacity are used to establish the number of through lanes, length of auxiliary lanes, signalization timings, right of way requirements, etc., so that the facility will operate at an acceptable level of service through the design year.

Roadway geometric design shall be based on project traffic for the design year. The design year for new construction and reconstruction projects should be 20 years after the project is opened to traffic. The Design Hourly Volume (DHV) shall be the 30th highest hour.

Also, the traffic forecast is used in pavement design to determine the vehicular loadings on the pavement. The proposed pavement design must provide structural strength through the pavement's service life. On pavement rehabilitation, the design year for pavement design varies from 8 to 20 years based on the type of construction. The pavement design manuals provide guidance.



Traffic forecasts are developed during the Project Development and Environmental (PD&E) study of a project. A Traffic Report is generally required. When a PD&E study is not conducted, traffic forecasts must be prepared during the plans design process. Project traffic used for design must be attested to as shown in **Chapter 19** of this volume.

The following traffic information should be available to the designer prior to or very early in the design process:

1. AADT for the current year, opening year (completion of construction) and design year.
2. Existing hourly traffic volumes over minimum of 24-hour period, including peak hour turning movements and pedestrian counts.
3. Directional distribution factor ( $D_{30}$ ).
4. 30th highest hour factor ( $K_{30}$ ).
5. Truck factors (T) for daily and peak hour.
6. Design speed and proposed posted speed.
7. Design vehicle for geometric design.
8. Turning movements and diagrams for existing and proposed signalized intersections.
9. Special or unique traffic conditions, including during construction.
10. Crash history, including analyses at high crash locations within the project limits.
11. Recommendations regarding parking or other traffic restrictions.

## 1.3 Capacity and Level of Service

The AASHTO publication ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*** and the Transportation Research Board ***Highway Capacity Manual*** provide the detailed analysis and calculation guides necessary for the number and configurations of lanes required and the resulting levels of service provided. As illustrated in those texts, gradients, roadside developments, number, spacing and types of crossings and intersections, traffic volumes, and signalization patterns all greatly influence capacity and level of service. Those factors, in addition to the roadway functional classification, have a direct influence on the design speed to be adopted at the preliminary design level.

Design of signalized intersections should ensure an adequate Level of Service through the design year of the facility, especially when right of way acquisition is being considered. The capacity of an at-grade arterial or collector is primarily controlled by its ability to move traffic through signalized intersections, rather than the mid-block through lane capacity.

The planning and the operational analysis methods in the ***Highway Capacity Manual*** may be used for design of signalized intersections. The planning analysis method generates a projection of the intersection capacity and an approximate signal timing plan. The designer must provide information or assumptions on basic intersection geometrics, lane utilization, movement-specific traffic volumes, etc. The primary output of the operational analysis method is Level of Service at a signalized intersection; however, this method can alternatively output geometric requirements, signal timing or service flow volumes.

It is emphasized that signal timing is interactive with geometric design. That is, changes to geometrics, such as adding a turn lane, must consider changes to the signal timing simultaneously. Department approved software, including the ***Highway Capacity Software***, should be used to simulate the operation of independent or interconnected signals. Output from these programs can be used for the analysis and evaluation of proposed designs.

## 1.4 Roadway Functional Classification

The AASHTO publication *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets* presents an excellent discussion on highway functional classifications. *Florida Statutes, Title XXVI, Chapters 334, 335 and 336* give similar definitions, and establish classifications for road design in the State of Florida.

The Systems Planning Office, in compliance with *Rule Chapter 14-97* and the *Florida Statutes*, has developed a comprehensive Access Management Classification system for all segments of the State Highway System. The purpose is to enhance the functional integrity of the State Highway System, protect public safety and provide improved mobility of goods and people.

Functional and Access Management classification and the standards required by them are predetermined controls over which the designer has little choice.

These standards are minimum values, and values above the minimum should be used where possible and practical.

## 1.5 RRR Design

**Interstate Highways and Freeways** - Design standards applicable for these facilities are new construction standards, with the following exceptions:

1. The standards used for horizontal alignment, vertical alignment, and widths of median, traveled way and shoulders may be the AASHTO interstate standards that were in effect at the time of original construction or inclusion into the interstate system.
2. Mainline bridges may remain in place if they have minimum cross sections consisting of 12 ft. lanes, 10 ft. shoulder on the right and 3 ft. shoulder on the left. For mainline bridges (over 200 ft.), the offset to the face of parapet or bridge rail on both the left and right is 3 ft. (minimum) measured from the edge of the nearest traveled lane. Bridge railing shall meet or be upgraded in accordance with the requirements of **Section 25.4.25.3 Bridge Railing** of this volume.
3. Existing bridges can remain in place if the operating rating capacity can safely service the system for an additional 20-year service life.
4. Roadside Safety Hardware shall meet the requirements of **Section 25.4.26 Roadside Safety Hardware** of this volume.

**State Highway System** - Design standards applicable for the State Highway System facilities, other than interstate highways and freeways, are contained in this volume. **Chapter 25** of this volume, **Florida's Design Criteria for Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation (RRR) of Streets and Highways** replaces the **1988 RRR Manual**.

## 1.6 Design Consistency and Driver Expectancy

Design consistency is achieved when the geometric features of the roadway are consistent with the operational characteristics expected by the driver. Inconsistencies normally relate to:

1. Changes in design speed.
2. Changes in cross section.
3. Incompatibility in geometry and operational requirements.

Changes in design speed may occur on a given stretch of roadway because portions of the highway were built as separate projects over an extended period of time. Inconsistencies may be due to a number of factors: changes in standards or FDOT policy, reclassification of the facility, and lack of necessary funding.

There are two major types of design inconsistencies relative to cross section. These are point inconsistencies and a general incompatibility between cross section and alignment. A point inconsistency may be, for example, the narrowing of lane widths, a narrow bridge, a lane drop, or a change from multilane section to two lanes.

A cross sectional inconsistency is usually the result of upgrading a highway cross section without upgrading the alignment. Sometimes pavements are widened and shoulders added on an older two lane highway. The wider cross section on an old alignment might convey a conflicting message to the driver and lead to an inappropriate expectancy based on the visual aspects of the cross section, because cross section features can be more apparent than the alignment.

Of course, this is not to say that widening creates unsafe conditions. Widening alone can measurably improve the safety characteristics of a road, particularly on very narrow, low-volume roads. Designers should, however, be aware of potential inconsistencies that frequently can be overcome with relatively low cost treatments. In the case of widened roads on old alignments, pavement markings, warning signs, and delineation devices can be very helpful to the driver.

Inconsistencies may also relate to incompatibility in geometric and operational requirements. Occasionally elements of the design appear to have been selected for the purpose of fitting together the geometric components conveniently and economically rather than for the purpose of satisfying operational requirements. An example of an inconsistency resulting from the incompatibility is a direct entry ramp that is intended to

permit vehicles to enter the stream of traffic without coming to a complete stop but which, in reality, forces the vehicle to stop when a gap in the traffic stream is not immediately available.

Design inconsistencies can result in driver uncertainty, an increase in response time and an increase in the probability of inappropriate driver response.

Driver expectancy relates to the readiness of the driver to respond to events, situations, or the presentation of information. It can be defined as an inclination, based on previous experience, to respond in a set manner to a roadway or traffic situation. It should be stressed that the initial response is to the expected situation rather than the actual one.

Expectancy can affect the perception and use of information. In most circumstances, the expected and actual conditions are the same. However, when design inconsistencies occur and a driver's expectancy is incorrect, it takes longer to respond properly, there may be no response, or the response may be inappropriate to actual conditions.

There are certain elements in the design of various components of the roadway that particularly affect design consistency, driver expectancy, and vehicular operation. These components include horizontal and vertical alignment, embankments and slopes, shoulders, crown and cross slope, superelevation, bridge widths, signing and delineation, guardrail and placement of utility poles or light supports.

## 1.7 Transportation Design for Livable Communities (TDLC)

### 1.7.1 Policy Statement

Designs should consider the incorporation of TDLC features on the State Highway System when such features are desired, appropriate and feasible.

The incorporation of such features is a shared responsibility between the Department and local government. Design criteria for TDLC projects are in **Chapter 21** of this volume.

### 1.7.2 Aesthetics

Highways are built first and foremost for functional purposes, but the designer should be sensitive to how the highway will be perceived by the users. Designing aesthetic treatments is more than just providing for landscape plantings. The roadway should blend into the landscape, avoiding large cuts and fills, and round side slopes into the existing terrain. Horizontal and vertical alignment should be coordinated so that a driver has an opportunity to gain a sense of the local environment. Combinations of horizontal and crest vertical curves, and broken-back curves should be avoided. Excessively long tangent sections become monotonous. Either curvature or other features should be added to maintain drivers interest.

Application of the clear zone concept discussed in the chapter on Roadside Safety will result in a clean, uncluttered and pleasing roadside. Landscaping of the roadside should be considered early in the design process, so that plantings blend in with the geometric design. **Chapter 9** of this volume discusses landscape design criteria. At times extra right of way may be obtained for treatments if the need is identified early. Retention/detention ponds and other wetlands can be attractive if well designed and placed in a location where they can be viewed from the roadway.

Vistas of exceptional beauty should be accentuated by the roadway geometrics. Ideally, such vistas should be on the outside of horizontal curves, without excessive roadside appurtenances and signs to clutter the view.

"Streetscaping" techniques in urban areas include an emphasis on pedestrian accommodation, trees and other plantings, access control, careful signing, and zoning

restrictions on commercial signs. Parkways and other roads specifically intended for pleasing aesthetics should be designed by a multidisciplined team including landscape architects and planners.

Aesthetics and roadway design considerations and methods are discussed in the ***Project Development and Environment Manual (Topic No. 650-000-001), Volume II, Chapter 15.***



## 1.8 Access Management

Unregulated access to the State Highway System was determined to be one of the contributing factors to congestion and functional deterioration of the system. Regulation of access was necessary to preserve the functional integrity of the State Highway System and to promote the safe and efficient movement of people and goods within the state. Under **F.S. 335.18**, the Legislature authorized the Department to develop rules to administer the "State Highway System Access Management Act." These are **Rule 14-96** and **14-97**. In addition, the Department has adopted the **Median Opening Decision Process, Topic Number 625-010-020**, and the **Access Management and Median Opening Decision Principles and Process Directive, Topic Number 625-010-021**, which further define the principles and processes for the Department to implement the Access Management Statute and Rules.

Each district has established an Access Management Review Committee to guide actions in access management and median decisions through all the Department's processes, and has assigned various offices the responsibility to permit connections and administer other parts of the program. In order to adhere to the program, the designer must be familiar with the statute, the rules, adopted procedures and directives, and the district program. In addition to driveway connections, features such as median openings affect safe and efficient operation. It is critical that the designer know what access classification has been assigned to the highway segment under design and to determine what roadway features and access connection modifications are appropriate to adhere to the program.

During the PD&E phase, a conceptual access management plan is prepared for the preferred alternative. Access management issues are also addressed in the Preliminary Engineering (P.E.) Report. The designer should review these documents and the existing access management classification for information on access management decisions made during the PD&E process.

During the development of construction plans, the designer should evaluate the access connections within the project limits. Driveways and median openings should be considered in the analysis of safety and operational problems. Modifications or closures to access may be the solution in certain cases. **Rule 14-96.003 (3) & (4)** and **14-96.015** gives the Department the authority to alter, relocate or replace connections in order to meet current Department standards. Furthermore, **Rule 14-96.011** allows the FDOT to revoke a permit... "if the connection causes a safety or operational problem on the State Highway System substantiated by an engineering study..."

**Rule 14-97** also provides guidance on the treatment of existing features in the highway improvement process:

**14-97.003(1)(b)**

*(b) For the purpose of the interim standards for the assignment of an access classification to a segment of highway by the Department pursuant to **Rule 14-97.004**, permitted connections and those unpermitted connections exempted pursuant to **Section 335.187(1), Florida Statutes**, existing median openings and signals are not required to meet the interim standards of the assigned classification. Such features will generally remain in place. These features shall be brought into reasonable conformance with the standards of the assigned classification or the interim standards where new connection permits are granted for significant changes in property use, or as changes to the roadway design allow. Applicants issued permits based on the interim standards as set forth in **Rule 14-97.004** shall not have to reapply for a new permit after formal classification of the roadway segment unless significant change pursuant to **Rule Chapter 14-96** and **Rule 14-97.002** has occurred.*

In some cases where revisions are necessary due to operational or safety problems, it may not be possible to totally upgrade a median opening or connection to the newest standards because of existing conditions or constraints. In these cases, the designer should provide the best solution, based on good engineering practice. Early identification of access and median opening location in relation to individual parcels should be completed before appraisal. **Access Management Directive 625-010-021** requires the following:

1. Any significant change to driveway access will be shown in plans or the driveway will be replaced in the same location, width and configuration (number of lanes).
2. Access design and impacts to a right of way acquisition parcel should be determined prior to appraisal.
3. Changes to access details or decisions must be coordinated with District Right of Way and General Counsel's offices in addition to the Access Management Review Committee.

Every owner of property that abuts a road on the State Highway System has a right to reasonable access to the abutting state highway but does not have a right to unregulated access to such highway. A means of reasonable access cannot be denied except on the basis of safety and operational concerns as provided in **Section 335.184, Florida Statutes**. Nothing in **Section 335.184** limits the Department's authority to restrict the operational characteristics of a particular means of access. Service roads provide reasonable access. Corner property can be given direct access by a "right in" and/or "right

out" connection to the highway. More restricted access must be supported by a study that documents safety and operational problems.

It should be noted that if there are any conflicts between these guidelines and the statute and rules, the statute and rules shall govern.

**FLORIDA DOT ACCESS MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES RULE 14-97**

**Table 1.8.1 Freeway Interchange Spacing**

Access Class	Area Type	Segment Location	Interchange Spacing (miles)
1	Area Type 1	CBD & CBD Fringe For Cities In Urbanized Areas	1.0
	Area Type 2	Existing Urbanized Areas Other Than Area Type 1	2.0
	Area Type 3	Transitioning Urbanized Areas And Urban Areas Other Than Area Type 1 or 2	3.0
	Area Type 4	Rural Areas	6.0

**Table 1.8.2 Arterial Access Management Classifications & Standards**

Access Class	Medians "Restrictive" physically prevent vehicle crossing. "Non-Restrictive" allow turns across at any point.	Connection Spacing (feet)		Median Opening Spacing (feet)		Signal Spacing (feet)
		>45 mph	≤45 mph	Directional	Full	
2	Restrictive with Service Roads	1320	660	1320	2640	2640
3	Restrictive	660	440	1320	2640	2640
4	Non-Restrictive	660	440			2640
5	Restrictive	440	245	660	*2640/ 1320	*2640/1320
6	Non-Restrictive	440	245			1320
7	Both Median Types	125		330	660	1320

\* 2640 feet for >45 mph; 1320 feet for ≤45 mph

**Table 1.8.3 Interim Standards  
 (Newly constructed or transferred roads)**

Posted Speed (mph)	Connection Spacing (feet)	Median Opening Spacing (feet)		Signal Spacing (feet)
		Directional	Full	
35 mph or less "Special Cases"	125	330	660	1320
35 mph or less	245	660	1320	1320
36 - 45 mph	440	660	1320	1320
Over 45 mph	660	1320	2640	1320

**Table 1.8.4 Corner Clearance at Intersections  
 Isolated Corner Properties**

Median	Position	Access Allowed	Minimum (feet)	
<b>RESTRICTIVE</b>	Approaching Intersection	Right In/Out	115	Class 7 & Special Cases
	Approaching Intersection	Right In Only	75	
	Departing Intersection	Right In/Out	230	125
	Departing Intersection	Right Out Only	100	
<b>NON- RESTRICTIVE</b>	Approaching Intersection	Full Access	230	125
	Approaching Intersection	Right In Only	100	
	Departing Intersection	Full Access	230	125
	Departing Intersection	Right Out Only	100	

## 1.9 Design Speed

Design speed is a principal design control that regulates the selection of many of the project standards used to design a roadway project. The selection of an appropriate design speed must consider many factors. The AASHTO publication, ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets***, has a thorough discussion on design speed and these factors.

As a principal design control, design speed must be selected very early in the design process and must be documented in the project design file. Every effort should be made to **use as high a design speed as practical** to attain a desired degree of safety, mobility and efficiency. A design speed 5 to 10 mph greater than the expected posted speed will generally compensate for off-peak and overrunning speeds that can be expected. Design speed should never be less than the expected posted or legal speed limit. While the selected design speed will establish minimum geometric requirements (e.g., minimum horizontal curve radius and sight distance), this does not preclude the use of improved geometry (flatter curves or greater sight distances) where such improvements can be provided as a part of economic design. Increments of 5 mph should be used when selecting design speeds.

Definitions for high speed and low speed are provided in **Chapter 2** of this volume. Curbed sections should not be used on high speed facilities (design speeds  $\geq$  50 MPH).

**Table 1.9.1** provides a recommended range of design speeds for new construction and reconstruction projects on the State Highway System except for facilities on the Florida Intrastate Highway System (FIHS). Design Speed for facilities on the FIHS shall meet or exceed the values in **Table 1.9.2**.

For design speed on RRR projects on the State Highway System, see **Chapter 25** of this volume. **Chapter 25** may be used for RRR projects on the FIHS. However, the minimum design speed in **Table 1.9.2** should be used when practicable, consistent with proposed improvements defined for the facility in the **Corridor Management Plan**. See **Topic Number 525-030-250, Procedure for the Development of the Florida Intrastate Highway System**, for requirements.

**Table 1.9.1 Design Speed  
 State Highway System - Non-FIHS Facilities**

Facility		Design Speed (mph)
Freeways	Rural	70
	Urban	50 - 70
Arterials	Rural	55 - 70
	Urban	40 - 60
Collectors	Rural	55 - 65
	Urban	35 - 50
TDLC		30 - 40

**Table 1.9.2 Minimum Design Speed  
 Florida Intrastate Highway System Facilities**

Facility		Minimum Design Speed (mph)
Interstate and Freeways	Rural and Urban*	70
	Urbanized*	60
Arterials	Rural*	65
	Urban and Urbanized*	50

**Note:** Design Speeds for FIHS facilities less than the above minimums shall be approved by the State Highway Engineer, following a review by the State Transportation Planner, in accordance with the ***FIHS Procedure (Topic No. 525-030-250)***.

\*Terms based on definitions contained in ***FIHS Procedure (Topic No. 525-030-250)***.

## 1.10 Public Involvement

It is the policy (**Topic No. 000-525-050, Public Involvement Opportunities**) of the FDOT to promote public involvement opportunities and information exchange activities in all functional areas using various techniques adapted to local area conditions and project requirements.

Typically, when a project reaches the design phase, many of the project commitments and community issues have already been identified. However, this is not always true. Design alternatives still need to be reevaluated to determine their implications in relation to community impacts. Any commitments made in previous phases would be communicated to designers, who will be responsible for carrying them out. If constraints arise that require design changes which affect the Department's ability to meet commitments, then the process would require follow-up with the affected community. In such cases, additional public involvement and community impact assessment may be necessary to address public concerns.

Projects may have potential community impacts that are not identified until the design phase, such as, but not limited to:

1. Impacts on public safety, including people with disabilities
2. School crossings or other areas of high pedestrian activity
3. Aesthetic features such as landscaping or tree replacement
4. Medians or access changes
5. Intersections and driveways
6. Audible signalized intersections
7. Accessibility of corridor businesses and neighborhoods
8. Wider sidewalks or improved bicycle facilities
9. Lighting
10. Transit
11. Transportation Design for Livable Communities
12. Maintenance of Traffic
13. Railroad crossings



Each district has developed Community Awareness Plan (CAP) guidelines to be implemented on all design projects for continued efforts in public involvement depending on the level of impact to the community.

## Chapter 2

### Design Geometrics and Criteria

2.0	General.....	2-1
2.1	Lanes.....	2-3
2.1.1	Through or Travel Lanes.....	2-3
2.1.2	Other Lane Widths.....	2-3
2.1.3	Ramp Traveled Way Widths.....	2-3
2.1.4	Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities.....	2-4
2.1.4.1	Sidewalks.....	2-4
2.1.4.2	Bicycle Facilities.....	2-4
2.1.5	Cross Slopes.....	2-5
2.1.6	Roadway Pavement.....	2-5
2.1.7	Transitions of Pavement Widths.....	2-6
2.1.8	Number of Lanes on the State Highway System.....	2-6
2.2	Medians.....	2-7
2.2.1	Median Width for Roadways.....	2-7
2.2.2	Multilane Facility Median Policy.....	2-7
2.2.3	Median Treatments on Bridges.....	2-7
2.3	Shoulders.....	2-9
2.3.1	Limits of Friction Course on Paved Shoulders.....	2-10
2.3.2	Shoulder Warning Devices (Rumble Strips).....	2-10
2.4	Roadside Slopes.....	2-11
2.5	Borders.....	2-11
2.5.1	Limited Access Facilities.....	2-12
2.6	Grades.....	2-13

2.7	Sight Distance .....	2-14
2.8	Curves .....	2-15
2.8.1	Horizontal Curves.....	2-15
2.8.1.1	Supplemental Alignment Control (Mainline) .....	2-15
2.8.1.2	Supplemental Alignment Control (Intersections) .....	2-17
2.8.1.3	Roadway Transitions.....	2-17
2.8.2	Vertical Curves .....	2-17
2.9	Superelevation .....	2-19
2.10	Vertical Clearance .....	2-20
2.10.1	Vertical Clearance Over Water.....	2-20
2.10.2	Airspace Obstructions .....	2-21
2.11	Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone .....	2-22
2.12	Bridge Railings and Separators.....	2-24
2.13	Intersections .....	2-25
2.13.1	Circular Intersections (Roundabouts).....	2-25
2.13.2	Queue Length for Unsignalized Intersections .....	2-25
2.14	Interchanges.....	2-27
2.14.1	Limited Access Right of Way Limits at Interchanges	2-27
2.14.2	Median Openings at Interchanges .....	2-28
2.14.3	Ramp Widths.....	2-28
2.15	Lighting Criteria .....	2-29
2.16	Four-Lane High-Speed Suburban Arterial Highways .....	2-29
2.16.1	Design Speed.....	2-30
2.16.2	Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities.....	2-30

2.16.3	Medians.....	2-30
2.16.4	Friction Course .....	2-30
2.16.5	Border Width .....	2-31
2.16.6	Grades.....	2-31
2.16.7	Horizontal Curves.....	2-31
2.16.8	Superelevation .....	2-31
2.16.9	Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone.....	2-31
2.16.10	Monitoring.....	2-31
Glossary of Terms .....		2-32
Standards for Low and High Volume Highways in Annual Average Daily Volumes.....		2-35

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 2

# Design Geometrics and Criteria

## 2.0 General

The implementation of design criteria is outlined in the following text.

1. **Design Criteria:** The design criteria presented in this manual are intended as the principal source of criteria for the design of new construction or major reconstruction projects on the Florida State Highway System.

These criteria are presented by subject for major design elements as fixed values or a range of acceptable values as defined by qualifiers.

Where design criteria appear in the **Design Standards**, they will be consistent with the criteria in this manual. In addition, some criteria will remain in the other chapters of this manual. When conflicts are discovered, they should be brought to the attention of the State Roadway Design Engineer or State Structures Design Engineer, as applicable, for resolution.

On reconstruction projects, existing project features which were constructed to meet minimum metric design criteria, but are mathematically slightly less than equivalent minimum English design criteria, do not require design exceptions or variations to remain.

Design criteria for Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation (RRR) are presented in **Chapter 25** of this volume and are applicable only on programmed RRR projects.

Facilities on the Florida Intrastate Highway System (FIHS) are subject to special standards and criteria for number of lanes, design speed, access, level of service, and other requirements. These are identified in **Topic No. 525-030-250, Procedure for the Development of the Florida Intrastate Highway System**.

Design Criteria for roads that are not part of the State Highway System should be obtained from the **Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways** (commonly known as the "**Florida Greenbook**"), **Topic No. 625-000-015**.

2. **Design Controls:** Design controls are characteristics and conditions that influence or regulate the selection of the criteria for project standards. It is the designer's responsibility to recognize and apply those controls applicable to the project.

3. **Design Standards:** The specific values selected from the design criteria become the design standards for a design project. These standards will be identified and documented by the designer.
4. **Project Parameters:** The properties or specific conditions with limits which require modification of design standards within these limits. The designer is responsible for establishing and documenting any project parameters and their limits, as part of the justification for deviations from project standards.

Many design standard considerations are related directly to the design speed, including vertical and horizontal geometry and required sight distances. The minimum design values are very closely related to traffic safety and cannot be compromised without an approved design exception or design variation. See **Chapter 23** of this volume.

Roadway and bridge typical sections developed for projects must reflect the values and properties outlined in Items 1 - 4 of this section. These typical sections shall include the location and limits of such features as lanes, medians, shoulders, curbs, sidewalks, barriers, railings, etc. **Section 16.2.3** of this volume gives the requirements for approval and concurrence of typical section packages.

Coordination is of primary importance on projects that contain both roadway and bridge typical sections. The Roadway and Structures Offices must address the compatibility of the typical section features mentioned above, and provide for an integrated design and review process for the project.

Example roadway typical sections are included in the exhibits in the back of the manual. Partial bridge sections, **Figures 2.0.1 - 2.0.4**, at the beginning of the tables and figures section of this chapter, provide criteria regarding lanes, medians, and shoulders for various facilities. Subsequent sections of this chapter contain specific information and criteria regarding these and other typical section elements, as well as geometric features of both roadways and bridges.

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

Table/Figure	Title	Page
<b>Figure 2.0.1</b>	<b>Partial Bridge Sections *</b> .....	<b>2-36</b>
<b>Figure 2.0.2</b>	<b>Bridge Section *</b> .....	<b>2-37</b>
<b>Figure 2.0.3</b>	<b>Partial Bridge Sections *</b> .....	<b>2-38</b>
<b>Figure 2.0.4</b>	<b>Bridge Section *</b> .....	<b>2-39</b>

## 2.1 Lanes

Florida Department of Transportation (FDOT) criteria for lane widths and pavement slopes are given by highway type and area, through lanes, auxiliary lanes and other special lanes. Conditions and controls affecting the selection of project standards are listed in the criteria tables and figures.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.1.1	Lane Widths.....	2-40
Table 2.1.2	Lane Widths - Special .....	2-41
Table 2.1.3	Ramp Widths .....	2-41
Figure 2.1.1	Standard Pavement Cross Slopes.....	2-42
Table 2.1.4	Maximum Algebraic Difference in Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals .....	2-43

### 2.1.1 Through or Travel Lanes

Standard practice is to provide lane widths as wide as practical, up to 12 feet.

### 2.1.2 Other Lane Widths

Collector-distributor lanes and auxiliary lanes for speed change, turning, storage for turning, weaving and other purposes supplementary to through-traffic movement should be of the same width as the through lanes.

### 2.1.3 Ramp Traveled Way Widths

Ramp widths for tangent and large radii (500 ft. or greater) sections are given in the criteria tables and figures. Ramp widths in other areas such as terminals are controlled by the curvature and the vehicle type selected as the design control and are given in **Table 2.14.1, Ramp Widths**. Typical details for ramp terminals are provided in the **Design Standards**.



## **2.1.4 Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities**

### **2.1.4.1 Sidewalks**

Sidewalks shall be considered on all projects in urbanized areas. Although the standard sidewalk width is 5 feet, it may be desirable to create wider sidewalks in business districts, near schools, transit stops, or where there are other significant pedestrian attractors. The District Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator shall be consulted during design to establish appropriate pedestrian elements on a project-by-project basis. **Chapter 8** of this volume contains additional guidelines for sidewalks.

### **2.1.4.2 Bicycle Facilities**

Bicycle facilities shall be considered on all projects. Within an urbanized area or on projects with curb and gutter, the bicycle facility shall be either designated or undesignated bike lanes. Bicycle lanes on the approaches to bridges should be continued across the structure. On projects in rural areas without curb, either a bike lane or a paved shoulder shall be provided as a bicycle facility. When a project includes an intersection with a right turn lane, an undesignated bike lane is to be included between the through lane and the right turn lane.

The District Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator should be consulted during design to establish appropriate bike elements, if any, on a project-by-project basis.

**Chapter 8** of this volume contains definitions for designated and undesignated bicycle lanes as well as additional guidelines for the accommodation of bicycles.

## 2.1.5 Cross Slopes

For roadways, the maximum number of travel lanes with cross slope in one direction is three lanes. This maximum may be increased to four lanes for curb and gutter roadways with four travel lanes in the same direction (See **Figure 2.1.1**). The algebraic difference in cross slope between adjacent through lanes should not exceed 0.04. The maximum algebraic difference in cross slope between a through lane and an auxiliary lane at a turning roadway terminal is given in **Table 2.1.4. Chapter 4 on Roadside Safety** and **Chapter 8 on Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities** (this volume) contain additional procedures and guidelines on slope design.

Cross slopes on bridges shall be on a uniform, straight-line rate, typically 0.02, in each traffic direction, with no break in slope. The straight-line slope shall be applied uniformly over all travel lanes and required shoulders in each direction of travel. Bridges with one-way traffic shall have one, uniform cross slope, while bridges with two-way traffic may be designed with a crowned bridge deck section.

This cross slope criteria applies to all bridge decks whether of cast-in-place concrete, precast concrete, or open steel decking.

Transitions shall be used to adjust for differences in cross slope between the approach roadway section and the required straight-line slope for bridge decks. Whenever possible the transition should be accomplished on the roadway section, outside the limits of the bridge and approach slabs. This will require detailing of the transition(s) in the roadway plans. Coordination between the Roadway, Drainage and Structures designers in the development of transitions is required to ensure compatibility and harmonizing at bridge approaches.

## 2.1.6 Roadway Pavement

The type of pavement usually is determined by analysis of the volume and composition of traffic, the soil conditions, the availability of materials, the initial cost and the estimated cost of maintenance.

Criteria and procedures for selecting the type of pavement and the structural design of the various surfacing courses are discussed in the Department's pavement design manuals.

## 2.1.7 Transitions of Pavement Widths

When new pavement widths are not substantially greater than the joining pavement, grade differentials are slight and future widening is expected, striped transitions may be considered. An alternative approach is an abrupt change in width, with appropriate pavement markings, reflectors and rumble strips. The ***Design Standards*** contain additional criteria and details.

## 2.1.8 Number of Lanes on the State Highway System

For the number of lanes to be provided on the State Highway System, see the ***Florida Intrastate Highway System Program Development Procedure (Topic No. 525-030-255)***, and ***Section 335.02(3)*** of the ***Florida Statutes***.

Nothing in ***s. 335.02(3), F.S.***, precludes a number of lanes in excess of ten lanes. However, before the Department may determine the number of lanes should be more than that, the availability of right of way and the capacity to accommodate other modes of transportation within existing rights of way must be considered.

Exceptions to this Procedure (***Topic No.: 525-030-255; s. 335.02(3), F.S.***) will be addressed on a case-by-case basis, with final approval resting with the Secretary of Transportation.

## 2.2 Medians

### 2.2.1 Median Width for Roadways

Median widths for roadways are given in the criteria tables and figures.

#### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.2.1	Median Widths.....	2-44

### 2.2.2 Multilane Facility Median Policy

All multilane facilities shall be designed with a raised or restrictive median except four-lane sections with design speeds of 40 mph or less. Facilities having design speeds of 40 mph or less are to include sections of raised or restrictive median for enhancing vehicular and pedestrian safety, improving traffic efficiency, and attainment of the standards of the Access Management Classification of that highway system.

### 2.2.3 Median Treatments on Bridges

For divided highways, the District will determine the desired distance between structures. **Figures 2.0.1** and **2.0.3** in this chapter, indicate that a full deck is recommended if the open space between the bridges is 20 ft. or less and required when less than 10 ft. For structures with less than 20 ft. of clearance, consult with District Structures Design and Facilities Maintenance before making a final decision.

Each District Office, in deciding on a single structure deck or twin bridges, must take into account the inspection and maintenance capabilities of its personnel and equipment. If the total width for a single structure exceeds the capacity of district maintenance equipment (approximately 60 ft. reach), twin structures may be specified and the open distance between structures determined by the practical capability of the maintenance and inspection equipment. This is particularly important for girder superstructures because those areas that cannot be reached by topside equipment might require catwalks, ladders or other access features. Such features will add to the cost of superstructures and must be accounted for in the initial selection of alternates.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 2.3 Shoulders

Roadway shoulder width, slope and superelevation criteria are provided in the criteria tables and figures. Paved outside shoulders, 5 ft. in width, are required on all new construction, reconstruction and lane addition projects for all highways except freeways, which generally require a 10 ft. paved outside shoulder.

Specific widths have also been adopted for interstate, expressway, single and double lane ramps and collector-distributor road shoulders. Total shoulder widths, paved shoulder widths, and widths of paved shoulder separations between through pavement edge and the near edge of any shoulder gutter are given for both right (outside) and left (inside) edges of the roadway. See Shoulders in the criteria tables and figures.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.3.1	Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Freeways.....	2-45
Table 2.3.2	Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Arterials Divided.....	2-46
Table 2.3.3	Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Arterials Undivided .....	2-47
Table 2.3.4	Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Collectors Divided and Undivided.....	2-48
Figure 2.3.1	Shoulder Superelevation.....	2-49
Figure 2.3.2	Typical Paving Under Bridge For Outside Shoulders.....	2-50

The *Design Standards, Index 104*, provides additional details for paved shoulders.

**Figures 2.0.1** and **2.0.2** include criteria for shoulder widths on various bridge sections. Where these widths differ from those required for roadways or ramps, decisions about the final values chosen for the project must be coordinated between the Roadway and Structures Design Offices.

Generally, the outside shoulder width for bridges should be the same width as the approach roadway shoulder up to a maximum of 10 feet. On roadway alignments having 12 ft. shoulders with continuous barrier walls and closely spaced bridges, a 12 ft. bridge shoulder width may be considered. The decision to use 12 ft. bridge shoulder widths should be coordinated with the District Design Engineer.

For shoulder cross slope criteria on bridges see **Section 2.1.5** of this chapter.

It is desirable to pave the median section and a 10 ft. outside shoulder under overpass bridges. In addition, miscellaneous asphalt should be placed from the paved shoulder to the slope pavement. This pavement will provide additional safety, enhance drainage, reduce maintenance and improve appearance. See **Figure 2.3.2**.

For paved shoulders at railroad crossings see the **Design Standards, Index 560**.

### **2.3.1 Limits of Friction Course on Paved Shoulders**

Friction courses on limited access facilities shall be extended 8 inches onto both the median and outside paved shoulders of roadways.

Friction courses shall be extended the full width of the paved shoulder on non-limited access highways to accommodate bicyclist usage.

### **2.3.2 Shoulder Warning Devices (Rumble Strips)**

The safety of freeways and other limited access facilities on the State highway system is to be enhanced by the installation of shoulder warning devices in the form of rumble strips. Projects on limited access facilities shall include the construction of ground-in rumble strips. Several types of applications have been tested. The ground-in strips provide the desired warning to the driver and consistency in application has been possible using this construction process.

These ground-in strips are installed using two patterns. The skip array is the standard array. These are used on both inside and outside shoulders on divided highway sections. The continuous array shall be constructed in advance of bridge ends for a distance of 1000 ft. or back to the gore recovery area for mainline interchange bridges. Other areas may be specified in plans.

Methods and types of application other than described above and in the **Design Standards, Index 518**, shall not be used unless concurred in by the State Roadway Design Engineer. Approval will be considered only with sufficient documented justification for deviation from the standard.

The **Design Standards, Index 518**, has been prepared to provide all needed details. This index also gives standards for raised rumble strips for use at structures where the bridge shoulder width is less than the width of the useable shoulder on the approach roadway. Notes for locations of raised rumble strip applications are also included on the index.

## 2.4 Roadside Slopes

Criteria and details are included in the criteria tables and figures and in **Chapter 4** of this volume.

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.4.1	Roadside Slopes .....	2-51

## 2.5 Borders

Border widths for new construction or major reconstruction where R/W acquisition is required are provided in the criteria tables and figures:

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.5.1	Highways with Flush Shoulders .....	2-52
Table 2.5.2	Highways with Curbs or Curb and Gutter.....	2-53

On highways with flush shoulders, the border is measured from the shoulder point to the right of way line. Border widths are to accommodate (1) roadside design components such as signing, drainage features, guardrail, fencing and recovery area, (2) the construction and maintenance of the facility and (3) permitted public utilities.

On highways with curb or curb and gutter, the border is measured from the lip of the gutter (or face of curb when there is not a gutter) to the right of way line. The border provides space for a buffer between vehicles and pedestrians, sidewalks with ADA provisions, traffic control devices, fire hydrants, storm drainage features, bus and transit features, permitted



public utilities and space for aesthetic features such as sod and other landscape items. The functional needs and safety of the urban highway are of primary importance.

Projects involving bridges will require coordination to match the features of the roadway with those of the bridge.

On existing streets and highways where R/W cannot be acquired or where the decision has been made to simply maintain and preserve the facility, the border area must be reserved for the functional and safety needs of the facility. Extraordinary design effort will be required to meet ADA requirements, driveway construction and the other essential features. Spot R/W acquisitions may be required along the corridor to accommodate these essential components. The absolute minimum border under these conditions is 8 feet.

## 2.5.1 Limited Access Facilities

Limited access facilities shall be contained by fencing, or in special cases, walls or barriers. These treatments shall be continuous and appropriate for each location. Treatment height and type may vary under special conditions. The treatment is typically placed at or near the limited access right of way line, but location may be adjusted based on site-specific conditions (i.e., ponds, trees, bridges, etc.). Placement information and additional data is included in the ***Design Standards, Indexes 450, 451, and 452.***

## 2.6 Grades

The profile grade line defines the vertical alignment for roadway and bridge construction. As with other design elements, the characteristics of vertical alignment are influenced greatly by basic controls related to design speed, traffic volumes, functional classification, drainage and terrain conditions. Within these basic controls, several general criteria must be considered:

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.6.1	Maximum Grades .....	2-55
Table 2.6.2	Maximum Change in Grade Without Vertical Curves .....	2-55
Table 2.6.3	Criteria for Grade Datum .....	2-56
Table 2.6.4	Grade Criteria for Curb and Gutter Sections .....	2-56

Minimum clearances for structures over railroads are given in **Table 2.10.1**. Additional information, including at-grade crossings, is given in **Chapter 6** of this volume.

The Department's minimum for structure clearance over all highways is given in the criteria tables and figures. Exceptions to this policy shall be permitted only when justified by extenuating circumstances and approved as a variation or exception.

The clearance required for the roadway base course above the Base Clearance Water Elevation is given in the criteria tables and figures. The limiting relationship between the pavement elevation and the Design Flood Elevation is discussed in the **FDOT Drainage Manual (Topic No. 625-040-002)**.

Grades for structures over water shall be designed to provide the desirable vertical clearance as stipulated in **Section 2.10** of this chapter.

The **Design Standards** lists utility clearances and minimum covers and maximum fill heights for all types of culverts.

## 2.7 Sight Distance

Minimum stopping and passing sight distances are given in the criteria tables and figures:

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.7.1	Minimum Stopping Sight Distance.....	2-57
Table 2.7.2	Minimum Passing Sight Distance.....	2-58

## **2.8 Curves**

### **2.8.1 Horizontal Curves**

Design speed is the principal factor controlling horizontal alignment. Several geometric standards related to design speed are very specific. Other criteria cannot be defined as specifically and require that judgments be made by designers in consideration of local conditions.

#### **2.8.1.1 Supplemental Alignment Control (Mainline)**

On projects which include roadways and bridges, coordination between the Roadway and Structures Design Offices may be necessary for those horizontal alignment issues affecting the location or geometry of the structure(s).

If possible, horizontal curves, PI's and superelevation transitions should not be placed within the limits of a structure or approach slabs. Because of the impact on the structure framing, spiral curves or alignments that result in skews greater than 45 degrees should be avoided. When skews greater than 45 degrees and/or spirals are necessary, specific justification shall be submitted to the District Design Engineer for concurrence, prior to proceeding with the alignment. For alignments that result in skews greater than 45 degrees, alternate framing concepts that relieve the severe skew effect should be considered. This may consist of longer bridges, placing framing members normal to the skew, etc.

Placement of stationing equations within the limits of a structure should be avoided on contract plans. Such equations unnecessarily increase the probability of error in both the design and construction phase.

Further guidelines have been established by the Department for lengths of horizontal curves, maximum deflections without curves, redirection of through lanes at intersections and minimum transition lengths between reverse curves. The criteria given are intended for use in establishing minimum lengths for both rural and urban conditions. See the criteria tables and figures.

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

<b>Table/Figure</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>Table 2.8.1a</b>	<b>Maximum Deflections Without Horizontal Curves .....</b>	<b>2-59</b>
<b>Table 2.8.1b</b>	<b>Maximum Deflection for Through Lanes Through Intersections.....</b>	<b>2-59</b>
<b>Table 2.8.2a</b>	<b>Length of Horizontal Curves .....</b>	<b>2-60</b>
<b>Table 2.8.2b</b>	<b>Arc Length (in feet) of Compound Curves with One-Half/Double Radii - Turning Roadways .....</b>	<b>2-60</b>
<b>Table 2.8.3</b>	<b>Maximum Curvature of Horizontal Curve (Using Limiting Values of "e" and "f").....</b>	<b>2-61</b>
<b>Table 2.8.4</b>	<b>Maximum Horizontal Curvature Using Normal Cross Slopes (0.02).....</b>	<b>2-61</b>

For small deflection angles (5° or less), curves should be suitably lengthened to avoid the distracting appearance of a kink. Curves should be at least 500 ft. long for a central angle of 5° and the minimum increased 100 ft. for each 1° decrease in the central angle (900 ft. for a 1° central angle). This treatment may not be practical in developed or environmentally sensitive areas or for major modifications of existing facilities.

For design, the aesthetic control given above should be considered where practical, but may be compromised where other considerations warrant such action. Discernment of alignment changes in an urban setting is normally minimal due to the masking effects of development, traffic signs, various items of interest and similar distracting stimuli.

For information on the maximum deflection without a curve, see **Table 2.8.1**.

When superelevation is required for curves in opposite directions on a common tangent, a suitable distance is required between the curves. This suitable tangent length should be determined as follows:

1. 80% of the transition for each curve should be located on the tangent.
2. The suitable tangent length is the sum of the two 80% distances, or greater.
3. Where alignment constraints dictate a less than desirable tangent length between curves, an adjustment of the 80/20 superelevation transition treatment is allowed (where up to 50% of the transition may be placed on the curve).

The use of compound curves in horizontal alignment should be avoided where simple curves can be used. When compound curves are necessary on open highways, the ratio of the flatter radius to the sharper radius should not exceed 1.5:1. For turning roadways and intersections a ratio of 2:1 (where the flatter radius precedes the sharper radius in the direction of travel) is acceptable.

The length of compound curves for turning roadways when followed by a curve of one-half radius or preceded by a curve of double radius should be as shown in **Table 2.8.2b**.

### 2.8.1.2 Supplemental Alignment Control (Intersections)

For redirection or offset deflection of through lanes through intersections, see the values given in **Table 2.8.1b**. Curves are not required for these angular breaks. However, short curves may be desirable at each end, especially if pavement markings are used through the intersection to provide positive guidance to the motorist.

### 2.8.1.3 Roadway Transitions

Transition details have been developed and included in the **Design Standards**. Transitions on curved alignment will require special design details in the contract plans.

## 2.8.2 Vertical Curves

Minimum lengths for crest and sag vertical curves are provided in the criteria tables and figures.

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.8.5	Minimum Lengths of Crest Vertical Curves Based on Stopping Sight Distance .....	2-62
Table 2.8.6	Minimum Lengths of Sag Vertical Curves Based on Stopping Sight Distance and Headlight Sight Distance.....	2-63

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 2.9 Superelevation

Superelevation rates of 0.10 maximum (rural) and 0.05 maximum (urban) are used by the Department on the State Highway System. Charts for these rates are in the criteria tables and figures. Additional data is contained in the ***Design Standards, Indexes 510 and 511.***

The standard superelevation transition places 80% of the transition on the tangent and 20% on the curve. In special situations this treatment can be adjusted to allow up to 50% of the transition to be placed on the curve.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.9.1	Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways ( $e_{max} = 0.10$ ).....	2-64
Figure 2.9.1	Superelevation Rate For Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways ( $e_{max} = 0.10$ ).....	2-65
Table 2.9.2	Superelevation Rates for Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets ( $e_{max} = 0.05$ ).....	2-66
Figure 2.9.2	Superelevation Rates for Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets ( $e_{max} = 0.05$ ).....	2-67
Table 2.9.3	Superelevation Transition Slope Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways .....	2-68
Table 2.9.4	Superelevation Transition Slope Rates for Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets .....	2-68



## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

Minimum vertical clearances, with the exception of structures over water (see **Section 2.10.1**), are contained in the criteria tables and figures.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Figure 2.10.1	Clearances – Rural and Urban Interstates (Freeways), Arterials and Collectors, with Projected 20-Year ADT of 1500 or Greater.....	2-69
Figure 2.10.2	Clearances – Rural Arterials and Collectors with Projected 20-Year ADT of Less than 1500 .....	2-70
Figure 2.10.3	Clearances – Urban Arterials and Collectors (Without Curb and Gutter).....	2-71
Figure 2.10.4	Clearances – Urban Arterials and Collectors (Curb and Gutter).....	2-72
Table 2.10.1	Vertical Clearances for Bridges.....	2-73
Table 2.10.2	Minimum Vertical Clearances for Signs.....	2-75
Table 2.10.3	Minimum Vertical Clearances for Signals.....	2-75

### 2.10.1 Vertical Clearance Over Water

Unless otherwise specifically approved by the District Structures Design Engineer for Category 1 Structures or the State Structures Design Engineer for Category 2 Structures, the minimum vertical clearance over water shall conform to the following criteria:

1. **Environment:**
  - a. For concrete superstructures classified as moderately aggressive or extremely aggressive due to chloride content, the minimum vertical clearance is 12 ft. above Mean High Water (MHW).
  - b. For steel superstructures, the minimum vertical clearance shall be obtained from the District Maintenance Engineer, but shall not be less than those specified above for the concrete superstructures.

2. **Drainage:**

The minimum vertical clearance requirement shall also conform to the ***FDOT Drainage Manual, Chapter 4 (Topic No. 625-040-002)***.

3. **Navigation:**

The minimum vertical clearance for navigational purposes shall be determined in accordance with the ***FDOT Drainage Manual, Chapter 4***, unless the agency having jurisdiction over the waterway has a more stringent requirement.

Information on the Normal High Water, control water elevation, or Mean High Water can be obtained from the appropriate Drainage Design Engineer.

Widening of existing structures which do not meet the minimum vertical clearance criteria stated above (either before or after the widening) may be justified hydraulically and/or economically. However, the encroachment of vertical clearance criteria may be limited and must be approved by the agency having jurisdiction over the navigable waterway.

## 2.10.2 Airspace Obstructions

Federal, state, and local regulations exist to protect the national airspace system that must be considered when planning and implementing construction that may adversely impact military or public-use aviation facilities (airport, seaport, or heliport), navigational aids, and instrument approach flight procedures in Florida.

**FAA Notification:**

Federal law, ***Title 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Federal Aviation Regulations (FAR), Part 77, "Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace"***, requires that prior notification must be given to the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) regarding any construction or alteration (permanent or temporary) of structures that meet the specific criteria given in ***Table 2.10.5***.

For further guidance on airspace obstructions (notification and permitting) refer to ***Section 13.5.1, FDOT Aviation Office Coordination***, this volume.

## 2.11 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone

Horizontal clearance is the lateral distance from a specified point on the roadway such as the edge of travel lane or face of curb, to a roadside feature or object. Horizontal Clearance applies to rural and urban highways with either flush shoulders or with curbs. Horizontal clearance requirements vary depending on the type of roadway and the feature or object.

For roadways with flush shoulders, horizontal clearance requirements for certain features and objects are based on the clear zone width. That is, the feature or object is to be outside the clear zone. Clear zone is the roadside area available for safe use by errant vehicles. This zone may consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, a non-recoverable slope, and/or a clear runout area. Clear zone is further described in **Chapter 4** of this volume.

For roadways with curbs, the presence of curb conflicts with the clear zone concept and it is often not practical to provide full clear zone widths due to restricted right of way. Therefore, while there are specific horizontal clearance requirements for curbed roadways, these are not based on clear zone widths.

Roadway horizontal clearances and clear zone requirements are contained in the criteria tables and figures.

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

<b>Table/Figure</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>Table 2.11.1</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance for Traffic Control Signs .....</b>	<b>2-77</b>
<b>Table 2.11.2</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance for Light Poles .....</b>	<b>2-77</b>
<b>Table 2.11.3</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance for Utility Installations.....</b>	<b>2-77</b>
<b>Table 2.11.4</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance to Signal Poles and Controller Cabinets for Signals .....</b>	<b>2-78</b>
<b>Table 2.11.5</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance to Trees .....</b>	<b>2-78</b>
<b>Table 2.11.6</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance to Bridge Piers and Abutments .....</b>	<b>2-78</b>
<b>Table 2.11.7</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance to Railroad Grade Crossing Traffic Control Devices.....</b>	<b>2-78</b>
<b>Table 2.11.8</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance to Other Roadside Obstacles .....</b>	<b>2-79</b>
<b>Figure 2.11.1</b>	<b>Horizontal Clearance to Guardrail .....</b>	<b>2-80</b>
<b>Table 2.11.9</b>	<b>Clear Zone Widths .....</b>	<b>2-81</b>

For horizontal clearances where roadways overpass railroads refer to **Chapter 6** of this volume.

## 2.12 Bridge Railings and Separators

Bridge railings and separators on new and reconstruction projects shall be designed in accordance with the **Structures Design Guidelines**. On reconstruction projects, where an existing bridge is to remain, existing bridge rails must be replaced or upgraded unless the rail meets criteria for new traffic rail barriers. All FDOT Standard Traffic Railing Barriers conforming to the **700 Series Structures Standard Drawings**, dated 2000 or later, and prior FDOT Standard "F-Shape" Traffic Railing Barriers conforming to superseded **Structures Standard Drawings Indexes 700 and 14286** are both structurally and functionally adequate. Refer to **Structures Standard Drawings Index I-799** for information on existing "F- Shape" Traffic Railing Barriers.

Existing FDOT Standard "New Jersey Shape" Traffic Railing Barriers conforming to superseded **Structures Standard Drawings Indexes 11407, 11460, 12670, 12931, 13857** and **14101** do not resist the equivalent loadings for **NCHRP Report 350** Test Level 4 when analyzed using the **AASHTO LRFD** methodology (**Section 13 - Appendix A**). Refer to **Structures Standard Drawings Index I-799** for information on existing "New Jersey Shape" Traffic Railing Barriers. These railings must be upgraded or replaced unless a Design Exception is approved.

All other former FDOT bridge traffic railings not listed above, and any other traffic railings that are not based on crash tested designs, are inadequate and shall be replaced, retrofitted or excepted, as appropriate, using the criteria included in the **Structures Design Guidelines**.

Details and typical applications of various bridge rails and separators are given in the criteria tables and figures.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Figure 2.12.1	Bridge Traffic Railings – "F" and Vertical Shapes .....	2-82
Figure 2.12.2	Bridge Traffic Railings – Other Shapes .....	2-83
Figure 2.12.3	Bridge Railing – Pedestrian or Bicycle Bridge Railing .....	2-83
Figure 2.12.4	Bridge Railing and Separators – Median Barrier and Separators .....	2-84

## 2.13 Intersections

Design guides and criteria presented heretofore are also applicable to the proper design of intersections.

### 2.13.1 Circular Intersections (Roundabouts)

The circular intersection with all yield control is another design concept for the designer to consider. Two critical elements of the small circular traffic pattern with a central island are as follows:

1. Entry is by gap acceptance by having a yield condition at all entry legs.
2. Speeds through the intersection are 25 mph or less.

The use of this design is best for low speed facilities. Its use should be documented by a complete intersection analysis and study, including alternate types of design.

The ***Florida Roundabout Guide*** (available through FDOT Maps and Publications Sales) presents a methodology for identifying appropriate roundabout sites and estimating roundabout capacity and delay. It describes the design principles and standards to which roundabouts installed on state roadways must conform and offers guidelines for operational features such as signing, marking, lighting, landscaping, etc.

All roundabout designs must be approved by the State Roadway Design Engineer.

### 2.13.2 Queue Length for Unsignalized Intersections

Turn lanes should comply with the ***Design Standards, Index 301*** to the extent practical. The available queue length provided should be based on a traffic study.

For low volume intersections where a traffic study is not justified, a minimum queue length of 50 ft. (2 vehicles) should be provided for rural areas and small urban areas; for other urban areas, a minimum queue length of 100 ft. (4 vehicles) should be provided.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 2.14 Interchanges

Design guides and criteria presented heretofore and in the **Design Standards** are also applicable to the proper design of interchanges with their inherent ramps, speed change, merging and weaving lanes. Where diamond ramps and partial cloverleaf arrangements intersect the crossroad at grade, an at-grade intersection is formed. In urbanized areas, high speed ramps, weaving areas and acceleration lanes are not appropriate. These ramp terminals should be designed as intersections consistent with the design speed and character of the roadway.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.14.1	Ramp Widths - Turning Roadways .....	2-85

### 2.14.1 Limited Access Right of Way Limits at Interchanges

The following criteria will be used in establishing limited access limits along crossroads at interchanges:

1. For rural interchanges, limited access will extend along the crossroad to a point 300 ft. minimum beyond the end of the acceleration or deceleration taper. In the event these points are not opposite, the point most remote from the project will be the control and the limited access on both sides will end at that station along the crossroad. Where no taper is used, the limited access will be carried to a point 300 ft. minimum beyond the radius point of the return. In this case also, the radius point most remote from the project will control.
2. For interchanges in urban areas, the criteria given above will apply except that the limited access will end a minimum of 100 ft. beyond the end of taper or the radius point of the return.
3. For unsymmetrical interchanges such as half-diamonds and partial clover leafs, etc., the limited access right of way along the crossroad on that side having no ramp will extend to a point opposite that point controlled by the ramp.
4. Limited access along crossroads overpassing limited access facilities (with no interchange) shall be extended approximately 200 feet, measured from the mainline right of way line, along the crossroad. This distance may be reduced or omitted if the crossroad profile provides for adequate sight distance for existing or proposed



driveways. The fence is generally tied into the crossroad structure end bent unless required along the crossroad.

5. Any reduction in the values shown above for limited access limits must be approved by FHWA for interstate projects and by the District Design Engineer for non-interstate limited access facilities.

**Access Management Rule 14-97** standards (**14-97.003(1)j**) regulate the location of driveway connections and median openings in interchange areas on arterial roads. This standard should be applied in accordance with the District procedures for implementing the Rule, and should not be confused with minimum requirements for limited access right of way.

### 2.14.2 Median Openings at Interchanges

Median opening locations at interchanges on arterial roads must consider **Access Management Rule 14-97 (14-97.003(1)j2)** which states "The minimum distance to the first median opening shall be at least 1320 feet as measured from the end of the taper of the egress ramp." This standard is to be applied in accordance with the FDOT median opening decision process. As a minimum, for all crossroad facilities at interchanges in both rural and urban areas, a median opening may be centered no less than 50 ft. beyond the end of limited access except that a minimum distance of 660 ft. to the ramp median opening will be required. In no case should access be permitted between the interchange proper and the median opening as established by these criteria.

### 2.14.3 Ramp Widths

Ramp widths for interchange ramp terminal design are given in **Table 2.14.1**.

## 2.15 Lighting Criteria

Lighting Criteria is contained in the criteria tables and figures and in **Chapter 7** of this volume.

### Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference

Table/Figure	Title	Page
Table 2.15.1	Conventional Lighting - Roadways .....	2-86
Table 2.15.2	Highmast Lighting - Roadways.....	2-86
Table 2.15.4	Rest Area Lighting .....	2-87
Table 2.15.5	Mounting Height Restrictions .....	2-87

## 2.16 Four-Lane High-Speed Suburban Arterial Highways

The two classifications of rural and urban are generally sufficient for the design of Florida's arterial highways; however, there are some areas that do not lend themselves to these classifications. These are transitional areas where conditions along the highway change from rural to urban or from urban to rural. Also, there are urban arterial highways where the anticipated operating speeds are higher than standard urban design speeds. Because of the undesirable effects of having curb and gutter on high speed highways, four-lane high speed suburban arterial highway typical sections have been developed to insure that these highways are designed consistently and to minimize the need to process design exceptions and variations. These typical sections are found in **Exhibit TYP-13** and **TYP-14** of **Chapter 6, Volume II**.

Special design criteria in this section have been developed for these four-lane high-speed suburban arterial highways. For criteria and other guidance not listed below, the designer is to use the values that are commensurate with a four-lane rural arterial highway having the same design speed and traffic volumes. Use of this special criteria is restricted to facilities in developing suburban areas which are initially constructed with 4 lanes and are included in the State Transportation Improvement Program (STIP) for 6 lanes in the future.

The design of the initial 4 lane facility should also take into consideration the ultimate 6 lane section that these roadways will have in the future. Special attention to the ultimate location of drainage structures, sidewalk offset and elevation, superelevation and curve radii can minimize the amount of reconstruction of these elements. To illustrate two

possible scenarios, **Figure 2.16.1** and **Figure 2.16.2** show examples of four-lane high-speed suburban arterial sections with the future six-lane low-speed urban arterial typical section superimposed.

**Criteria Tables and Figures Cross Reference**

Table/Figure	Title	Page
<b>Figure 2.16.1</b>	<b>Curb and Gutter Section.....</b>	<b>2-88</b>
<b>Figure 2.16.2</b>	<b>Flush Shoulder Section .....</b>	<b>2-88</b>
<b>Figure 2.16.3</b>	<b>Superelevation Rates for Suburban Sections .....</b>	<b>2-89</b>

**2.16.1 Design Speed**

The maximum design speed of four-lane high-speed suburban arterial highways is 55 mph.

**2.16.2 Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities**

Four-lane high-speed suburban arterial highways shall have bike lanes and sidewalks.

**2.16.3 Medians**

The minimum median width for four-lane high-speed suburban arterial highways may be reduced to 30 feet as opposed to 40 feet minimum required in **Table 2.2.1**. When this is done neither a design exception nor design variation is required.

**2.16.4 Friction Course**

Because of the higher speeds and the associated risk of hydroplaning, FC-5 friction course is to be provided to reduce surface water. The FC-5 friction course should be placed at the lip of the gutter in accordance with the **Design Standards, Index 300**.

## **2.16.5 Border Width**

A minimum border width of 35 feet measured from the outside edge of the traveled way to the right of way is to be provided on all four-lane high-speed suburban arterial highways with or without curb and gutter.

## **2.16.6 Grades**

The maximum grade for four-lane high-speed suburban arterial highways is 5%.

## **2.16.7 Horizontal Curves**

The maximum deflection without horizontal curvature is commensurate with rural new construction and comparable design speeds.

## **2.16.8 Superelevation**

When these suburban typical sections are superelevated, the maximum superelevation rate is 0.05 (See *Figure 2.16.3*).

## **2.16.9 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone**

Horizontal Clearances and Clear Zones for these sections are to be commensurate with flush shoulder, new construction conditions.

## **2.16.10 Monitoring**

These high-speed suburban arterial highways will require that the county, section, begin milepost and end milepost for these sections be reported to the State Roadway Design Office during the Phase II Design. The District Design Engineer shall report to the State Roadway Design Engineer a speed study containing the speed histograms, the 85<sup>th</sup> percentile and the 10 mph pace speeds within one year after opening, then again between three to four years after opening. This data along with other data collected will be used to evaluate the overall effectiveness and safety of these high-speed suburban arterial highways.

## Glossary of Terms

In the application of the criteria in this manual, the following definitions are assigned for consistency of understanding and interpretation.

1. **Arterials:** Divided or undivided, relatively continuous routes that primarily serve through traffic, high traffic volumes, and long average trip lengths. Traffic movement is of primary importance, with abutting land access of secondary importance. Arterials include expressways without full control of access, US numbered routes and principal state routes. May be classified as urban or rural.
2. **Auxiliary Lane:** The designated widths of roadway pavement marked to separate speed change, turning, passing and climbing maneuvers from through traffic. They may also provide short capacity segments.
3. **C-D Roads:** Collector-Distributor Roads are limited access roadways provided within a single interchange, or continuously through two or more interchanges on a freeway segment. They provide access to and from the freeway, and reduce and control the number of ingress and egress points on the through freeway. They are similar to continuous frontage roads except that access to abutting property is not permitted.
4. **Collectors:** Divided or undivided routes which serve to link arterial routes with local roads or major traffic generators. They serve as transition link between mobility needs and land use needs. Collectors include minor state routes, major county roads, and major urban and suburban streets.
5. **FIHS:** Florida Intrastate Highway System. An interconnected statewide system of limited access facilities and controlled access facilities developed and managed by the Department to meet standards and criteria established for the FIHS. It is part of the State Highway System, and is developed for high-speed and high-volume traffic movements. The FIHS also accommodates High-Occupancy Vehicles (HOVs), express bus transit and in some corridors, interregional and high speed intercity passenger rail service. Access to abutting land is subordinate to movement of traffic and such access must be prohibited or highly regulated.
6. **Freeways:** Divided arterial highways, with full control of access. Movement of traffic free of interference and conflicts is of primary importance. Essential elements include medians, grade separations, interchanges, and, in some cases, collector-distributor roads and frontage roads. Freeways include Interstate, toll road and expressway systems. May be classified as urban or rural.
7. **HOV Lane:** Special designated widths of pavement marked to provide travel lanes for high occupancy vehicles (HOV). They may be directly adjacent to other travel lanes or separated.

8. **Local Roads:** Routes which provide high access to abutting property, low average traffic volumes, short average trip lengths and on which through traffic movements are not of primary importance. Local roads include minor county roads, minor urban and suburban subdivision streets, and graded or unimproved roads.
9. **Rural Areas:** Places outside the boundaries of concentrated populations that accommodate higher speeds, longer trip lengths and freedom of movement, and are relatively free of street and highway networks. Rural environments are surroundings of similar characteristics.
10. **Streets:** The local system which provides direct access to residential neighborhoods and business districts, connects these areas to the higher order road systems and offers the highest access to abutting property; sometimes deliberately discouraging through-traffic movement and high speeds.  
**Note:** Local roads and streets are not generally a part of the State Highway System and therefore, may not be governed by the FDOT roadway design criteria, but by the *Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways* and/or criteria established by the local government.
11. **Traffic Lane/Traveled Way:** The designated widths of roadway pavement, exclusive of shoulders, marked to separate opposing traffic or vehicles traveling in the same direction. Traffic lanes include through travel lanes, auxiliary lanes, turn lanes, weaving, passing, and climbing lanes. They provide space for passenger cars, trucks, buses, recreational vehicles and, in some cases, bicycles.
12. **Travel Lane:** The designated widths of roadway pavement marked to carry through traffic and to separate it from opposing traffic or traffic occupying other traffic lanes. Generally, travel lanes equate to the basic number of lanes for a facility.
13. **Roadway:** The portion of a highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use. A divided highway has two or more roadways.
14. **Urban Areas:** Places within boundaries of concentrated populations, where density of street and highway networks, travel speeds, nature and composition of vehicles and pedestrian traffic dictate street and highway characteristics that promote lower speeds, better circulation movements, more delineation and traffic guidance devices, shorter trip lengths and provisions for pedestrians and bicycles. Urban environments are surroundings of similar characteristics.
15. **Urbanized Areas:** Transitional zones between rural and urban areas, with characteristics approaching or similar to urban areas.
16. **High Speed:** Descriptive term used to summarize all conditions governing the selection of Design Speeds 50 mph and greater.

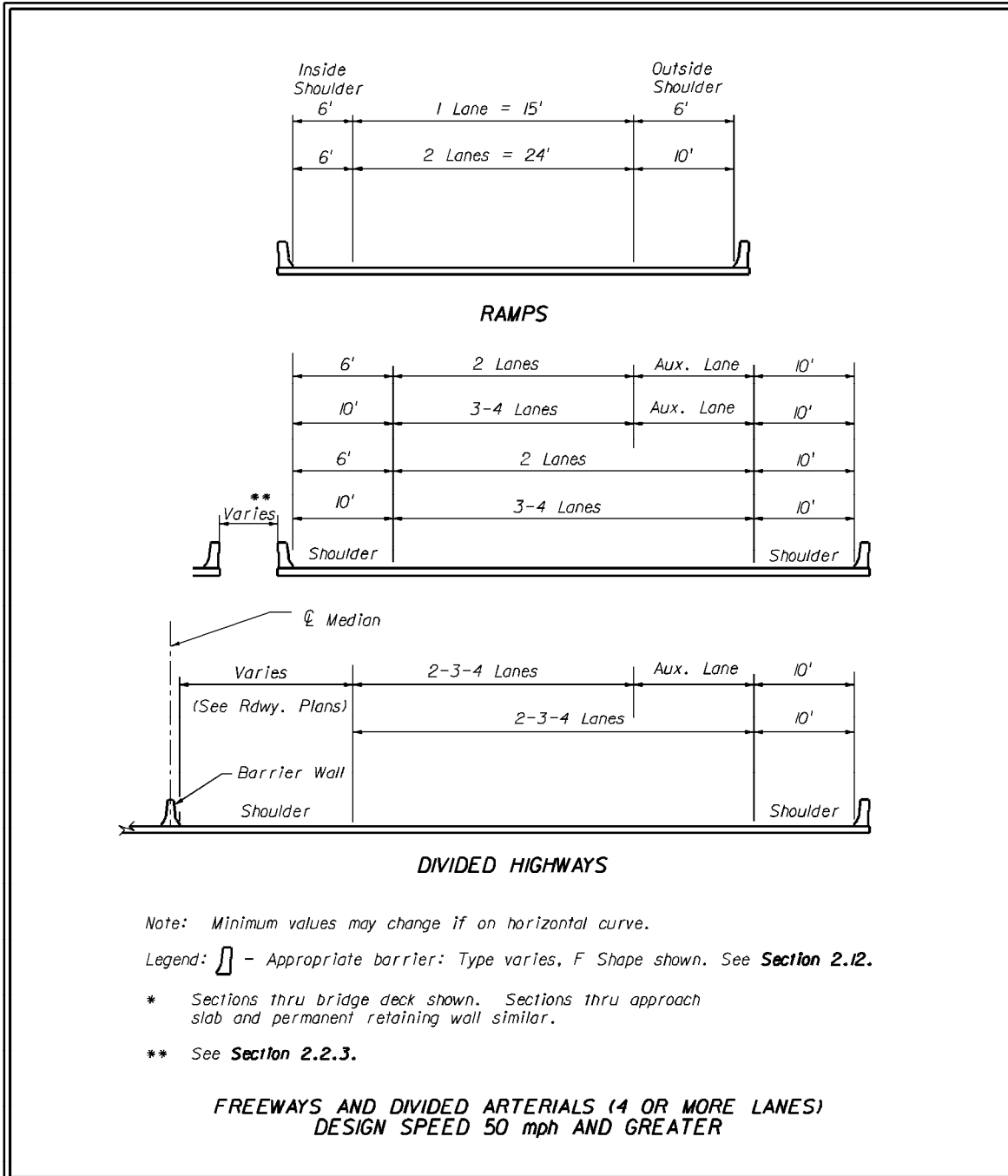
17. **Low Speed:** Descriptive term used to summarize all conditions governing the selection of Design Speed of less than 50 mph.
18. **Truck Traffic:** When significant, heavy, substantial, high percent, etc. truck traffic is used as a qualifying control, it shall mean 10% of the AADT or 10% of the daily count (24 hr.)
19. **Low Volume and High Volume:** Descriptive term used to describe certain operating characteristics and driver expectancy on highways. Criteria for some elements are selected according to these qualifying controls. Standards for these controls are given in the following table.

## Standards for Low and High Volume Highways in Annual Average Daily Volumes

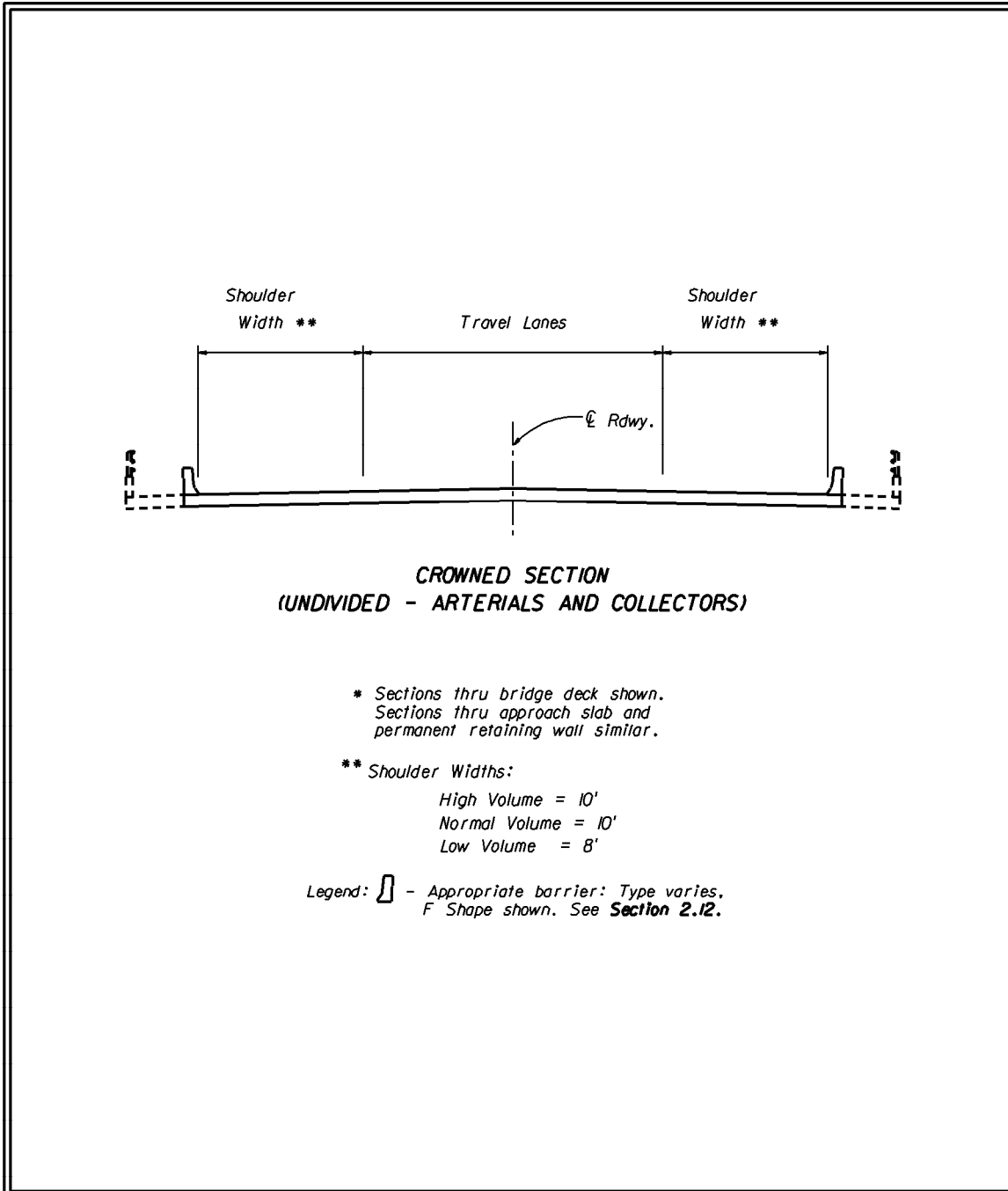
HIGHWAY TYPE	LOW VOLUME AADT	HIGH VOLUME AADT
FREEWAY - URBAN		
4-LANE FACILITY	57,000	69,000
6-LANE FACILITY	86,000	103,000
8-LANE FACILITY	114,000	138,000
FREEWAY - RURAL		
4-LANE FACILITY	46,000	56,000
6-LANE FACILITY	69,000	83,000
8-LANE FACILITY	92,000	111,000
ARTERIALS - URBAN		
2-LANE FACILITY	16,000	20,000
4-LANE FACILITY	37,000	43,000
6-LANE FACILITY	55,000	64,000
8-LANE FACILITY	69,000	80,000
ARTERIALS - RURAL		
2-LANE FACILITY	9,000	14,000
4-LANE FACILITY	38,000	47,000
6-LANE FACILITY	58,000	71,000
COLLECTOR - URBAN		
2-LANE FACILITY	11,000	16,000
4-LANE FACILITY	37,000	45,000
COLLECTOR - RURAL		
2-LANE FACILITY	8,000	13,000
4-LANE FACILITY	30,000	38,000
<b>LOW VOLUME</b>	FACILITIES ARE HIGHWAY TYPES WITH PROJECTED DESIGN YEARS <b>AADT</b> VOLUME EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN THE LOW VOLUME VALUES SHOWN.	
<b>HIGH VOLUME</b>	FACILITIES ARE HIGHWAY TYPES WITH PROJECTED DESIGN YEAR <b>AADT</b> VOLUME EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN THE HIGH VOLUME VALUES SHOWN.	



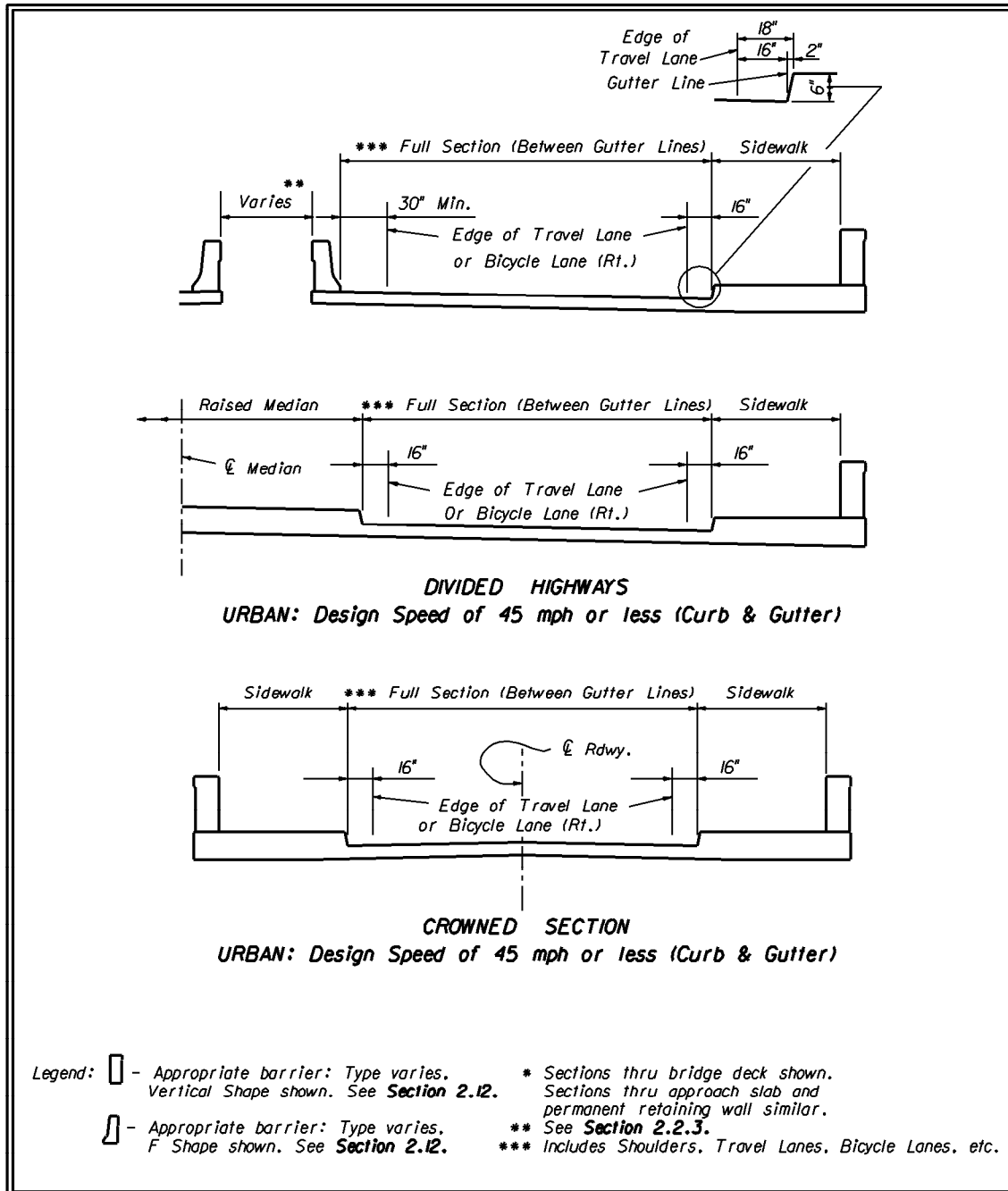
**Figure 2.0.1 Partial Bridge Sections \***



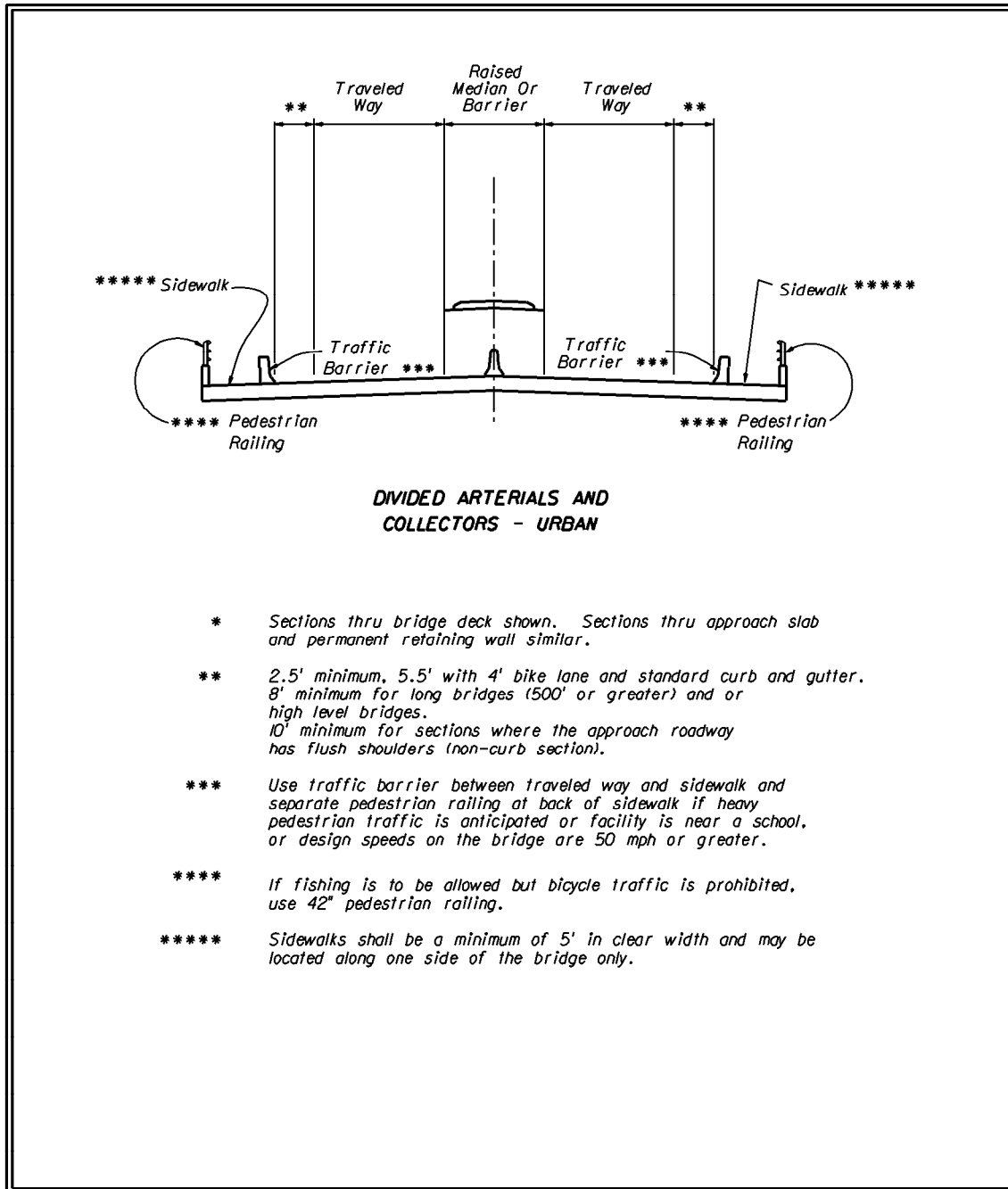
**Figure 2.0.2 Bridge Section \***



**Figure 2.0.3 Partial Bridge Sections \***



**Figure 2.0.4 Bridge Section \***



## 2.1 Lanes

**Table 2.1.1 Lane Widths**

LANE WIDTHS (FEET)						
FACILITY		THROUGH OR TRAVEL	AUXILIARY			
TYPE	AREA		SPEED CHANGE	TURNING (LT/RT/MED)	PASSING	CLIMBING
FREEWAY	Rural	12	12	---	---	12
	Urban	12	12	---	---	12
ARTERIAL	Rural	12	12	12	12	12
	Urban	12 <sub>1</sub>	12 <sub>1</sub>	12 <sub>1,4</sub>	12 <sub>1</sub>	12
COLLECTOR	Rural	12 <sub>6</sub>	11 <sub>2</sub>	11 <sub>2,4</sub>	11 <sub>2,5</sub>	12
	Urban	11 <sub>3</sub>	11 <sub>3</sub>	11 <sub>3,4</sub>	11 <sub>3</sub>	12

1. 11 ft. permitted on non-FIHS roads if one of these conditions exist:

- a. R/W and existing conditions are stringent controls
- b. Facility operates on interrupted flow conditions
- c. Design speed 40 mph or less
- d. Intersection capacity not adversely affected
- e. Truck volume 10% or less

2. 12 ft. lanes for all 2-lane rural.

3. 12 ft. lanes in industrial areas when R/W is available.

4. With severe R/W controls, 10 ft. turning lanes may be used where design speeds are 40 mph or less and the intersection is controlled by traffic signals. Median turn lanes shall not exceed 15 ft.

5. 12 ft. when truck volume more than 10%.

6. 11 ft. for low volume AADT.

## 2.1 Lanes

**Table 2.1.2 Lane Widths - Special**

LANE WIDTHS (FEET)					
FACILITY		SPECIAL			
TYPE	AREA	HOV <sub>1</sub>	BICYCLE	OFF SYSTEM DETOUR	URBAN MULTI- PURPOSE <sub>5</sub>
FREEWAY	Rural	12	---	11 <sub>4</sub>	---
	Urban	12	---	11 <sub>4</sub>	---
ARTERIAL	Rural	12	5 <sub>2</sub>	11	---
	Urban	12	4 <sub>3</sub>	11	8 <sub>6</sub>
COLLECTOR	Rural	---	5 <sub>2</sub>	11	---
	Urban	---	4 <sub>3</sub>	11	8 <sub>6</sub>

1. Separated or concurrent flow.  
 2. Designated or undesignated bike lane on shoulder pavement.  
 3. Designated or undesignated. See **Section 8.4.1** of this volume.  
 4. For Freeway detours, at least one 12 ft. lane must be provided in each direction.  
 5. Urban multi-purpose lanes are usually used as refuge lanes but may be used for loading zones, bus stops, emergency access and other purposes. Parking that adversely impacts capacity or safety is to be eliminated whenever practical. Standard parking width is measured from lip of gutter, with a minimum width of 8 ft. measured from face of curb.  
 6. 10 ft. to 12 ft. lanes for commercial and transit vehicles.

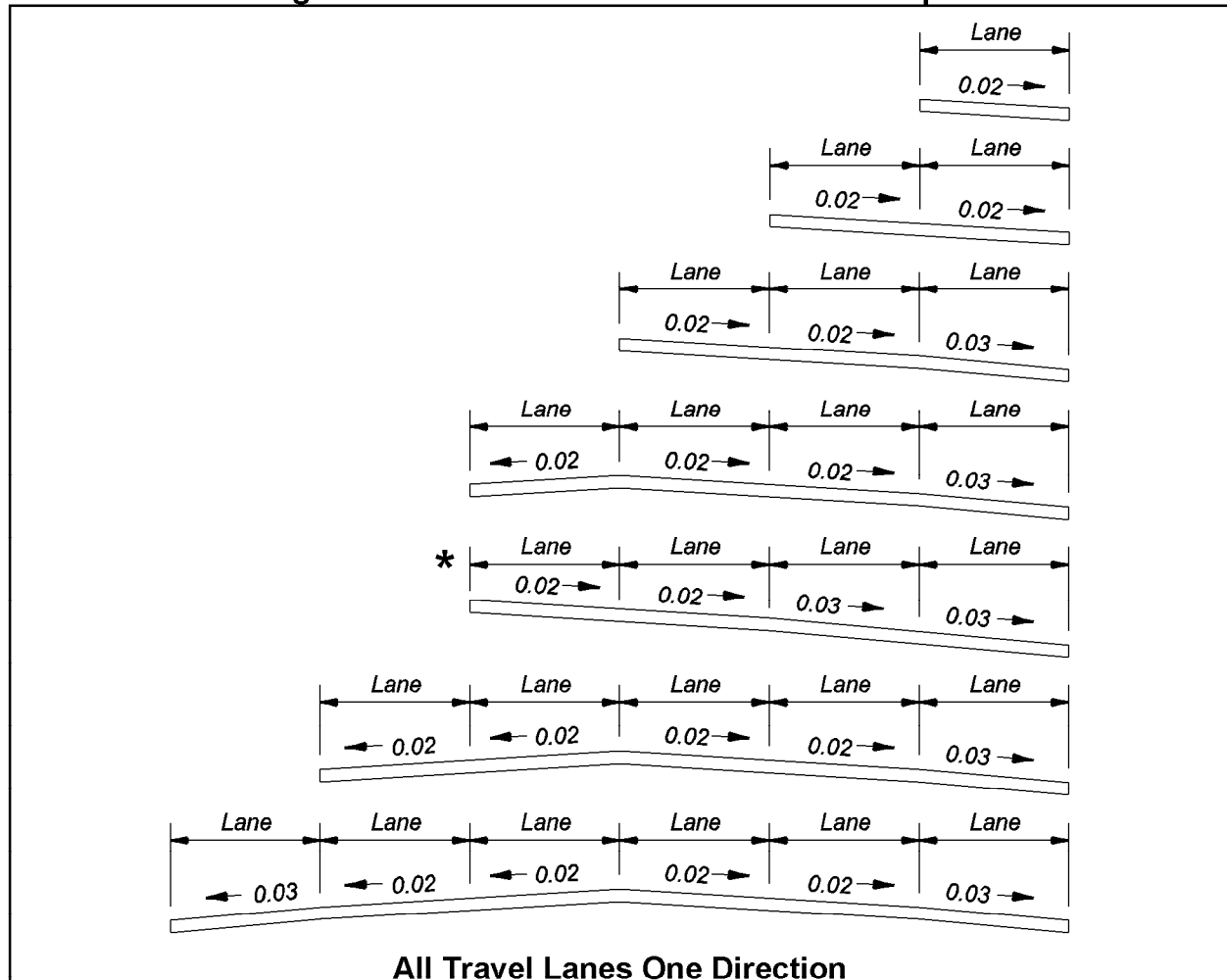
**Table 2.1.3 Ramp Widths**

RAMP WIDTHS (RAMP PROPER) FOR TANGENT AND LARGE RADII (≥ 500 ft.) SECTIONS	
ONE LANE RAMPS	15 ft.
TWO LANE RAMPS	24 ft.

For ramp widths at turning roadways see **Table 2.14.1**.

## 2.1 Lanes

Figure 2.1.1 Standard Pavement Cross Slopes



These sections show only the standard slopes for adjoining travel lanes; they do not prescribe needed lanes, lane usage or typical section requirements other than lane slope. These slopes are not applicable to parabolic crowns.

Maximum pavement cross slopes on tangent sections are:

- 0.04 for design speeds of 45 mph or less.
- 0.03 for design speeds greater than 45 mph.

The change in cross slope between adjacent through lanes shall not exceed 0.04.

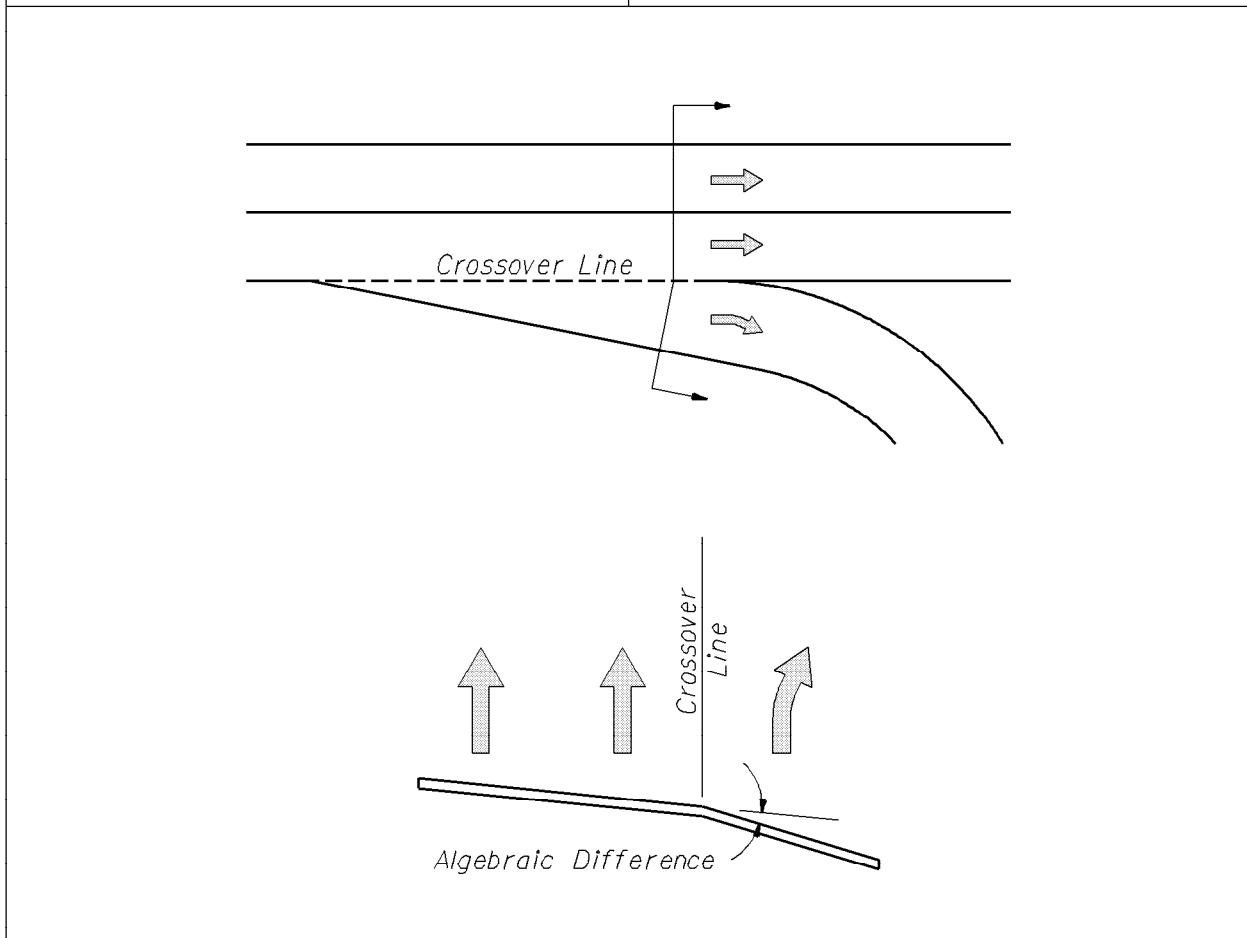
Slopes on multi-purpose lanes may be 0.03 to 0.05. Portions of multipurpose lanes that are reserved for parking and access isles for the physically handicapped shall have cross slopes not exceeding 1:50 (0.02) in all directions.

\*NOTE: Four travel lanes may be sloped in one direction for curb and gutter sections only.

## 2.1 Lanes

**Table 2.1.4 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals**

Design Speed of Exit or Entrance Curve (mph)	Maximum Algebraic Difference in Cross Slope at Crossover Line (%)
Less than 35	6.0
35 and over	5.0





## 2.2 Medians

**Table 2.2.1 Median Widths**

MEDIAN WIDTHS (FEET)	
TYPE FACILITY	WIDTH
FREEWAYS	
Interstate, Without Barrier	64 <sub>1</sub>
Other Freeways, Without Barrier	---
Design Speed ≥ 60 mph	60
Design Speed < 60 mph	40
All, With Barrier, All Design Speeds	26 <sub>2</sub>
ARTERIAL AND COLLECTORS	
Design Speed > 45 mph	40 <sub>5</sub>
Design Speed ≤ 45 mph	22 <sub>3</sub>
Paved And Painted For Left Turns	12 <sub>4</sub>
<p>Median width is the distance between the inside (median) edge of the travel lane of each roadway.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 88 ft. when future lanes planned.</li> <li>2. Based on 2 ft. median barrier and 12 ft. shoulder.</li> <li>3. On reconstruction projects where existing curb locations are fixed due to severe right of way constraints, the minimum width may be reduced to 19.5 ft. for design speeds = 45 mph, and to 15.5 ft. for design speeds ≤ 40 mph.</li> <li>4. Restricted to 5-lane sections with design speeds ≤ 40 mph. On reconstruction projects where existing curb locations are fixed due to severe right of way constraints, the minimum width may be reduced to 10 ft. These flush medians are to include sections of raised or restrictive median for pedestrian refuge and to conform to <b>Section 2.2.2</b> of this volume and the Access Management Rules.</li> <li>5. Curb sections with design speed of 50 mph which are posted at 45 mph or less may be 22 ft.</li> </ol>	

## 2.3 Shoulders

**Table 2.3.1 Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Freeways**

HIGHWAY TYPE		WIDTH (FEET)								SLOPES		
		WITHOUT SHOULDER GUTTER				WITH SHOULDER GUTTER						
		FULL WIDTH		PAVED WIDTH		FULL WIDTH		PAVED WIDTH		NORMAL <sub>1</sub>		
		Outside	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left	
FREWAYS  (Lanes One Way)	4-Lane or More	12	12	10	10	15.5	15.5	8	8	.06	.06	
	3-Lane	12	12	10	10	15.5	15.5	8	8		.05	
	2-Lane	12	8	10	4	15.5	13.5	8	6			
	HOV Lane	N/A	14	N/A	10	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	.05 <sub>2</sub>
	1-Lane Ramp	6	6	4	2	11.5	11.5	4 <sub>3</sub>	4	.06	.05	
	2-Lane Ramp Non-Interstate	10	8	8	4	15.5	13.5	8	6			
	2-Lane Ramp Interstate	12	8	10	4	15.5	13.5	8	6			
	C-D Road 1-Lane	6	6	4	2	11.5	11.5	4	4			
	C-D Road 2-Lane	12	8	10	4	15.5	13.5	8	6			
	C-D Road 3-Lane	12	12	10	10	15.5	15.5	8	8			
	C-D Road > 3-Lane	12	12	10	10	15.5	15.5	8	8			.06
	Auxiliary Lane Climbing & Weaving	12	N/A	10	N/A	15.5	N/A	8	N/A			N/A
	Auxiliary Lane Mainline Terminal: 1-Lane Ramp	12	N/A	10	N/A	15.5	N/A	8	N/A			N/A
2-Lane Ramp	12	N/A	10	N/A	15.5	N/A	8	N/A	N/A			
Frontage Road	See <b>COLLECTORS Table 2.3.4.</b>  For local roads and streets see the <b>FDOT Manual Of Uniform Minimum Standards For Design, Construction And Maintenance For Streets and Highways.</b>											

1. Shoulders shall extend 4 ft. back of shoulder gutter and at a 0.06 slope back toward the gutter.
2. 0.06 when 4 lanes or more combined.
3. Shoulder pavement less than 6 ft. in width that adjoins shoulder gutter shall be the same type, depth and slope as the ramp pavement.

## 2.3 Shoulders

**Table 2.3.2 Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Arterials Divided**

HIGHWAY TYPE		WIDTH (FEET)								SLOPES	
		WITHOUT SHOULDER GUTTER				WITH SHOULDER GUTTER					
		FULL WIDTH		PAVED WIDTH		FULL WIDTH		PAVED WIDTH		NORMAL <sub>1</sub>	
		Outside	Median or Left	Outside <sub>2</sub>	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left	Outside	Median or Left
ARTERIALS	4-Lane	12	12	5	4	15.5	15.5	8	8	.06	.06
		10	10	5	4	15.5	15.5	8	8		
		8	8	5	4	15.5	13.5	6	6		
	3-Lane	12	12	5	0 <sub>4</sub>	15.5	15.5	8	8		
		10	10	5	0 <sub>4</sub>	15.5	15.5	8	8		
	2-Lane	8	8	5	0 <sub>4</sub>	13.5	13.5	6	6		
		12	8	5	0 <sub>4</sub>	15.5	13.5	8	6		
	1-Lane Ramp	10	8	5	0 <sub>4</sub>	15.5	13.5	8	6		
		8	6	5	0 <sub>4</sub>	13.5	11.5	6	4		
	1-Lane Ramp	6	6	5	2	11.5	11.5	4 <sub>3</sub>	4		
2-Lane Ramp	10	6	5	2	15.5	13.5	8	6			
C-D Road	1-Lane	6	6	5	2	11.5	11.5	4	4		
	2-Lane	8	6	5	0	13.5	11.5	6	4		
Divided (Lanes One Way)	Auxiliary Lane Climbing & Weaving	Same As Travel Lanes	N/A	Same As Travel Lanes	N/A	Same As Travel Lanes	N/A	Same As Travel Lanes	N/A	N/A	
	Auxiliary Lane Mainline Terminal:	1-Lane Ramp	8	N/A	5	N/A	11.5	N/A	4	N/A	N/A
		2-Lane Ramp	12	N/A	10	N/A	15.5	N/A	8	N/A	N/A
	Auxiliary Lane At-Grade Intersection	Same As Travel Lanes	Same As Travel Lanes	5	0	11.5	N/A	4	N/A	.05-.06	
Frontage Road	See Collectors <b>Table 2.3.4</b> . For local roads and streets see the FDOT <b>Manual Of Uniform Minimum Standards For Design, Construction And Maintenance For Street And Highways</b> .										

1. Shoulders shall extend 4 ft. back of shoulder gutter and have a 0.06 slope back toward the gutter.  
 2. Shoulder shall be paved full width through rail-highway at-grade crossings, extending a minimum distance of 50 ft. on each side of the crossing measured from the outside rail. For additional information see the **Design Standards, Index No. 17882**.  
 3. Shoulder pavement less than 6 ft. in width and adjoining shoulder gutter shall be the same type, depth and slope as the ramp pavement.  
 4. Paved 2 ft. wide where turf is difficult to establish. Paved 4 ft. wide (a) in sag vertical curves, 100 ft. minimum either side of the low point, and (b) on the low side of superelevated traffic lanes extending through the curves and approximately 300 ft. beyond the PC and PT.

**LEGEND FOR VALUES**  
 X ..... High Volume Highways  
 X ..... Normal Volume Highways  
 X ..... Low Volume Highways

## 2.3 Shoulders

**Table 2.3.3 Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Arterials Undivided**

HIGHWAY TYPE		WIDTHS (FEET)				SLOPES
		WITHOUT SHOULDER GUTTER		WITH SHOULDER GUTTER		NORMAL <sub>1</sub>
		FULL WIDTH	PAVED WIDTH <sub>2</sub>	FULL WIDTH	PAVED WIDTH	
ARTERIALS Undivided (lanes Two-Way)	Multi-Lane <sub>3</sub>	12	5	15.5	8	.06
		10	5	15.5	8	
		8	5	13.5	6	
	2-Lane	12	5	15.5	8	
		10	5	15.5	8	
		8	5	13.5	6	
	Auxiliary Lane At-Grade Intersections	Same As Travel Lanes	5	11.5	4	
	Frontage Road	See <b>COLLECTORS Table 2.3.4.</b> For local roads and streets see the FDOT <b>Manual Of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction And Maintenance for Streets and Highways.</b>				

1.	Shoulders shall extend 4 ft. back of shoulder gutter and have a 0.06 slope back toward the gutter.
2.	Shoulder shall be paved full width through rail-highway at-grade crossings, extending a minimum distance of 50 ft. on each side of the crossing measured from the outside rail. For additional information see the <b>Design Standards, Index No. 17882.</b>
3.	All multi-lane facilities shall conform with <b>Section 2.2.2</b> of this volume.

<b>LEGEND</b>	X..... High Volume Highways
<b>FOR</b>	X..... Normal Volume Highways
<b>VALUES</b>	X..... Low Volume Highways

## 2.3 Shoulders

**Table 2.3.4 Shoulder Widths and Slopes - Collectors Divided and Undivided**

HIGHWAY TYPE		WIDTHS (FEET)								SLOPES	
		WITHOUT SHOULDER GUTTER				WITH SHOULDER GUTTER					
		FULL WIDTH		PAVED WIDTH		FULL WIDTH		PAVED WIDTH		NORMAL <sub>1</sub>	
		Outside	Median Or Left	Outside <sub>2</sub>	Median Or Left	Outside	Median Or Left	Outside	Median Or Left	Outside	Median Or Left
COLLECTORS	Lane	12	12	5	0 <sub>3</sub>	15.5	15.5	8	8	.06	.05
		10	10	5	0 <sub>3</sub>	15.5	15.5	8	8		
		8	8	5	0 <sub>3</sub>	13.5	15.5	6	6		
Divided (Lanes One-Way)	2-lane	12	8	5	0 <sub>3</sub>	15.5	13.5	8	6	.06	.05
		10	8	5	0 <sub>3</sub>	15.5	13.5	8	6		
		8	6	5	0 <sub>3</sub>	13.5	11.5	6	4		
	Auxiliary Lane At-Grade Intersection	Same As Travel Lanes	Same As Travel Lanes	5	4	11.5	N/A	4	N/A		
COLLECTORS	Multi-Lane <sub>4</sub>	12		5		15.5		8		.06	
		10		5		15.5		8			
		8		5		13.5		6			
Undivided (Lanes Two-Way)	2-Lane	12		5		15.5		8		.06	
		10		5		15.5		8			
		8		5		13.5		6			
	Auxiliary Lane At-Grade Intersection	Same As Travel Lanes	Same As Travel Lanes			11.5		4			

1. Shoulders shall extend 4 ft. back of shoulder gutter and have a 0.06 slope back toward the gutter.

2. Shoulder shall be paved full width though rail-highway at-grade crossings, extending a minimum distance of 50 ft. on each side of the crossing measured from the outside rail. For additional information see **Design Standards, Index No. 17882**.

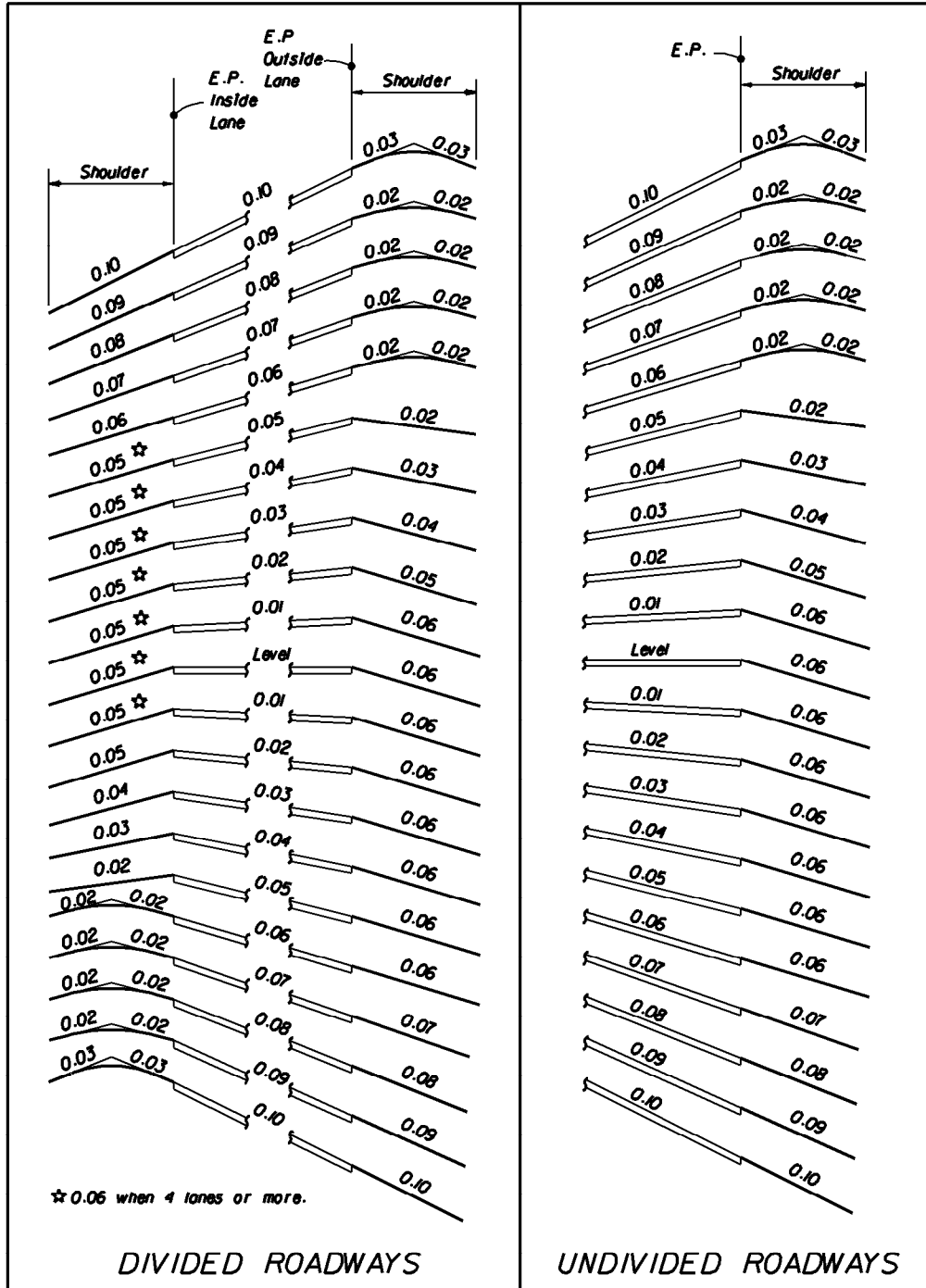
3. The median shoulder may be paved 2 ft. wide in areas of the State where establishing and maintaining turf is difficult; however, shoulders shall be paved 4 ft. wide (a) in sag vertical curves, 100 ft. minimum either side of the low point, and (b) on the low side of superelevated traffic lanes, extending through the curve and approximately 300 ft. beyond the PC and PT.

4. All multi-lane facilities shall conform with **Section 2.2.2** of this volume.

**LEGEND FOR VALUES**  
 X..... High Volume Highways  
 X..... Normal Volume Highways  
 X..... Low Volume Highways

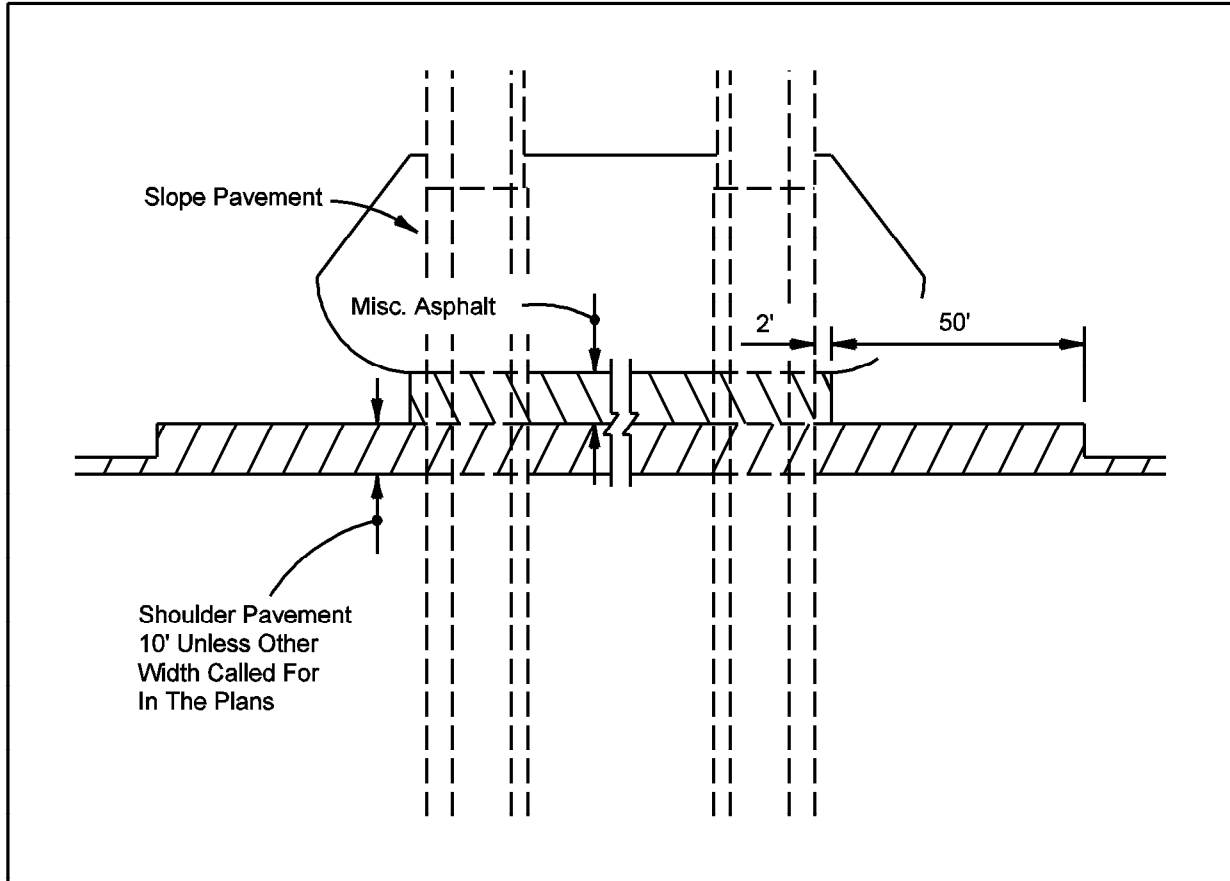
## 2.3 Shoulders

Figure 2.3.1 Shoulder Superelevation



## 2.3 Shoulders

Figure 2.3.2 Typical Paving Under Bridge For Outside Shoulders



## 2.4 Roadside Slopes

Table 2.4.1 Roadside Slopes

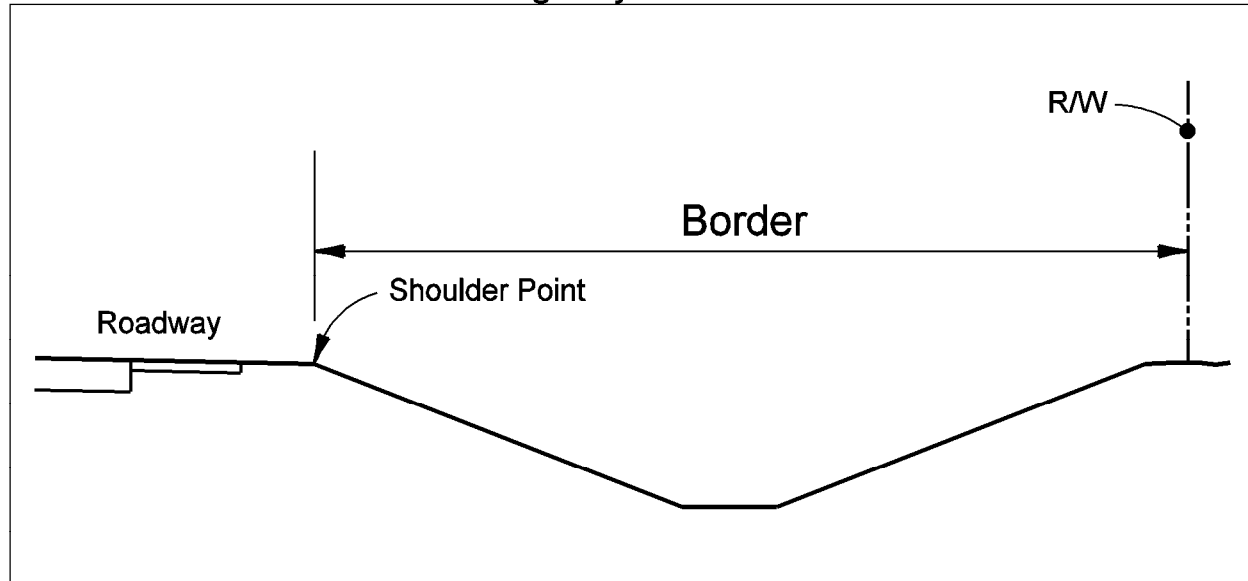
TYPE OF FACILITY	RURAL & URBAN FREEWAYS, RURAL ARTERIALS AND COLLECTORS, WITH PROJECTED 20 YEAR AADT OF 1500 OR GREATER		RURAL ARTERIALS AND COLLECTORS WITH PROJECTED 20 YR. AADT LESS THAN 1500 AND RURAL LOCALS, URBAN ARTERIALS AND COLLECTORS WITHOUT CURB & GUTTER		URBAN ARTERIALS AND COLLECTORS WITH CURB & GUTTER	
	DESIGN SPEED 45 mph OR GREATER		ALL SPEEDS		DESIGN SPEED 45 mph OR LESS	
	Height of Fill (feet) *	Rate	Height of Fill (feet) *	Rate	Height of Fill (feet) *	Rate
Front Slope	0.0 - 5 5 - 10 10 - 20 >20	1:6 1:6 to edge of CZ and 1:4 1:6 to edge of CZ and 1:3 1:2 (with guardrail)	0.0 - 5  5 - 20	1:6 except where R/W is insufficient, then 1:6 to edge of CZ and 1:3 will be permitted  1:6 to edge of CZ and 1:3 except where R/W is insufficient then 1:2 will be permitted	All	1:2 or to suit property owner, not flatter than 1:6. R/W cost must be considered for high fill sections in urban areas
Back Slope	All	1:4 or 1:3 with a standard width trapezoidal ditch and 1:6 front slope	All	1:4 when R/W permits or 1:3	All	1:2 or to suit property owner. Not flatter than 1:6.
Transverse Slopes	All	1:10 or flatter (freeways) 1:4 (others)	All	1:4	All	1:4

\* Height of Fill is the vertical distance from the edge of the outside travel lane to the toe of front slope.



## 2.5 Borders

**Table 2.5.1 Highways with Flush Shoulders**

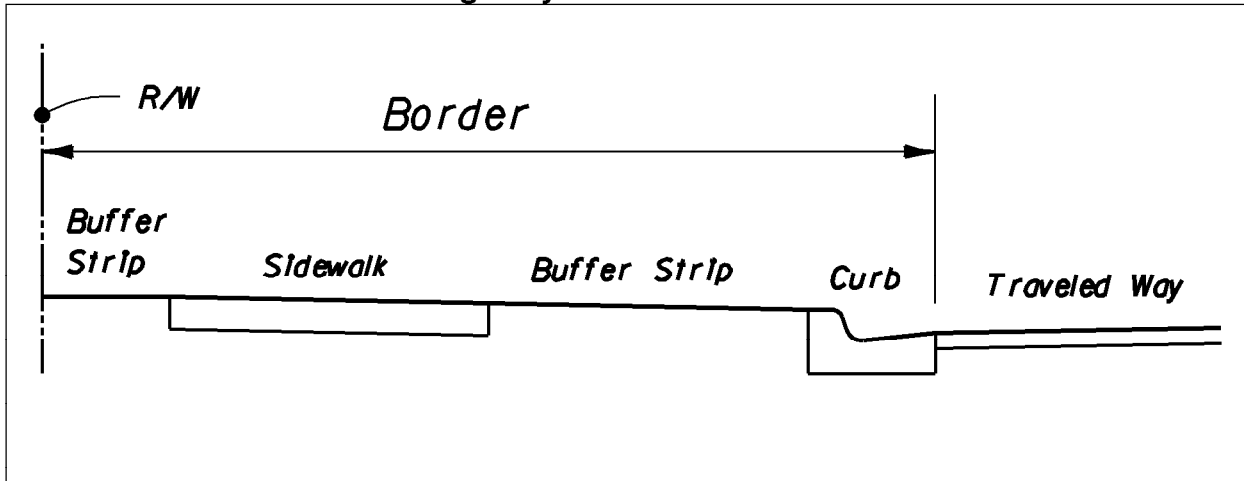


<b>BORDER</b>	
<b>TYPE FACILITY</b>	<b>WIDTH (FEET)</b>
FREEWAYS (INCLUDING INTERCHANGE RAMPS)	94 <sup>1</sup>
ARTERIALS COLLECTORS Design Speed > 45 mph	40
ARTERIALS COLLECTORS Design Speed ≤ 45 mph	33

1. Measured from the edge of the outside travel lane to the R/W. Width may be reduced in area of crossroad terminal as long as design meets requirements for clear zone, horizontal clearance, drainage, maintenance access, etc.

## 2.5 Borders

Table 2.5.2 Highways with Curbs or Curb and Gutter



### BORDER

TYPE FACILITY	MINIMUM WIDTH (FEET)	
	TRAVEL LANES AT CURB	BIKE LANES OR OTHER AUXILIARY LANES AT CURB
ARTERIALS COLLECTORS Design Speed $45 \geq$ mph	14	12
ARTERIALS COLLECTORS Design Speed $\leq 40$ mph	12	10
URBAN COLLECTOR STREETS Design Speed $\leq 30$ mph	10	8

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 2.6 Grades

**Table 2.6.1 Maximum Grades**

MAXIMUM GRADES IN PERCENT												
TYPE OF HIGHWAY	AREA	DESIGN SPEED (mph)										
		FLAT TERRAIN						ROLLING TERRAIN				
		30	40	45	50	60	70	30	40	50	60	70
FREEWAYS <sub>1</sub>	Rural	----	---	4	4	3	3	----	----	5	4	4
	Urban	----	---	4	4	3	3	----	----	5	4	4
ARTERIALS <sub>3</sub>	Rural	----	5	5	4	3	3	----	6	5	4	4
	Urban	8	7	7	6	5	----	9	8	7	6	----
COLLECTORS <sub>3</sub>	Rural	7	7	7	6	5	4	9	8	7	6	5
	Urban	9	9	9	7	6	5	11	10	8	7	6
	Industrial <sub>2</sub>	4	4	4	3	3	----	5	5	4	4	----
FRONTAGE ROADS	Require same criteria as Collectors.											
RAMPS	DESIGN SPEED (mph)		< 20		25 to 30		35 to 40		45 to 50			
	GRADES (%)		6 to 8		5 to 7		4 to 6		3 to 5			
One-way descending grades on Ramps may be 2% greater, in special cases.												
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interstate designed to 70 mph will be restricted to 3% maximum grade.</li> <li>Areas with significant (10% or more) heavy truck traffic.</li> <li>On 2-lane highways critical length of upgrades shall not be exceeded. Critical lengths are those which reduce the speeds of 300 lb/hp trucks by more than 10 mph.</li> </ol>												

**Table 2.6.2 Maximum Change in Grade Without Vertical Curves**

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	20	30	40	45	50	60	65	70
MAXIMUM CHANGE IN GRADE IN PERCENT	1.20	1.00	0.80	0.70	0.60	0.40	0.30	0.20

## 2.6 Grades

**Table 2.6.3 Criteria for Grade Datum**

CLEARANCE FOR THE ROADWAY BASE COURSE ABOVE THE BASE CLEARANCE WATER ELEVATION	
TYPE FACILITY	REQUIRED CLEARANCE
Freeways and Rural Multi-lane Mainline	3 ft.
Ramps (proper)	2 ft.
Low Point on Ramps at Cross Roads	1 ft.
Rural Two-lane with Design Year ADT Greater than 1500 VPD	2 ft.
All Other Facilities Including Urban	1 ft.

**Table 2.6.4 Grade Criteria for Curb and Gutter Sections**

GRADES ON CURB AND GUTTER SECTIONS	
Minimum Distance Required between VPI's	250 ft.
Minimum Grade (%)	0.3 %

(See **Table 2.6.1** for Maximum Grades)

## 2.7 Sight Distance

**Table 2.7.1 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance**

<b>MINIMUM STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE (FEET)</b> (For application of stopping sight distance, use an eye height of 3.5 feet and an object height of 0.5 feet above the road surface)														
<b>DESIGN SPEED (mph)</b>	<b>GRADES OF 2% OR LESS</b>													
	<b>Interstate</b>							<b>All Other Facilities</b>						
15	----							80						
20	----							115						
25	----							155						
30	----							200						
35	----							250						
40	----							305						
45	----							360						
50	----							425						
55	570							495						
60	645							570						
65	730							645						
70	820							730						
<b>ADJUSTMENT IN DISTANCE FOR GRADES GREATER THAN 2%</b>														
<b>DESIGN SPEED (mph)</b>	<b>INCREASE IN LENGTH FOR DOWNGRADE (ft.)</b>							<b>DECREASE IN LENGTH FOR UPGRADE (ft.)</b>						
	<b>Grades</b>							<b>Grades</b>						
	<b>3%</b>	<b>4%</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>6%</b>	<b>7%</b>	<b>8%</b>	<b>9%</b>	<b>3%</b>	<b>4%</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>6%</b>	<b>7%</b>	<b>8%</b>	<b>9%</b>
15	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	5	5	6	6	7	7	7
20	1	2	3	5	6	8	10	6	7	8	8	10	10	11
25	3	5	7	10	12	15	18	8	9	11	12	13	14	16
30	5	8	11	15	18	22	27	10	12	14	16	18	20	21
35	7	11	16	21	26	31	37	13	16	19	21	24	26	28
40	10	15	21	28	34	41	49	16	20	24	27	30	33	36
45	18	25	32	40	48	57	67	16	21	25	29	33	37	40
50	21	29	39	49	59	70	82	20	26	32	37	42	46	50
55	25	35	46	58	70	84	98	26	33	39	45	52	57	62
60	28	40	53	68	82	99	116	32	40	48	55	62	69	75
65	37	51	67	83	101	120	140	33	43	52	61	69	77	84
70	41	58	76	95	115	137	161	40	52	62	72	82	91	99

## 2.7 Sight Distance

**Table 2.7.2 Minimum Passing Sight Distance**

<b>MINIMUM PASSING SIGHT DISTANCE (FEET)</b> <b>(For application of passing sight distance, use an eye height of 3.5 feet and an object height of 3.5 feet above the road surface)</b>											
<b>DESIGN SPEED (mph)</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>40</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>55</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>65</b>	<b>70</b>
2-Lane, 2-Way Facilities	710	900	1090	1280	1470	1625	1835	1985	2135	2285	2480

## 2.8 Curves

### 2.8.1 Horizontal Curves

**Table 2.8.1a Maximum Deflections Without Horizontal Curves**

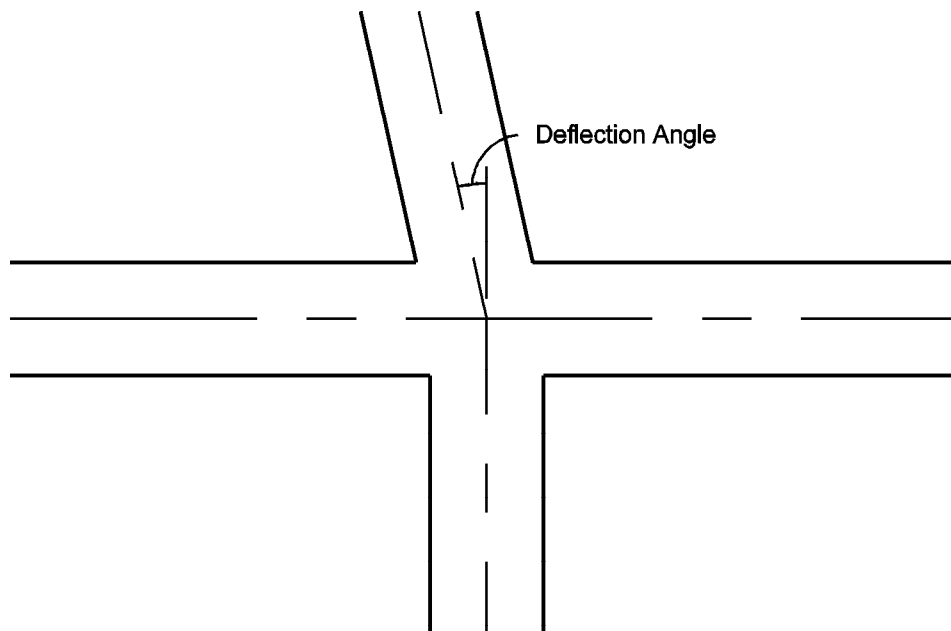
MAXIMUM DEFLECTION WITHOUT CURVE (DMS)			
TYPE FACILITY		V ≥ 45 mph	V ≤ 40 mph
Freeways		0° 45' 00"	N/A
Arterials and Collectors	Without Curb & Gutter	0° 45' 00"	2° 00' 00"
	With Curb & Gutter	1° 00' 00"	2° 00' 00"

Where V=Design Speed (mph)

**Table 2.8.1b Maximum Deflection for Through Lanes Through Intersections**

Design speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	45
Maximum Deflection	16° 00'	11° 00'	8° 00'	6° 00'	3° 00'

## 2.8 Curves





## 2.8.1 Horizontal Curves

**Table 2.8.2a Length of Horizontal Curves**

LENGTH OF CURVE (FEET)	
Freeways	$30V_1$
Arterials	$15V_2$
Collectors	$15V_2$
Where V=Design Speed (mph)	
1. When $30V$ cannot be attained, the greatest attainable length shall be used, but not less than $15V$ .  2. When $15V$ cannot be attained, the greatest attainable length shall be used, but not less than 400 ft.	
Curve length shall provide full superelevation within the curve of not less than 200 ft. (Rural) or 100 ft. (Urban).	

**Table 2.8.2b Arc Length (in feet) of Compound Curves with One-Half/Double Radii - Turning Roadways**

Radius (ft.)	100	150	200	250	300	400	≥ 500
Minimum Length	40	50	65	85	100	115	150
Desirable Length	65	65	100	115	150	180	200

## 2.8 Curves

### 2.8.1 Horizontal Curves

**Table 2.8.3 Maximum Curvature of Horizontal Curve  
 (Using Limiting Values of "e" and "f")**

MAXIMUM CURVATURE (Degrees)			
Design Speed (mph)	RURAL ENVIRONMENT (e max=0.10)	URBAN ENVIRONMENT (e max=0.05)	
		Without Curb And Gutter	With Curb And Gutter
30	24° 45'	20° 00'	20° 00'
35	17° 45'	14° 15'	14° 15'
40	13° 15'	10° 45'	10° 45'
45	10° 15'	8° 15'	8° 15'
50	8° 15'	6° 30'	6° 30'
55	6° 30'	5° 00'	---
60	5° 15'	---	---
65	4° 15'	---	---
70	3° 30'	---	---
Interstate: 3° 00' (Maximum Curvature) (e max=0.10)			

**Table 2.8.4 Maximum Horizontal Curvature  
 Using Normal Cross Slopes (0.02)**

MAXIMUM CURVATURE (Degrees)		
Design Speed (mph)	Curvature (e max = 0.10)	Curvature (e max = 0.05)
30	1° 30'	7° 00'
40	1° 00'	3° 45'
45	0° 30'	2° 45'
50	0° 30'	2° 00'
55	0° 30'	---
60	0° 15'	---
65	0° 15'	---
70	0° 15'	---

## 2.8 Curves

### 2.8.2 Vertical Curves

**Table 2.8.5 Minimum Lengths of Crest Vertical Curves  
 Based on Stopping Sight Distance**

K VALUES FOR CREST CURVES														
Design Speed (mph)	Interstate	All Other Facilities												
15	----	5												
20	----	10												
25	----	19												
30	----	31												
35	----	47												
40	----	70												
45	----	98												
50	----	136												
55	245	185												
60	313	245												
65	401	313												
70	506	401												
<b>Length, <math>L = KA</math></b> Where: L = Minimum Length (feet) K = Constant A = Algebraic Difference In Grades (percent)														
Interstates:	Lengths of crest vertical curves on Interstate mainlines are not to be less than 1000 ft. for open highways and 1800 ft. within interchanges.													
Service Interchanges:	K values for ramp crest vertical curves at interstate terminals are not to be less than the Interstate K values. K values for other ramp crest vertical curves are not to be less than the K values for All Other Facilities.													
System Interchanges:	K values for all crest vertical curves on systems interchanges are not to be less than the K values of the higher system.													
Arterials and Collectors:	The minimum lengths of crest vertical curves for highways with design speeds of 50 mph or greater are as follows:													
	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Design Speed (mph)</td> <td>50</td> <td>55</td> <td>60</td> <td>65</td> <td>70</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Minimum Length (ft.)</td> <td>300</td> <td>350</td> <td>400</td> <td>450</td> <td>500</td> </tr> </table>	Design Speed (mph)	50	55	60	65	70	Minimum Length (ft.)	300	350	400	450	500	
Design Speed (mph)	50	55	60	65	70									
Minimum Length (ft.)	300	350	400	450	500									
All Facilities:	The lengths of crest vertical curves are not to be less than 3 times the design speed (mph) expressed in feet.													

## 2.8 Curves

### 2.8.2 Vertical Curves

**Table 2.8.6 Minimum Lengths of Sag Vertical Curves  
 Based on Stopping Sight Distance and Headlight Sight Distance**

K VALUES FOR SAG CURVES		
Design Speed (mph)	Interstate	All Other Facilities
15	----	10
20	----	17
25	----	26
30	----	37
35	----	49
40	----	64
45	----	79
50	----	96
55	136	115
60	157	136
65	181	157
70	206	181
<b>Length, L = KA</b> Where: L = Minimum Length (feet) K = Constant A = Algebraic Difference In Grades (percent)		
Interstates:	Lengths of sag vertical curves on Interstate mainlines are not to be less than 800 ft.	
Service Interchanges:	K values for ramp sag vertical curves at interstate terminals are not to be less than the interstate K values. K values for other ramp sag vertical curves are not to be less than the K values for All Other Facilities.	
System Interchanges:	K values for all sag vertical curves on systems interchanges are not to be less than the K values of the higher system.	
Arterials and Collectors:	The minimum lengths of sag vertical curves for highways with design speeds of 50 mph or greater are as follows:	
	Design Speed (mph)	50    55    60    65    70
	Minimum Length (ft.)	200   250   300   350   400
All Facilities:	The lengths of sag vertical curves are not to be less than 3 times the design speed (mph) expressed in feet.	

## 2.9 Superelevation

**Table 2.9.1 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways,  
 Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways ( $e_{max} = 0.10$ )**

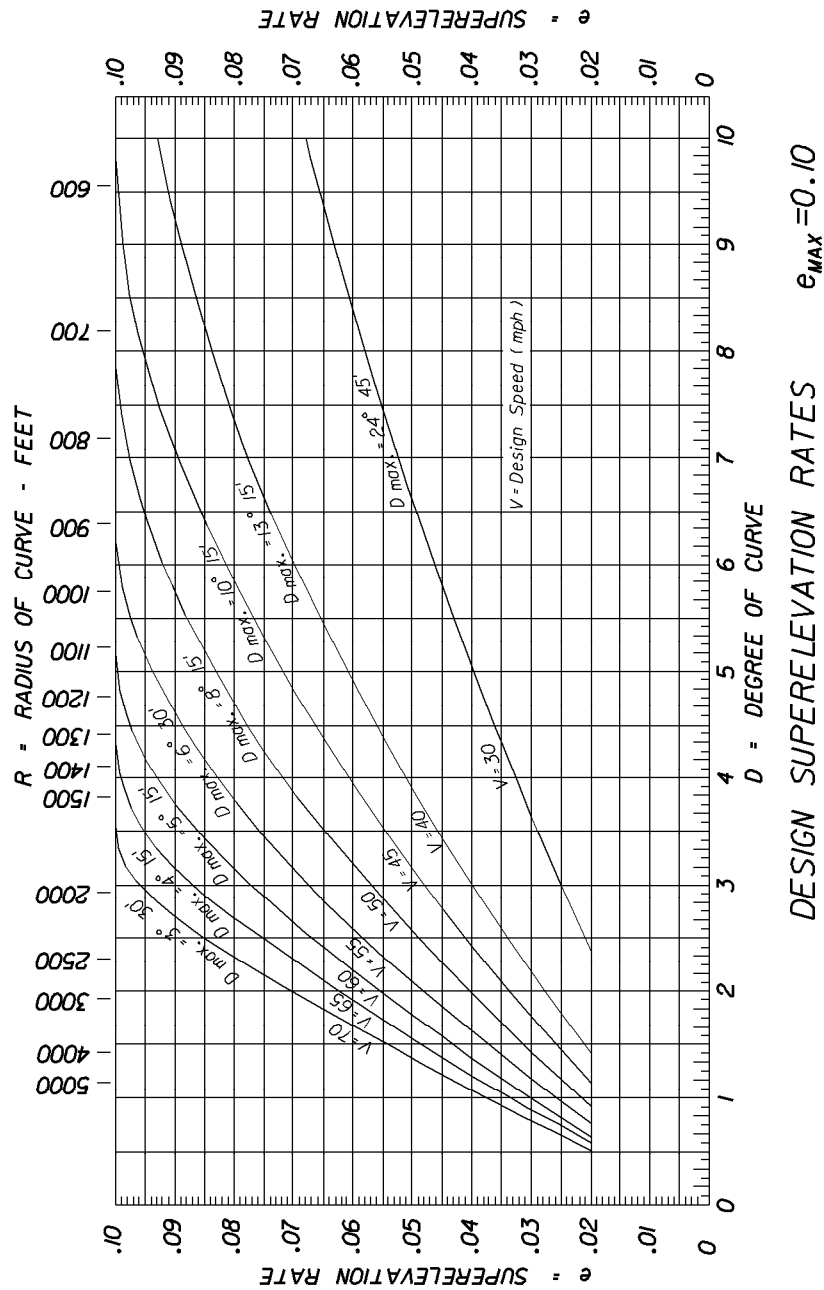
TABULATED VALUES							
Degree of Curve <i>D</i>	Radius <i>R</i> (ft.)	DESIGN SPEED (mph)					
		30	40	50	60	65	70
0° 15'	22,918	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC
0° 30'	11,459	NC	NC	NC	RC	RC	RC
0° 45'	7,639	NC	NC	RC	0.023	0.025	0.028
1° 00'	5,730	NC	NC	0.021	0.030	0.033	0.037
1° 30'	3,820	NC	0.021	0.031	0.043	0.048	0.054
2° 00'	2,865	RC	0.028	0.040	0.055	0.062	0.070
2° 30'	2,292	0.021	0.034	0.049	0.067	0.075	0.085
3° 00'	1,910	0.025	0.040	0.057	0.077	0.087	0.096
3° 30'	1,637	0.029	0.046	0.065	0.086	0.095	0.100
4° 00'	1,432	0.033	0.051	0.072	0.093	0.099	Dmax = 3° 30'
5° 00'	1,146	0.040	0.061	0.083	0.098	Dmax = 4° 15'	
6° 00'	955	0.046	0.070	0.092	Dmax = 5° 15'		
7° 00'	819	0.053	0.078	0.098			
8° 00'	16	0.058	0.084	0.100	Dmax = 8° 15'		
9° 00'	637	0.063	0.089				
10° 00'	573	0.068	0.094				
11° 00'	521	0.072	0.097				
12° 00'	477	0.076	0.099				
13° 00'	441	0.080	0.100				
14° 00'	409	0.083	Dmax = 13° 15'				
15° 00'	382	0.089					
16° 00'	358	0.093					
18° 00'	318	0.097					
20° 00'	286	0.099					
22° 00'	260	0.100					
		Dmax = 24° 45'					

NC = Normal Crown ( -0.02 )      RC = Reverse Crown ( +0.02 )

Rates for intermediate *D*'s are to be interpolated

## 2.9 Superelevation

Figure 2.9.1 Superelevation Rate For Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways ( $e_{max} = 0.10$ )



## 2.9 Superelevation

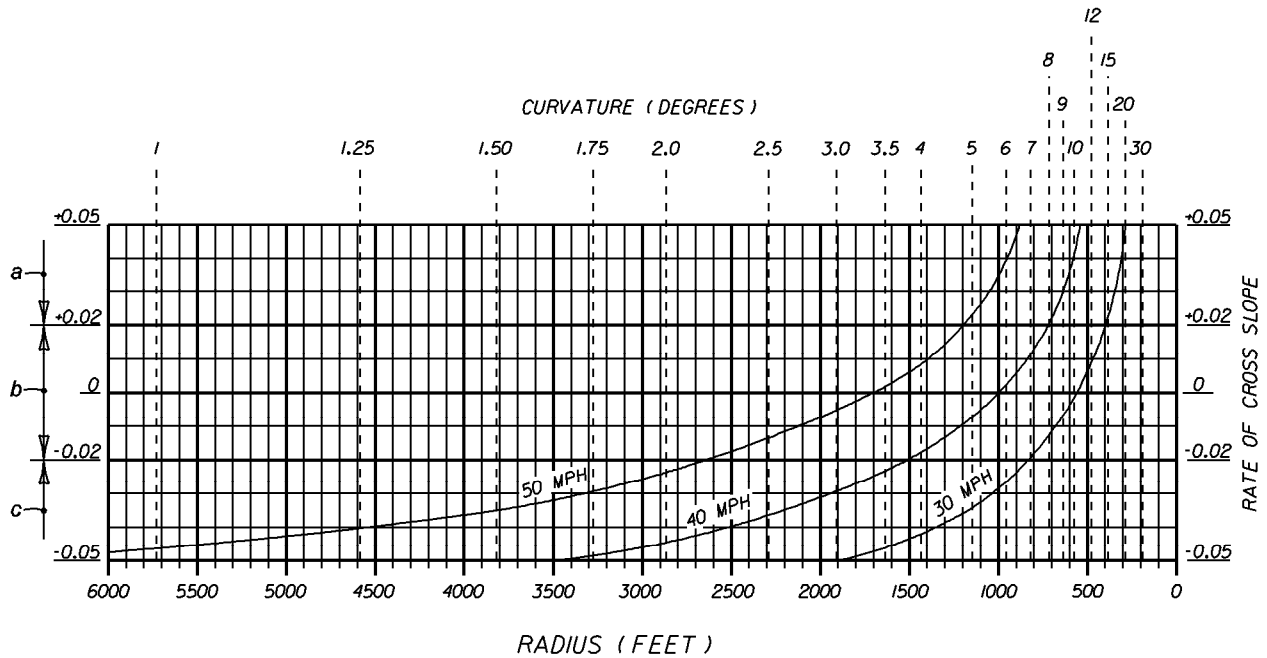
**Table 2.9.2 Superelevation Rates for Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets ( $e_{max} = 0.05$ )**

TABULATED VALUES						
Degree of Curve <i>D</i>	Radius <i>R</i> (ft.)	DESIGN SPEED (mph)				
		30	35	40	45	50
2° 00'	2,865	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC
2° 15'	2,546					RC
2° 45'	2,083				NC	
3° 00'	1,910				RC	
3° 45'	1,528			NC		
4° 00'	1,432			RC		
4° 45'	1,206					RC
5° 00'	1,146		NC			0.023
5° 15'	1,091		RC			0.027
5° 30'	1,042					0.030
5° 45'	996					0.035
6° 00'	955				RC	0.040
6° 15'	917				0.022	0.045
6° 30'	881				0.024	0.050
6° 45'	849				0.027	Dmax = 6° 30'
7° 00'	819	NC			0.030	
7° 15'	790	RC			0.033	
7° 30'	764				0.037	
7° 45'	739				0.041	
8° 00'	716			RC	0.045	
8° 15'	694			0.022	0.050	
8° 30'	674			0.025	Dmax = 8° 15'	
8° 45'	655			0.027		
9° 00'	637			0.030		
9° 30'	603			0.034		
10° 00'	573			0.040		
10° 30'	546		RC	0.047		
11° 00'	521		0.023	Dmax = 10° 45'		
11° 30'	498		0.026			
12° 00'	477		0.030			
13° 00'	441		0.036			
14° 00'	409	RC	0.045			
15° 00'	382	0.023	Dmax = 14° 15'			
16° 00'	358	0.027				
17° 00'	337	0.032				
18° 00'	318	0.038				
19° 00'	302	0.043				
20° 00'	286	.050				
		Dmax = 20° 00'				

NC = Normal Crown ( -0.02 ) RC = Reverse Crown ( +0.02 )

## 2.9 Superelevation

**Figure 2.9.2 Superelevation Rates for Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets ( $e_{max} = 0.05$ )**



- When the speed curves and the degree of curve lines intersect above this line, the pavement is to be superelevated (positive slope) at the rates indicated at the lines intersecting points.
- When the speed curves and the degree of curve lines intersect between these limits, the pavement is to be superelevated at the rate of 0.02 (positive slope).
- When the speed curves and the degree of curve lines intersect below this line, the pavement is to have normal crown (typically 0.02 and 0.03 downward slopes).

### **SUPERELEVATION RATES ( $e$ ) FOR URBAN HIGHWAYS**



## 2.9 Superelevation

**Table 2.9.3 Superelevation Transition Slope Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways**

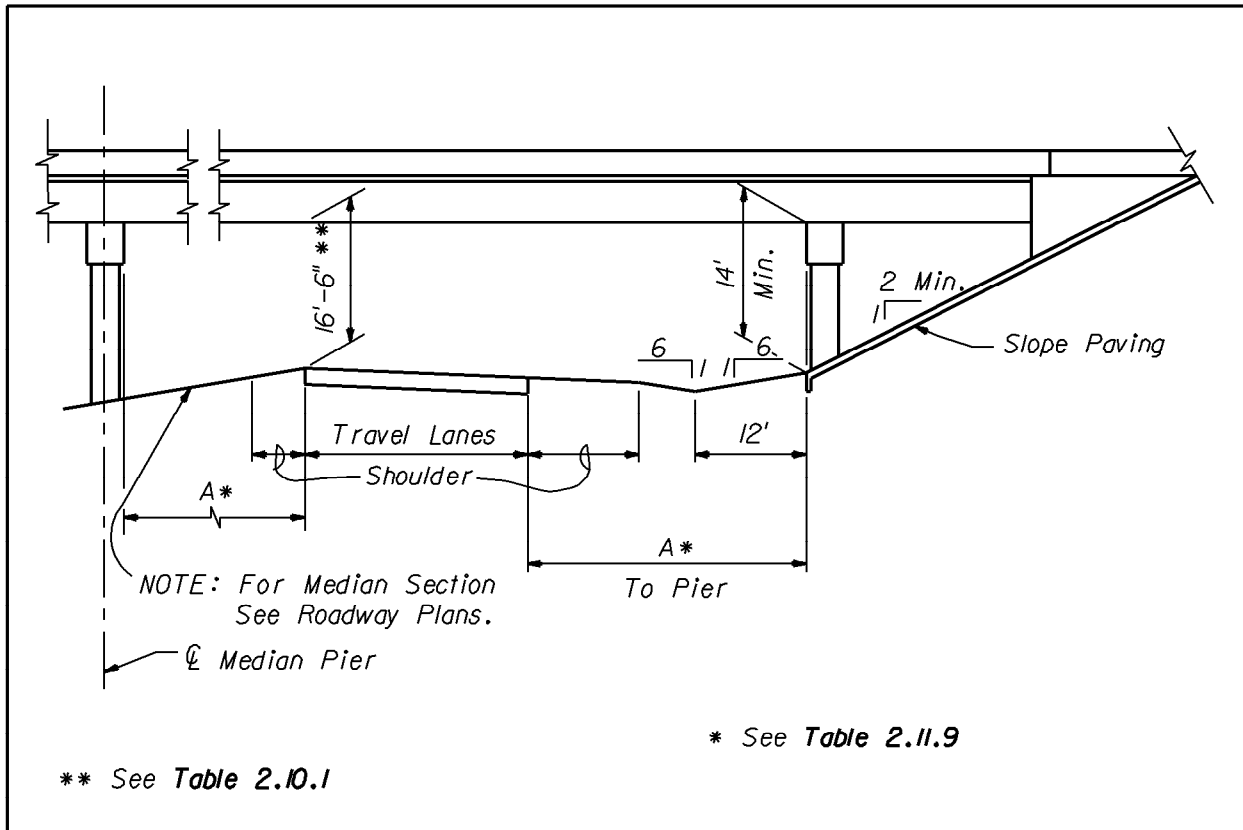
SLOPE RATES FOR STRAIGHT LINE SUPERELEVATION TRANSITIONS			
SECTION	Design Speed (mph)		
	45-50	55-60	65-70
	SLOPE RATES		
2 Lane & 4 Lane	1:200	1:225	1:250
6 Lane	1:160	1:180	1:200
8 Lane	1:150	1:170	1:190
<p>The length of superelevation transition is to be determined by the relative slope rate between the travel way edge of pavement and the profile grade, except that the minimum length of transition shall be 100 feet.</p> <p>For additional information on transitions, see the <i>Design Standards, Index 510</i>.</p>			

**Table 2.9.4 Superelevation Transition Slope Rates for Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets**

SLOPE RATES FOR STRAIGHT LINE SUPERELEVATION TRANSITIONS	
30 mph	1:100
40 mph	1:125
45-50 mph <sub>1</sub>	1:150
<p>1. A slope rate of 1:125 may be used for 45 mph under restricted conditions.</p> <p>The length of superelevation transition is to be determined by the relative slope rate between the travel way edge of pavement and the profile grade, except that the minimum length of transition shall be 50 ft. for design speeds under 40 mph and 75 ft. for design speeds of 40 mph or greater. For additional information on transitions, see the <i>Design Standards, Index 511</i>.</p>	

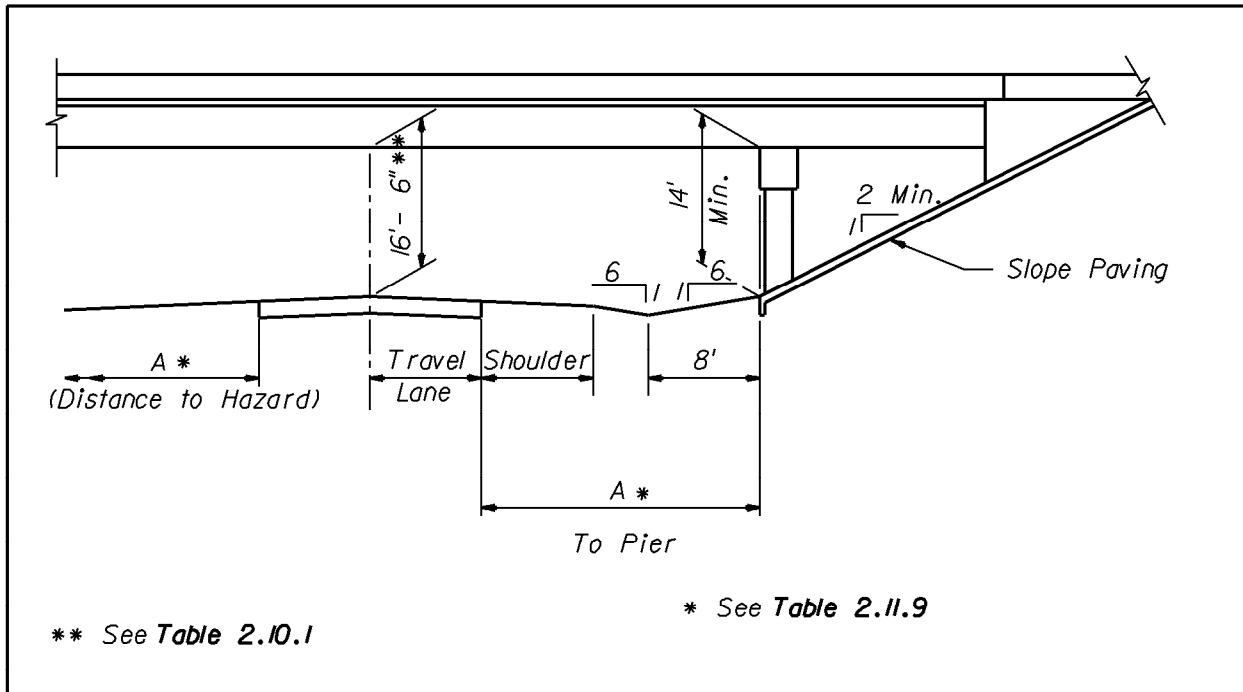
## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

Figure 2.10.1 Clearances – Rural and Urban Interstates (Freeways), Arterials and Collectors, with Projected 20-Year ADT of 1500 or Greater



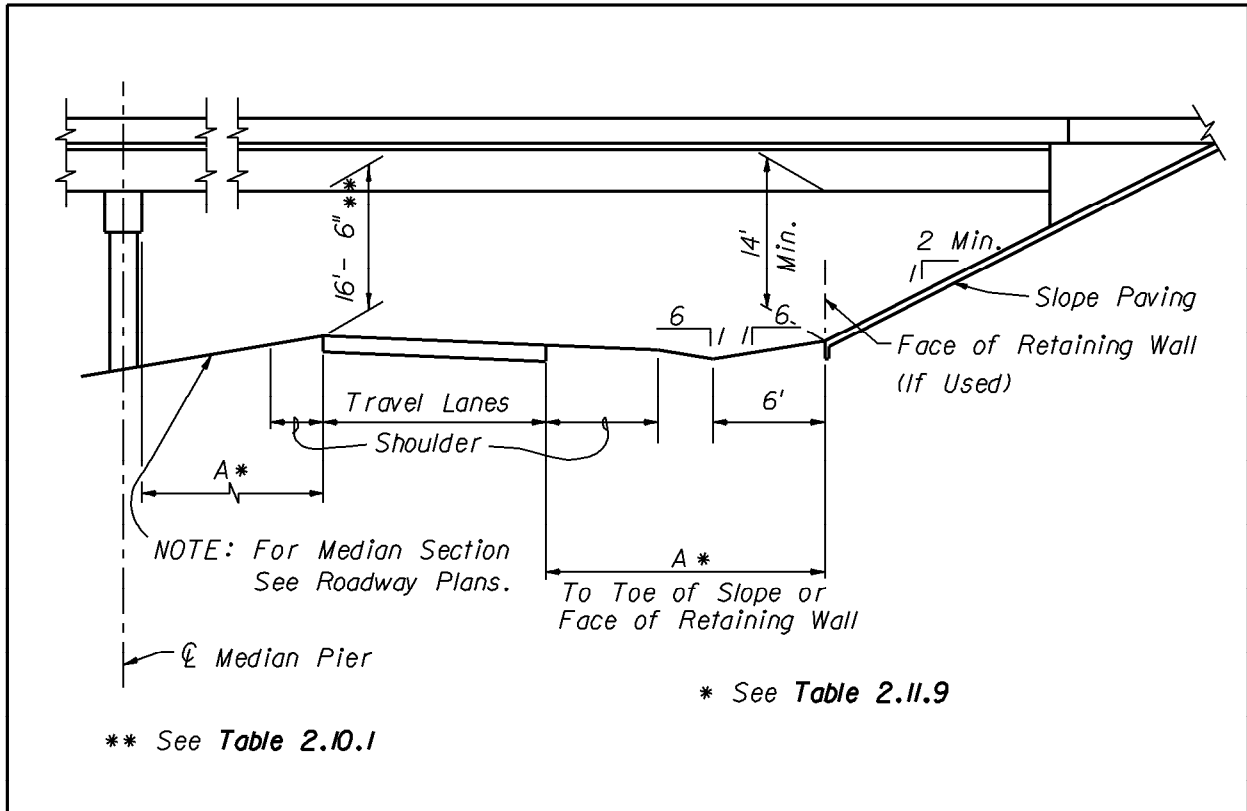
## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

Figure 2.10.2 Clearances – Rural Arterials and Collectors with Projected 20-Year ADT of Less than 1500



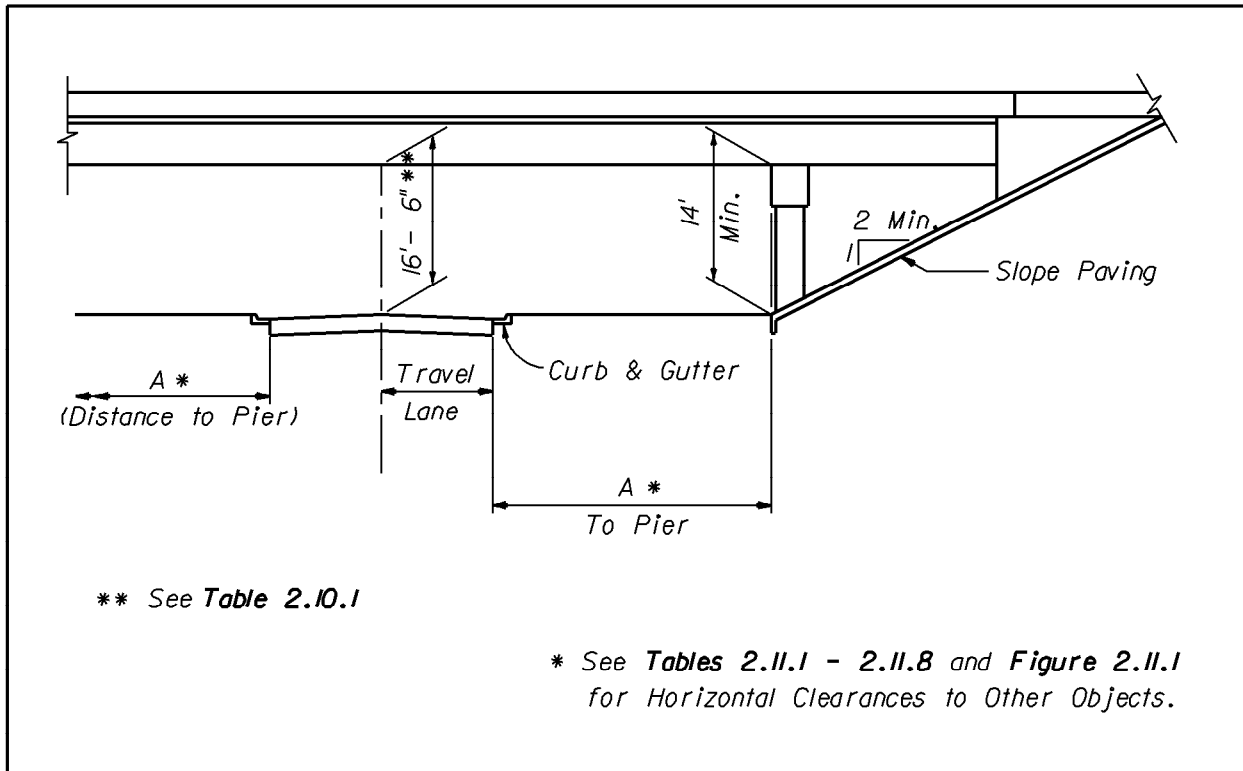
## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

Figure 2.10.3 Clearances – Urban Arterials and Collectors  
(Without Curb and Gutter)



## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

Figure 2.10.4 Clearances – Urban Arterials and Collectors  
(Curb and Gutter)



## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

**Table 2.10.1 Vertical Clearances for Bridges**

FACILITY TYPE	CLEARANCE <sup>1,4,5</sup> (FEET)			
	Roadway or Railroad Over Roadway <sub>2</sub>	Roadway Over Railroad <sub>3,4</sub>	Pedestrian Over Roadway <sub>2</sub>	Pedestrian Over Railroad <sub>3</sub>
Freeways, Arterials Collectors & Others	16'-6"	23'-6"	17'-6"	23'-6"
<p>1. Clearance Measurement:                      The least vertical distance between the bridge structure and the surface of the roadway (traffic lanes and shoulders) or the top of the highest rail.</p> <p>2. Includes Future Underpass Resurfacing:                      6" over pavements.</p> <p>3. Includes Rail Resurfacing (Track Raised):                      12" for conventional railroads.                      Others-see footnote No. 4 and <b>Section 6.3.5</b> of this volume.</p> <p>4. Over High Speed Rail Systems:                      See Department guidelines and specifications for Intermediate Class Rail Operations entitled <b>Standard Specifications for the Design and Construction of Railways</b>.</p> <p>5. Clearance Over Waterways:                      See Department <b>Drainage Manual, Topic No. 625-040-002, Chapter 4</b> and <b>Section 2.10.1</b> of this volume.</p>				

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

**Table 2.10.2 Minimum Vertical Clearances for Signs**

SIGNS	CLEARANCE <sub>1</sub>
<b>Overhead Sign Structures</b>	17'-6" over the entire width of the pavement and shoulder to the lowest sign component.

1. Includes 6" for future resurfacing on rural sections.

**Table 2.10.3 Minimum Vertical Clearances for Signals**

SIGNALS	CLEARANCE <sub>1</sub>
<b>Span Wire Mounted</b>	17'-6" between the pavement and the bottom of any signal assembly.
<b>Mast Arm Mounted</b>	17'-6" over the entire width of the pavement and shoulder to the lowest signal or low point of the arm.
<b>Truss Mounted</b>	17'-6" over the entire width of the pavement and shoulders to the lowest signal or lowest member of the horizontal truss.

1. Includes 6" for future resurfacing on rural sections.

**Table 2.10.4 Minimum Vertical Clearances for Overhead Dynamic Message Signs (DMS)**

SIGNS	CLEARANCE <sub>1</sub>
<b>Overhead DMS Structures</b>	19'-6" over the entire width of the pavement and shoulder to the lowest sign component.

1. Includes 6" for future resurfacing on rural sections.



## 2.10 Vertical Clearance

**Table 2.10.5 FAA Notification Requirements**

<b>FAA Notification Requirements for Construction or Alteration of Structures *</b>	
1.	Any structure more than 200 feet above ground level (AGL) at its site.
2.	Any structure that is near an aviation facility and that penetrates an imaginary obstacle surface extending outward and upward at one of the following criteria: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A slope of 100 to 1 (1 foot upward for each 100 feet outward) for a horizontal distance of 20,000 feet from the nearest point of the nearest military or public-use airport runway that is more than 3,200 feet in length (excludes heliports).</li> <li>b. A slope of 50 to 1 (1 foot upward for each 50 feet outward) for a horizontal distance of 10,000 feet from the nearest point of the nearest military or public-use airport runway no more than 3,200 feet in length (excludes heliports).</li> <li>c. A slope of 25 to 1 (1 foot upward for each 25 feet outward) for a horizontal distance of 10,000 feet from the nearest point of the nearest military or public-use heliport landing and takeoff area.</li> </ul>
3.	Any highway, railroad, or other traverse way for mobile objects, of a height which, if adjusted upward by the amount shown below, would exceed a standard of paragraph 1 or 2 above: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. An adjusted height of 17 feet for an Interstate Highway that is part of the National System of Military and Interstate Highways where over-crossings are designed for a minimum of 17 feet vertical distance.</li> <li>b. An adjusted height of 15 feet for any other public roadway.</li> <li>c. An adjusted height of 10 feet or the height of the highest mobile object that would normally traverse the road, whichever is greater, for a private road.</li> <li>d. An adjusted height of 23 feet for a railroad.</li> <li>e. An adjusted height equal to the height of the highest mobile object that would normally traverse it, for a waterway or traverse way not previously mentioned.</li> </ul>
4.	Any structure located directly on a public-use aviation facility property, including any facility that is currently existing, planned, proposed, or under construction.
5.	Any structure that is located in an instrument approach area and available information indicates it might exceed federal obstruction standards, if specifically requested by the FAA.
<p>* Note: Structures may include:                      Highways, roads, railroads, waterways, traverseways (parking or rest areas), bridges, overpasses, high-mast light poles, utility poles, antenna towers, buildings, signs or billboards, fences, or gates, plus temporary-use construction materials or equipment, including dirt piles and cranes, as well as natural growth, vegetation, and landscaping, depending on location in proximity to an aviation facility, navigational aid, or instrument procedure ground track.</p>	

## 2.11 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone

**Table 2.11.1 Horizontal Clearance for Traffic Control Signs**

<b>PLACEMENT</b>	Placement shall be in accordance with the <i>Design Standards</i> . Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4 ft. or more (not including the width of curb) is provided.
<b>SUPPORTS</b>	Supports, except overhead sign supports, shall be frangible or breakaway. When practicable, sign supports should be located behind barriers that are justified for other reasons. Overhead sign supports shall be located outside the clear zone unless shielded.

**Table 2.11.2 Horizontal Clearance for Light Poles**

<b>CONVENTIONAL LIGHTING</b>	Not in the median except in conjunction with barriers that are justified for other reasons.  Rural (Flush Shoulders): 20 ft. from the travel lane, 14 ft. from auxiliary lane (may be clear zone width when clear zone is less than 20 ft.).  Urban (Curb and Gutter): From right of way line to 4 ft. back of face of curb (may be 2.5 ft. back of face of curb when all other alternatives are deemed impractical). Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4 ft. or more (not including the width of curb) is provided.
<b>HIGHMAST LIGHTING</b>	Outside of the clear zone unless shielded.

**Table 2.11.3 Horizontal Clearance for Utility Installations**

<p>Shall not be located within the limited access right of way, except as allowed by the <i>Telecommunications Policy, (Topic No. 000-625-025)</i>.                  Shall not be located in the median.</p> <p>Flush Shoulders:                  Not within the clear zone. Install as close as practical to the right of way without aerial encroachments onto private property.</p> <p>Curb or Curb and Gutter:                  At the R/W line or as close to the R/W line as practical. Must maintain 4 ft. clear from face of curb. Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4 ft. or more (not including the width of the curb) is provided.</p> <p>See the <i>Utility Accommodation Manual, (Topic No. 710-020-001)</i> for additional information.</p>
---

## 2.11 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone

**Table 2.11.4 Horizontal Clearance to Signal Poles  
and Controller Cabinets for Signals**

Shall not be located in medians

Flush Shoulders:  
Outside the clear zone.

Curb or Curb and Gutter:  
4 ft. from face of outside curbs and outside the sidewalk. However, when necessary, the Signal Poles may be located within sidewalks such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4 ft. or more (not including the width of curb) is provided.

**Table 2.11.5 Horizontal Clearance to Trees**

Minimum Horizontal Clearance to trees where the diameter is or is expected to be greater than 4 inches measured 6 inches above the ground shall be:

Flush Shoulders:  
Outside the clear zone.

Curb or Curb and Gutter:  
4 ft. from face of outside curbs.  
6 ft. from edge of inside traffic lane where median curb is present.

**Table 2.11.6 Horizontal Clearance to Bridge Piers and Abutments**

Minimum Horizontal Clearance to Bridge Piers and Abutments:

Flush Shoulders:  
Outside the clear zone.

Curb or Curb and Gutter:  
16 ft. from the edge of the travel lane.

**Table 2.11.7 Horizontal Clearance to Railroad Grade Crossing  
Traffic Control Devices**

Placement shall be in accordance with the *Design Standards*.

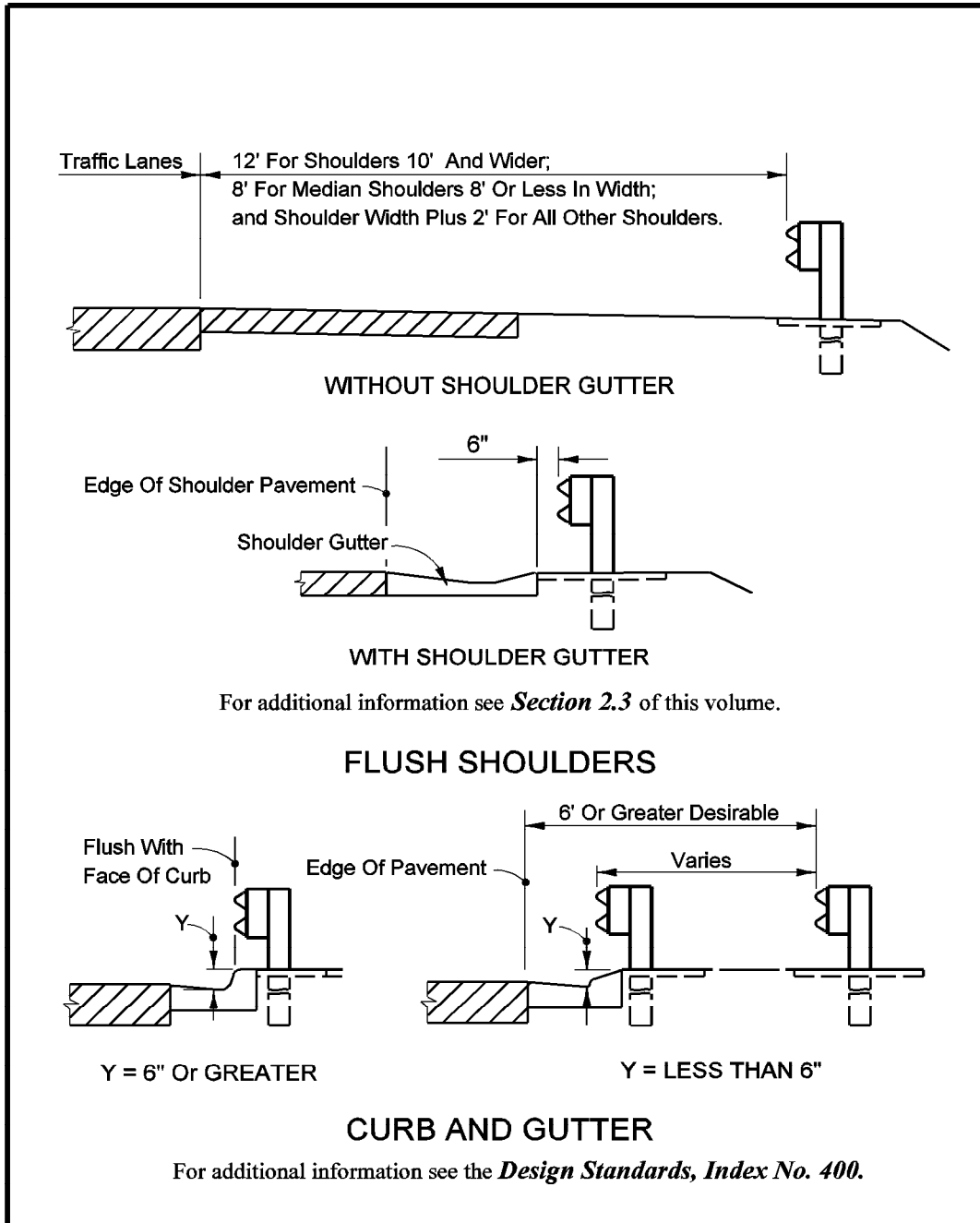
## 2.11 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone

**Table 2.11.8 Horizontal Clearance to Other Roadside Obstacles**

Minimum Horizontal Clearance to other roadside obstacles:	
Flush Shoulders:	Outside the clear zone.
Curb or Curb and Gutter:	4 ft. back of face of curb. May be 2.5 ft. back of face of curb when all other alternatives are deemed impractical.
Note:	Horizontal Clearance to mailboxes is specified in the construction details contained in the <b><i>Design Standards, Index No. 532.</i></b>

## 2.11 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone

Figure 2.11.1 Horizontal Clearance to Guardrail

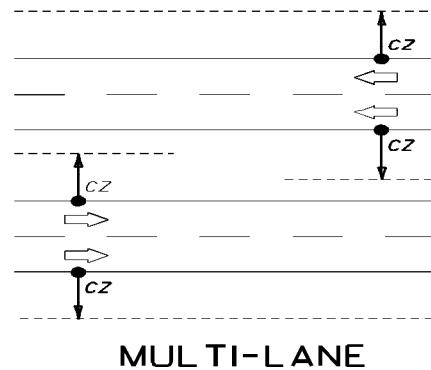
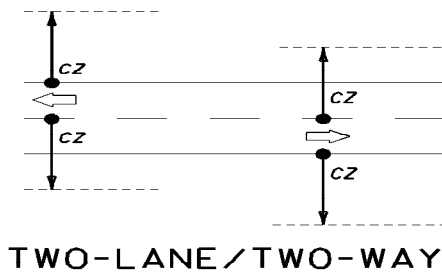


## 2.11 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zone

Table 2.11.9 Clear Zone Widths

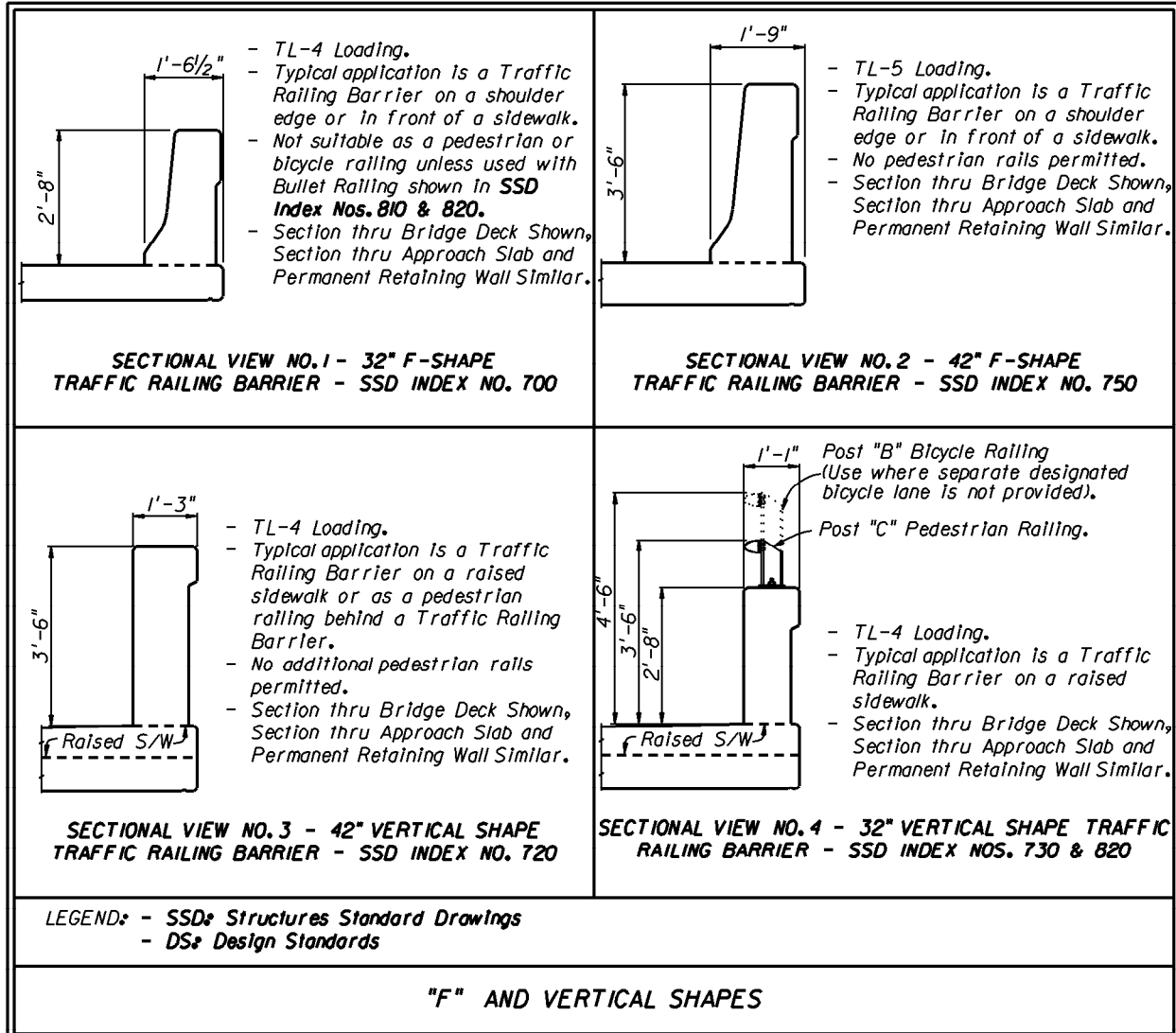
CLEAR ZONE WIDTH (FEET)				
DESIGN SPEED (mph)	≥ 1500 AADT		< 1500 AADT	
	TRAVEL LANES & MULTI-LANE RAMPS	AUXILIARY LANES & SINGLE LANE RAMPS	TRAVEL LANES & MULTI-LANE RAMPS	AUXILIARY LANES & SINGLE LANE RAMPS
< 45	18	10	16	10
45	24	14	20	14
50	24	14	20	14
55	30	18	24	14
> 55	36	24	30	18

Above clear zone widths are for side slopes of 1:4 or flatter.  
 AADT=Mainline 20 years projected annual average daily traffic.



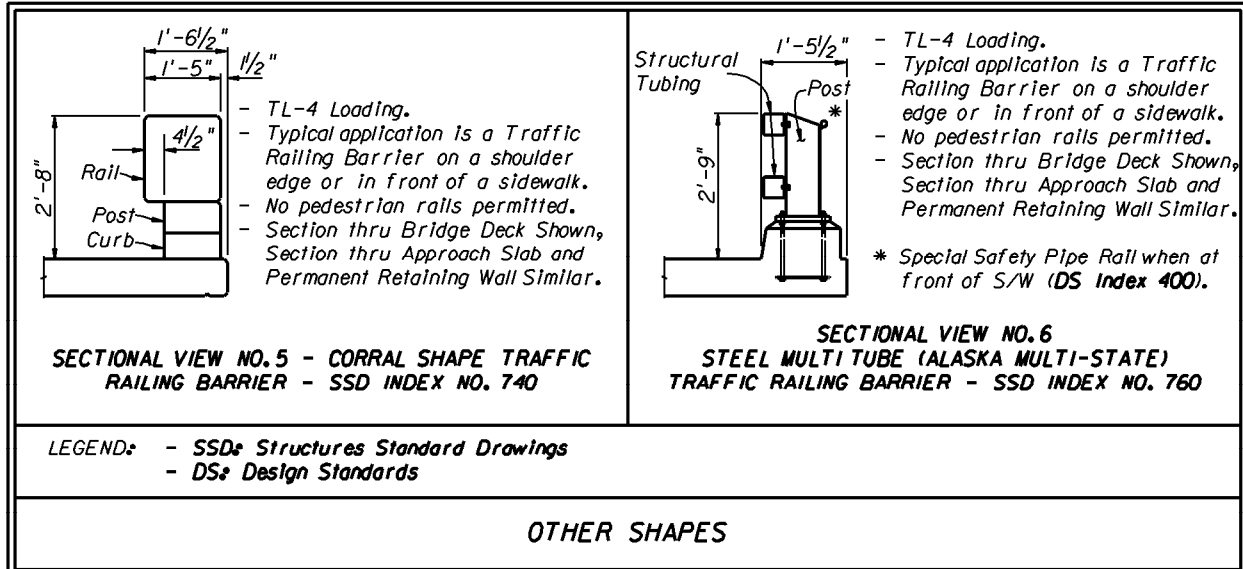
## 2.12 Bridge Railings and Separators

Figure 2.12.1 Bridge Traffic Railings – "F" and Vertical Shapes



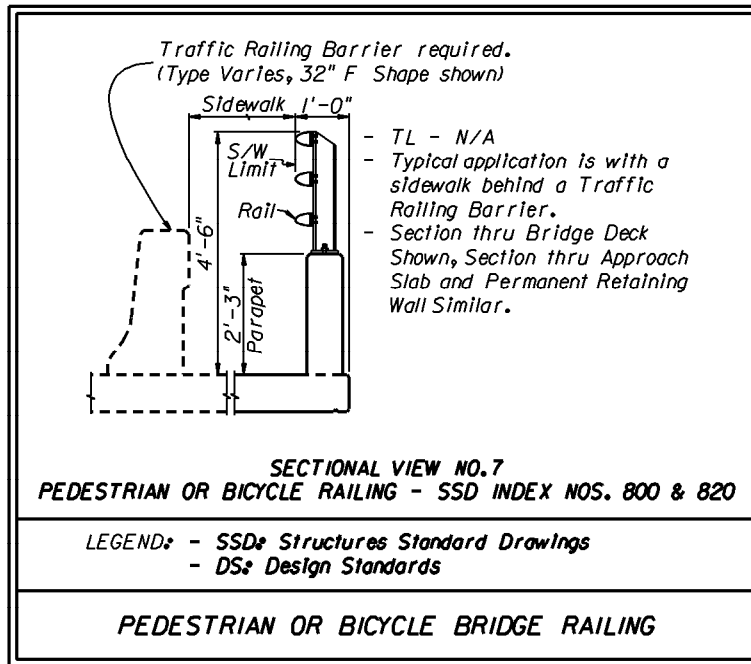
## 2.12 Bridge Railings and Separators

Figure 2.12.2 Bridge Traffic Railings – Other Shapes



**NOTE:** The steel multi tube railing barrier is only to be used when approved by the District Structures Design Engineer and the District Maintenance Engineer.

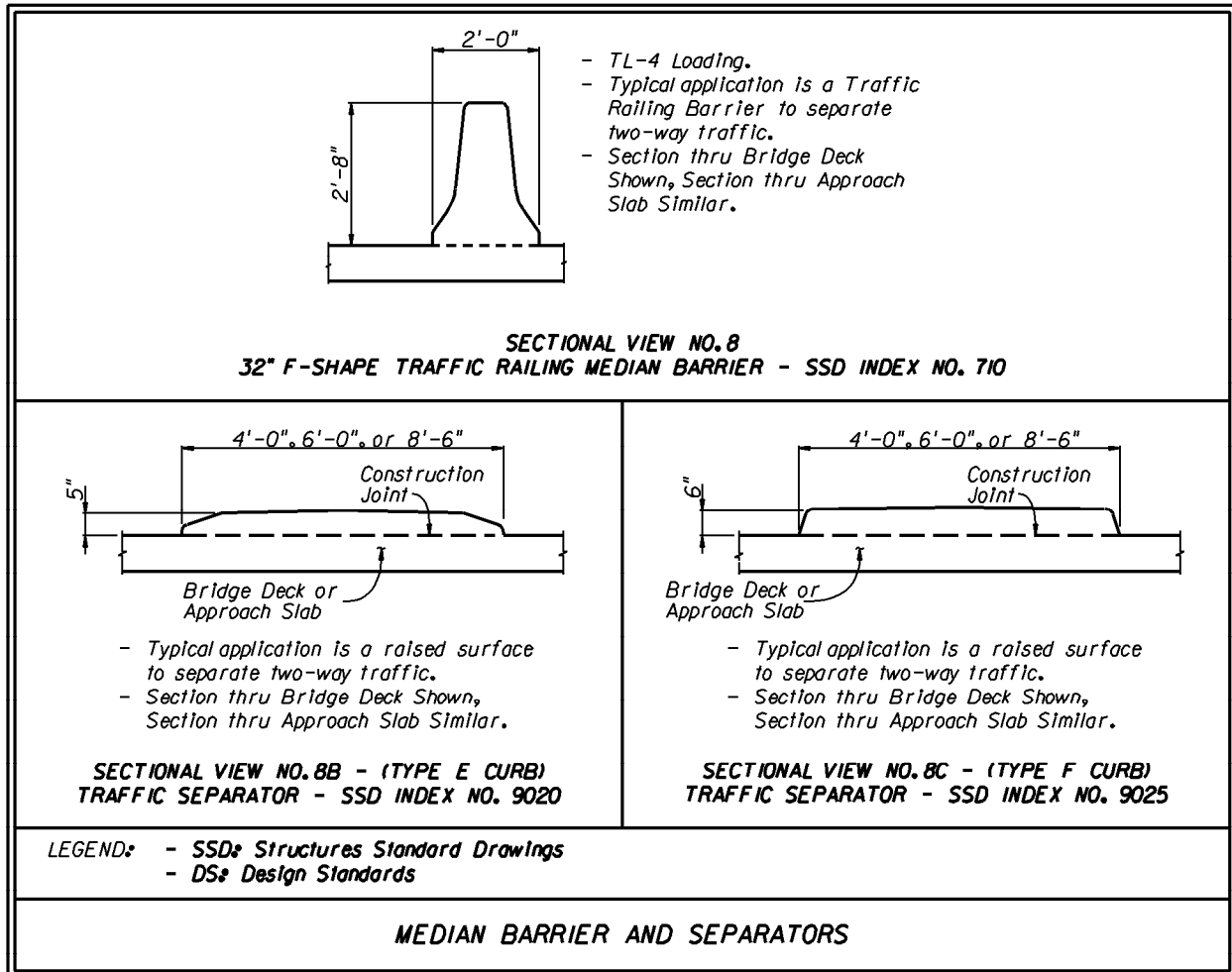
Figure 2.12.3 Bridge Railing – Pedestrian or Bicycle Bridge Railing





## 2.12 Bridge Railings and Separators

Figure 2.12.4 Bridge Railing and Separators – Median Barrier and Separators



## 2.13 (Reserved)

## 2.14 Interchanges

**Table 2.14.1 Ramp Widths - Turning Roadways**

RAMP WIDTHS			
RADIUS To Inside of Curve (FEET)	1-LANE		2-LANE
	Traveled Way Width <sub>1</sub>  Case I-C <sub>2</sub>  One-lane, one-way operation – no provision for passing a stalled vehicle	Traveled Way Width + Outside Paved Shoulder Width Case II-B <sub>2</sub>  One-lane, one-way operation – with provision for passing a stalled vehicle	Traveled Way Width <sub>1</sub>  Case III-A <sub>2</sub>  Two-lane operation – either one-way or two-way
FEET			
50	23	26	29
75	20	23	27
100	18	22	26
150	17	21	24
200	16	20	24
300	15	20	24
400	15	19	24
≥ 500	15	19	24

For widths on the ramp proper see **Table 2.1.3**.

For case application, see **AASHTO** and the **Design Standards, Index 525**.

1. Do not deduct for the presence of stabilized or paved shoulder.
2. Note: A = Predominantly P vehicles, but some consideration for SU trucks.  
 B = Sufficient SU vehicles to govern design, but some consideration for semitrailer combination trucks.  
 C = Sufficient bus and combination trucks to govern design.

## 2.15 Lighting Criteria

**Table 2.15.1 Conventional Lighting - Roadways**

ROADWAY CLASSIFICATIONS	ILLUMINATION LEVEL AVERAGE INITIAL (H.F.C.)	UNIFORMITY RATIOS	
		AVG./MIN.	MAX./MIN.
INTERSTATE, EXPRESSWAY, FREEWAY & MAJOR ARTERIALS	1.5	4:1 or Less	10:1 or Less
ALL OTHER ROADWAYS	1.0	4:1 or Less	10:1 or Less
* PEDESTRIAN WAYS AND BICYCLE LANES	2.5	4:1 or Less	10:1 or Less

**Note:** These values should be considered standard, but should be increased if necessary to maintain an acceptable uniformity ratio. The maximum value should be one and one-half values.

\* This assumes a separate facility. Facilities adjacent to a vehicular roadway should use the levels for that roadway.

**Table 2.15.2 Highmast Lighting - Roadways**

ROADWAY CLASSIFICATIONS	ILLUMINATION LEVEL AVERAGE INITIAL (H.F.C.)	UNIFORMITY RATIOS	
		AVG./MIN.	MAX./MIN.
INTERSTATE, EXPRESSWAY, FREEWAY & MAJOR ARTERIALS	0.8 to 1.0	3:1 or Less	10:1 or Less
ALL OTHER ROADWAYS	0.8 to 1.0	3:1 or Less	10:1 or Less

**Table 2.15.3 Underdeck Lighting - Roadways**

LUMINAIRE TYPE	LIGHT SOURCE	MOUNTING LOCATION
PIER CAP	150 watt to 250 watt HPS	Pier or Pier Cap
PENDANT HUNG	150 watt to 250 watt HPS	Bridge Deck

**Note:**

1. The light levels for underdeck lighting shall be equal to the adjacent roadway lighting.
2. Underdeck lighting is accomplished by mounting either pier cap or pendant hung fixtures under the bridge structure.
3. Pier cap luminaires should be installed when bridge piers are located less than 15 ft. from edge of travel lane.
4. Pendant hung luminaires shall be mounted to the bottom of the bridge deck and should suspend where 50% of the lamp is below bridge beam.

## 2.15 Lighting Criteria

**Table 2.15.4 Rest Area Lighting**

AREA ILLUMINATED	ILLUMINATION LEVEL AVERAGE INITIAL (H.F.C.)	UNIFORMITY RATIOS	
		AVG./MIN	MAX./MIN.
ENTRANCE & EXIT	1.5	4:1 or Less	10:1 or Less
INTERIOR ROADWAYS	1.5	4:1 or Less	10:1 or Less
PARKING AREAS	1.5	4:1 or Less	10:1 or Less

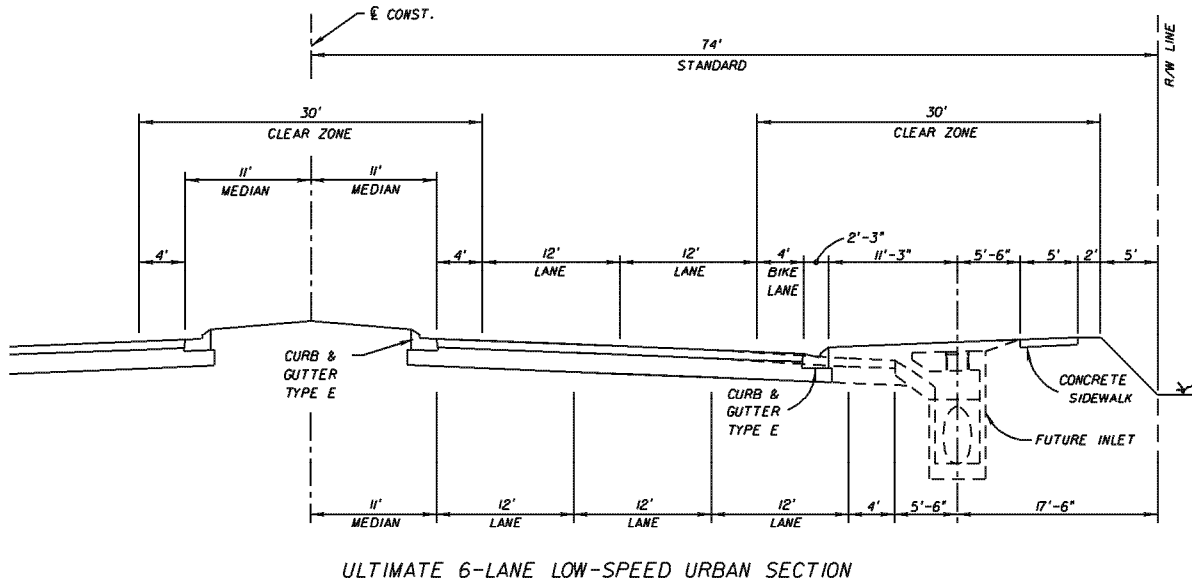
**Table 2.15.5 Mounting Height Restrictions**

LUMINAIRE WATTAGE	LIGHT SOURCE	MOUNTING HEIGHT (MIN) (FEET)
150	High Pressure Sodium (HPS)	25
200	High Pressure Sodium (HPS)	30
250	High Pressure Sodium (HPS)	30
400	High Pressure Sodium (HPS)	40
750	High Pressure Sodium (HPS)	50
1000	High Pressure Sodium (HPS)	80

## 2.16 Four-Lane High-Speed Suburban Arterial Highways

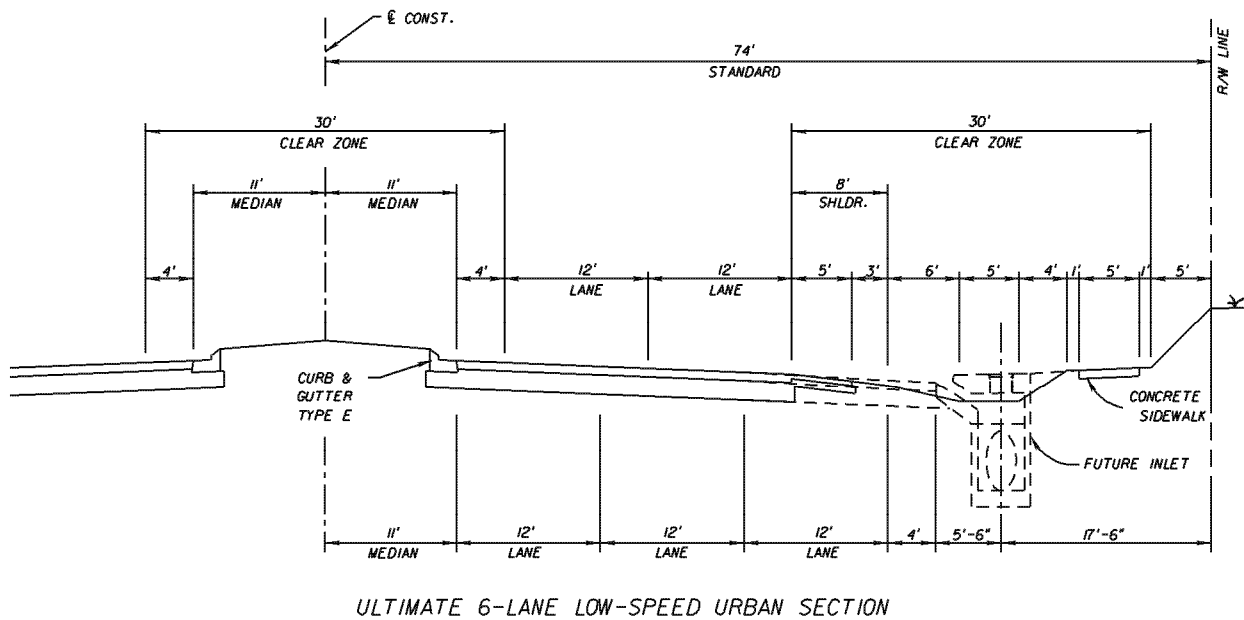
**Figure 2.16.1 Curb and Gutter Section**

4-LANE HIGH-SPEED SUBURBAN SECTION



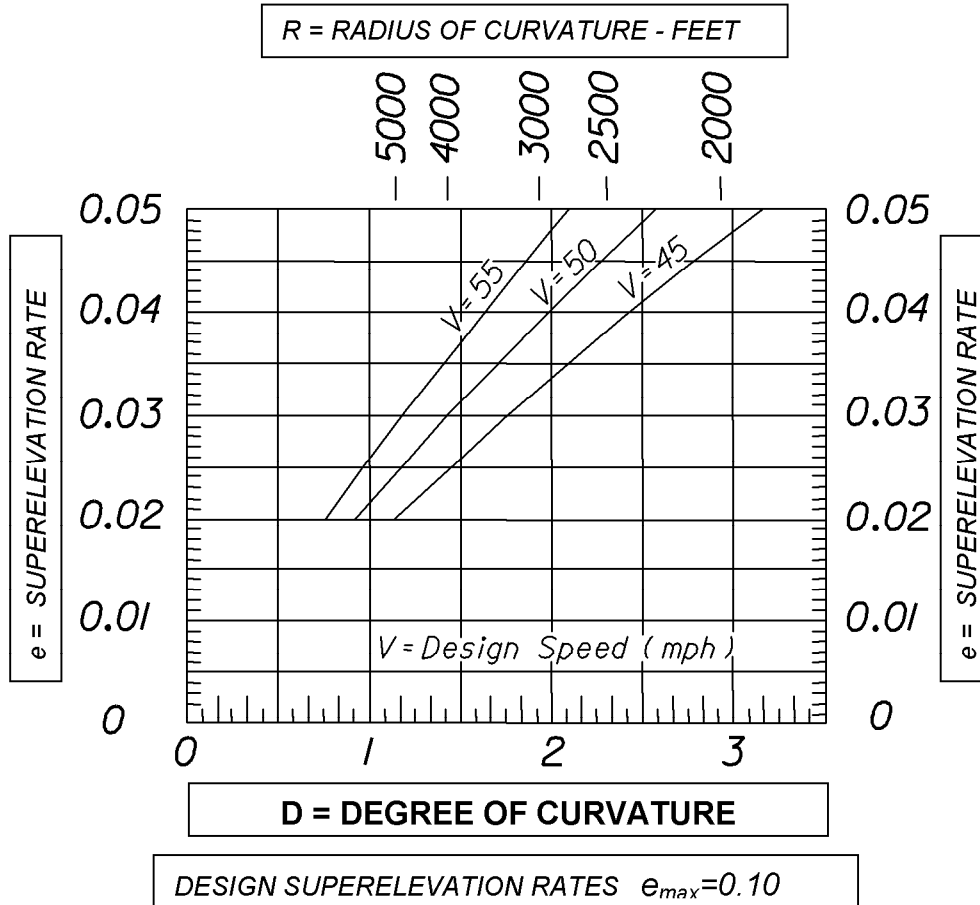
**Figure 2.16.2 Flush Shoulder Section**

4-LANE HIGH-SPEED SUBURBAN SECTION



## 2.16 Four-Lane High-Speed Suburban Arterial Highways

Figure 2.16.3 Superlevation Rates for Suburban Sections



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 3

### Earthwork

3.1	General Introduction .....	3-1
3.1.1	General.....	3-2
3.2	Classification of Soils .....	3-4
3.3	Cross Sections - A Design Tool.....	3-5
3.4	Earthwork Quantities .....	3-7
3.4.1	Method of Calculating.....	3-7
3.4.2	Earthwork Tabulation .....	3-7
3.4.3	Earthwork Accuracy .....	3-8
3.4.3.1	Projects With Horizontal and Vertical Controlled Cross Sections.....	3-8
3.4.3.2	Projects Without Horizontal and Vertical Controlled Cross Sections.....	3-9
3.4.4	Variation in Quantities .....	3-9
3.5	Earthwork Items of Payment .....	3-10
3.5.1	Guidelines for Selecting Earthwork Pay Items .....	3-10
3.5.2	Regular Excavation .....	3-11
3.5.3	Embankment .....	3-12
3.5.4	Subsoil Excavation .....	3-12
3.5.5	Lateral Ditch Excavation.....	3-12
3.5.6	Channel Excavation .....	3-13
3.5.7	Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure) .....	3-13
3.5.8	Regular Excavation (RRR Projects Only)- Lump Sum.....	3-14
3.5.9	Summary of Earthwork.....	3-15



## Tables

Table 3.5.1	Guidelines for Selecting Earthwork Pay Items .....	3-10
-------------	--	------

## Figures

Figure 3.1.1	Cut and Fill Limits (With and Without Subsoil Excavation).....	3-3
Figure 3.4.1	Format for the Tabulation of Earthwork Quantities.....	3-7
Figure 3.5.1	Pond Template .....	3-11

## Exhibits

Exhibit 3-A	Fill and Truck Adjustments .....	3-14
Exhibit 3-B	Summary of Earthwork Box (Projects With Cross Sections).....	3-15
Exhibit 3-C	Summary of Earthwork Box (Projects With Limited or No Cross Sections) .....	3-16

## Chapter 3

# Earthwork

### 3.1 General Introduction

The Department is changing its philosophy on several issues that involve earthwork. This chapter has been completely rewritten to include the changes that will simplify how the department addresses earthwork on a project. This introduction, highlighting the changes, has been included in the manual to summarize the changes at a glance. Complete review of this chapter is recommended prior to plans preparation utilizing earthwork on a project.

#### Summary of Major Changes to Earthwork

1. Pay for all Cut Operations as Regular Excavation (CY) or Regular Excavation (Lump Sum). Do not differentiate between suitable and unsuitable.
2. Pay for all Fill Operations as Embankment or Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure).
3. Permanently Block the Pay Item for Borrow Excavation (Pit Measure).
4. Pay for all material excavated below the finished grading template as Subsoil Excavation. Do not differentiate between suitable and unsuitable.
5. Pay for subsoil excavation and backfill will be separate using the English method. **This will be implemented on all metric projects effective with the July 2000 Letting.**
6. When quantities are large, pay for Lateral Ditch and/or Channel Excavation separately.
7. When calculating the quantity of Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure) does not subtract the quantity of Regular Excavation on the project.
8. Show soil survey borings on the Cross Section Sheets. Do not show limit lines **except** the lower limits of the removal of organic and/or plastic material to determine the quantities of subsoil excavation.
9. Revise the Earthwork Column format on the Cross Section Sheets. Show Subsoil Exc. - Regular Exc. - Embankment on the right side. Do not create columns for material classification. There will be no earthwork columns on the left side.
10. Identify Pond Excavation Limits and guidance in the PPM.
11. Material utilization will be left up to the Contractor. Adjusting quantities of material to compensate for Traffic Control or Sequence Phasing is no longer required.

### 3.1.1 General

Earthwork is a generic term for all items of work, materials and operations required to construct the excavated areas and the embankments of a project. **Standard Specifications, Sections 120 and 125** define the terms, method of measure, basis of payment and pay items associated with earthwork.

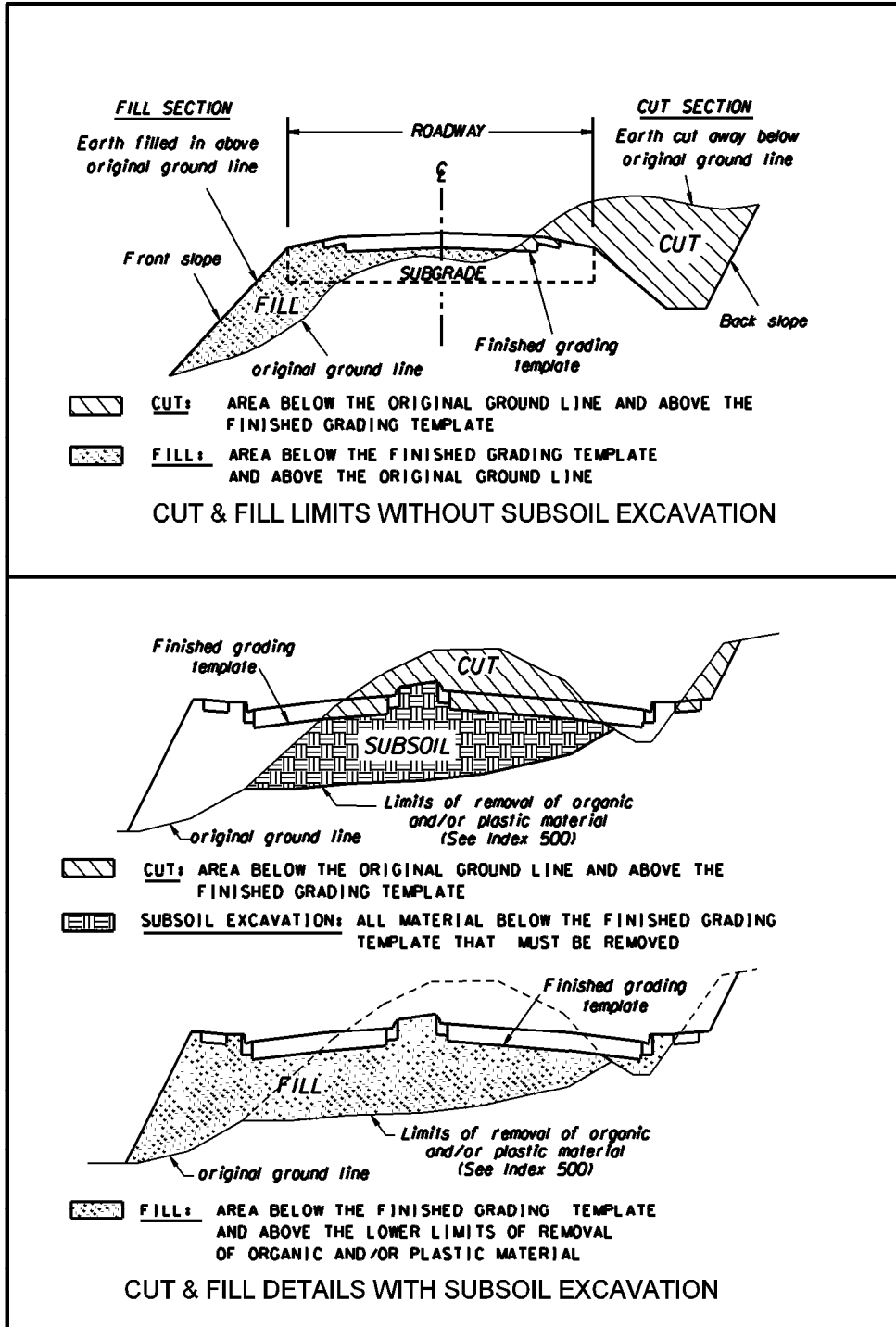
In general, earthwork on a highway project consists of:

<b>Embankment</b>	Compacted fill material needed to construct the roadway, excluding the base and pavement portions of the roadway and shoulders.
<b>Regular Excavation</b>	Excavation necessary for the construction of the roadway, ditches, ponds, channel changes, etc.
<b>Subsoil Excavation</b>	Excavation, removal and disposal of any material that is unsuitable in its original position and that is excavated below the finished grading template.

The most important roadway operation involving earthwork is constructing the roadbed. The roadbed is constructed by excavating soil from cut sections and placing soil as embankments in fill sections. In cut sections, the roadbed is built below the original ground - the original ground is excavated to the elevation of the proposed roadbed. In fill sections, the roadbed is built above the original ground - the earth fill is on an embankment.

The finished grading template is defined as the finished shoulder and slope lines and bottom of the completed base or rigid pavement for most pavements. The Department occasionally uses stabilized bases and sand bituminous road mixes. For these, consider the finished grading template as the top of the finished base, shoulders and slopes.

**Figure 3.1.1 Cut and Fill Limits (With and Without Subsoil Excavation)**



See the Design Standards, Indexes 500 and 505

## 3.2 Classification of Soils

The Department uses a system of soil classification that places materials into groups and subgroups based on soil fraction, liquid limit and plasticity index. This classification determines if and where the materials may be placed or left in their original position on a project. The soils survey, testing and classification of materials must be performed by a qualified geotechnical laboratory. The plans will include the information about the soil classification on the soil survey sheet and by showing the boring data soil boxes on the cross section sheets. If it is determined that an organic or plastic material must be removed below the finished grading template, the lower limits of removal of organic or plastic material will be shown to determine the area and volume of subsoil excavation. For more details, see **Volume II** and the **Design Standards, Index 505**.

### 3.3 Cross Sections - A Design Tool

The details of cut and fill of earthwork are shown on the cross sections. The cross sections of the existing surface are usually obtained by location field survey or photogrammetry. The finished profile grades, typical section details, pavement design details, superelevation and horizontal alignments are used in combination to develop the finished template at each location where an existing cross section was obtained or generated. Sometimes it is advisable to develop and plot intermediate cross sections or half-sections to accurately determine quantities.

Cross sections cannot be finalized until late in the design process. However, preliminary cross section templates, developed early in the design process, can assist the designer in establishing many of the other design elements such as guardrail, shoulder gutter, inlets and special ditch grades. Preliminary cross sections are also used in performing the Soils Survey. Cross section templates should be plotted as soon as the alignment, grades and typical section details are established.

The interval selected for showing cross sections in the plans will vary according to project specific factors. For guidance see **Volume II, Section 18.3**.

For resurfacing and minor widening and resurfacing projects, see **Section 3.5.8** of this chapter.

Additional criteria used for plotting the earthwork details are found in the **Standard Specifications, Section 120**; the **Design Standards, Indexes 500 and 505**; and **Volume II** of this manual.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

### 3.4 Earthwork Quantities

#### 3.4.1 Method of Calculating

Earthwork quantities can be accurately determined by computer or by manual calculation, if proper care is taken. Therefore, the specifications allow it to be designated for payment as the original plan quantity unless determined to be substantially in error. Earthwork quantities are calculated by the method of average end areas:

$$\text{CUBIC YARDS} = \frac{\text{EA1} + \text{EA2} \times \text{LENGTH}}{2}$$

Each set of end areas for the different types of earthwork (subsoil excavation, regular excavation and embankment) are calculated separately and shown in the appropriate column on the cross section sheets, as indicated in *Volume II* of this manual.

#### 3.4.2 Earthwork Tabulation

Areas and volume for subsoil excavation, regular excavation and embankment are tabulated on the right hand side of the cross section sheet. The designer must be familiar with the control lines for earthwork operations in order to properly delineate and calculate earthwork quantities.

**Figure 3.4.1 Format for the Tabulation of Earthwork Quantities**

(Show the appropriate tabulation on the right side of the sheet)

Projects With Limited or No Cross Sections	Projects With Cross Sections					
See Example in <i>Section 3.5.7</i> of this chapter.	SUBSOIL EXC.		REGULAR EXC.		EMBK.	
	A	V	A	V	A	V



### **3.4.3 Earthwork Accuracy**

There are two methods of documenting the earthwork quantities for projects. The most accurate and preferred method involves the preparation of cross sections to define the quantities of earthwork involved. This method is mandatory on all new construction and major reconstruction projects. The other method, using working typical sections, is only to be used on RRR type projects where it has been determined that the project is a candidate for payment by Regular Excavation, Lump Sum. It is critical that the designer choose which method is best suited for their project with input from construction.

The calculation of earthwork volumes is not simple but, when performed with care and properly checked, many of the inaccuracies common in earthwork quantity calculations can be avoided. The primary causes for inaccurate earthwork quantities are found to be errors in calculating end areas and choosing inappropriate intervals between the cross sections. Correct methods and techniques for computing earthwork quantities will eliminate the gross errors.

#### **3.4.3.1 Projects With Horizontal and Vertical Controlled Cross Sections**

1. Calculate end areas and volumes by computer, when possible, and print the calculations for verification and future use by others.
2. Plot cross section details at the largest scale the sheets will permit. Care should also be taken when plotting slopes that extend over long distances.
3. If end areas are calculated from cross sections manually, show the breakdown of areas, etc. on work sheets and include these as backup in the computation book.
4. When computing volumes, determine lengths between sets of end areas to compensate for volumes that do not run the entire lengths between the normal station lengths.
5. Properly use match lines and turning lines to divide end areas when separate lengths should be used to calculate volumes.
6. Reduce the interval between cross sections to 25 feet or less on ramps or sharp turning roadways, or determine and use the centroid of the section as the length for computing volumes.
7. Exclude bridge spans, large culverts or other exceptions where earthwork is not required.

8. Include quantities for fill slopes under bridges, at guardrail installations and at culvert extensions. Show extended shoulder slope on cross sections at guardrail locations (not steeper than 1:10 per the *Design Standards, Index 400*).
9. Make sure that the fill for all subsoil excavation is included in either the embankment or borrow excavation (truck measure) quantities.

### **3.4.3.2 Projects Without Horizontal and Vertical Controlled Cross Sections**

1. Include working typical cross sections in the computation book at all locations where there is a change in either the existing or proposed templates.
2. Working typicals should include the station limits of the typical, and the end areas of all cut and fill sections. Working typicals may be placed in the plans, but are not required.
3. The thickness of the base box is calculated on the most probable base option. A plan note should also be shown in the plans stating which option was used for calculating the earthwork quantities.
4. Extra fill material needed for the extended shoulder for guardrail placement should be documented in the computation book with the final quantity being tabulated on the summary of earthwork. The quantity should be based on working typical sections showing the extended shoulder slope on cross sections at guardrail locations (not steeper than 1:10 per the *Design Standards, Index 400*).

### **3.4.4 Variation in Quantities**

When detailing and determining earthwork quantities, the designer shall use the most probable base option within the optional base group. A plan note should also be shown in the plans stating which option was used for plotting the cross sections and calculating the earthwork quantities. The Specifications do not allow adjustment of the earthwork quantities that were designated to be paid as plan quantity because a base of different depth was chosen during construction.

### 3.5 Earthwork Items of Payment

#### 3.5.1 Guidelines for Selecting Earthwork Pay Items

**Table 3.5.1 Guidelines for Selecting Earthwork Pay Items**

Description		Control Lines	Recommended Pay Item	
			Projects with Cross Sections	Projects with Limited or No Cross Sections
Earthwork operations <b>above</b> the original ground line and <b>below</b> the finished grading template	Fill	from original ground to the finished grading template	Embankment (CY)	Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure) (CY)
Earthwork operations <b>below</b> the original ground line and <b>above</b> the finished grading template	Cut	from original ground to the finished grading template	Regular Excavation (CY)	Regular Excavation (3-R Projects) (LS)
Earthwork operations <b>below</b> the original ground line and <b>below</b> the finished grading template	Cut	from the finished grading template or original ground, whichever is lower, to the lower limits of removal of organic or plastic material	Subsoil Excavation (CY)	Subsoil Excavation (CY)
	Fill	from the lower limits of removal of organic or plastic material removed to the finished grading template	Embankment (CY)	Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure) (CY)
With significant quantities of lateral ditch or channel excavation the designer may select to pay for separately		from finished ground to the finished grading template	Lateral Ditch Exc. Channel Exc. (CY)	N/A

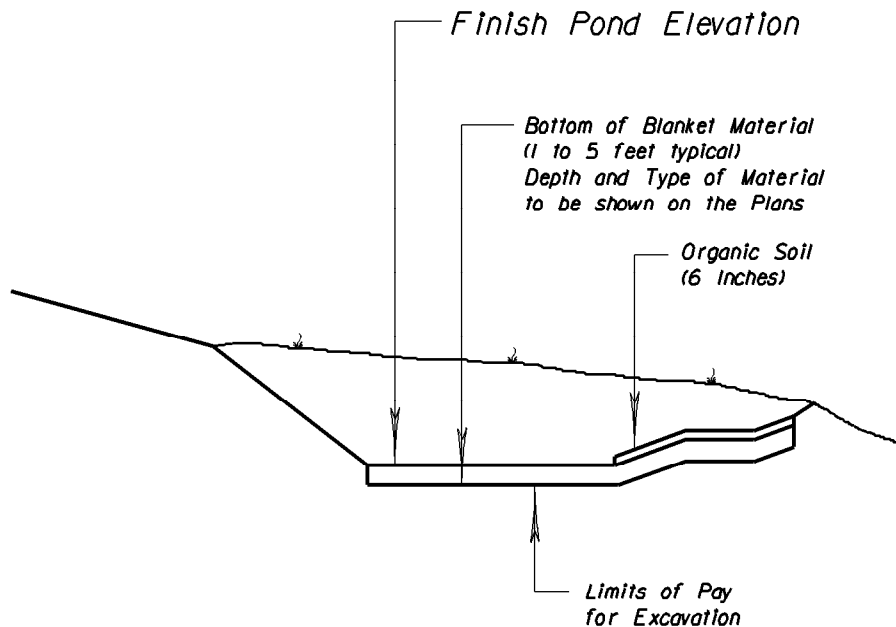
### 3.5.2 Regular Excavation

This is the most general classification of earthwork excavation. When Lateral Ditch or Channel excavation pay items are not called for in the plans, the total quantity of all excavation shall be paid for as Regular Excavation. Regular Excavation may include roadway, pond and ditch excavation. Roadway Excavation consists of the net volume of material excavated between the original ground line and the finished grading template of the roadway.

Retention or detention areas that require considerable excavation should be summarized separately and added to the Regular Excavation. This is especially important if there is a large quantity and the area is removed from the project by some distance.

Some environmental permits now require that the plans call for excavating additional depth below the finish elevation of the bottom of a pond or ditch. They also require that the area of extra depth be replaced with "blanket material" that will either allow for percolation or not allow for percolation as required by the permit. The drawing below shows the limits of pay for excavation in this situation. The depth and type of fill material must be identified in the plans.

**Figure 3.5.1 Pond Template**



### **3.5.3 Embankment**

This item includes placing material above the original ground line, or above the lower limits of removal of organic and/or plastic material to the finished grading template.

### **3.5.4 Subsoil Excavation**

Subsoil Excavation consists of the excavation and disposal of any material that in its original position is excavated below the finished grading template or original ground, whichever is lower.

The soils investigation survey documents the organic and/or plastic material found on the project. Likewise, the cross sections and the earthwork calculations must use the lower limits of removal of organic or plastic material in determining the quantities for Subsoil Excavation.

Subsoil excavation areas and volumes shall be tabulated on the right side of the cross section sheets. The fill quantities (areas and volumes) shall include areas and volumes required to fill the excavated areas created by subsoil removal. See example given in **Section 3.1** of this chapter.

The payment for subsoil excavation shall not be included in the pay quantities for other items no matter how small the subsoil quantities.

Embankment (fill) or Regular Excavation (cut) should be used in conjunction with the pay item Subsoil Excavation. Both Embankment and Regular Excavation are plan quantity items. The quantities are based on line and grades shown in the plans and would allow construction personnel to field verify the quantities of material used on a project. Subsoil Excavation is a field measure item, and the final pay quantity will be determined by cross section taken when the removal of the material is completed.

### **3.5.5 Lateral Ditch Excavation**

Excavation required to construct inlet and outlet ditches at structures, changes in channels of streams and ditches parallel to the right of way, but separated from the roadway template, may be designated by the designer as Lateral Ditch Excavation.

On projects with very little of this type of excavation, this earthwork is usually included in the Regular or Roadway Excavation. If there is a significant amount of Lateral Ditch Excavation, it should be detailed, calculated and summarized on separate cross section sheets and shown separately in the Earthwork Summary. For more details on lateral ditch cross sections, see **Volume II** of this manual.

Excavation included for payment or that will be bid as work under **Section 125, Excavation for Structures**, must not be included again in Lateral Ditch or other excavation pay items.

### **3.5.6 Channel Excavation**

The pay item for Channel Excavation consists of the excavation and satisfactory disposal of all material from the limits of the channel as shown in the plans. This work is generally called for by the plans and has lines, grades, typical sections and other details shown for excavating a channel change or a major modification to an existing channel or stream. This work may be significantly different from regular excavation or lateral ditch excavation, requiring draglines, barges or other special equipment. It should be detailed, calculated and summarized separately, in most cases.

### **3.5.7 Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure)**

Borrow Excavation is the pay item used to indicate that the contractor is to furnish earthwork material from areas provided by him and generally outside the project limits, including material with a specific minimum bearing value for building up existing shoulders, when appropriate for the project.

Borrow material, if available, may be obtained from within the right of way of the project. Obtaining material from the project right of way shall not create an unsafe condition or unprotected hazard. Proper design criteria shall be applied to proposed excavation areas that will fill with water. The proposed borrow areas shall be reviewed and coordinated with the District Environmental Coordinator to minimize environmental disturbance and promote a future original appearance.

When the designer chooses the method of payment as Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure), a fill adjustment must be made to the net total fill material calculated from the plans to allow for handling. An additional adjustment (truck) is added to obtain a representative volume of material required. This is not a plan quantity item, but it is very important that the most realistic determination of quantities possible be calculated by the

designer. Recommendations on fill and truck adjustment percentages should always be obtained from either the District Materials or Construction Office during the design process.

### Exhibit 3-A Fill and Truck Adjustments

EXAMPLE: Fill (From Working Typical)	253 CY
Fill Adjustment (+20%) (253 x 0.20)	<u>51 CY</u>
Fill	304 CY
Truck Adjustment (+25%) (304 x 0.25)	<u>76 CY</u>
Borrow Excavation (Pay Item)	380 CY

**Adjustment percentages shown are for example only. Contact District Materials or Construction Office for actual percentages to be used for each project.**

## 3.5.8 Regular Excavation (RRR Projects Only)-Lump Sum

The Pay Item for Regular Excavation (RRR Projects Only) - Lump Sum is to be used on resurfacing or minor widening and resurfacing (RRR) projects that conform to the following guidelines:

1. There are limited or no cross sections on the project.
2. Existing typicals are reasonably consistent throughout the project.
3. If utility adjustments are a consideration on the project, the designer will need to be sure that sufficient data is available to allow the utility to be relocated or adjusted.
4. There are no right of way requirements on the project.
5. There is no change in the existing horizontal or vertical alignment.
6. There are no major special ditches on the project.
7. There are no major intersection modifications.
8. Show quantity of Excavation in Summary Box, but pay for as 1 Lump Sum.

Regular Excavation (RRR Projects Only) - Lump Sum can be used on projects other than RRR, but only if they are minor projects complying with the same listed guidelines.

Earthwork will be paid for as Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure) and Regular Excavation (RRR Projects Only) – Lump Sum. The designer will calculate these quantities based on

information obtained from the field and the proposed typical section. The designer must conduct a thorough field review to ensure existing field conditions are accurately reflected in earthwork estimates.

### 3.5.9 Summary of Earthwork

The last sheet in each group or cross section group (mainline, sidestreet, pond 1, etc.) should tabulate the totals for each earthwork operation (subsoil excavation, regular excavation and embankment).

Below is an example of a summary of earthwork box for projects with cross sections. The summary should document all the groups totals in one location. This summary should be shown on the Summary of Quantities Sheet.

**Exhibit 3-B Summary of Earthwork Box  
(Projects With Cross Sections)**

SUMMARY OF EARTHWORK (CUBIC YARDS)	
ROADWAY EXCAVATION, Mainline	10,000
ROADWAY EXCAVATION, Sidestreet Name	800
REGULAR EXCAVATION, Pond No. 1	1,005
REGULAR EXCAVATION, Lateral Ditches	5,000
<b>TOTAL REGULAR EXCAVATION</b>	<b>16,805</b>
EMBANKMENT, Mainline	20,000
EMBANKMENT, Sidestreet	7,000
<b>TOTAL EMBANKMENT</b>	<b>27,000</b>
SUBSOIL EXCAVATION, Mainline	2,080
SUBSOIL EXCAVATION, Sidestreet Name	1,100
<b>TOTAL SUBSOIL EXCAVATION</b>	<b>3,180</b>



Below is an example of a summary of earthwork box that should be used for projects with limited or no cross sections. This summary should be shown on the Summary of Quantities Sheet. The summary should show all quantities and adjustments.

**Exhibit 3-C Summary of Earthwork Box (Projects With Limited or No Cross Sections)**

SUMMARY OF EARTHWORK (CUBIC YARDS)	
FILL	253
GUARDRAIL LOCATIONS	70
CROSS DRAINS	<u>100</u>
	423
FILL ADJUSTMENT (20%) (423 x 0.20)	<u>+ 85</u>
FILL	508
TRUCK ADJUSTMENT (25%) (508 x 0.25)	<u>+ 127</u>
TOTAL BORROW EXCAVATION	635
EXCAVATION	200

The pay items used will be:

Regular Excavation (RRR Projects Only)	1 (LS)
Borrow Excavation (Truck Measure)	635 CY

**Adjustment percentages shown are for example only. Contact District Materials or Construction Office for actual percentages to be used for each project.**

## Chapter 4

### Roadside Safety

4.1	Clear Zone.....	4-1
4.1.1	Clear Zone Concept.....	4-1
4.1.2	Clear Zone Criteria.....	4-2
4.2	Hazard Standards.....	4-4
4.2.1	Canal Hazards.....	4-4
4.2.2	Drop-off Hazards.....	4-7
4.3	Roadside Barriers.....	4-9
4.3.1	Warrants.....	4-9
4.3.2	Barrier Selection.....	4-10
4.3.3	End Treatments.....	4-10
4.3.4	Transitions.....	4-11
4.3.5	Placement.....	4-11
4.3.6	Upgrading Existing Barrier Systems.....	4-12
	4.3.6.1 Resetting Guardrail.....	4-13
4.4	Median Barriers.....	4-15
4.4.1	Warrants.....	4-15
4.4.2	Selection.....	4-15
4.4.3	End Treatments.....	4-15
4.5	Crash Cushions.....	4-16
4.5.1	Warrants.....	4-16
4.5.2	Selection.....	4-16
4.5.3	Design.....	4-17
4.6	Roadside Appurtenances.....	4-18

4.6.1	Sign Supports.....	4-18
4.6.2	Mailbox Supports.....	4-18
4.6.3	Other Appurtenances .....	4-18
4.6.4	Location Criteria .....	4-18
4.6.5	Bus Benches and Transit Shelters .....	4-18

Tables

Table 4.3.1	Minimum Offset of Barriers (Measured from the face of the barrier) .....	4-12
-------------	--	------

Figures

Figure 4.2.2	Drop-off Hazards in Urban Sections.....	4-7
--------------	---	-----

Exhibits

Exhibit 4-A	Minimum Standards for Canal Hazards (Flush Shoulders) .....	4-5
Exhibit 4-B	Minimum Standards for Canal Hazards (Curb and Gutter) .....	4-6

## Chapter 4

# Roadside Safety

### 4.1 Clear Zone

#### 4.1.1 Clear Zone Concept

A roadside that is traversable and unobstructed by fixed objects will allow vehicles that leave the roadway to recover safely. The clear zone is the relatively flat unobstructed area that is to be provided for safe use by errant vehicles. The designer should provide as much clear zone as practical.

If natural or man-made hazards, including slopes steeper than 1:3, occur within the clear zone, the designer should attempt the following treatments, in order of priority:

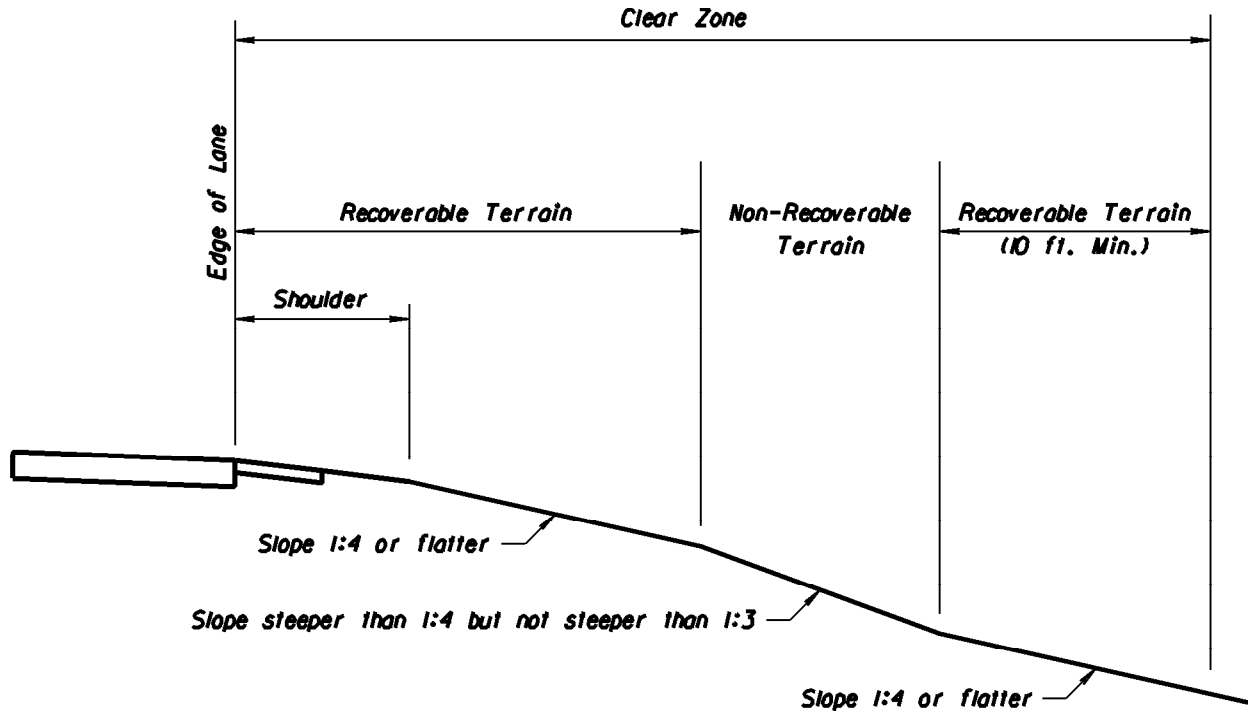
1. Eliminate the hazard.
  - a. Remove the hazard.
  - b. Relocate the hazard outside the clear zone.
  - c. Make the hazard traversable or crashworthy.
2. Shield the hazard with a longitudinal barrier or crash cushion. This treatment should only be taken if the barrier or crash cushion presents a lesser hazard.
3. Leave the hazard unshielded. This treatment should be taken only if a barrier or crash cushion is more hazardous than the hazard, if the likelihood of striking the hazard is very small or if the expense of treatment outweighs the benefits in terms of accident reduction.

If crash data or safety reports indicate that early treatment of the hazards will result in fewer or less severe crashes, designers should consider directing that those treatments be accomplished as the first order of work, if feasible and practical.

## 4.1.2 Clear Zone Criteria

Criteria have been developed and are found in **Table 2.11.9** and **Table 25.4.14**. In some cases, the clear zone can be adjusted greater than the values found in these tables. For example, as in **Figure 4.1.2**, when a non-recoverable slope encroaches the clear zone required in **Table 2.11.9** or **Table 25.4.14.1**, additional clear zone width should be provided beyond the toe of slope equal to the width of the encroachment. A minimum of 10 feet of additional clear zone width beyond the toe of slope should be provided. This additional clear zone width may be reduced if it extends beyond the right of way. The clear zone is to be free of hazardous objects, hazardous terrain, and non-traversable terrain. Also, clear zones may be widened based on crash history.

**Figure 4.1.2 Clear Zone**



Roadside Terrain includes all surfaces along the roadway other than Travel Lanes, Auxiliary Lanes, and Ramps. For the purpose of establishing Clear Zones and Horizontal Clearance Requirements, Roadside Terrain is defined as recoverable, non-recoverable, non-traversable, and hazardous as follows:

1. Recoverable when it is safely traversable and on a slope that is 1v:4h or flatter.
2. Non-recoverable when it is safely traversable and on a slope that is steeper than 1:4 but not steeper than 1:3.
3. Non-traversable when it is not safely traversable or on a slope that is steeper than 1:3.
4. Hazardous when a slope is steeper than 1:3 and deeper than 6 feet as shown in **Figure 4.2.2**.

## 4.2 Hazard Standards

### 4.2.1 Canal Hazards

A canal is defined as an open ditch parallel to the roadway for a minimum distance of 1000 ft. and with a seasonal water depth in excess of 3 ft. for extended periods of time (24 hours or more).

The distance from the outside edge of the through travel lane to the top of the canal side slope nearest the road will be no less than 60 ft. for highways with design speeds of 50 mph or greater. For highways with design speeds less than 50 mph this minimum distance may be reduced to 50 ft. for rural highways or 40 ft. for urban (curb and gutter) highways. When new canal or roadway alignment is required, distances greater than those above should be provided, if possible, to accommodate possible future improvements to the roadway (widening, etc.).

On fill sections, a flat berm (maximum 1:10 slope) of width no less than 20 ft. will be provided between the toe of the roadway front slope and the top of the canal side slope nearest the roadway. This minimum berm width applies to all types of highways, both rural and urban (curb and gutter) construction. (See **Exhibits 4-A & 4-B**)

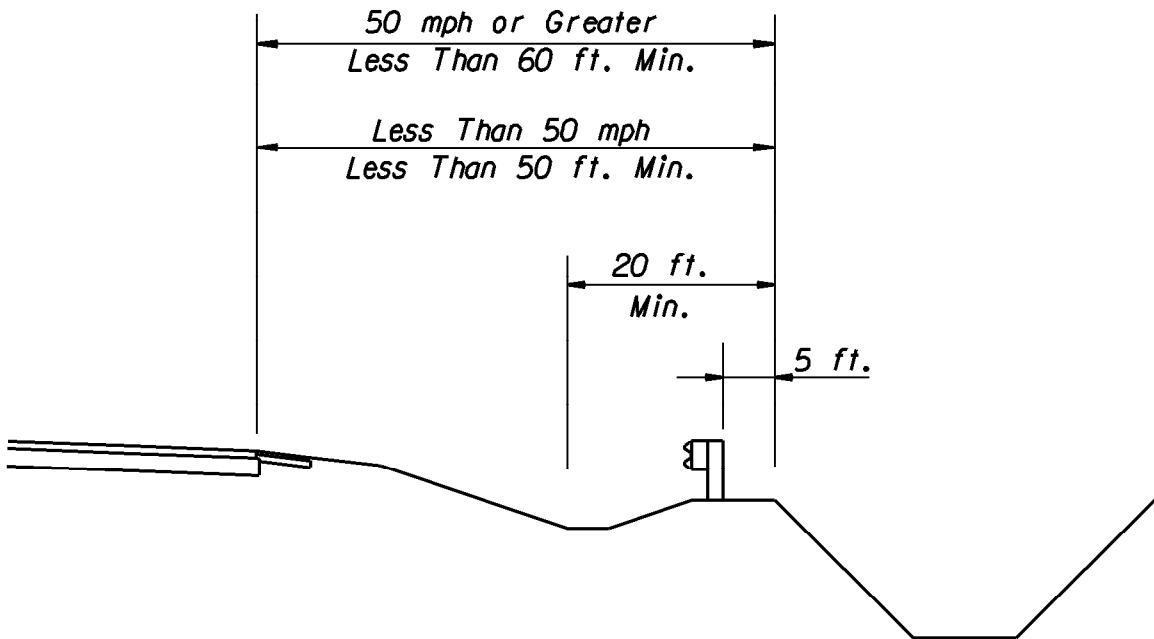
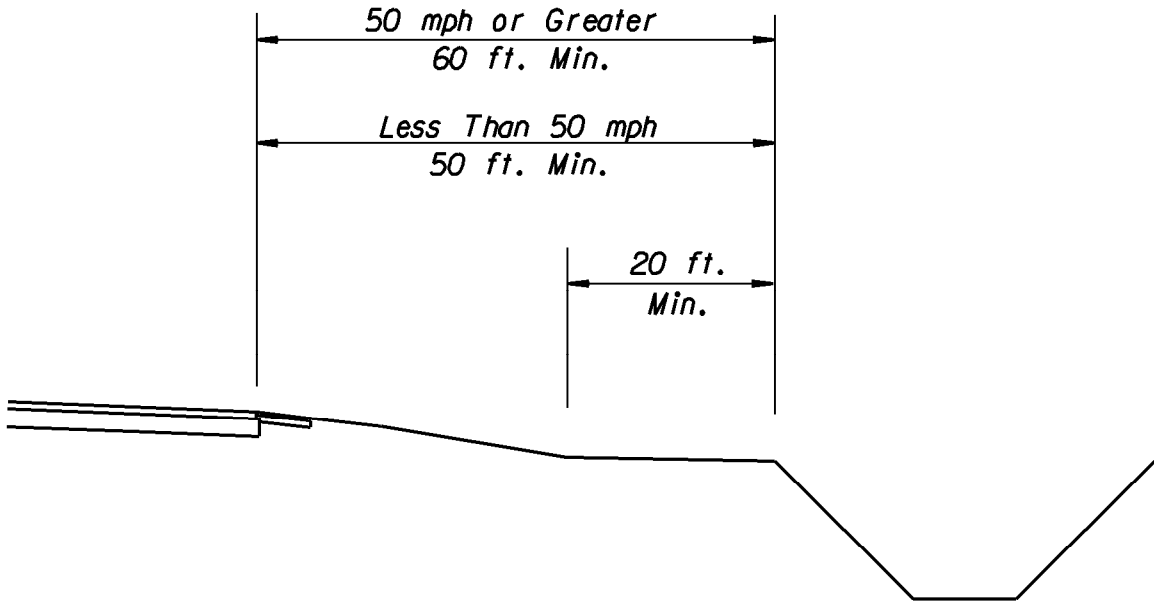
When the slope between the roadway and the "extended period of time" water surface is 1:6 or flatter, the minimum distance can be measured from the edge of the through lane to the "extended period of time" water surface and a berm is not required.

In sections with ditch cuts, 20 ft. will be provided between the toe of the front slope and the top of the canal.

Guardrail or other protective devices shall be installed 5 ft. from the canal front slope where it is not possible to meet the above minimum criteria. The design is complicated when clear zone and slope criteria are combined with canal hazard criteria. Extreme caution must be taken to ensure that all criteria are met.

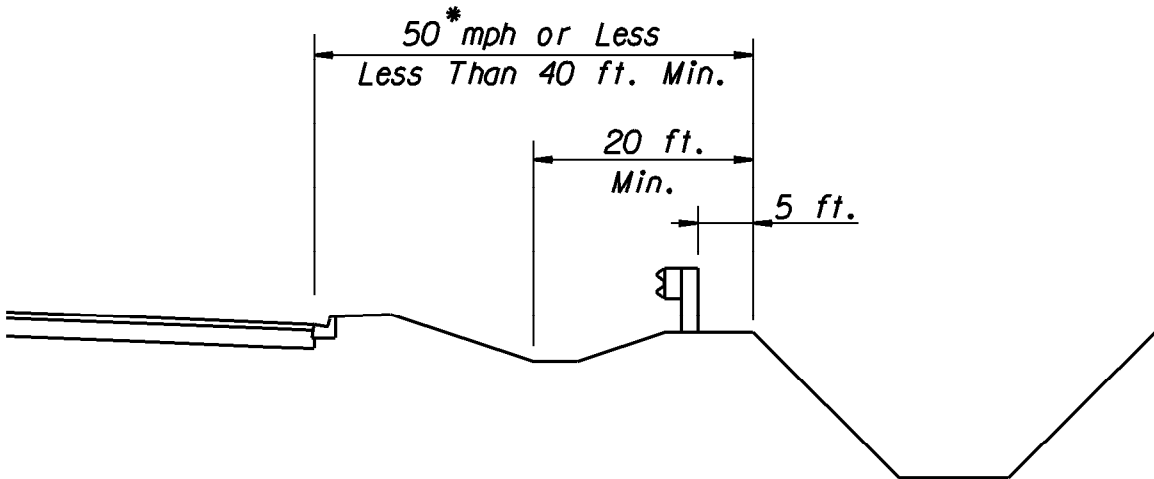
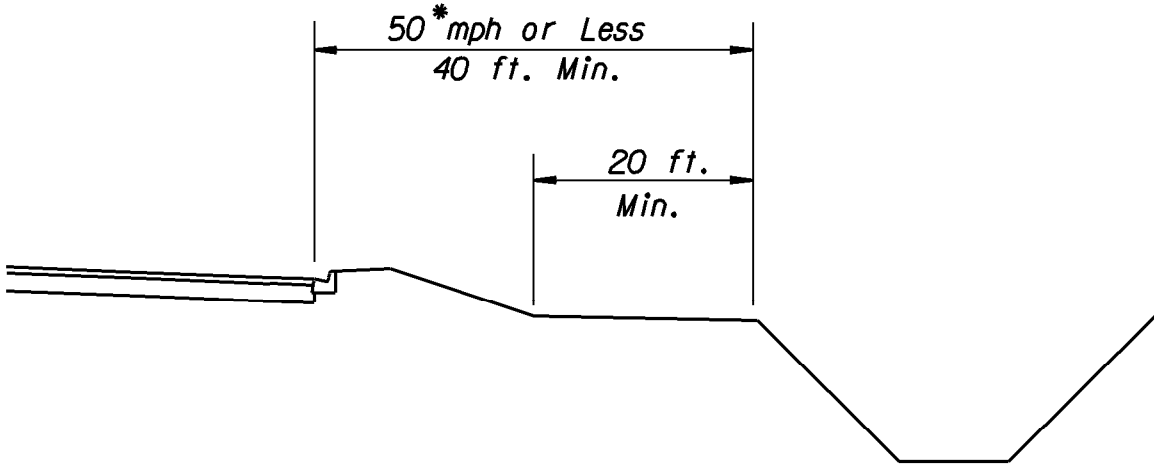
If the minimum standards for canal hazards cannot be met, then the standard guardrail treatments as provided in the **Design Standards** should be used.

### Exhibit 4-A Minimum Standards for Canal Hazards (Flush Shoulders)





**Exhibit 4-B Minimum Standards for Canal Hazards  
(Curb and Gutter)**



\* Posted speeds not to be greater than 45 mph.

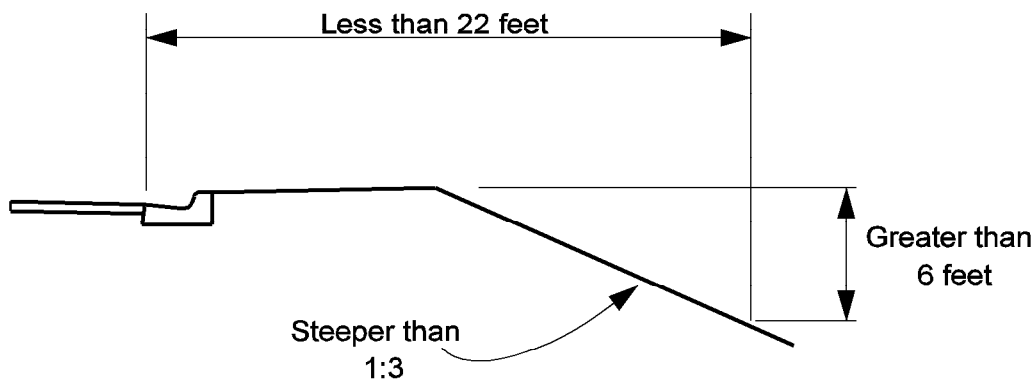
## 4.2.2 Drop-off Hazards

Drop-off hazards are defined as steep or abrupt downward slopes that can be perilous to vehicle occupants and/or pedestrians and cyclists. The Engineer should consider shielding any drop-off determined to be a hazard. The following guidelines will be useful in standardizing the identification and treatment of drop-off hazards.

Drop-off hazards for vehicle occupants:

- 1 A drop-off of 6 feet or more with a slope steeper than 1:3 should be considered a hazard and shielded when it is within the Clear Zone.
- 2 In urban sections with curb and gutter, a drop-off of 6 feet or more with a slope steeper than 1:3 located within 22 feet of the traveled way, should be evaluated for shielding.

**Figure 4.2.2 Drop-off Hazards in Urban Sections**



In determining if shielding a drop-off hazard would be feasible for protecting vehicle occupants, the following should be considered:

1. When a drop-off is shielded, a guardrail or barrier is usually set closer to the road, which increases the probability of impacting the guardrail or barrier. Also, these shields generally require the ends to be treated, which also needs to be taken into consideration. The *Roadside Design Guide* and its *ROADSIDE 5.0* program should be used to evaluate the benefits of shielding a drop-off. The global parameters needed to run the *ROADSIDE 5.0* program are listed in **Section 23.6** of this volume.

2. When a drop-off is to be shielded with guardrail, a minimum of 62.5 feet of guardrail is required to develop proper ribbon strength. A minimum clear area 4 feet wide is to be provided behind the guardrail to allow the guardrail to deflect when impacted. Proper slope and soil bearing for the posts is to be provided.
3. Another consideration is whether the drop-off has a significant crash history. Drop-offs that have had 3 crashes within three consecutive years over a five-year period are considered to have a significant crash history and should be shielded. Five years of crash data for a particular site can be obtained from the Safety Office.

For drop-off criteria in work zones see **Chapter 10** of this volume and **Index 600** of the **Design Standards**.

Generally, pedestrians and bicyclists will be adequately protected from a drop-off hazard if a guardrail or barrier has been installed between the path or sidewalk and the drop-off. However, circumstances do exist that will ultimately dictate when a handrail is needed. For guidance, see **Section 8.8 Drop-off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists** of this volume.

## 4.3 Roadside Barriers

### 4.3.1 Warrants

Roadside barriers are warranted when hazards exist within the clear zone, hazards cannot be cost effectively eliminated or corrected, and collisions with the hazards will be more serious than collisions with the barriers.

The length of advancement and length of need necessary to properly shield the hazard must be determined on an installation by installation basis as indicated in the ***Design Standards***.

The following conditions within the clear zone are normally considered more hazardous than a roadside barrier:

1. Fill slopes steeper than 1:3.
2. Bridge piers, abutments and railing ends.
3. Non-traversable culverts, pipes and headwalls.
4. Non-traversable parallel or perpendicular ditches and canals.
5. Bodies of water other than parallel ditches and canals that the engineer determines to be hazardous.
6. Parallel retaining walls with protrusions or other potential snagging features.
7. Retaining walls at an approach angle with the edge of pavement larger than 7 degrees (1:8).
8. Non-breakaway sign or luminaire supports.
9. Trees greater than 4 inches in diameter measured 6 inches above the ground at maturity.
10. Utility poles.
11. Rigid protrusions above the ground in excess of 4 inches in height.

In addition to the above hazards, there may be other situations that warrant barrier consideration, such as nearby pedestrian or bicycle facilities, schools, residences or businesses.

## 4.3.2 Barrier Selection

Acceptable standard roadside barriers are detailed in the ***Design Standards***. They include:

1. Standard blocked-out W-beam on wood post (strong post).
2. Standard blocked-out W-beam on "C" steel post (strong post).
3. Standard blocked-out W-beam on wide flange steel post (strong post).
4. Blocked-out Thrie-Beam on any of the above post systems.
5. Standard concrete barrier wall.

Most guardrail installations will be blocked-out W-beam on wood or steel posts. The Thrie-Beam guardrail should be considered when additional rail depth is needed because of a potential to under-ride the rail or because additional height may be needed. Other barrier designs may be required by specific site conditions. These must be called for and detailed on a project-by-project basis.

## 4.3.3 End Treatments

Longitudinal barrier ends which are not crashworthy can present serious hazards if they terminate within the clear zone. The Department's crashworthy end treatments and application criteria are detailed in the ***Design Standards***. Other end treatments may be required under special circumstances. Special details will be required in the plans, when this is the case.

1. It is very important that the flare with offset be provided exactly as shown in the ***Design Standards***. The end offset should be measured off a projection of the face of guardrail alignment. The maximum allowable cross slope in front of the rail is 1:10, including the area in front of and the upstream approach to the end anchorage assembly.
2. Non-crashworthy end treatments will be used outside the clear zone, and at downstream terminations, which are outside the clear zone of the opposing traffic flow. The Type II end anchorage is non-crashworthy and, therefore, may **NOT** be used as an approach terminal end treatment unless other end shielding is provided.
3. Thrie-beam and concrete barrier wall will be terminated as shown in the ***Design Standards***.

## 4.3.4 Transitions

Whenever standard W-beam or Thrie-beam guardrail transitions into bridge rail or concrete barrier wall, a transition section is necessary. Transitions must include sound structural connections, nested beams and additional posts for increased stiffness, as shown in the ***Design Standards***. Standard flares should be introduced upstream of the transition section. Care must be taken in the details of the junction of the two barrier types to avoid snag points.

## 4.3.5 Placement

The primary design factors associated with guardrail placement are:

1. Lateral offset from the edge of pavement
2. Terrain effects
3. Flare rate
4. Length of advancement
5. Length of need

The standard offset is the shoulder width plus 2 ft., not to exceed 12 feet. Alternate guardrail offset locations are shown in the ***Design Standards***.

A 2 ft. distance from the back of the barrier posts to the shoulder line or slope break is desirable for post support.

The length of advancement is dependent on the design speed, the offset distance to the face of guardrail and the lesser distance (a) to the back of the hazard or (b) to the clear zone needed. The designer must establish this advancement need for all installations on the project. On all facilities the guardrail needs must consider traffic from both directions.

A barrier should not be located so close to the hazard that it is shielding that the hazard is within the dynamic deflection distance of the barrier. The dynamic deflection of standard barriers is shown in ***Table 4.3.1***.

**Table 4.3.1 Minimum Offset of Barriers  
 (Measured from the face of the barrier)**

BARRIER TYPE	OFFSET (ft)
W-Beam with Post Spacing @ 6'-3"	4.0
W-Beam with Post Spacing @ 3'-1 1/2"	3.0
Thrie-Beam with Post Spacing @ 6'-3"	3.3
Thrie-Beam with Post Spacing @ 3'-1 1/2"	2.6
Barrier Wall	0
Double W-Beams (Nested) with Post Spacing @ 3'-1 1/2"	2.6
Double W-Beams (Nested) with Post Spacing @ 1'-6 3/4"	2.3

Curbs shall not be placed in the front of barriers. When guardrail is necessary, the guardrail shall be located at the face of the curb or in front of it.

Barriers should not be placed on slopes steeper than 1:10. This is particularly important for barrier ends shielded by crashworthy devices.

### 4.3.6 Upgrading Existing Barrier Systems

Deficient roadside barriers are generally upgraded in conjunction with other roadway work, such as RRR projects, or through spot or system wide safety improvement projects. In each case the designer must determine the scope and extent of the barrier upgrading to be accomplished. In making this determination, the existing installation should be investigated for what work is necessary to make the installation structurally and functionally adequate. The investigation should consider:

1. Whether there is a need for the barrier. If cost effective, the hazard should be removed, relocated, or redesigned and the barrier removed.
2. Length of need.
3. Proper rail height.
4. Proper flare rate.

5. Adequate offset at terminal end.
6. Proper deflection distance between the barrier and the shielded object.
7. Proper placement with respect to traffic lane.
8. Proper placement with respect to curb.
9. Placement on proper slope.
10. Adequate clear runout area behind yielding terminals.
11. The overall condition of the guardrail/barrier installation.
12. Post type, condition and spacing.
13. Existing unshielded hazards. For spot improvements, only those existing unshielded hazards in the immediate vicinity of the installation being addressed should be reviewed. For RRR projects, all existing roadside hazards within the project corridor should be reviewed for treatment needs.

In some cases the deficiencies will be so obvious that the best course of action is readily apparent. However, many times the deficiencies may be marginal and a decision on the scope and extent of the barrier upgrading will be based on engineering judgment. Factors which should be considered are:

1. Nature and extent of barrier deficiency.
2. Past crash history.
3. Cost effectiveness of recommended improvement.
4. Whether future scheduled reconstruction or RRR work in the 5 year work program will address deficiency.

#### **4.3.6.1 Resetting Guardrail**

For those projects that include the resetting of guardrail, refer to the **Standard Specifications**, the **Basis of Estimates Handbook**, and the **Design Standards** for pay items, notes and quantity calculations.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## **4.4 Median Barriers**

### **4.4.1 Warrants**

A median barrier shall be provided on Interstate and expressway facilities where reconstruction reduces the median width to less than the standard for the facility. No variations or exceptions to this criteria will be approved.

### **4.4.2 Selection**

The same barrier types as discussed in **Section 4.3.2** are available as median barriers. In general, the concrete barrier wall is preferable in narrow medians.

### **4.4.3 End Treatments**

Median barriers can be terminated with any of the treatments discussed in **Section 4.3.3**.

## 4.5 Crash Cushions

Crash cushions are attenuating devices that may be non-redirective or redirective.

### 4.5.1 Warrants

Hazards within the clear zone, that present a more serious collision potential than a crash cushion, warrant the installation of a crash cushion.

### 4.5.2 Selection

The ***Design Standards*** contains the various types of crash cushions and attenuation devices that are standardized for use. Detailed information about these systems is provided in the ***Design Standards*** and in each manufacturer's publications. Each system has its own unique physical and functional characteristics. The designer shall indicate in the plans the system to be used at each location. The design engineer shall consider the following factors when selecting a system for a particular location:

1. Site characteristics.
2. Structural and safety characteristics of candidate systems.
3. Initial and replacement/repair costs.
4. Expected frequency of collisions.
5. Maintenance characteristics.

Site characteristics and economics dictate the crash cushion selection. Sand barrels are relatively low in initial cost, but usually must be completely replaced when struck, so are more appropriate in locations with a low likelihood of collision. The other systems have higher initial costs but can be repaired after collisions relatively cheaply, so are more appropriate where frequent collisions are expected. The ability of maintenance forces to perform routine maintenance and to place a crashed system back into service quickly should be a major consideration. Crash cushions that require stocking unusual and expensive parts or that are complex to replace should not be selected.

### 4.5.3 Design

Crash cushion suppliers normally provide design assistance for their systems. These systems must decelerate both small automobiles and standard size pickup trucks from the established design speed of the facility to a gradual stop. If the **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide** charts are used, the maximum average deceleration level should not exceed approximately 7 g's.

All terrain within the likely approach of a vehicle should be relatively flat. An impacting vehicle should strike the unit at normal height, with the vehicle's suspension system neither collapsed nor extended. Curbs exceeding 4 inches in height shall not be used in the approach area of a crash cushion.

Sand barrels do not have redirection capability. They may be used for temporary barrier wall end shielding in accordance with the **Design Standards, Index 417**. For shielding on other temporary and all permanent installations, they must be custom engineered for each independent installation and detailed in the plans.

Care must be taken that the design of a crash cushion system does not create a hazard to opposing traffic.

The nose of all crash cushions shall be delineated with reflective material or standard object markers, as indicated in the **Design Standards**.

## 4.6 Roadside Appurtenances

### 4.6.1 Sign Supports

All sign supports, except overhead cantilever, truss type or bridge or barrier wall mounted, shall be either breakaway or frangible as defined in the ***AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*** and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***. Sign supports shall be of an acceptable and crashworthy design as described in the ***Design Standards***. Supports not meeting the frangibility or breakaway criteria should not be installed within the clear zone. Sign supports not meeting these requirements, that must be installed within the clear zone, shall be protected by a barrier or crash cushion.

### 4.6.2 Mailbox Supports

Mailbox supports shall be of an acceptable crashworthy design, as described in the ***Design Standards***.

### 4.6.3 Other Appurtenances

The ***Design Standards*** contains design criteria for numerous other roadside appurtenances.

### 4.6.4 Location Criteria

Most breakaway mechanisms are designed to be impacted at bumper height, typically about 20 inches above the ground. If impacted at a significantly higher point, the bending moment in the breakaway base may be sufficient to bind the mechanism, resulting in non-activation of the breakaway device. For this reason, it is important that breakaway supports not be located in ditches or on steep slopes where a vehicle is likely to be partially in sprung suspension at the time of impact.

### 4.6.5 Bus Benches and Transit Shelters

These features are discussed in ***Chapter 3*** of the ***Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction, and Maintenance for Streets and Highways (Florida Greenbook)***.

## Chapter 5

### Utilities

5.1	General.....	5-3
5.2	Utility Accommodation Manual .....	5-4
5.3	Location of Existing Utilities.....	5-5
5.4	Subsurface Utility Engineering .....	5-7
5.5	Coordination Process .....	5-8

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 5

### Utilities

#### 5.1 General

The Department has the responsibility to maintain state highways as necessary to preserve the integrity, operational safety and function of the highway facility. Since the manner in which utilities cross or otherwise occupy highway right of way can materially affect the safe operation, maintenance and appearance of the highway, it is necessary that such use of the right of way be authorized and reasonably regulated. By Florida Statutes, utilities, whether public or privately owned, aerial or underground are permitted by the Department to be accommodated within the right of way on the State Highway System. For limited access highways, parallel utilities within the right of way are not allowed except for utilities serving facilities required for operating the transportation system. Lateral crossings are allowed by permit only (see ***Utility Accommodation Manual, Topic No. 710-020-001***).

The designer should make every effort to design a project that will accommodate all existing utilities and new utilities to be constructed concurrently with the project. The selection of typical section features, horizontal alignment and location of storm sewer lines are areas that can sometimes be varied without violating safety standards and design criteria. Design features that reduce or avoid utility conflicts may involve increased cost; however, those costs may be offset by savings in construction time and the total associated cost savings for the FDOT project and the utilities.



## 5.2 Utility Accommodation Manual

Utility owners are required to obtain utility permits for the installation and maintenance of utility facilities within the right of way of any State Highway System. These permits will be issued and approved by FDOT in conformity with the ***Utility Accommodation Manual***. This includes utility work required by FDOT projects. The designer may be involved in the coordination of this process.

The Department's ***Utility Accommodation Manual*** is established to regulate the location, manner, installation and adjustment of utility facilities along, across, under or on right of way under the jurisdiction of the FDOT. This manual also establishes the process for issuing permits for such work which is in the interest of safety, protection, utilization and future development of the highways with due consideration given to public service afforded by adequate and economical utility installations as authorized under ***Section 337.403, Florida Statutes*** and ***Florida Administrative Code Rule 14-46.001***. Adherence shall be required under the circumstances set forth in the ***Utility Accommodation Manual***.

Additional guidance for accommodating utilities within the highway rights-of-way are given in the AASHTO publications ***A Guide for Accommodating Utilities within Highway Right of Way*** and ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*** and in the TRB publication ***Policies for Accommodation of Utilities on Highway Rights-of-Way***.

## 5.3 Location of Existing Utilities

Determining the location of existing utilities on State highway right of way is a cooperative effort between the FDOT and the utility owners. The degree of effort on the part of the FDOT and the utility owner will vary with the type of project, the utility, and availability of existing location information. As a minimum the location of existing major utilities is required on new construction, reconstruction, and add lane projects.

Major existing utilities are those principal underground and aerial utilities that potentially conflict with construction activities and scheduling. The presence of major utilities shall be determined on each project by the utility owner. Service connections and laterals are not normally considered major utilities.

It is the responsibility of the design engineer with the assistance of the District Utility Engineer and construction personnel to determine the locations and levels of locate where utility information is needed. Levels of locates are defined in **Section 5.3.1**. It is the responsibility of the utility owner to provide up through a Level “B” locate on request. In some instances the utility owner can provide Level “A” locate information. If Level “A” locate information is necessary and cannot be provided by the utility owner, the measurement and documentation for the level “A” locate will be obtained by the FDOT, consultants, or others by established agreement.

Existing major underground utilities which are suspected to be located within three feet (3') of proposed construction operations which would threaten the utility should be considered for Level “A” locate information. The decision to allow utilities to remain within three feet (3') of new construction operations should be made by the Design Engineer in consultation with the District Utility Engineer and appropriate construction personnel.

### 5.3.1 Levels of Utility Locates

The following identifies the level of utility locates in ascending order:

1. Level “D” - Existing Records
2. Level “C” - Surface Visible Feature Survey
3. Level “B” - Designating
4. Level “A” - Locating

**Level "D" locates** - Information obtained solely from a review of utility records. The comprehensiveness and accuracy of such information is highly limited. Even when existing information for a utility in a particular area is accurate, there are often other underground systems that are not shown on any records. Level "D" may be appropriately used early in the development of a project to determine the presence of utilities.

**Level "C" locates** - Information obtained to augment Level "D" information. This involves topographic surveying of visible, above-ground utility features (e.g., poles, hydrants, valve boxes, circuit breakers, etc.) and entering the topographic data into the CADD system. Level "C" may be appropriately used early in the development of a project and will provide better data than Level "D" information alone. Designers must be very cautious when working on projects using information for underground utilities that is based only on Levels "D" and "C" locates.

**Level "B" locates** - Information obtained through the use of designating technologies (e.g., geophysical prospecting technologies). This is an application using scanning technologies, most of which have very specific capabilities. Applying a variety of techniques is essential to the process of preparing a comprehensive *horizontal* map of utilities and other underground structures on the site. Designating technologies are capable of providing good horizontal information but provide limited vertical information.

**Level "A" locates** - Provide the highest level of accuracy of utility locations in three dimensions. This level may apply manual, mechanical or nondestructive (e.g., vacuum excavation) methods to physically expose utilities for measurement and data recording. Levels "B", "C", and "D" locates are incorporated in Level "A" locates. The designer should obtain Level "A" locates at highway/utility conflict points where verified information is necessary.

## **5.4 Subsurface Utility Engineering**

Subsurface utility engineering (SUE) is an established engineering technology that can provide horizontal and vertical locations of underground utilities to produce an accurate picture of underground infrastructure. The techniques of SUE may be appropriate for certain FDOT projects where Levels “A” and “B” locates are determined to be essential.

## 5.5 Coordination Process

Coordination between the Department and the utility owners is to be accomplished through the District Utility Engineer during the initial and final engineering design processes. Refer to **Chapters 13** through **16** of this volume for the design and review processes.

## Chapter 6

### Railroad Crossing

6.1	General.....	6-1
6.2	At-Grade Crossings .....	6-2
6.2.1	Devices.....	6-2
6.2.2	Surfaces .....	6-2
6.3	Grade Separations .....	6-3
6.3.1	Criteria.....	6-3
6.3.2	Bridge Width.....	6-3
6.3.3	Horizontal Clearances to Face of Structures.....	6-4
6.3.3.1	Adjustments for Track Geometry .....	6-4
6.3.3.2	Adjustments for Physical Obstructions.....	6-5
6.3.3.3	Required Foundation Clearances .....	6-5
6.3.4	Crash Walls.....	6-5
6.3.5	Vertical Clearance .....	6-6
6.3.6	Special Considerations.....	6-7
6.3.7	Widening of Existing Overpasses.....	6-7

#### Tables

Table 6.3.3	Horizontal Clearances for Railroads.....	6-4
-------------	--	-----

#### Figures

Figure 6.1	Track Section .....	6-9
Figure 6.2	Crash Wall Elevation .....	6-10
Figure 6.3	Section Thru Tracks .....	6-11

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## **Chapter 6**

### **Railroad Crossing**

#### **6.1 General**

A railroad-highway crossing, like any highway-highway intersection, involves either a crossing at-grade or a separation of grades. This chapter provides standard requirements for crossings at other than high-speed railways. Crossing requirements for high-speed railways must be coordinated with the Department's Rail Office on a project-specific basis.

The following three major railroad companies currently operate in the State of Florida:

1. CSX Transportation, Incorporated
2. Florida East Coast Railway Company
3. Norfolk Southern Corporation

Ten shortline railroad companies and three terminal switching companies also operate in the State of Florida.



## 6.2 At-Grade Crossings

Selection of the warning devices to be used is a function of the geometrics of railroad-highway grade crossing, including the alignment, profile, sight distance and cross section of both the roadway and the railroad. Railroad grade crossing angles should be as near 90 degrees as practical.

Design Criteria and Standards are given in the **Florida Greenbook** and the Department's **Railroad Procedures Manual**. Design considerations are discussed in **Chapter IX** of the **AASHTO Policy on Geometric Design**.

### 6.2.1 Devices

Traffic control devices for railroad-highway grade crossings consist primarily of signs, pavement markings, flashing light signals and automatic gates. A large number of significant variables must be considered in determining the types of warning device to be installed at a railroad grade crossing. The type of highway, volume of vehicular traffic, volume of railroad traffic, speed of vehicular traffic, volume of pedestrian traffic, accident record, and geometrics of the crossing are some of the factors influencing the choice of warning devices to be provided at the railroad crossing.

Standards and criteria for design, placement, installment and operation of these devices are covered in the **Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)** and the Department's **Railroad Procedure Manual**. The Department's **Design Standards** should also be consulted in the design of railroad crossings.

### 6.2.2 Surfaces

The highway traveled way at a railroad crossing should be constructed for a suitable length with all-weather surfacing. A roadway section equal to the current or proposed cross section of the approach roadway should be carried across the crossing. The crossing surface itself should have a riding quality equivalent to that of the approach roadway. When selecting the type of crossing and the material to be used in its construction, consideration should be given to the character and volume of traffic using the highway. The Department's **Highway-Railroad Grade Crossing Material Selection Handbook** should be consulted in selecting the material.

The **Design Standards, Index 560** contains details for the construction of crossings.

## 6.3 Grade Separations

For underpasses, the bridge carries the railway and must be designed and constructed to carry railway loadings in conformance with the **American Railway Engineering and Maintenance Association (AREMA) *Manual for Railway Engineering***, latest edition. For overpasses, the bridge carries highway traffic and must be designed and constructed to carry highway loadings. In either case, adequate clearances between the facilities must be provided.

Clearances, geometrics, utilities, provisions for future tracks, and maintenance road requirements for off-track equipment will involve negotiations with the governing railroad company. The railroad's review and approval, including need for and location of crash walls, shall be based on the completed BDR/30% Structures Plans prepared by the SDO, District Structures Design Engineer, or their consultant.

### 6.3.1 Criteria

The Structures Plans shall be prepared in accordance with the criteria obtained from the governing railroad company, the ***Plans Preparation Manual***, and the ***Structures Detailing Manual***.

See **Figure 6.1** for dimensions which must be obtained from the railroad company before preparing the BDR/30% Structures Plans.

The District Rail Coordinator is an additional reference source available to the designer.

### 6.3.2 Bridge Width

For overpasses, the highway bridge width is determined from the approved typical section for the proposed bridge. Details for underpasses will depend on the specific project.

### 6.3.3 Horizontal Clearances to Face of Structures

Horizontal clearances shall be measured in accordance with **Figure 6.1**. The governing railroad company occasionally may accept a waiver from normal clearance requirements if justified; i.e., for designs involving widening or replacement of existing overpasses. The FDOT's Rail Office should be consulted if such action is being considered.

The minimum horizontal clearances measured from the centerline of outside track to the face of pier cap, bent cap, or any other adjacent structure are shown in **Table 6.3.3**, but must be adjusted for certain physical features and obstructions as described hereinafter.

**Table 6.3.3 Horizontal Clearances for Railroads**

<b>Minimum Clearance Requirements</b>	<b>Normal Section</b>	<b>With 8 ft. Required Clearance for Off-Track Equip.</b>	<b>Temporary Falsework Opening</b>
With Crash Walls	18 ft.	22 ft.	10 ft.
Without Crash Walls	25 ft.	25 ft.	N/A

The additional 8 ft. horizontal clearance for off-track equipment shall be provided only when specifically requested in writing by the railroad. In the event there is any doubt, the FDOT's Rail Office should be consulted.

#### 6.3.3.1 Adjustments for Track Geometry

When the track is on a curve, the minimum horizontal clearance shall be increased at a rate of 1.5 inches for each degree of curvature. When the track is superelevated, clearances on the inside of the curve will be increased by 3.5 inches horizontally per inch of superelevation. For extremely short radius curves, the **AREMA** requirements shall be consulted to assure proper clearance.

### 6.3.3.2 Adjustments for Physical Obstructions

Columns or piles should be kept out of the ditch to prevent obstruction of drainage. Horizontal clearance should be provided to avoid the need for crash walls unless extenuating circumstances dictate otherwise.

**Figure 6.1** shows horizontal dimensions from the centerline of track to the points of intersection of a horizontal plane at the rail elevation with the embankment slope. This criteria may be used to establish the preliminary bridge length which normally is also the length of bridge eligible for FHWA participation; however, surrounding topography, hydraulic conditions, and economic or structural considerations may warrant a decrease or an increase of these dimensions. These dimensions must be coordinated with the governing railroad company.

### 6.3.3.3 Required Foundation Clearances

Edges of footings shall not be closer than 11 ft. from centerline of the track to provide adequate room for sheeting.

### 6.3.4 Crash Walls

Except as stated below, crash walls are required for all bridges over railroads in which any part of the substructure above the ground is to be constructed closer than 25 ft. from the centerline of the track measured perpendicular to the track, unless the size of the pier satisfies the criteria for piers of heavy construction as listed below. Multiple column piers with individual columns meeting the requirements of heavy construction as defined below do not require crash walls.

The crash wall shall be constructed integral with the pier or bent and shall have a smooth face. Piles for the crash wall shall be driven to the minimum penetration required by the FDOT Specifications.

Crash walls shall meet the following requirements:

1. Crash walls for piers within 25 ft. clear from the centerline of the track shall have a minimum height of 6 ft. above the top of rail. Crash walls shall be at least 36 inches thick and at least 12 ft. long.

2. When required for multi-column piers, the crash wall shall connect the columns and extend at least 12 inches beyond the outermost columns, parallel to the track.
3. Crash walls shall be anchored to the footings and columns as applicable and shall extend to at least 4 ft. below the lowest surrounding grade if not supported on piles. Walls supported on piles shall extend 6 inches below the lowest surrounding grade. Piles in crash walls shall be at least 18 inches prestressed piles of a size used in the bridge and shall be driven to the minimum penetration required in **Section 455** of the Specifications.
4. A pier or column shall be considered of heavy construction if it has a minimum cross-sectional area of 17 square ft. The minimum dimension shall be 3 ft., and the larger dimension of rectangular piers or columns shall be parallel to the track.
5. Consideration may be given to providing protection for bridge piers located more than 25 ft. from the centerline of track as conditions warrant. In making this determination, account shall be taken of such factors as horizontal and vertical alignment of the track, embankment height, and an assessment of the consequences of serious damage in the case of a collision.

The lengthening of existing piers or bents with crash walls to accommodate bridge widening shall have the crash walls extended, and the extension shall meet the requirements for new construction.

Existing piers or bents with less than 25 ft. of clearance and without crash walls, which are lengthened to accommodate bridge widening shall have separate crash walls constructed at the ends of the pier or bent. The crash walls should be added to both ends of the pier or bent even if the lengthening of the pier or bent was confined to one end only.

### 6.3.5 Vertical Clearance

Minimum vertical clearances for overpasses are given in **Table 2.10.1, Chapter 2** of this manual. Vertical clearance is the least distance between the bottom of the superstructure and the top of the highest rail utilized anywhere within the horizontal clearance zone determined by **Section 6.3.3** and **Table 6.3.3**. If a track is identified as an electrified railroad, the minimum vertical clearance shall be 24 ft. This provision is based on the FDOT's **South Florida Rail Corridor Clearance Policy for 25 KV service (Topic No. 000-725-003)**. In addition to existing electrified railroads, this provision applies to tracks identified as candidates for future electrification.

## 6.3.6 Special Considerations

1. Shoring and Cribbing requirements during construction should be accounted for in the preparation of the preliminary plans to assure compliance with the clearance criteria set forth herein. See **Figure 6.3**.

NOTE: Anything (e.g., cofferdams, footings, excavation, etc.) encroaching within 10 ft. of centerline of the track requires approval of the governing railroad.

2. Overpasses for electrified railroads may require protection screens.
3. Sometimes the substructure supports may be located between tracks or an outside track and the off-track equipment road.
4. Drainage from the section of the bridge above railroad right of way shall be drained away from the railroad right of way. When open scuppers are provided on the bridge, none shall be closer than 25 ft. from the centerline of the nearest track.

## 6.3.7 Widening of Existing Overpasses

The requirements for widening existing overpasses are as follows:

1. If existing horizontal or vertical clearances are less than those required for a new structure, it is required that the new portion of the structure be designed so as not to encroach into the existing clearances.
2. Permanent vertical clearances will have to take into account the track grade and the cross slope of the bridge superstructure. Therefore, it is generally more desirable to widen on the ascending side of the bridge cross slope.
3. Permanent horizontal clearances will have to take into account horizontal curves and substructures that are not presently parallel to the track.
4. Temporary construction clearances are particularly critical where existing clearances are already substandard. If vertical and horizontal clearances less than 22 ft. and 10 ft., respectively, are necessary, they will have to be approved on an individual basis. On high volume main lines, it may not be possible to reduce already restricted vertical clearances.
5. If widening requires construction of new widened approach fills, it is required that the same consideration be given to drainage design as required on new bridges. If new substructures provide less than 25 ft. horizontal clearance from center line of track, they must be designed with crash wall protection except as stated above.

The BDR/30% Structures Plans shall show a cross section at right angles to the centerline of the track where the centerline of bridge intersects the centerline of track. In situations where the substructure is not parallel to the track, or the track is curved, sections perpendicular to the centerline of the tracks shall be furnished at each substructure end.

If the Railroad is in an existing cut section, plan approvals will be considered by the governing railroad on an individual location basis. Factors to be considered will be the length, depth, and type material of the existing cut section, in addition to all of the previously mentioned factors.

**Figure 6.1 Track Section**

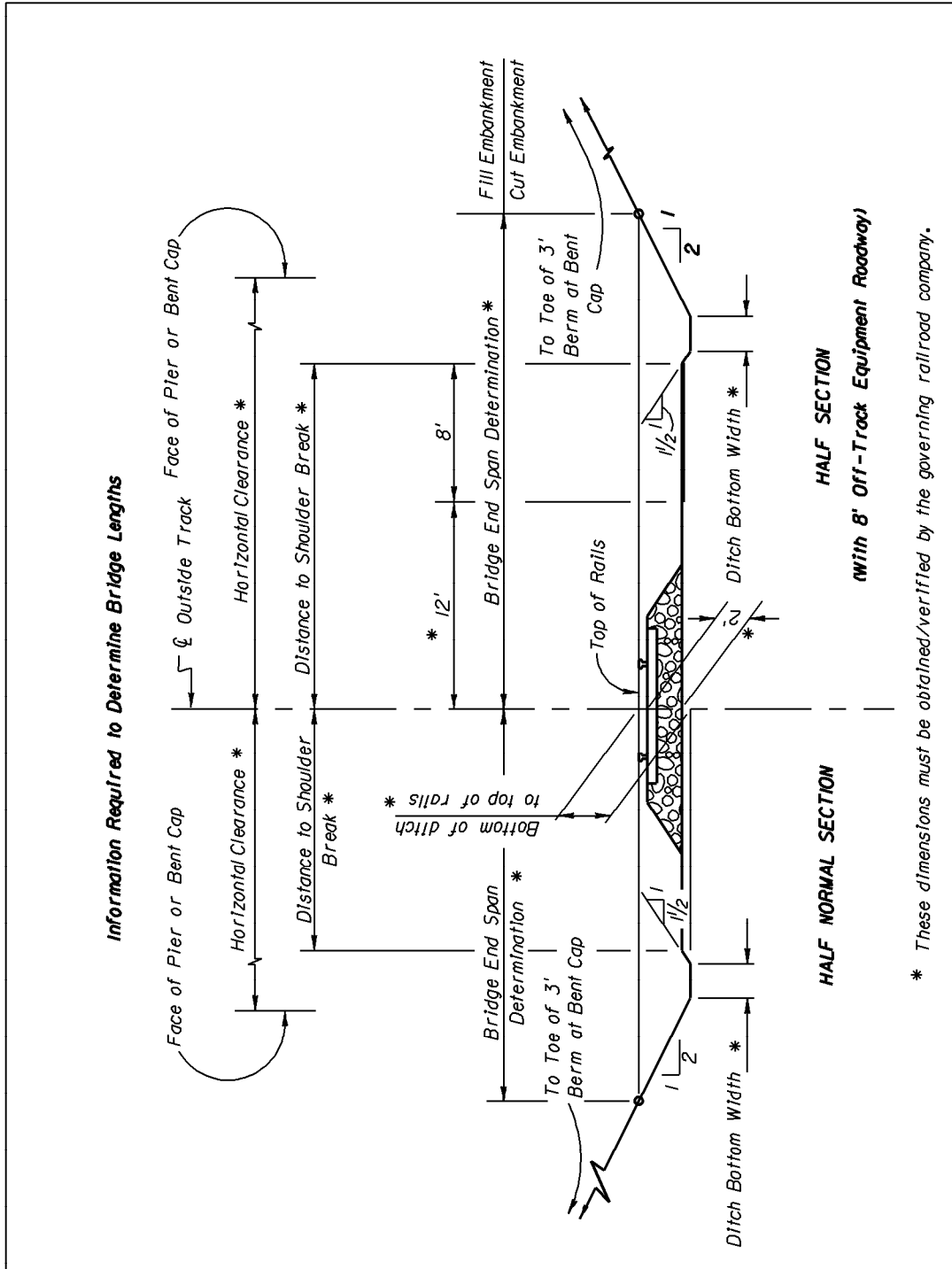
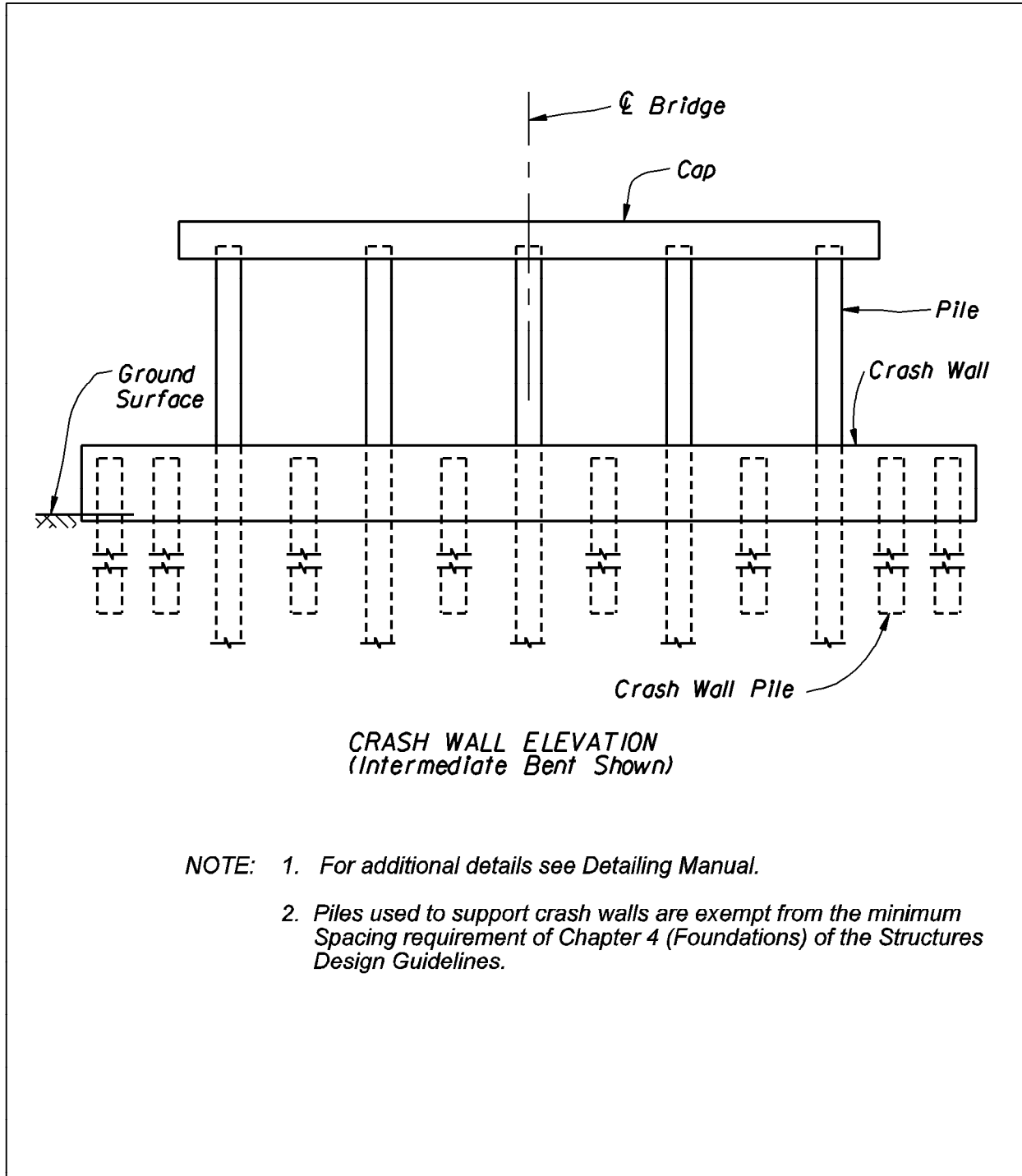
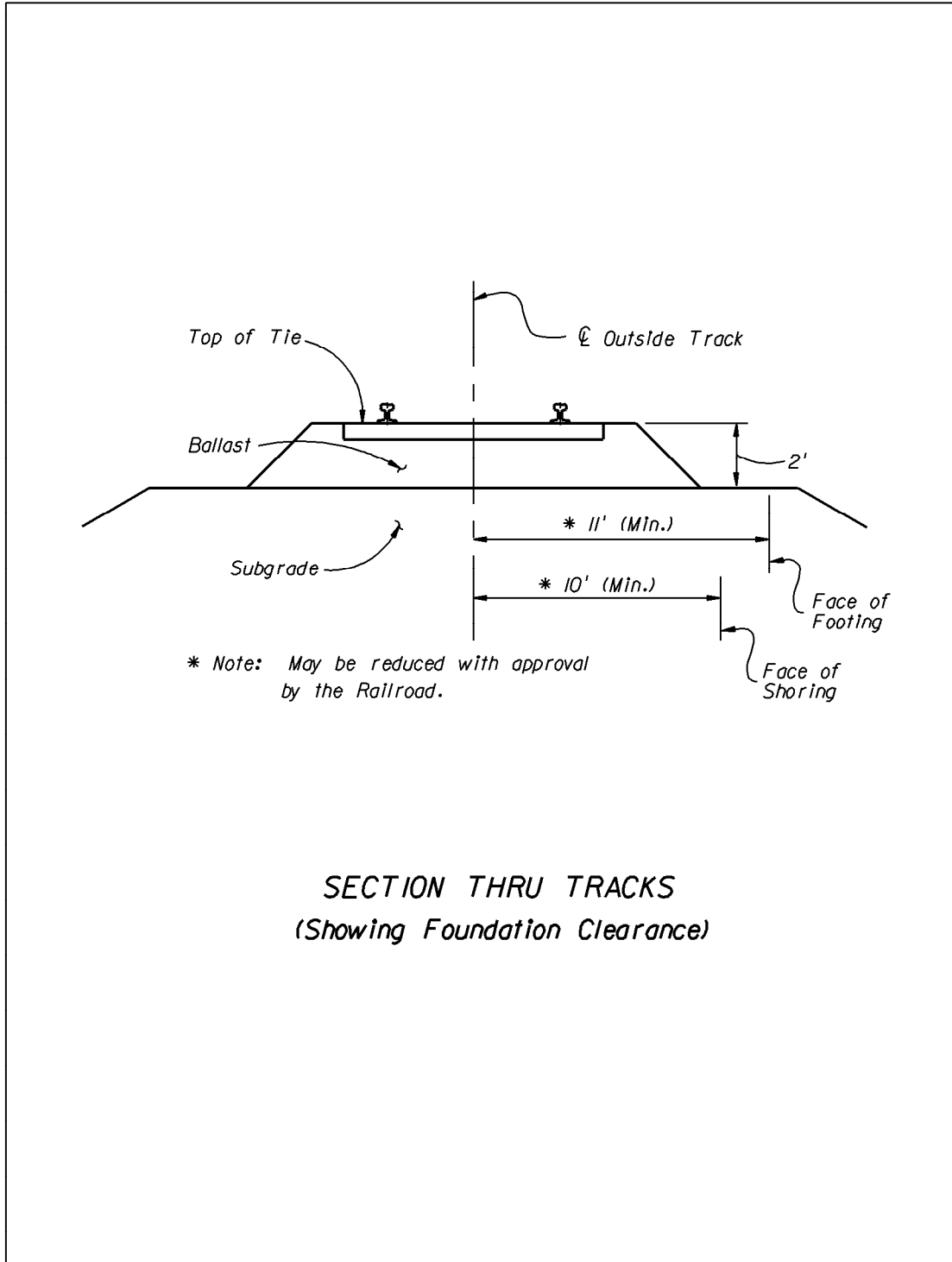




Figure 6.2 Crash Wall Elevation



**Figure 6.3 Section Thru Tracks**



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 7

### Signing, Marking, Lighting and Signals

7.1	General.....	7-1
7.2	Signing and/or Pavement Marking .....	7-2
7.2.1	Design Criteria.....	7-2
7.2.2	Wind Loading Criteria - Signs.....	7-3
7.2.3	No-passing Zones .....	7-4
7.2.4	Use of Local Street Names on Guide Signs.....	7-4
7.2.5	Signing and Pavement Marking Project Coordination.....	7-5
7.2.6	Foundation Criteria.....	7-5
7.2.7	Signing for Bridges with Steel Decks .....	7-5
7.3	Lighting.....	7-6
7.3.1	Design Criteria.....	7-6
7.3.2	Pole Design Criteria .....	7-7
7.3.2.1	General .....	7-7
7.3.2.2	Standard Aluminum Light Poles .....	7-7
7.3.3	Foundations Criteria .....	7-8
7.3.4	Wind Loading Criteria - Lighting .....	7-8
7.3.5	Lighting Project Coordination .....	7-8
7.3.6	Voltage Drop Criteria.....	7-9
7.3.7	Maintenance of Existing Lighting During Construction .....	7-9
7.3.8	Grounding.....	7-10
7.4	Traffic Signals.....	7-11
7.4.1	Design Criteria.....	7-11
7.4.2	Certification and Specialty Items.....	7-12

7.4.3	Stop Line Location.....	7-12
7.4.4	Controller Assemblies .....	7-13
7.4.5	Left Turn Treatments.....	7-13
7.4.6	Signal Preemption .....	7-15
7.4.7	Intersection Design - Lane Configuration .....	7-16
7.4.8	Signal Loops.....	7-18
7.4.9	Grounding and Electrical Bonding.....	7-19
7.4.10	Wind Loading - Traffic Signals .....	7-19
7.4.11	Foundation Criteria.....	7-20
7.4.12	Mast Arm and Monotube Supports.....	7-20
	7.4.12.1 Mast Arm Supports .....	7-20
	7.4.12.2 Standard Monotube Signal Structures .....	7-21
7.4.13	Traffic Signal Project Coordination.....	7-22
7.4.14	LED Light Sources .....	7-23
7.5	Foundation Design .....	7-24

## Tables

Table 7.2.1.1	Number of Luminaires for Various Sign Widths .....	7-3
---------------	--	-----

## **Chapter 7**

### **Signing, Marking, Lighting and Signals**

#### **7.1 General**

Traffic control devices are necessary to help ensure highway safety by providing the orderly and predictable movement of all traffic, motorized and nonmotorized, throughout the highway transportation system, and to provide such guidance and warnings as are needed to ensure the safe and informed operation of individual elements of the traffic stream. The design and layout of signs, signals, pavement marking and lighting should complement the basic highway design.

## 7.2 Signing and/or Pavement Marking

The designer responsible for a signing and/or pavement marking project should be aware that the design must comply with various standards. In addition to Department Standard Specifications, the following standards should be consulted:

**Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)** - The **MUTCD** was adopted by the Department as the uniform system of traffic control for use on the streets and highways of the State. This action was in compliance with **Chapter 316.0745** of the **Florida Statutes**. The **MUTCD** is therefore the basic guide for signing and marking. The requirements of the **MUTCD** must be met, as a minimum, on all roads in the State.

**Standard Highway Signs, FHWA** - This manual contains detailed drawings of all standard highway signs. Each sign is identified by a unique designation. Signs not included in this manual or in the **Design Standards** must be detailed in the plans.

**Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, AASHTO** and **Structures Design Guidelines, FDOT** - These documents provide structural design criteria.

**Design Standards** - These standards are composed of a number of standard drawings or indexes that address specific situations that occur on a large majority of construction projects.

**Manual on Uniform Traffic Studies (MUTS)** - This is a Department publication containing documentation for several types of traffic studies. This manual provides a systematic data collection procedure for the studies described.

**Traffic Engineering Manual** - This Department publication provides traffic engineering standards and guidelines to be used on the State Highway System.

### 7.2.1 Design Criteria

The **MUTCD** and the **Design Standards** should be consulted for sign location. All signs not bridge or barrier wall mounted and installed within the clear recovery zone, must be frangible or protected by an approved barrier. **Chapter 4, Roadside Safety** of this volume, contains detailed instructions on safety design.

Post sizes for single column signs are covered in the **Design Standards**. The supports for multipost signs are not in that reference and must be included in the plans. The designer must provide post sizes and length for each multipost sign. The Structures Design Office has written a program for personal computers that calculates post sizes and length for multipost signs. This program may be used for these calculations.

The design for all overhead sign structures and foundations shall be included in the plans. Refer to **Section 7.5, Foundation Design**, and **Chapter 29** of this volume for more information.

When specified, signs will be illuminated with 175 watt mercury vapor Deluxe White Lamps. The following table gives the number of luminaires for various sign widths. See the **Design Standards, Index 17505** for spacing details and mounting location.

**Table 7.2.1.1 Number of Luminaires for Various Sign Widths**

Sign Width (ft.)	To 10	To 21	To 32	To 43
Luminaires	1	2	3	4

## 7.2.2 Wind Loading Criteria - Signs

The wind loadings given below are based on the **AASHTO Standard Specification For Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals**. The Counties are listed by wind loading for the appropriate sign type.

### GROUND SIGNS:

- 60 mph Alachua, Baker, Bay, Bradford, Calhoun, Clay, Columbia, Escambia, Gadsden, Gilchrist, Hamilton, Holmes, Lafayette, Lake, Leon, Liberty, Jackson, Jefferson, Madison, Marion, Okaloosa, Putnam, Santa Rosa, Sumter, Suwannee, Union, Walton, Washington
- 70 mph Citrus, DeSoto, Dixie, Duval, Flagler, Franklin, Glades, Gulf, Hardee, Hendry, Hernando, Highlands, Hillsborough, Levy, Nassau, Okeechobee, Orange, Osceola, Pasco, Pinellas, Polk, Seminole, St. Johns, Taylor, Wakulla
- 80 mph Brevard, Charlotte, Collier, Indian River, Lee, Manatee, Martin, Palm Beach, Sarasota, St. Lucie, Volusia
- 90 mph Broward, Miami-Dade, Monroe

**OVERHEAD SIGNS:** See **Chapter 29** of this volume.



### 7.2.3 No-passing Zones

The procedures required by the Department for determining the limits of no-passing zones are contained in the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Studies, (MUTS)***. The requirements of this manual must be followed.

Limits of pavement markings for no-passing zones shall be established by one of the following methods:

1. On projects where existing roadway conditions (vertical and horizontal alignments) are to remain unaltered by construction, the no-passing zones study shall be accomplished as part of the design phase. This will be either by in-house staff or included in design consultant contracts.

The limits of the no-passing zones shall be included in the contract documents, and a note to this effect shown on the plans.

2. On projects with new or altered vertical and horizontal alignments, limits for no-passing zones shall be established during construction. The required traffic study and field determination of limits shall be performed through the design consultant as a post design service, or as part of a districtwide consultant contract for such services.

When this service is included as part of post design services, sufficient time shall be included to accomplish the required field operations without delaying or interfering with the construction process.

### 7.2.4 Use of Local Street Names on Guide Signs

The normal practice is to use route numbers on guide signs to designate roadways. In some areas, the local names for certain roadways are more familiar than the route number. For this situation, the local street name may be used. However, some roadways are known by more than one name as well as the route number. In many instances, the existing sign panel is not large enough to accommodate the street name and would require a new panel.

For these reasons, the decision to use local names on guide signs must be evaluated on a case-by-case basis. It is recommended that the District Traffic Operations Engineer be contacted for input in these decisions.

## 7.2.5 Signing and Pavement Marking Project Coordination

Coordination with other offices and other agencies is a very important aspect of project design. The offices discussed in this section are not intended to be an all inclusive list with which the designer should coordinate, but are those that are typically involved in a signing and marking project.

**Roadway Design** - The designer of a signing and pavement marking project receives the base sheets for design from the roadway designer, who can also provide any required cross sections. If the signing project is not an active roadway design project, base sheets may be obtained from existing plans.

**Utilities** - The District Utilities Engineer provides the coordination between the designer and the various utilities involved in the project. The Utilities Section can also identify potential conflicts with overhead and underground utilities or verify those which have previously been identified. The District Utilities Engineer should be contacted as early in the design phase as possible.

**Structures Design** - The Engineer of Record for Structures Design provides the design of the sign structures for overhead cantilever and overhead truss sign assemblies. This includes the design of the foundation for these structures. The Engineer of Record must be contacted early in the design phase to allow adequate time for coordination with the Geotechnical Engineer in obtaining the necessary soils information.

## 7.2.6 Foundation Criteria

Refer to **Section 7.5, Foundation Design**, for geotechnical requirements.

## 7.2.7 Signing for Bridges with Steel Decks

Slippery When Wet Signs (W8-5) shall be placed in advance of all movable and non-movable bridges with steel decks. Refer to **Section 2.1** of the **Traffic Engineering Manual (Topic Number 750-000-005)**. This also applies to temporary bridges.

## 7.3 Lighting

The designer responsible for a highway lighting project should be aware that the design must comply with various standards. In addition to the Department's Standard Specifications, the following standards should be consulted:

***An Information Guide for Roadway Lighting, AASHTO*** - This is the basic guide for highway lighting. It includes information on warranting conditions and design criteria.

***Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, AASHTO*** - This specification contains the strength requirements of the poles and bracket arms for the various wind loadings in Florida as well as the frangibility requirements. All luminaire supports, poles and bracket arms must be in compliance with these specifications.

***Design Standards*** - These indexes are composed of a number of standard drawings or indexes which address specific situations that occur on a large majority of construction projects.

### 7.3.1 Design Criteria

The ***AASHTO Guide for Roadway Lighting*** permits either the illuminance technique or the luminance technique to be used in the design of highway lighting. The luminance technique requires a more complex design process and knowledge of the reflective characteristics of the pavement surface used. These reflective characteristics change as the pavement ages and with variations in weather conditions. The Department has elected to use the illuminance technique for lighting design. The design values for light levels given by the ***AASHTO Guide for Roadway Lighting*** are maintained values. The light levels given in this criteria have been adjusted and are listed as average initial foot candle. This, in effect, sets the maintenance factor to be used in the calculation process to a value of 1.

Mounting height (M.H.) for conventional lighting is the vertical distance from the roadway to the light source, regardless of lateral placement of the pole. Pole setback is the horizontal distance from the edge of the travel lane to the pole.

Refer to ***Chapter 29*** of this volume for more information.

## 7.3.2 Pole Design Criteria

### 7.3.2.1 General

**Chapter 2** of this volume specifies the minimum horizontal clearances for light poles. High mast lighting poles should not be located in gore areas within the runout length as defined in the **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide**. Engineering judgment should be used when locating high mast poles adjacent to bridges and high fills. All conventional height poles shall be frangible unless bridge or barrier wall mounted.

Frangible pole installations shall not be used in areas of heavy pedestrian traffic where the hazard of a falling pole is a greater hazard to others than it is to the motorist. See the **Design Standards** for frangibility requirements.

The installation of lighting in certain locations (e.g., adjacent to residential areas) may require the luminaires to be shielded. This is especially true for high mast poles.

Poles on bridges over open bodies of water or on causeway sections should be considered for dampers. These poles are subject to sustained winds of a critical velocity that may induce vibrations in the pole.

### 7.3.2.2 Standard Aluminum Light Poles

The Department has developed an aluminum light pole standard for Conventional Lighting. The standard provides details for 40, 45 and 50 foot luminaire mounting heights on poles mounted either at grade or on fills up to 30 feet in height, all of which accommodate fixture arm lengths of 8, 10, 12 and 15 feet. Pole, arm and foundation details have been developed for each combination of arm length and for 10 foot increments of luminaire wind design height. Standard Aluminum Light Poles have been designed for 80, 100 and 110 mph design wind speeds.

The manufacturer of the Standard Aluminum Light Poles will be pre-approved by the Department and added to the Qualified Products List (QPL). When the standard assemblies are used, neither design details in the plans nor Shop Drawing submittals are required. Special designs, for those locations where the Standard Aluminum Light Poles are not appropriate, will require the pole Fabricator's complete Shop Drawings and the Specialty Engineer's sealed calculations, all submitted as Shop Drawings in accordance with **Section 5** of the **Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction**.

### 7.3.3 Foundations Criteria

Refer to **Section 7.5, Foundation Design**, for geotechnical requirements and **Chapter 29** of this volume for additional design information.

### 7.3.4 Wind Loading Criteria - Lighting

See **Chapter 29** of this volume.

### 7.3.5 Lighting Project Coordination

Coordination with other offices and other agencies is a very important aspect of project design. The offices discussed in this section are not intended to be an all inclusive list with which the designer should coordinate; instead it includes offices that are normally involved in projects.

**Roadway Design** - Normally the designer of a lighting project receives the base sheets for lighting design from the roadway designer. The roadway designer can also provide any required cross sections. If the lighting project is not an active roadway design project, base sheets may be obtained from existing plans.

**Utilities** - The District Utilities Engineer provides the coordination between the designer and the various utilities involved in the project. This usually is limited to agreements with the power company for electrical service. The Utilities Section can also identify potential conflicts with overhead and underground utilities or verify those which have previously been identified.

The Utilities Engineer should be contacted as soon as pole locations are set and the electrical load has been determined. The designer should indicate a preferred location for the electrical service.

**Drainage** - When the locations of high mast poles are established, they should be checked with the Drainage Section to determine if high water level is a problem. High mast poles are often located in the center of interchange loops. These same areas may be used as drainage retention areas. Coordination with the Drainage Section will alleviate this type problem.

**Structures Design** - Conventional height poles require the standard base shown in the *Design Standards* and *Standard Specifications*. A foundation design is only required in special cases. High mast poles, on the other hand, require foundation designs for each location. Soil bores are required for this design. The Engineer of Record for Structures Design provides the foundation design for high mast poles. He or she must be contacted early in the design phase to allow adequate time for coordination with the Geotechnical Engineer in obtaining necessary soils information.

**Chapter 14-64** of the *Department Rules* established the maintenance responsibility of lighting systems not on limited access or toll facilities as a local government function.

Normally the District Traffic Operations Engineer in conjunction with the District Utilities Engineer obtains the required maintenance agreements. The designer should coordinate with these offices to ensure that this activity is either underway or scheduled.

Any lighting project, especially high mast, adjacent to or in the vicinity of an airport, may be a potential problem. Any lighting project within 3 miles of an airport should be discussed with the Office of Public Transportation, Aviation Office to determine if a problem exists.

### **7.3.6 Voltage Drop Criteria**

When determining conductor sizes for lighting circuits, the maximum allowable voltage drop from the service point on any one circuit is 7%.

### **7.3.7 Maintenance of Existing Lighting During Construction**

The maintenance of existing lighting shall be the responsibility of the contractor only if the lighting is affected by the construction. The contractor should not be expected to replace lamps and pole knockdowns or to repair wiring if these problems are not caused by the construction work. As an example, a milling and resurfacing project should have no effect on the roadway lighting and the contractor should not be responsible for the maintenance of the lighting system.

The plans should specify the scope of the contractor's responsibility for the maintenance of existing lighting.

## 7.3.8 Grounding

The grounding requirements for lighting systems shall be as follows:

1. Install 20' of ground rod at each conventional height light pole and at each pull box.
2. Install 40' of ground rod at each electrical service point.
3. At each high mast pole, install an array of 6 ground rods 20' in length, as shown in the ***Design Standards, Index 17502***.

This information is covered in the ***Design Standards***. The above lengths of ground rod will be installed at each pole, pull box and service point, and the cost will be incidental to the unit or assembly being installed.

## 7.4 Traffic Signals

The designer responsible for a traffic signal project should be aware that the design must comply with various standards. In addition to the Department's **Standard Specifications**, the following standards should be consulted:

**Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD), FHWA** - The **MUTCD** was adopted by the Department as the uniform system of traffic control for use on the streets and highways of the State. The action was in compliance with **Chapter 316.0745** of the **Florida Statutes**. The **MUTCD** is therefore the basic guide for traffic signals. The requirements of the **MUTCD** must be met, as a minimum, on all roads in the State.

**Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, AASHTO** and **Chapter 29** of this volume - These documents provide structural design criteria.

**Design Standards** - These standards are composed of a number of standard drawings or indexes which address specific situations that occur on a large majority of constructions.

**Traffic Engineering Manual** – This Department publication provides traffic engineering standards and guidelines to be used on the State Highway System.

### 7.4.1 Design Criteria

The design of traffic signal mast arms and foundations shall be included in the plans. Refer to **Section 7.5, Foundation Design**, and **Chapter 29** of this volume for more information.

The horizontal clearance requirements for signal poles and controller cabinets are given in **Chapters 2** and **25** of this volume. Final location of these devices should be based on safety of the motorist, visibility of the signal heads, ADA requirements, and access by maintenance. When these clearances cannot be met with standard mast arm designs, alternatives and special designs must be coordinated with the District Design Engineer.

The **MUTCD**, as noted above, has been adopted as the uniform system of traffic control for use on the streets and highways of the state. The **MUTCD** is the basic guide for traffic signal design; therefore, the traffic signal designer should be familiar with this document. The criteria in the following sections supplement the **MUTCD**.



## 7.4.2 Certification and Specialty Items

Traffic signal equipment installed in Florida is required to be certified by the Department. The Office of Traffic Engineering in the Central Office is charged with the responsibility of certifying traffic control equipment. The designer of a traffic signal project, if requiring new equipment types or types not normally used, should contact Traffic Engineering in Tallahassee to determine the certification status of the equipment. Noncertified equipment cannot be used.

Standard Specifications have not been developed for all signal equipment. Some items are project dependent and the development of standard specifications is difficult. Specifications for these items must be developed on a project by project basis and included in the contract as a special provision. Some of these specialty items are included on the Department's approved products list. For these items, detailed specifications are not required. The Office of Traffic Engineering should be consulted on these items.

## 7.4.3 Stop Line Location

A stop line that is not properly located invites violation by the motorist. The **MUTCD** specifies the minimum and maximum distances from the signal head to the stop line for adequate visibility. The traffic signal designer must insure that this requirement is met.

Instead of relocating the signal heads, the stop lines at many intersections have been moved from their proper location to comply with these requirements. The tendency for the motorist is not to stop at the new stop line location, but rather to creep beyond the stop line. This could in some cases result in valid calls being dropped, thereby increasing delay and decreasing the overall efficiency of the intersection.

The first step in the design process should be to locate crosswalks and stop lines properly. Then the signal head location should be determined to meet the **MUTCD** requirements. This may require changing the mounting configuration. A box span, for example, may be required where a diagonal span would normally be installed.

## 7.4.4 Controller Assemblies

**Controller Timings:** The development of controller timings is a basic part of traffic signal design. A recent ruling from the Board of Professional Engineers stated that the development of timings is considered engineering and therefore requires the signature and seal of a professional engineer.

All traffic signal designs prepared for or by the Department shall include initial timings of all controllers. This is also true for signals to be included in local systems. If the timings in the plans are not implemented, it will be the responsibility of the agency providing the timings to insure they were prepared under the supervision of a professional engineer.

**Future Intersection Expansion:** Any planned intersection improvements, should be considered in the signal design. The controller type, cabinet type and the number of load switches are examples of design features that may be affected by future intersection improvements. It is the responsibility of the signal design engineer to determine if the current design should include capabilities for future improvements.

**Upgrade of Existing Controller Assemblies:** For projects requiring an upgrade to an existing controller assembly, the assembly may either be expanded or replaced. Minor expansions include the addition of load switches, new controller timings, and/or new controller unit if the cabinet is properly wired. These may be made in the field; therefore, expansion is the logical choice. On the other hand, major expansions include cabinet rewiring or any work requiring the removal of the cabinet back panel. Major expansions shall not be made in the field and replacement of the assembly is required. The designer may wish to contact the District Traffic Operations Engineer before making the decision to expand or replace an existing controller assembly.

## 7.4.5 Left Turn Treatments

The guidelines given below should be followed when determining signal treatments for left turns.

1. Single Turn Lane
  - a. Restrictive/Permissive Phasing - A five-section cluster should be used for this location. The head should be installed over the lane line between the left turn lane and through lane. The five-section cluster can serve as one of the two indications required for the through traffic.

- b. Restrictive Phasing - A separate signal head for the left turn lane with red, yellow and green arrow indications should be positioned over the center of the left turn lane.
2. Dual Turn Lanes - Only restrictive phasing should be used. Permissive movements should not be allowed for dual turn lanes. A single three-section head with red, yellow, and green arrow indications should be centered over each turn lane. These heads are in addition to the dual indications required for the thru movement.
3. Separated Turn and Thru Lanes - Turn lanes that are separated from the thru lanes more than 12 ft. by a raised or painted island shall not be operated in the permissive mode.
4. Single Lane Approach on Stem of "T" - Two three-section heads are required as minimum. All indications must be circular in this situation.
5. Two Approach Lanes on Stem of "T"
  - Option #1:** The approach may display two three-section heads with circular indications on all sections.
  - Option #2:** The approach may display a five-section cluster in conjunction with a three-section head. If the lanes are exclusive left and right turn lanes, then the five-section cluster should be placed over the center of the lane line and the three-section head over the major movement lane. If one of the lanes is a shared left and right lane, then the five-section cluster should be placed over the center of this lane and the three-section head over the center of the other lane.
  - Option #3:** The approach may display two three-section heads for the major movement and a single three-section head for the secondary movement.
6. Three Approach lanes on Stem of "T"
  - Option #1:** The approach may display two three-section heads for the major movement and one for the secondary movement (Exclusive left and right turn lanes).
  - Option #2:** The approach may display a five-section cluster in conjunction with three-section head (exclusive left and right turn lanes). The five-section cluster should be placed over the center of the lane line separating the left turn lane(s) from the right turn lane(s). The three-section head should be placed over the other lane line to provide dual indication for the major movement.
  - Option #3:** When the middle lane is a shared left and right turn lane, then a five-section cluster should be placed over the center of this lane and a three-section head placed over each of the other two lanes. Each head must contain green and yellow arrow indications in this situation.

**NOTE:**

1. For all cases, the approach shall display "dual indications". This means that there must be at least two heads with identical indications on the major approach. For example, if a green arrow is displayed on one head of the major movement or approach then a green arrow must be displayed on the second head.
2. The same signal display option should be used throughout an urban area to provide consistency in display to the motorist.
3. The use of advance and/or overhead lane use signs should be used as a supplement to pavement arrows on stems of signalized "T" intersections.

### **7.4.6 Signal Preemption**

The engineer responsible for the design of a traffic signal project should, as a matter of routine, check each intersection to determine if the need for signal preemption is present.

Intersections located within 500 ft. of moveable span bridges or railroad crossings should be considered for preemption. Those located at distances greater than 500 ft. should also be considered if the queues frequently extend to the moveable span or crossing. Intersections near fire stations require individual study. This is necessary to determine the interaction between the fire station vehicles and the intersection operation. This information must be known before the preemption sequence can be developed.

## 7.4.7 Intersection Design - Lane Configuration

The engineer responsible for the traffic signal design may be asked to verify the number and configuration of traffic lanes required for an intersection to function properly when signalized.

The results are dependent upon the traffic volumes used in the analysis. The traffic used for this calculation shall be the design hourly volume based on the 30th highest hour (K factor) and not a peak to daily (P/D) ratio based on a 24-hour count. The K factor volumes account for traffic variations through the year, and, in most cases, are higher than P/D volumes.

The K, D, and T factors convert the two-way AADT volumes to a one-way Design Hourly Volume (DHV). This is appropriate for the total approach movements. The AM and PM peak turning movement counts on each approach should be addressed individually. Current turning movement counts should be taken to determine the percentage of turns for each approach. These percentages should then be applied to the DHV for each approach volume to determine the turning volumes that should be used for the turn lane design calculations. These values should be compared to the movement counts supplied by Planning and the greater of the two values used for the design of turn lanes. The District Planning Office should be contacted to determine if recent counts are available and also if any use changes are planned which would require adjustments to the turn percentages found in the current counts.

Storage lanes for left turns can affect the capacity and safety of intersections. The storage length of a left turn lane is a critical design element. The queue of left turn vehicles in a storage lane of inadequate length may extend into the through lanes. The result is loss of capacity for the through lanes. The queue of through vehicles may also extend beyond the entrance of a short left turn storage lane, blocking access to the storage lane. Either case results in a less efficient operation of the intersection and may cause last minute lane changes, thereby increasing the possibility of conflicts.

Turn lanes should comply with the ***Design Standards, Index 301*** to the extent practical. The available queue length provided should be based on a traffic study.

The important factors that determine the length needed for a left turn storage lane are:

1. The design year volume for the peak hour (see discussion above).
2. An estimate for the number of cycles per hour.

**NOTE:** If the cycle length increases, the length of the storage for the same traffic also increases.

3. The signal phasing and timing.

There are several techniques used to determine necessary storage length. The following are suggested guidelines for left turn lanes.

1. Where protected left turn phasing is provided, an exclusive turn lane should be provided.
2. Left turn lanes should be provided when turn volumes exceed 100 vehicles per hour (VPH) and may be considered for lesser volumes if space permits.
3. For signalized intersections, the following formula may be used, assuming an average vehicle length of 25 feet.

$$Q = \frac{(2.0) (DHV) (25)}{N}$$

Where:

Q = design length for left turn storage in ft.

DHV = left turn volume during design peak hour, in VPH.

N = number of cycles per hour for peak hour, use N = 30 as default.

Note: Computer programs, such as **TRANSYT-7F**, are used to develop signal phasing and timing. One of the outputs of these programs is the queue length. For projects where traffic signal timing is included as a part of the project, the output of these programs should be considered in determining storage length.

4. Where left turn volumes exceed 300 vph, a double left turn should be considered.
5. When right of way has already been purchased, and the designer has to choose between a long wide grass median or a long left turn lane, the storage length for the left turn should be as long as practical without hindering other access.

Right turn lanes are provided for many of the same reasons as left turn lanes. Right turns are, however, generally made more efficiently than left turns. Right turn storage lanes should be considered when right turn volume exceeds 300 vph and the adjacent through volume also exceeds 300 vehicles per hour per lane (vphpl).

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 7.4.8 Signal Loops

Traffic signal loops are detailed in the *Design Standards, Index 17781*. These loops are standard and will be appropriate for most locations.

The traffic signals for each intersection should be individually designed. The requirement for type and placement of loops is a part of this design. The above standard allows for some variation in size and placement of the standard loops. These modifications are intended to be used only when required by the design of a particular location.

## 7.4.9 Grounding and Electrical Bonding

The grounding requirements for traffic signal components shall be as follows:

1. Install 20' of ground rod at each signal pole, mast arm, pedestrian signal, etc. and at each pull box.
2. Install 40' of ground rod at each electrical service and controller cabinet.

This information is covered in the *Design Standards* and specifications. The above lengths of ground rod will be installed at each component, and the cost will be incidental to the unit or assembly being installed.

The designer will not be required to add plan notes or develop quantities for ground rods and the use of the 620 pay item number for grounding electrode will not be required on the plans.

*Design Standards, Index 17736* requires a bond wire connecting all poles, controllers, mast arms and pedestrian signal pedestals. This conductor is incidental to the cost of the signal installation.

## 7.4.10 Wind Loading - Traffic Signals

See *Chapter 29* of this volume.



## 7.4.11 Foundation Criteria

Refer to **Section 7.5, Foundation Design**, for geotechnical requirements.

## 7.4.12 Mast Arm and Monotube Supports

### 7.4.12.1 Mast Arm Supports

All new signals installed on the State Highway System that are within the approximate ten mile coastline boundary defined by the State Traffic Engineering Office Implementation Guidelines shall be supported by mast arms with the signal head(s) rigidly attached to the mast arm. A span wire assembly may be used within this ten mile coastline boundary only when it is impractical to use a mast arm or overhead rigid structure and a Design Variation has been approved in accordance with **Chapter 23** of this volume.

The signal support system used for signals located outside the ten mile coastline boundary shall be selected after consideration of appropriate site conditions, design requirements and cost.

The Structures Design Office has developed a Traffic Signal Mast Arm Standard. The standard includes single arm designs, with and without luminaires and double arm designs without luminaires. The standard designs include both 90 and 110 mph design wind speeds. A foundation and base plate design has been developed for each pole type.

The manufacturer of the standard mast arms will be pre-approved by the Department and added to the Qualified Products List (QPL). When the standard assemblies are used, design details in the plans or shop drawing submittals will not be required. Special designs, for those locations where the standard design is not appropriate, will require complete design details for the pole, arm and foundation to be included in the plans, and will require shop drawings.

Mast arm design will require close coordination between the signal designer and the Structures Office. If standard designs are utilized, the Structures Engineer shall review applicability of structural parts with site conditions. Early coordination is important.

The Signal Designer will provide the Structures Office a copy of the mast arm tabulation sheet that includes the following information:

1. The pole and arm locations
2. Elevations and offsets
3. Signal and sign sizes and locations on the mast arm

The Structures Office will analyze the data and determine the standard pole and arm configuration required, and complete the "Mast Arm Assemblies Design Table" (**Structures Standard Drawings, Index S-1700**) for the plans. If a special design is required the Structures Office will provide the complete design details for the special mast arm assembly. A special design will require additional design time for either the Department or Consultant Structures Office. As noted above, the standard includes a foundation design for each pole. These designs were based on assumed soil conditions. The Structures Office will verify the project soil conditions to ensure the standard foundations are adequate. A special design will be developed if required.

The engineer responsible for signal design will seal the mast arm tabulation sheet and the Structures Design Engineer will seal the structures data table and special design details if required for the plans.

Refer to **Volume II, Chapter 24** for instructions on the mast arm tabulation sheet.

### **7.4.12.2 Standard Monotube Signal Structures**

A single monotube span may be used in lieu of conventional mast arm or span wire signal structures at intersections where right of way, aesthetics or required Mast Arm lengths may be of concern, or where FDOT policy negates the use of Span Wire Assemblies.

The Standard Monotube Signal Structures include designs for four different span lengths and are applicable for mounting heights ranging from 19 to 23 feet, inclusive. A foundation and base plate design has been developed for each span length.

Manufacturers of Standard Monotube Signal Structures will be pre-approved by the Department and added to the Qualified Products List (QPL). When the standard assemblies are used, neither design details in the plans nor Shop Drawing submittals are required. Special designs, for those locations where the standard design cannot be utilized, will require complete design details for the poles, arm and foundations to be included in the plans, and will require shop drawings.

Monotube Signal Structure design requires close coordination between the signal designer and the structures engineer. The structures engineer must determine the applicability of the standard structural parts with the specific site conditions. Early coordination is important.

The signal designer will provide the structures office a copy of the signalization plans that will include the "Monotube Tabulation Sheet" that will itemize the following information:

1. Pole locations
2. Elevations and offsets
3. Signal and sign size and location on the Monotube Signal Structure

The structures engineer will analyze the data and determine which standard monotube configuration is required. As noted above, the standard includes a foundation design for each monotube signal structure. These designs were based on conservative, pre-assigned soil conditions. The structures engineer will verify the project soil conditions to ensure the standard foundations are adequate. A special foundation design, for the Standard Monotube Signal Structure, will need to be developed only in circumstances where poorer soil conditions are encountered.

### **7.4.13 Traffic Signal Project Coordination**

Coordination with other offices and other agencies is a very important aspect of project design. The offices discussed in this section are not intended to be an all inclusive list with which the designer should coordinate, instead it includes offices that are normally involved in projects.

**Roadway Design** - Normally the designer of a signal project receives the base sheets for design from the roadway designer. The roadway designer can also provide any required cross sections. If the signal project is not an active roadway design project, base sheets may be obtained from existing plans.

**Utilities** - The District Utilities Engineer provides the coordination between the designer and the various utilities involved in the project. This usually is limited to agreements with the power company for electrical service. The Utilities Section can also identify potential conflicts with overhead and underground utilities or verify those that have previously been identified.

The Utilities Engineer should be contacted early in the design phase. The designer should indicate a preferred location for the electrical service.

**Structures Design** - The Engineer of Record for Structures Design provides the design of the traffic signal mast arms and strain poles. This includes the design of the foundation for these structures. The Engineer of Record must be contacted early in the design phase to allow adequate time for coordination with the Geotechnical Engineer in obtaining the necessary soils information.

**Pedestrian Coordinator** - The pedestrian coordinator should be consulted to be sure that all of the pedestrian concerns have been fully addressed.

#### **7.4.14 LED Light Sources**

The standard light source for signal indications has been the incandescent lamp. The Department is now adopting the Light Emitting Diode (LED) as the standard for the red indication. The yellow and green indications will continue to use the incandescent lamp. This will be the Department standard for traffic signals; however, if requested by the local maintaining agency and approved by the District Traffic Operations Engineer, the incandescent lamp may be used for all indications. For those situations where the standard arrangement is not used, the information should be shown on the plans and the pay item number will be coded as a special.

## 7.5 Foundation Design

For foundations for standard conventional Roadway Lighting Poles, refer to the **Design Standards, Index 17515, Sheet 3 of 8**. Refer to the **Design Standards, Index 17503** for foundations for non-standard conventional Roadway Lighting Poles. **Section 715** of the **Specifications** allows the screw type foundation as an alternate. The Geotechnical Engineer shall determine whether the soil characteristics meet the requirements of **Section 715**. If it is determined that the soil conditions do not allow the use of the screw type foundation as shown in **Section 715**, a note shall be added to the plans stating: "Use of the screw type foundation is not allowed on this project."

The **Design Standards, Index 17742, Mast Arm Assemblies** and **Index 17746, Monotube Signal Structures** include foundations for the standard assemblies. Unique site circumstances may require the foundation variables to be modified from the foundations shown. If special designs are required, the Geotechnical Engineer shall provide the soil information to be used by the District Structures Design Engineer during the design phase of the project.

The foundation design and drawings where special foundations are required for locations where standard Mast Arm Assemblies and Standard Monotube Signal Structures are used and for overhead sign structures, high mast light poles, and traffic signal strain poles shall be the responsibility of the Structures Engineer of Record (EOR). The Geotechnical Engineer shall provide the EOR the following soils information (this information may be derived from the borings of other nearby structures or from roadway borings):

1. Soil Type
2. Effective Unit Weight of the Soil
3. Seasonal High Water Table Elevation
4. Effective Friction Angle of the Soil (if applicable)
5. Cohesion Value (if applicable)
6. Allowable Bearing Capacity (if applicable)

The above soils information shall be included in the plans. Additionally, Soil Boring Data Sheets shall be included in the plans, except for strain poles. This will provide the Contractor with the conditions for which the foundations were designed as compared to actual on-site conditions and establish criteria for any future analysis of the foundations.

## Chapter 8

### Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

8.1	General.....	8-1
8.2	References .....	8-2
8.3	Pedestrian Facilities .....	8-3
8.3.1	Sidewalks .....	8-3
8.3.2	Disability Considerations .....	8-4
8.4	Bicycle Facilities .....	8-5
8.4.1	Bicycle Lanes (Designated).....	8-5
8.4.2	Bicycle Lanes (Undesignated).....	8-6
8.4.3	Bicycle Route Systems.....	8-6
8.5	Drainage and Utility Considerations .....	8-7
8.6	Shared Use Paths .....	8-8
8.6.1	Considerations .....	8-8
8.6.2	Widths .....	8-9
8.6.3	Cross Slopes .....	8-9
8.6.4	Grades.....	8-11
8.6.5	Horizontal Clearance.....	8-11
8.6.6	Vertical Clearance .....	8-12
8.6.7	Design Speed.....	8-12
8.6.8	Horizontal Alignment .....	8-12
8.6.8.1	Minimum Radii .....	8-12
8.6.8.2	Stopping Sight Distance.....	8-12
8.6.9	Vertical Alignment .....	8-13

8.6.10	Separation Between Shared Use Path and Roadway .....	8-13
8.6.11	Path Railings .....	8-13
8.6.12	Lighting.....	8-14
8.6.13	Signing, Pavement Marking, and Signalization .....	8-14
8.7	Bridges, Overpasses, and Underpasses.....	8-15
8.8	Drop-off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists .....	8-16
8.9	Florida Intrastate Highway System.....	8-17

Tables

Table 8.6.4	Maximum Grade Lengths .....	8-11
Table 8.6.8.1	Minimum Radii for Shared Use Paths .....	8-12
Table 8.6.8.2	Minimum Stopping Sight Distances.....	8-13

Figures

Figure 8.1	Pedestrian Bridge Typical Section .....	8-18
Figure 8.2	Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists .....	8-19

## Chapter 8

# Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

### 8.1 General

It is the goal of the Department and in accordance with **Section 335.065(1)(a), Florida Statutes**, that “Bicycle and pedestrian ways shall be given full consideration in the planning and development of transportation facilities, including the incorporation of such ways into state, regional, and local transportation plans and programs. Bicycle and pedestrian ways shall be established in conjunction with construction, reconstruction, or other change of any state transportation facility, and special emphasis shall be given to projects within 1 mile of an urban area.”

Pedestrian and bicycle facilities must be given full consideration on all proposed projects including Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation (RRR), safety, and traffic operation projects. Their inclusion on intersection reconstruction projects is particularly important as these may be excepted out of later roadway projects. Where an existing route for bicyclists is present it shall be maintained. For projects within the operational limits of a local transit agency service area, consideration should be given to connectivity of pedestrian and bicycle facilities with transit stops. Decisions on appropriate pedestrian and bicycle facilities shall be determined with input from the District Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinators, District Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Coordinators, and the District Public Transportation staff. The project records must support and document why facilities were not included.



## **8.2           References**

1.     ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)***
2.     ***Design Standards***
3.     ***FDOT Pedestrian Planning and Design Handbook***
4.     ***FDOT Bicycle Facilities Planning and Design Handbook***
5.     ***FDOT Trail Intersection Design Handbook***
6.     ***AASHTO Guide for Bicycle Facilities***
7.     ***Highway Capacity Manual***
8.     ***Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA)/Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction (FACBC)***
9.     ***Uniform Vehicle Code (UVC)***
10.    ***AASHTO Guide Specifications for Design of Pedestrian Bridges***
11.    ***Structures Design Office Standard Drawings***

## 8.3 Pedestrian Facilities

All roadways and bridges where pedestrian travel is expected should have separate walking areas such as sidewalks or shared use paths that are outside the vehicle travel lanes. Refer to **Section 8.6** for shared use paths.

### 8.3.1 Sidewalks

Sidewalks are walkways parallel to the roadway and designed for use by pedestrians. Generally, sidewalks should be constructed along both sides of arterial roadways that are not provided with shoulders, even though pedestrian traffic may be light. However, the construction of sidewalks on both sides of the street would not be required in such cases as when the roadway parallels a railroad or drainage canal and pedestrians would not be expected. If sidewalks are constructed on the approaches to bridges, they should be continued across the structure. If continuous sidewalks are constructed on only one side of the street, pedestrians should be provided access to transit facilities located on the opposite side of the street.

The minimum width of a sidewalk shall be 5 ft. when separated from the curb by a buffer strip. The minimum separation for a 5 ft. sidewalk from the back of curb is 2 ft. The buffer strip should be 6 ft. where possible to eliminate the need to narrow or reroute sidewalks around driveways. If the sidewalk is located adjacent to the curb, the minimum width of sidewalk is 6 ft. Grades on sidewalks should not exceed 5% when not adjacent to a travel way. There should be enough sidewalk cross slope to allow for adequate drainage, however the maximum shall be no more than 2% to comply with ADA requirements. Edge drop-offs should be avoided. When drop-offs cannot be avoided, they should be shielded as discussed in **Section 8.8**.

A 5-foot wide sidewalk that connects a transit stop or facility with an existing sidewalk or shared use path shall be included to comply with ADA accessibility standards

Particular attention should be given to pedestrian accommodations at the termini of each project. If full accommodations cannot be provided due to the limited scope or an existing sidewalk isn't present at the termini, then temporary measures should be considered such as: Extend sidewalk and project limits to next appropriate pedestrian crossing or access point. If special accommodations are made, it is equally important to address these measures on the adjoining projects. In all cases, the District Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator should be contacted to make a determination regarding continuous passage.

On roadways with flush shoulders, the minimum width of sidewalk is 5 feet.

On existing roadways with flush shoulders, sidewalks or pedestrian pathways should be placed as far from the roadway as practical in the following sequence of desirability:

1. Outside of the roadway right of way in a separate, offsite and/or parallel facility.
2. At or near the right of way line.
3. Outside of the clear zone.
4. As far from edge of driving lane as practical.

For new roadway construction with flush shoulders, the sidewalk should be outside of the clear zone.

### **8.3.2 Disability Considerations**

Pedestrian facilities must be designed in accordance with ADA to accommodate the physically and visually challenged citizens whose mobility is dependent on wheelchairs and other devices. In areas with sidewalks, curb ramps shall be incorporated at locations where a marked crosswalk adjoins the sidewalk. **Index 304** of the **Design Standards** sets forth requirements.

To assist pedestrians who are visually or mobility impaired, curb ramps should be parallel to the crossing. By providing ramps parallel to the crossing, the pedestrian is directed into the crossing. At intersections where more than one road is crossed, each crossing should have a separate curb ramp. Under no circumstance should a curb ramp be installed allowing a pedestrian to enter a crossing without providing a curb cut (or at grade sidewalk if no curb is present) on the opposite side of the crossing.

## 8.4 Bicycle Facilities

The bicycle has become an important element for consideration in the roadway design process. The emphasis in bicycle planning has changed from the attempts to provide completely separate facilities for bicyclists, to the growing recognition that bicyclists are legitimate users of the roadway. Appropriately designed and located bicycle facilities play an important role in encouraging safe bicycle travel. Bicycle facility needs include bicycle lanes, route systems, and separate paths with the appropriate signs, control devices, parking facilities, etc. Measures that can considerably enhance a route's safety and capacity for bicycle traffic are:

1. Paved shoulders, either designated or undesignated as bike lanes
2. Bicycle-safe drainage grates
3. Manhole covers flush with grade
4. Maintaining a smooth, clean riding surface
5. Bicycle corridors on off-system routes

### 8.4.1 Bicycle Lanes (Designated)

A designated bicycle lane is a portion of the roadway designated by striping, signing and/or special pavement markings for the exclusive use of bicyclists. FDOT striping is shown in the ***Design Standards***. Designated lane signs shall be used in accordance with the ***MUTCD***.

Designated bicycle lane width requirements are provided in ***Chapter 2*** of this volume.

On roadways with flush shoulders, the FDOT standard 5' paved shoulder provides for a bicycle lane.

On curb and gutter roadways, a 4' width measured from the lip of the gutter is required. This provides for a 5.5' width to the face of curb when FDOT Type F curb and gutter is used. The 1.5' gutter width should not be considered as part of the rideable surface area, but this width provides useable clearance to the curb face. Where parking is present, the bike lane should be placed between the parking lane and the travel lane and have a minimum width of 5'. At intersections with right turn lanes, the bicycle lane should continue adjacent to the through lane between the through lane and the right turn lane, and should be 5' in width, 4' minimum. Standard drawings for various bicycle lane configurations are provided in ***Index 17346, Design Standards*** (2002 edition).

Wide curb lanes no longer meet Department requirements for bicycle lanes. In some conditions, such as RRR projects, they may be the only practical option. If possible, on existing multilane facilities without bicycle lanes, and if truck volumes are low, consideration should be given to reducing vehicle lane width to 11 ft. and providing a bicycle lane. Bicycle lanes can be provided by widening existing roadways, paving shoulder areas, eliminating parking, or using emergency lanes normally provided for disabled vehicles.

### **8.4.2 Bicycle Lanes (Undesignated)**

An undesignated bicycle lane is separated from traffic lanes by an edge stripe and should follow the same requirements for width and location as a designated bicycle lane, except it does not include bicycle lane signs and/or special pavement markings.

### **8.4.3 Bicycle Route Systems**

Bicycle route systems are linked by signs to aid bicyclists. Bicycle route systems are ineffectual unless signs are highly specific, giving a clear indication of destination. It may be advantageous to sign some urban and rural roadways as bicycle route systems. Bicycle route signing should not end at a barrier. Information directing the bicyclists around the barrier should be provided.

The decision whether to provide bicycle route systems should be based on the advisability of encouraging bicycle use on a particular road, instead of on parallel and adjacent roadways. The roadway width, along with factors such as volume, speed, types of traffic, parking conditions, grade, sight distance and connectivity to transit, should be considered when determining the feasibility of bicycle route systems. Roadway improvements such as adequate pavement width, drainage grates, railroad crossings, pavement surface, maintenance schedules and signals responsive to bicycles should always be considered before a roadway is identified as a bicycle route system. Further guidance on signing bicycle route systems is provided in the *MUTCD*.

## 8.5 Drainage and Utility Considerations

Drainage inlets, grates and utility covers are potential problems to bicyclists. When a new roadway is designed, all such grates and covers should be kept out of the bicyclists' expected path. Refer to the *Design Standards* for required grates and inlet tops.

See *Chapter 2* of this volume for horizontal clearances for light poles.

## 8.6 Shared Use Paths

Shared use paths are typically facilities on exclusive rights of way and with minimal cross flow of motor vehicles. They are almost always used by pedestrians, joggers, in-line skaters, bicyclists, and in some cases equestrians. However, the bicycle's operating characteristics will dictate the design of shared use paths. The criteria in this section apply to paved shared use paths. The term *path* as used in this section refers to these paved shared use paths. An example typical design is provided for guidance in ***Volume II, Exhibit TYP-15***.

Shared use paths should be thought of as extensions of the highway system that are intended for the exclusive or preferential use of bicycles and pedestrians in much the same way as freeways are intended for the exclusive or preferential use of motor vehicles. Well-planned and designed paths can provide good pedestrian and bicycle mobility.

Shared use paths can serve a variety of purposes. They can provide a school age child or a bicycle commuter with a shortcut away from busy roadways. They can provide recreational cyclists a peaceful place to ride, away from motor vehicle traffic. Shared use paths can be located along abandoned railroad rights of way, the banks of rivers and other similar areas. They can provide bicycle access to areas that are otherwise served only by limited access highways and closed to bicycles.

### 8.6.1 Considerations

Shared use paths adjacent to a roadway may be considered if the following conditions are met:

1. The path will be separated from the roadway.
2. There will be few access points or roadways crossing the path.
3. There will be adequate access to local streets and other facilities along the path.
2. There is a commitment to provide path continuity with other bikeways throughout the corridor.

Shared use paths are not replacements for on-street bike lanes. Within a roadway right of way, bike lanes are the safest, most efficient bicycle facility. When paths are located immediately adjacent to roadways, some operational problems are likely to occur:

1. Paths require one direction of bicycle traffic to ride against motor vehicle traffic, which is contrary to the normal Rules of the Road. Motorists are not in the habit of scanning for traffic from that direction.
2. At path ends, bicyclists riding against traffic will tend to continue to travel on the wrong side of the street, as do bicyclists getting on to a path. Wrong-way travel by bicyclists is a major cause of bicycle/automobile crashes and should be discouraged.
3. Many bicyclists will use the roadway instead of the path because they have found the roadway to be safer, less congested, more convenient, or better maintained.
4. Bicyclists using shared use paths generally are required to stop or yield at all cross streets and driveways. Bicyclists using the through roadway have the same priority over cross traffic, because they have the same right of way as motorists.
5. Because of the proximity of motor vehicle traffic to opposing bicycle traffic, barriers may be necessary. Barriers keep motor vehicles separated from paths and path users from traffic lanes but reduce maneuvering room and can complicate maintenance.

## **8.6.2 Widths**

The minimum width of a one-directional shared use path is 6 feet. It should be recognized, however, that one-way paths will often be used as two-way facilities unless effective measures are taken to assure one-way operation.

The minimum width for a two-way shared use path is 12 feet. Under certain conditions it may be necessary or desirable to increase the width of a path due to substantial use by bicycles, joggers, skaters and pedestrians, by large maintenance or emergency vehicles and steep grades. Only under severe constraints should providing less than 12 feet be considered.

## **8.6.3 Cross Slopes**

Since pedestrian use is expected on shared use paths, ADA requirements must be met. Therefore, the maximum cross-slope should be 2%.

The maximum cross-slope for a path used exclusively by bicyclists is 6%.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 8.6.4 Grades

To meet ADA the maximum grade is 5%. Grades greater than 5% should be considered ramps and designed accordingly. Maximum ramp slopes are 8.33% and can have a maximum rise of 30 inches, with a level landing at least 60 inches in length.

To accommodate bicycles exclusively, grades should not exceed 5%, since steeper grades cause difficulties for many bicyclists. If the terrain makes it necessary to use steeper grades on short sections, the following restrictions are recommended:

**Table 8.6.4 Maximum Grade Lengths**

Grade (%)	Maximum Length
6%	For up to 800 feet
7%	For up to 400 feet
8%	For up to 300 feet
9%	For up to 200 feet
10%	For up to 100 feet
11+%	For up to 50 feet

NOTE: When using a longer grade, 4 to 6 feet of additional width should be added to the path to allow some bicyclists to dismount and walk their bikes. Additional clear distances should be provided and sight distances must be modified to accommodate longer grades.

Refer to **Section 8.6.9** for controls on grade changes.

## 8.6.5 Horizontal Clearance

A 4-foot clear distance on both sides of a shared use path is necessary for safe operation. A 2-foot wide graded area with a maximum 1:6 slope should be maintained adjacent to both sides of the path.

Edge drop-offs should be avoided. When drop-offs cannot be avoided they should be shielded as discussed in **Section 8.8**.

## 8.6.6 Vertical Clearance

The vertical clearance to obstructions should be a minimum of 8 feet. However, vertical clearance may need to be greater to permit passage of maintenance and emergency vehicles. In underpasses and tunnels, 10 feet is desirable.

## 8.6.7 Design Speed

A design speed of 20 mph should normally be used. When a downgrade exceeds 4 percent, a design speed of 30 mph should be considered.

## 8.6.8 Horizontal Alignment

### 8.6.8.1 Minimum Radii

The effective superelevation is usually limited to the existing 2% cross slope and may be positive or negative. If a transition is needed, then a minimum 75-foot transition should be used. See **Table 8.6.8.1** for minimum radii for shared use paths.

**Table 8.6.8.1 Minimum Radii for Shared Use Paths**

Design Speed	Superelevation	Friction Factor	Minimum Radius (ft.)
20	2%	0.27	95
20	-2%	0.27	110
30	2%	0.22	250
30	-2%	0.22	300

### 8.6.8.2 Stopping Sight Distance

The minimum stopping sight distances for a shared use path are given in **Table 8.6.8.2**. For a shared use path the object height is assumed 0.0 feet and the eye height is 4.5 feet.

**Table 8.6.8.2 Minimum Stopping Sight Distances**

MINIMUM STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE (FEET) FOR 20 MPH PATH = 127 FEET, FOR 30 MPH PATH = 230 FEET														
Design Speed	GRADES													
	-9%	-8%	-7%	-6%	-5%	-4%	-3%	3%	4%	5%	6%	7%	8%	9%
20 MPH	Use 30 MPH Values					137	134	121	119	118	116	115	114	113
30 MPH	298	287	277	268	260	Use 20 MPH Values								

### 8.6.9 Vertical Alignment

The minimum length of vertical curve necessary to provide minimum stopping sight distance at various speeds on crest vertical curves is selected by using the formula listed below:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{When } S > L: \quad L &= 2S - (900 / A) & L &= \text{Min. Length of Vertical Curve (ft.)} \\ & & A &= \text{Algebraic Grade Difference (\%)} \\ \text{When } S < L: \quad L &= AS^2 / 900 & S &= \text{Stopping Sight Distance (ft.)} \end{aligned}$$

### 8.6.10 Separation Between Shared Use Path and Roadway

When two-way shared use paths are located adjacent to a roadway, a 5-foot separation should be provided. This demonstrates to both path users and motorists that the shared use path is a separate facility.

On roadways with flush shoulders, this 5 foot separation is measured from the outside edge of shoulder to the inside edge of the path. On roadways with curbs, the 5 foot separation is measured from the outside edge of the traveled way to the inside edge of the path.

### 8.6.11 Path Railings

Railings or fences shall be provided as indicated in **Section 8.8**.

## 8.6.12 Lighting

Lighting for shared use paths is important and should be considered where riding at night is expected, such as paths serving college students or commuters, and at roadway intersections. Lighting should also be considered through underpasses or tunnels. Lighting standards are provided in **Table 2.15.1** of this volume.

## 8.6.13 Signing, Pavement Marking, and Signalization

The **MUTCD** shall be consulted for all signage, pavement markings, and signals, especially on path/roadway intersections.

## 8.7 Bridges, Overpasses, and Underpasses

A bridge, an overpass, or an underpass may be necessary to provide pedestrian/bicycle continuity to shared use paths.

Overpasses and bridges for shared use paths should be covered or screened to reduce the likelihood of objects being dropped or thrown onto the roadway below. See **Figure 8.1** for typical detail. The overpass or bridge design shall be in accordance with the criteria established below:

1. **AASHTO Guide Specifications for Design of Pedestrian Bridges.**
2. For vertical clearances see **Chapter 2, Table 2.10.1** of this volume.
3. The minimum walkway width on a pedestrian overpass is 8 ft. On new structures, the minimum clear width should be the same as the approach path width. The desirable clear width should include the minimum 2 ft. wide clear area on each side.
4. Chain link (enclosed type) should be provided across the entire walkway. Use of chain link fence on ramps of the pedestrian bridges will be determined on a project-by-project basis.
5. Pedestrian ramps should be provided at all pedestrian separation structures. When possible, a stairway can be provided in addition to a ramp. Maximum grade of ramps shall be 8.33%. Intermediate level platforms 5 ft. long shall be provided at maximum 30 ft. intervals. Additionally, a level platform 5 ft. long at the top and 6 ft. long at the bottom shall be provided.
6. Provide full-length pedestrian handrails on both sides of the ramp.

Pedestrian underpasses are generally undesirable; however, if one is required, the geometrics and lighting requirements should be discussed with the Department Project Manager and the District Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator. Local law enforcement personnel may need to be consulted to assure public safety, emergency accessibility and other desirable features.

## 8.8 Drop-off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists

Drop-off hazards are defined as steep or abrupt downward slopes that can be perilous to pedestrians and bicyclists. The Engineer should consider shielding any drop-off determined to be a hazard. Generally, pedestrians and bicyclists will be adequately protected from a drop-off hazard if a guardrail or barrier has been installed between the path or sidewalk and the drop-off. However, circumstances do exist that will ultimately dictate when a railing is needed. Railings or fences should be provided for vertical drop-off hazards. For shared-use paths see **Section 8.6** for horizontal clearances to railings and fences.

The following guidelines will be useful in standardizing the identification and treatment of drop-off hazards for pedestrians and bicyclists.

There are two cases that require shielding. As shown in **Figure 8.2 (Case I)**, a drop-off greater than 10" that is closer than 2 feet from the pedestrians' or bicyclists' pathway or edge of sidewalk should be considered a hazard and shielded. Also, as shown in **Figure 8.2 (Case II)**, a slope steeper than 1:2 that begins closer than 2 feet from the pedestrians' or bicyclists' pathway or edge of sidewalk should be considered a hazard and shielded when the total drop-off is greater than 30". Also, depending on the depth of the drop-off and severity of the conditions below, shielding may be necessary for cases other than described above.

However, in determining if shielding a drop-off hazard would be feasible for protecting pedestrians and bicyclists, the following should be considered:

1. The engineer should ask the Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator for information on the number of pedestrians and bicyclists and their routes.
2. Installing fencing or railings are two ways to shield the drop-offs. Fencing is generally intended for rural areas along paths and trails. Standard railing is generally intended for urbanized areas, locations attaching to bridge rail or along concrete walkways. Railings shown on Index 850 and 860 of the Structures Standard Drawings are appropriate for all drop-offs. Index 521 of the Design Standards and 870 of the Structures Standard Drawings are appropriate where drop-offs are 30" or less.
3. Where drop-offs vary from less than 30" to greater than 30", the engineer should consider utilizing the railing type for greater than 30" drop-offs along a continuous section for uniformity.

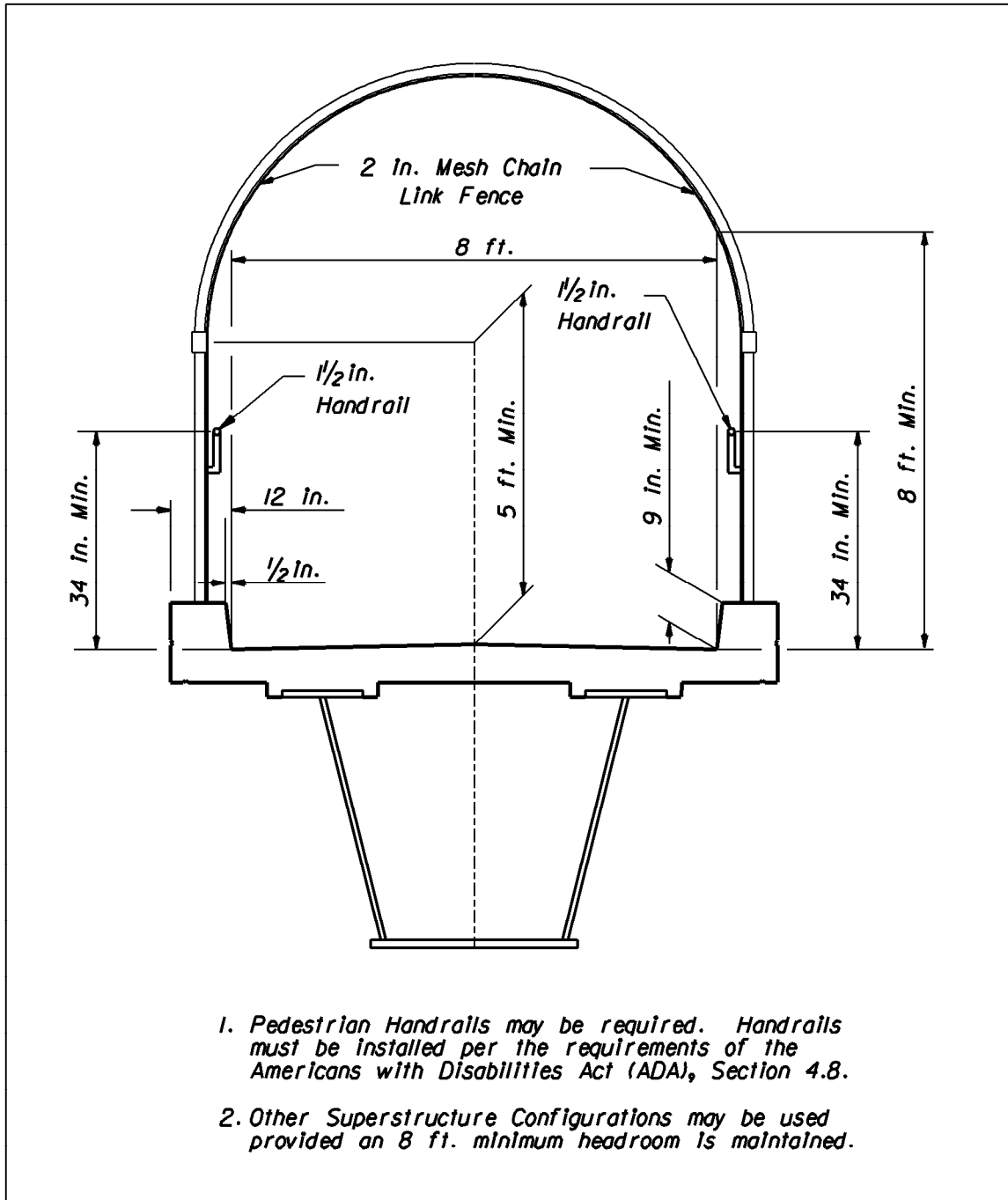
## 8.9 Florida Intrastate Highway System

The Department procedure, ***Development of the Florida Intrastate Highway System (FIHS)(Topic No. 525-030-250)***, gives the following guidance relating to the provisions of bicycle and pedestrian facilities on the FIHS:

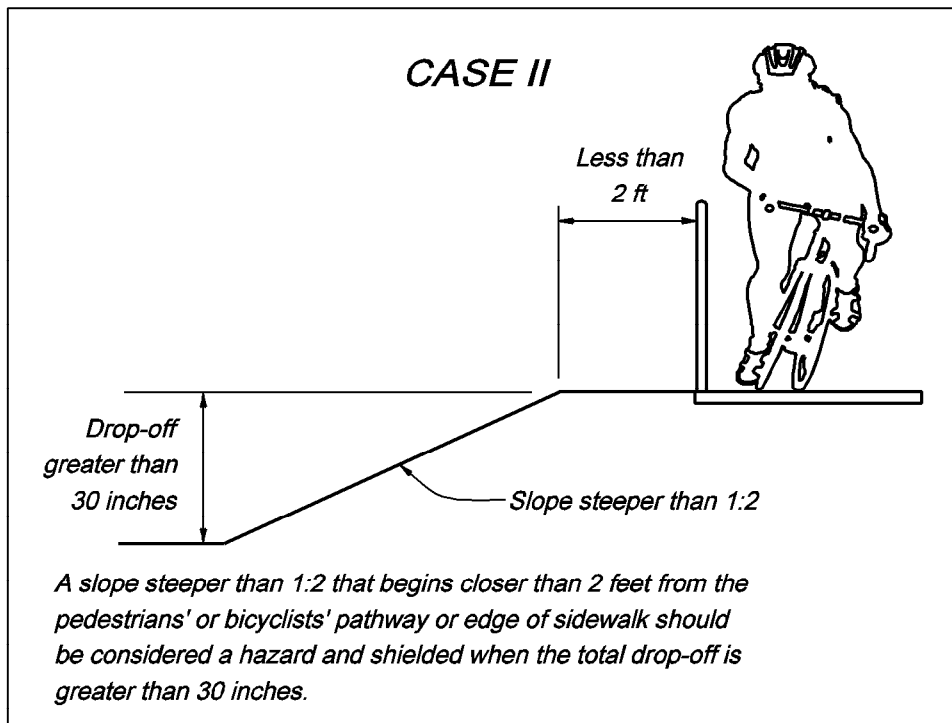
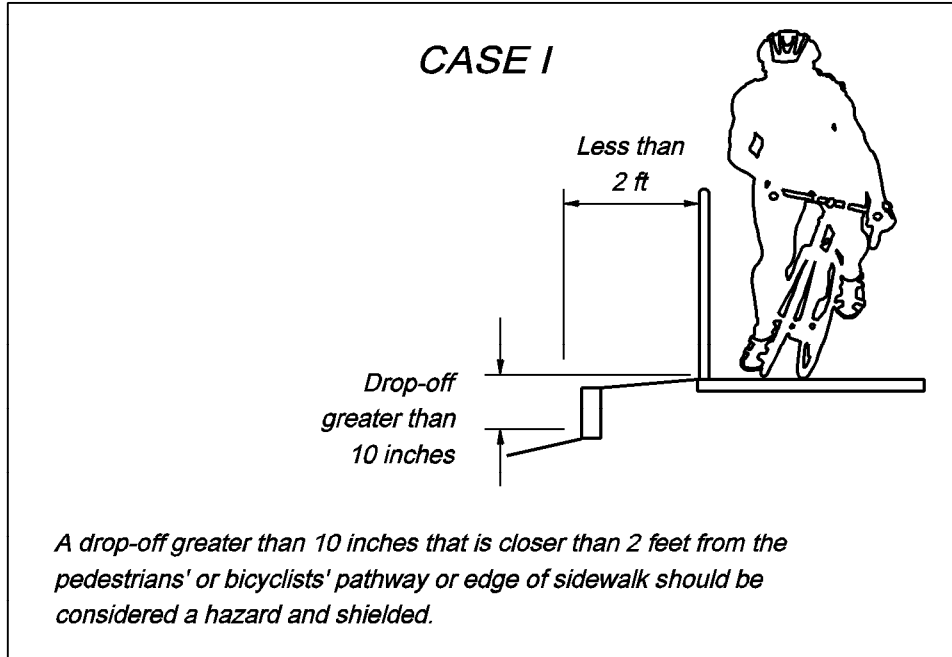
“Bicycle and pedestrian facilities shall not be provided on FIHS limited access roadways. For FIHS controlled access facilities, the safe movement of bicycles and pedestrians must be carefully considered and accommodated in such a way as to have no adverse impact to safety, capacity or speed. Separate, offsite, and/or parallel facilities, shall be used where practical and feasible. Bicycle facilities shall be consistent with the requirements of the ***Florida Bicycle Facilities Planning and Design Handbook...***”



**Figure 8.1 Pedestrian Bridge Typical Section**



**Figure 8.2 Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists**



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

# Chapter 9

## Landscaping

9.1	General.....	9-1
9.2	Maintenance Plan.....	9-5

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 9

# Landscaping

### 9.1 General

"Landscape" or "Landscaping" means any vegetation, mulches, irrigation systems, and any site amenities, such as, street furniture, decorative paving, fences, and lighting (excluding public utility street and area lighting), as defined in ***Rule Chapter 14-40.003, Florida Administrative Code, Highway Beautification and Landscape Management.***

Landscape plans should be designed to complement and enhance the natural and man-made environment. This may include irrigation systems and site amenities such as street furniture and decorative pavement, fences, and lights. **To the extent practical**, plans should consider the following elements:

1. Conservation of natural roadside growth (vegetation) and scenery.
2. Relocation of existing vegetation.
3. Selective clearing and thinning.
4. Natural regeneration and succession of native plants.
5. Plants purchased from Florida based nurseries.
6. Large plants (plants equivalent or larger than those grown in 5 gallon containers) with combined value of 50% or more of the estimated value of all plants specified in the plans.
7. Florida native plants.
8. Plant selection and placement that minimizes roadside maintenance requirements.
9. Plant selection and placement that reduces stormwater runoff volume and velocity.
10. Plant selection and placement that promotes water conservation.
11. Reclaimed water for irrigation.
12. Recycled and recyclable materials.
13. Plant selection and placement that minimizes impacts to natural areas.

Landscaping should be arranged to permit sufficiently wide, clear, and safe pedestrian walkways and transit waiting areas. Care should be exercised to ensure that requirements for sight distances and clearance to obstructions are observed, especially at intersections.

On all federally funded projects that have landscaping, 1/4 of 1% of the estimated cost of the landscaping is required to be for wildflowers. For state funded projects that have landscaping, the inclusion of wildflowers is optional.

Wildflower areas are to be located in accordance with the ***Design Standards, Index 104***. Use of seed is best for rural areas. In urban areas, plants contained within landscape beds are recommended.

Landscape plans must be designed, constructed and maintained in conformity with the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices***, the ***Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction***, the ***Design Standards***, and this manual. No landscaping shall screen from view a legally permitted outdoor advertising sign. The limits of the screening prohibition are provided in ***Rule Chapter 14-40, Part I, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.)***.

When the view zone (defined by ***Rule Chapter 14-40, Part III, F.A.C.***) of an outdoor advertising sign is within the project limits, and there is no permitted vegetation management zone, the landscape architect will notify the sign permittee that a highway landscape project is proposed. The sign permittee will have 30 days to submit an Application for Vegetation Management that proposes a vegetation management zone (see ***Rule Chapter 14-40, Part III, F.A.C.***) If an Application for Vegetation at Outdoor Advertising Sign is submitted within 30 days, a vegetation management zone will be established in accordance with the provisions of ***Rule Chapter 14-40*** upon approval of the application by the Department. If the sign owner does not respond to the notice within the 30-day time frame provided, screening will be prohibited wherever the sign face is not screened within the view zone, beginning at the point on the edge of the travel lane immediately opposite the edge of the sign face closest to the highway (Terminus A) and extending along the outside travel lane edge in advance of the sign until the sign face is not screened for a total of 500 feet. Contact information for any permitted sign may be obtained by contacting the State Outdoor Advertising Administrator, Florida Department of Transportation, 605 Suwannee Street, MS 22, Tallahassee, Florida 32399-0450.

Additional information regarding landscape plans may be found in:

1. ***Rule Chapter 14-40, Florida Administrative Code, Highway Beautification and Landscape Management.***
2. ***Florida Highway Landscape Guide.***
3. ***Highway Landscape, Beautification, and Plan Review Procedure (Topic No. 650-050-001).***
4. ***Identification & Biology of Non-Native Plants in Florida's Natural Areas,*** Langeland and Burks, 1998, University of Florida.
5. ***Waterwise Florida Landscapes,*** 2001, Florida's Water Management Districts.
6. ***TCRP Report 19 – Guidelines for the Location and Design of Bus Stops*** (for additional guidance in areas where transit is present).



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 9.2 Maintenance Plan

A comprehensive maintenance plan for all proposed landscaping must accompany the landscape plans. This may be on separate plan sheets or written documents. This maintenance plan will not be part of the construction contract documents. The maintenance plan is intended to make sure that the landscape architect and the agency responsible for maintenance understand what resources and practices will be necessary to maintain the landscape in a safe and vigorous condition that meets the project objectives many years after construction is completed. The intent for the landscape architect's selection and placement of elements must be included in a description of the project, accompanied by a written or graphic guide for the maintenance which will be provided to the plants and other areas within the project limits. For example, if shrubs will be planted to provide a visual screen, this intent should be noted in the maintenance plan.

1. When the landscape project is to be maintained by the Department, a maintenance cost estimate based on scheduled maintenance activities must be an attachment to the plans.
2. When the landscape project is to be maintained by a local governmental entity, the maintenance plan will become an exhibit to the maintenance agreement. The local government should participate during development of the maintenance plan.

Maintenance details and specifications must include the following:

1. Mowing schedule and height of grass, along with physical depiction of the limits of the mowing that will be performed as part of the landscape project.
2. Fertilizing schedules, formulas, rates, and methods of application.
3. Weeding/edging schedule and method: chemical, mechanical, or manual.
4. Herbicide schedules, formulas, rates, methods of application, special instructions, and precautions.
5. Pruning schedule and methods. In order to have safe, healthy, and aesthetic plants, and to maintain limits of clear sight, special attention must be given to changes in the schedule due to the maturity and size as trees and shrubs grow.
6. Mulch materials, thickness, and replacement frequency.
7. Irrigation schedule, supply source, and method of application.
8. Special care required for any hardscape materials, lighting, signage, benches, or other site amenities.

9. Litter pick up and removal schedule (prior to mowing cycle or as needed).
10. A work zone traffic control plan (if necessary) for maintenance of the project.
11. An estimate of manpower and equipment required to achieve an acceptable level of maintenance.

For Landscape Plan contents refer to **Chapter 26** of **Volume II**.

## Chapter 10

### Work Zone Traffic Control

10.1	General.....	10-1
10.2	References .....	10-2
10.3	Comprehensive Work Zone Traffic Control Planning .....	10-3
10.4	Traffic Control Plans (TCP) .....	10-4
10.5	TCP Development .....	10-6
10.6	Coordination .....	10-9
	10.6.1 Phase Submittals .....	10-10
10.7	Work Zone Traffic Control Training .....	10-11
	10.7.1 Background .....	10-11
	10.7.2 Training Requirements .....	10-11
10.8	Traffic Control Devices .....	10-12
10.9	Signs .....	10-13
	10.9.1 Advance Warning Signs .....	10-13
	10.9.2 Length of Construction Sign .....	10-13
	10.9.3 Existing Signs.....	10-13
10.10	Lighting Units.....	10-14
	10.10.1 Warning Lights .....	10-14
	10.10.2 Advance Warning Arrow Panels.....	10-14
	10.10.3 Variable Message Signs.....	10-15
	10.10.4 Traffic Signals.....	10-20
10.11	Channelizing Devices .....	10-21

10.11.1	Type III Barricades .....	10-21
10.11.2	Separation Devices .....	10-21
10.11.3	Channelizing Device Alternates .....	10-21
10.12	Pavement Markings.....	10-23
10.12.1	Removing Pavement Markings .....	10-23
10.12.2	Raised Retro-Reflective Pavement Markers (RPM) .....	10-23
10.12.3	Work Zone Markings .....	10-23
10.13	Safety Appurtenances for Work Zones.....	10-24
10.13.1	Traffic Barriers.....	10-24
10.13.2	Barrier Walls (Temporary) .....	10-24
10.13.3	End Treatments.....	10-25
10.13.4	Modifications of Existing Barriers .....	10-25
10.13.5	Crash Cushions.....	10-25
10.14	Traffic Control Plan Details.....	10-26
10.14.1	Taper Lengths .....	10-26
10.14.2	Intersecting Road Signing and Signals .....	10-27
10.14.3	Sight Distance to Delineation Devices .....	10-28
10.14.4	Pedestrians and Bicyclists.....	10-28
	10.14.4.1 Pedestrian Considerations .....	10-28
	10.14.4.2 Bicycle Considerations.....	10-29
10.14.5	Superelevation .....	10-29
10.14.6	Lane Widths .....	10-30
10.14.7	Lane Closure Analysis.....	10-30
10.14.8	Detours, Diversions, and Lane Shifts .....	10-45
10.14.9	Above Ground Hazards.....	10-46
10.14.10	Drop-offs in Work Zones .....	10-46
10.14.11	Narrow Bridges and Roadways.....	10-46
10.14.12	Existing Highway Lighting .....	10-47

10.14.13	Work Area Access .....	10-47
10.14.14	Railroads .....	10-47
10.14.15	Pay Items and Quantities .....	10-47
10.15	Speed Zoning .....	10-48
10.15.1	Regulatory Speeds in Work Zones.....	10-48
10.16	Law Enforcement Services .....	10-50
10.16.1	Use of Speed and Law Enforcement Officers .....	10-50
10.16.2	Use of Traffic Control Officer Law Enforcement.....	10-51
10.16.3	Coordination, Documentation and Payment.....	10-51
10.16.4	Other Uses of Law Enforcement .....	10-52
10.17	Motorist Awareness System (MAS).....	10-53
10.17.1	Portable Regulatory Signs (PRS).....	10-53
10.17.2	Radar Speed Display Unit (RSDU) .....	10-53
10.17.3	Highway Advisory Radio (HAR) .....	10-54
10.17.4	Safety Warning Transmitter (SWT) .....	10-54
10.17.5	Speed and Law Enforcement Officer .....	10-55
 Tables		
Table 10.14.1	Taper Length Criteria for Work Zones.....	10-27
Table 10.14.2	Minimum Radii for Normal 0.02 Cross Slopes .....	10-29
 Exhibits		
Exhibit 10-A	Lane Closures .....	10-33

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## **Chapter 10**

### **Work Zone Traffic Control**

#### **10.1 General**

The need to improve the capacity of, and to rehabilitate Florida's highways, has greatly increased the frequency of highway construction taking place immediately adjacent to or under traffic. The traveling public, as well as construction and inspection personnel, are exposed to conflicts that may become hazardous. In addition to the safety issue, the potential delays to the public, as traffic is interrupted by construction, can be significant. As a result, the Department places a great deal of emphasis upon ensuring that all traffic, including motorists, transit operations, bicyclists and pedestrians can be accommodated through construction zones with minimum delay and exposure to unsafe conditions.



## 10.2 References

The following references contain the basic criteria and other required information for work zone traffic control in Florida:

1. The ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, (MUTCD)***, Federal Highway Administration. ***Part VI*** of the ***MUTCD*** deals specifically with work zone traffic control. Other parts of the ***MUTCD*** may also be useful in designing a traffic control plan.
2. ***Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, AASHTO.***
3. Roadside Design Guide, AASHTO, ***Chapter 9.***
4. ***Design Standards, Indexes 415, 417*** and the ***600 Series.***
5. ***Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction.***
6. ***Basis of Estimate Handbook.***

## 10.3 Comprehensive Work Zone Traffic Control Planning

Consideration of traffic control must begin at the Project Development and Environmental (PD&E) study stage. Impacts on traffic, traffic handling options, constructability, and design features and constraints, as they affect traffic and transit operations, are to be evaluated for each alternate alignment studied. The preliminary engineering report must specifically address work zone traffic control.

Traffic control considerations must begin in the early stages of design, using the work zone traffic control material from the PD&E study as the basis. As the design progresses, the following should be considered:

**Design features and constraints.** Length of the project, lane configuration, transit stops, bike lanes, sidewalks and grade differentials between existing and proposed, interchanges and intersections, pavement materials, storm sewers, roadway lighting, utilities and bridge features are some of the design element decisions that might be influenced by work zone traffic control considerations.

**Contract specifications.** Provisions such as time restrictions on construction activities; incentive-disincentive clauses; daily, weekly and seasonal restrictions and special materials may be necessary. Public relations activities such as media releases, television and radio spots, handbills, and highway advisory radio may be specified.

**Other actions.** Actions may need to be taken by the Department prior to or during construction that may not be a contract requirement. Examples are dealing with the media and local businesses, provisions for mass transit options to commuters, service patrols, improvements to alternate routes, coordination with other projects and maintenance activities, and special inspection requirements.

**Public input.** On very large and complicated projects, it may be necessary to involve the public through informal public meetings to be held early in the design of a project. Close coordination with city and county officials may be necessary. Citizen and business advisory committees may be established as sources of input.

**Utility work.** If contract utility work is anticipated in conjunction with or during the highway construction, the Traffic Control Plan (TCP) must account for and adequately protect all work activities. The phasing of construction activities must be compatible with the utility work. Utilities, whose work affects traffic, are required to have a TCP by FHWA. This requires early and effective coordination with utilities.

## 10.4 Traffic Control Plans (TCP)

A TCP is a set of specific plan sheets, references to standard (typical) layouts, and/or notes on roadway plans describing how traffic will be controlled through a work zone. All projects and work on highways, roads and streets shall have a traffic control plan, as required by Florida Statute and Federal regulations. All work shall be executed under the established plan and Department approved procedures. The TCP is the result of considerations and investigations made in the development of a comprehensive plan for accommodating traffic through the construction zone. These considerations include the design itself, contract specifications, and plan sheets.

TCP sheets detail the proper delineation of traffic through the work zone during all construction phases. The complexity of the TCP varies with the complexity of the traffic problems associated with a project. Many situations can be covered adequately with references to specific sections from the **Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)**, or the **Design Standards, Series 600**. Specific TCP sheets shall be required in the plans set whenever project conditions are not specifically addressed in a typical layout from the manuals noted above. This is usually the case for complex projects; therefore references to the **Design Standards**, as well as specific TCP sheets, will likely be necessary.

A traffic control plan should address the appropriate following information for the mainline and any affected crossroads, side streets, and ramps:

1. The location of all advance warning signs and lighting units.
2. Temporary pavement markings, (including RPM's).
3. Location of temporary barriers and attenuators.
4. Temporary drainage design.
5. Channelizing devices at special locations.
6. Locations for special devices such as variable message signs (VMS), arrow panels, radar speed display trailers (RSDT), speed regulatory trailers (SRT) and temporary signals.
7. VMS messages for each phase.
8. Signal timing for each phase, including temporary actuation, to maintain all existing actuated or traffic responsive mode signal operations for main and side street movements for the duration of the Contract (Check with Traffic Operations Engineer).

9. Location and geometry for transitions, detours, and diversions.
10. Typical sections for each phase of work on all projects, except simple resurfacing projects, in order to show lane widths, offsets, barrier locations and other features influencing traffic control.
11. The proposed regulatory speed(s) for each phase.
12. Reference to appropriate **Design Standards** or **MUTCD** drawings whenever applicable.
13. Appropriate quantities, pay items and pay item notes.
14. Resolve any conflicts between permanent signing and markings and work zone signing and markings.
15. Key strategies such as service patrol, police, public service announcements, Highway Advisory Radio, night work, etc..
16. Good plan notes.
17. Address the need for maintaining existing roadway lighting.
18. Work area access plan.
19. Address the need for transit operations to safely stop along the roadway to board and discharge passengers, and to maintain transit stop signage.

**Volume II, Chapter 19**, explains the required information for specific TCP sheets.

Consideration must also be given to adjoining, intersecting or sequential work zones. This can be a particular problem with maintenance operations, bridge or roadway projects under different contracts, operations of other jurisdictions or utilities. When such work must take place, the operations must be coordinated and taken into account in the TCP so that the motorist encounters one, consistently designed, work zone.

TCP's for project designs "on the shelf" must be updated prior to contract letting.

## 10.5 TCP Development

The following step-by-step process should be followed by designers when preparing traffic control plans:

### Step #1 Understand the Project

1. Field reviews by designers should be required.
2. Review the scope.
3. Examine the plans (Phase I to Phase II).
4. Look at plan-profiles and cross sections for general understanding.
5. Review PD&E study for any constraints.
6. Consider transit and bicycle/pedestrian needs during construction.
7. For complex projects consider developing a TCP study and other possible strategies such as public awareness campaigns, alternate route improvements, service patrols, etc..

### Step #2 Develop Project Specific Objectives

What are your objectives? Examples might be:

1. Use barrier wall to separate workers from traffic.
2. Close road if adequate detour exists.
3. Maintaining 2-way traffic at all times.
4. Maintaining existing roadway capacity during peaks.
5. Maintaining business/resident access.
6. Maintaining transit operations.
7. Provide bike/pedestrian access.
8. Minimize wetland impacts.
9. Expedite construction.

### **Step #3 Brainstorm TCP Alternatives**

Develop some rough alternatives considering what could be used to accomplish the work, such as constructing temporary pavement and/or temporary detours, using auxiliary lanes, placing 2-way traffic on one side of divided facility, using detour routes, etc. Also, south side as opposed to north side on an east-west roadway. Don't worry that an alternate doesn't meet all objectives.

Designers should check condition of any proposed detour routes. If off state system, may need agreement with locals. Design should prevent or minimize interruption of local transit operations.

### **Step #4 Develop a Construction Phasing Concept**

1. Examine existing facility versus what is to be built. This is a major task on jobs other than resurfacing.
2. Coordinate with bridge designer.
3. Color or mark the plan-profile sheets to show existing roadway versus new construction. Then, check station by station, the plan sheet against cross section sheets. Make notes on plan sheets as to drop-offs or other problems. Use profile grade lines or centerlines for reference points.
4. List out major tasks to be completed, such as:
  - a. Construct new WB Roadway
  - b. Construct new EB Roadway
  - c. Construct frontage roads
  - d. Construct bridge/flyover

**Note:** The designer may need input from construction personnel or even contractors' representatives in determining construction phases.

5. Make notes on plan sheets or notepad as to "decisions" that you make along the way.

### **Step #5 Examine/Analyze Alternatives Which Meet Objectives (for each phase)**

Next, consider how you could achieve the proposed alternatives and meet the stated objectives.

1. Examine pros and cons of various alternatives.
2. Consider how much work and expense is involved for each alternative.
3. Consider detour/transition locations, signal operations during construction, how to handle buses, bicycles, pedestrians, service vehicles, etc..

## **Step #6      Develop Detailed TCP**

Select the most feasible alternative for each phase. Add details such as:

1. Detour/transition geometrics and locations.
2. If lane closures are needed, use the lane closure technique discussed in **Section 10.14.7** to determine time frame for closures.
3. Advanced signing scheme and locations, revisions needed to existing signs - including guide signs, and proposed signs for all work activities - lane closures, detours, etc., on mainline, side roads, crossroads and ramps.
4. Need for portable traffic signals, variable message signs, and barriers.
5. How existing operations will be maintained - side streets, businesses, residents, bikes, pedestrians, buses - bus stops, etc..
6. Revisions to signal phasing and/or timing during each TCP phase.
7. Regulatory speed desired for each phase.
8. All pay items and quantities needed for TCP.
9. How existing auxiliary lanes will be used and any restriction necessary during construction.
10. Typical sections for each phase.
11. Outline key strategies to be used:
  - a. Service patrol
  - b. Police
  - c. Public service announcements
  - d. Highway Advisory Radio
  - e. Night work
  - f. Motorist Awareness System (MAS)
12. Need for alternate route improvements.

## 10.6 Coordination

Work zone traffic control can be a complex undertaking that requires the coordination of a number of agencies and other interested parties. Planning and coordination must begin early in a project design.

Traffic control is a joint responsibility of design (both roadway and bridge), construction and traffic operations personnel. Coordination is necessary by all three parties in the development of TCPs. Both traffic operations and construction personnel must routinely review TCPs during Initial Engineering (Phase I to Phase II plans) to ensure that the plan is sound and constructible and bid items are complete and quantities reasonable. With subsequent reviews of Phase III plans, designers are also encouraged to contact contractors for ideas on Traffic Control Plans.

Traffic control plans should also be reviewed with other appropriate entities such as maintenance, FHWA, community awareness teams, general public, transit agencies, businesses, freeway coordinator management teams, and local agencies. **Initial reviews should be made by construction and traffic operations no later than the Phase II plans stage with subsequent reviews of Phase III plans.** Input from local engineering and law enforcement agencies should be obtained early in the process, such as during the PD&E study and the Phase I plans stage.

Adjoining work zones may not have sufficient spacing for standard placement of signs and other traffic control devices within their traffic control zones. These situations can occur when separate contracts adjoin each other (separate bridge and roadway contracts are a typical example), utility work performed separately from roadway work or when maintenance activities are performed adjacent to a construction project. Where such restraints or conflicts occur, or are likely to occur, the designer should try to resolve the conflicts in order to prevent misunderstanding on the part of the traveling public.



## 10.6.1 Phase Submittals

TCP phase submittals should include the following:

1. **Phase I** - a typical section for each phase as well as a description of the phasing sequence and work involved.
2. **Phase II** - a majority of the TCP completed (75-90%), including the information outlined in **Section 10.4** of this chapter, and a list of the pay items needed.
3. **Phase III** - a final TCP, including all notes, pay items and preliminary quantities.

**(Note:** The construction office estimates the duration for each phase of construction during Phase III review. The designer will finalize the quantities in the plans, comp book, and TRNS\*PORT after receiving the estimated durations for construction.)

## 10.7 Work Zone Traffic Control Training

### 10.7.1 Background

Work zone traffic control is an important function affecting the safety of the traveling public, contractor personnel and equipment, and department employees. Every reasonable effort should be made to eliminate or reduce involvement in crashes within work zones. Proper traffic control training is vital to achieving this objective.

The Department's Maintenance of Traffic Committee consists of representatives from Roadway Design, Construction, Maintenance, and FHWA. Its purpose is to develop, review or revise procedures, standards and specifications regarding work zone traffic control to maximize efficiency and enhance safety of motorists, transit operations, bicyclists, pedestrians, and workers within the work zone.

### 10.7.2 Training Requirements

The Department's Maintenance of Traffic Committee has prescribed work zone traffic control training requirements outlined in ***Department Procedure, Topic No. 625-010-010***.

All Department employees, contractors, consultants, utility company personnel, local maintaining agency, or any other person responsible for work zone traffic control planning, design, implementation, inspection and/or for supervising the selection, placement, or maintenance of traffic control schemes and devices in work zones on the State Highway System, shall satisfactorily complete the training requirements of this procedure in the appropriate category of involvement. The Department may request to see a person's certificate or wallet size card documenting the successful completion of a Work Zone Traffic Control training course.

District Design, Construction, and Maintenance Engineers shall ensure that employees, including consultant personnel, who are responsible for traffic control plan design, implementation, inspection or supervision of the design, selection, placement, or maintenance of traffic control schemes and devices in work zones have been certified under the provisions of this procedure.

## 10.8 Traffic Control Devices

Traffic control devices/methods that are available for use include:

1. Signs (warning, regulatory and guide)
2. Lighting units (arrow panels, barricade and sign lights, illumination devices, temporary signals and variable message signs)
3. Channelizing devices (cones, tubular markers, plastic drums, vertical panels, and Types I, II and III barricades)
4. Markings (pavement markings, raised pavement markings, delineators, and removal of conflicting markings)
5. Safety appurtenances (portable concrete barriers, guardrail and crash cushions) - See ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide (Chapter 9)***
6. Flaggers
7. Law Enforcement
8. Motorist Awareness System (MAS)

The ***MUTCD*** contains detailed instructions on the use of traffic control devices. Special design considerations applicable to Florida are discussed in the following sections.

Traffic control devices should not be placed in locations where they will block transit stops, sidewalks or bike lanes.

## 10.9 Signs

Sign messages for speed limits and distances are to be posted in English units.

### 10.9.1 Advance Warning Signs

The TCP should identify the advance construction warning signs, including legends and location. These include signs such as "Road Work Ahead" and "Road Work One Mile". The TCP should provide the advanced warning signs, legends and locations for all proposed operations that require signing. These include diversions, detours, lane closures, and lane shifts, on the mainline as well as crossroads. The sequence for advance signing should be from general to more specific. As an example: Road Work Ahead (general), Left Lane Closed Ahead (more specific), Merge Right (specific).

### 10.9.2 Length of Construction Sign

The length of construction sign (G20-1) bearing the legend "Road Work Next X Miles" is required for all projects of more than 2 miles in length. The sign shall be located at begin construction points.

### 10.9.3 Existing Signs

Existing (regulatory, warning, etc.) signs that conflict with the TCP shall be removed or relocated to complement the work zone conditions (i.e., if a stop sign on an existing side road is needed, use the existing sign and show the location that it is to be relocated to). Existing guide signs should be modified as necessary. It is good practice to revise existing guide signs by using black on orange panels to show changes made necessary by the construction operations.

If permanent guide signs are to be removed during construction, provisions should be made for temporary guide signing. The temporary sign should be black on orange with the legend designed in accordance with **MUTCD** requirements for permanent guide signing whenever possible.

## 10.10 Lighting Units

### 10.10.1 Warning Lights

Warning lights shall be in accordance with the *Design Standards, Index 600*.

#### 1. Type A Flashing

To be mounted on Vertical Panel, Barricade, or Drums to mark an obstruction adjacent to or in the intended travel way. It is to be paid for as part of the device that it is mounted on.

#### 2. Type B Flashing

To be mounted on the first and second advanced warning signs where two or more signs are used, as well as on advanced warning signs of intersecting roads. Type B Warning lights are to be paid for as High Intensity Flashing Lights (Temporary - Type B).

#### 3. Steady-Burn Type C

Steady-Burn lights are to be placed on channelizing devices and barrier wall to delineate the traveled way on lane closures, lane changes, diversion curves and other similar conditions. On channelizing devices (Vertical Panels, Barricades, and Drums), their payment is included as part of the device. For use on Barrier wall, they are to be paid for separately as Lights, Temporary, Barrier Wall Mount (Type C, Steady-Burn). Their spacing on barrier wall is as follows:

- a. Transitions - 50 ft. on center
- b. Curves - 100 ft. on center
- c. Tangents - 200 ft. on center (Note: Curves flat enough to maintain a normal 2% cross slope are to have steady burn lights placed at the same spacing as tangents)

### 10.10.2 Advance Warning Arrow Panels

Arrow panels shall be used to supplement other devices for all lane closures on high-speed (55 mph or greater) and high-traffic density multilane roadways. The use of arrow panels should be considered for all other multilane closures. These devices are also useful for short-term operations, such as during work zone installation and removal. Arrow panels

should not be used in lane shift situations. Research has shown that motorists tend to change lanes (on multilane facilities) whenever an arrow panel is used to indicate a lane shift. Since this "response" is not desired, the arrow panel should not be used for lane shift situations on multilane roadways. Refer to current **MUTCD** for further information.

Arrow panel locations shall be shown on the TCP, along with any necessary notes concerning the use of this device.

### **10.10.3 Variable Message Signs**

Variable message signs (VMS) may be used to supplement a traffic control zone. As a supplemental device, it cannot be used to replace any required sign or other device. These devices can be useful in providing information to the motorist about construction schedules, alternate routes, expected delays, and detours. Variable message signs should be considered for use in complex, high-density work zones. Messages must be simple, with a minimum number of words and lines and should require no more than two displays of no more than three lines each with 8 characters per line. The TCP shall include the location and messages to be displayed.

The message displayed should be visible and legible to the motorist at a minimum distance of 900 ft. on approach to the signs. All messages should be cycled so that two message cycles are displayed to a driver while approaching the sign from 900 ft. at 55 mph.

The VMS units may be used:

1. To supplement conventional traffic control devices in construction work areas and should be placed approximately 500 to 800 ft. in advance of potential traffic problems, or
2. 0.5 to 2 miles in advance of complex traffic control schemes that require new and/or unusual traffic patterns for the motorists.

A VMS is required for night time work that takes place within 4 ft. of the traveled way.

#### **Typical Conditions**

Consistent with the factors described above, VMS messages should be considered under the following conditions:

1. Road closures
2. Ramp closures

3. Delays one hour or longer created by:
  - a. Congestion
  - b. Crashes
  - c. Lane closures
  - d. Two-way traffic on divided highway
  - e. Multiple lane closures
  - f. Unexpected shifts in alignment

### **Message Selection**

Programmed messages should provide appropriate messages for the conditions likely to be encountered. A worksheet is provided and may be placed in the TCP. The following items must be carefully considered in the development of a message:

1. **Message elements - not necessarily in order**
  - a. Problem statement (where?)
  - b. Effect statement (what?)
  - c. Attention statement (who?)
  - d. Action statement (do?)
2. **Message format**
  - a. Will vary depending on content
  - b. "Where" or "what" will generally lead
  - c. "Who" and "do" follow in that order
  - d. "Who" often understood from "where"
3. **Display format**
  - a. Discrete, with entire message displayed at once is most desirable
  - b. Sequential is OK, 2 part maximum
  - c. Run-on moving displays prohibited
  - d. One abbreviation per panel display desirable, two abbreviations are the maximum. Route designation is considered as one abbreviation and one word. Guidelines for abbreviations are provided on the following pages.

## VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS WORKSHEET

Location of board: \_\_\_\_\_

Used: from \_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_:\_\_\_\_ am/pm

to \_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_:\_\_\_\_ am/pm

Message programmed by: \_\_\_\_\_

### MESSAGE 1


### MESSAGE 2


Timing:

Message 1 will run \_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_ seconds.

Message 2 will run \_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_ seconds.



**STANDARD ABBREVIATIONS FOR USE  
 ON VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS**

Standard abbreviations easily understood are:

<u>WORD</u>	<u>ABBREV.</u>	<u>WORD</u>	<u>ABBREV.</u>
Boulevard	BLVD	Normal	NORM
Center	CNTR	Parking	PKING
Emergency	EMER	Road	RD
Entrance, Enter	ENT	Service	SERV
Expressway	EXPWY	Shoulder	SHLDR
Freeway	FRWY, FWY	Slippery	SLIP
Highway	HWY	Speed	SPD
Information	INFO	Traffic	TRAF
Left	LFT	Travelers	TRVLRS
Maintenance	MAINT	Warning	WARN

Other abbreviations are easily understood whenever they appear in conjunction with a particular word commonly associated with it. These words and abbreviations are as follows:

<u>WORD</u>	<u>ABBREV.</u>	<u>PROMPT</u>
Access	ACCS	Road
Ahead	AHD	Fog*
Blocked	BLKD	Lane*
Bridge	BRDG	[Name]*
Chemical	CHEM	Spill
Construction	CONST	Ahead
Exit	EX, EXT	Next*
Express	EXP	Lane
Hazardous	HAZ	Driving
Interstate	I	[Number]
Major	MAJ	Accident
Mile	MI	[Number]*
Minor	MNR	Accident
Minute(s)	MIN	[Number]*
Oversized	OVRSZ	Load
Prepare	PREP	To Stop
Pavement	PVMT	Wet*
Quality	QLTY	Air*
Route	RT	Best*
Turnpike	TRNPK	[Name]*
Vehicle	VEH	Stalled*
Cardinal Directions	N, E, S, W	[Number]
Upper, Lower	UPR, LWR	Level

\* = Prompt word given first

The following abbreviations are understood with a **prompt** word by about 75% of the drivers. These abbreviations may require some public education prior to usage.

<u>WORD</u>	<u>ABBREV.</u>	<u>PROMPT</u>
Condition	COND	Traffic*
Congested	CONG	Traffic
Downtown	DWNTN	Traffic
Frontage	FRNTG	Road
Local	LOC	Traffic
Northbound	N-BND	Traffic
Roadwork	RDWK	Ahead [Distance]
Temporary	TEMP	Route
Township	TWNNSHP	Limits

\* = Prompt word given first

Certain abbreviations are prone to inviting confusion because another word is abbreviated or could be abbreviated in the same way. **DO NOT USE THESE ABBREVIATIONS:**

<u>ABBREV.</u>	<u>INTENDED WORD</u>	<u>WORD ERRONEOUSLY GIVEN</u>
WRNG	Warning	Wrong
ACC	Accident	Access (Road)
DLY	Delay	Daily
LT	Light (Traffic)	Left
STAD	Stadium	Standard
L	Left	Lane (Merge)
PARK	Parking	Park
RED	Reduce	Red
POLL	Pollution (Index)	Poll
FDR	Feeder	Federal
LOC	Local	Location
TEMP	Temporary	Temperature
CLRS	Clears	Color

## 10.10.4 Traffic Signals

Frequently portable or temporary traffic signals will be a preferred alternative to a flagger. Also, existing signal operations may need to be revised to accommodate the construction operations. The TCP should identify all existing actuated or traffic responsive mode signal operations for main and side street movements that are to be maintained for the duration of the Contract. In addition, the TCP should identify the specific alterations (physical location and timing) necessary for existing signals and the location and timing of portable signals. It shall include signal installation plans for each phase of construction. The signal installation plan shall include both the initial signal operation plan and the initial timing adjustments. Traffic control signal requirements or responsibilities shall be included in the Technical Special Provisions. Signal displays and location must meet **MUTCD** requirements. If temporary signals are used where a pedestrian crossing is present, either existing or temporary, the pedestrian must be accommodated in the signal timing.

Temporary Signal Plans or modification to existing signals should be reviewed by the appropriate section in the district for structural soundness and signal function.

## 10.11 Channelizing Devices

### 10.11.1 Type III Barricades

Two Type III barricades should be used to block off or close a roadway. Whenever two barricades are used together, only one warning light is required on each barricade.

### 10.11.2 Separation Devices

Placing two lane two-way operations (traffic) (TLTWO) on one roadway of a normally divided highway should be a last resort (see *MUTCD*) and should be done with special care.

When traffic control must be maintained on one roadway of a normally divided highway, opposing traffic shall be separated either with portable barrier wall or Temporary Traffic Separators (see the *Design Standards, Index 614*). The use of striping, raised pavement markers, and complementary signing, either alone or in combination is not considered acceptable for separation purposes.

### 10.11.3 Channelizing Device Alternates

It is intended that cones, Type I and II barricades, vertical panels, drums and tubular markers be considered as alternative channelizing devices to be used at the contractor's option. The only exceptions to this are that tubular markers are not allowed at night and the use of cones at night is restricted. (See the *Design Standards, Index 600 & 614*). The designer should not further restrict the options of channelizing devices.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 10.12 Pavement Markings

### 10.12.1 Removing Pavement Markings

Existing pavement markings that conflict with temporary work zone traffic patterns must be obliterated where operations will exceed one work period. Painting over existing pavement markings is not permitted.

### 10.12.2 Raised Retro-Reflective Pavement Markers (RPM)

Raised Retro-Reflective Pavement Markers (RPM) are required as a supplement to all lane lines during construction. For further direction on the use of RPMs in the work zone the designer should refer to the *Design Standards, Index 600*.

### 10.12.3 Work Zone Markings

Markings for work zones include "Removable" and "Non-Removable" markings. **Section 102-3.3** of the **Specifications** describes when each type is required. A separate pay item number is used for each. The designer should be aware of this information and provide appropriate pay items in the plans.

The designer should also consider using an asphalt layer and/or milling with an asphalt layer for covering/removing unneeded markings, especially in areas such as diversions or crossovers. Some construction phase durations may be long enough to require use of interim friction courses. When these type issues arise, the designer should work with the District Pavement Design Engineer, to determine what combination of pavement options best complements the Maintenance of Traffic with the final pavement design.

## 10.13 Safety Appurtenances for Work Zones

### 10.13.1 Traffic Barriers

Work zone traffic barriers are designed either as permanent barriers or as temporary barriers that can be easily relocated. They have four specific functions: to protect traffic from entering work areas, such as excavations or material storage sites; to provide positive protection for workers; to separate two-way traffic; and to protect construction such as false work for bridges and other exposed objects. The designer should anticipate when and where barriers will be needed and include this information and the quantities on the plans.

### 10.13.2 Barrier Walls (Temporary)

Portable concrete safety shape barriers, also known as portable concrete barriers (PCBs), are used in work zones to protect motorists as well as workers. Care must be taken in their design, installation and maintenance. Installation instructions and flare rates are given in the ***Design Standards, Index 415 & 600***.

When a PCB system is used, the surface that the PCB is placed on shall have a cross slope of 1:10 or flatter carried a minimum of 2 ft. behind the barrier. When the designer proposes temporary barrier walls, the cross-slope should be checked and temporary earthwork shown in the plans if necessary for the proper placement of the barrier system. When PCB's are used on bridges, they should connect to the bridge deck as shown in the ***Design Standards, Index 415*** to stabilize the barrier from vibration. Provide a minimum of 2 ft. behind the barrier on bridge decks.

Water filled barriers should be used in accordance with the ***Design Standards, Index 416***.

The designer should show or note the location of all temporary barrier walls in the plans. The plans should also include a work area access plan for those projects with median work which is shielded with barrier wall.

### 10.13.3 End Treatments

The desirable treatments for exposed ends of barriers are:

1. Connecting to an existing barrier (smooth, structural connections are required - Refer to the ***Design Standards, Indexes 410 & 415***) or
2. Attaching a crashworthy terminal (such as a crash cushion) or
3. Flaring away to the edge of the clear zone (For Work Zone Clear zones, see the ***Design Standards, Index 600***)

### 10.13.4 Modifications of Existing Barriers

When 2-way traffic is placed on a facility that is normally one-way, the existing permanent or temporary barriers will be modified as necessary to ensure their proper crashworthiness during the temporary situation. This will include eliminating non-crashworthy end treatments, snag points or other protrusions normally angled away or hidden from approaching vehicles.

### 10.13.5 Crash Cushions

Crash cushions in work zones may be used in the same manner as at permanent highway installations. Crash cushions are used to protect the motorists from the exposed ends of barriers, fixed objects and other hazards within the clear zone. Two types of stationary crash cushions are commonly used; inertial crash cushions (i.e., sand filled module systems); and redirective crash cushions (such as those described in ***Index 415*** of the ***Design Standards***).

The designer must determine the need for crash cushions, select the appropriate type, and provide the necessary details and quantities in the plans. Selection of a system should be the result of an analysis of site conditions (i.e., space and need). Redirective systems will shield hazards by redirecting vehicles or absorbing end-on hits. Inertial systems do not have redirection capability and can only shield a hazard by absorbing end-on hits. End protection, other than approved redirective crash cushions and the inertial arrays described in ***Index 417***, must be custom engineered for each independent installation and detailed in the plans. The ***Design Standards*** and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** can be consulted for more information.



## 10.14 Traffic Control Plan Details

The **Design Standards, Indexes 601 through 670**, are layouts of work zone traffic control for typical conditions. These indexes should be referenced only if project conditions are nearly the same as the typical layout. Otherwise, specific plan sheets or details must be prepared. Some conditions that will require specific plan sheets include:

1. Construction work zones near railroad crossings.
2. Work not covered by a typical layout.
3. Nighttime work requiring special lighting, oversized or additional devices.
4. Ramps and intersections that interrupt the standard layout.
5. Sight distance restrictions such as horizontal or vertical curves.
6. Lane or shoulder configurations that do not match the standards.
7. Special considerations during installation, intermediate traffic shifts and removal.
8. Complex projects, including add-lane projects, which involve many phases, traffic shifts, entrances and exits.
9. Special plan and notes detailing bus pullover bay/bus stop configuration.

When designing layouts, the following shall be considered:

### 10.14.1 Taper Lengths

Minimum taper lengths in the **Design Standards** are shown on individual Index sheets when applicable. When an Index sheet is not used, the minimum taper length shall be calculated by the formulas shown below **Table 10.14.1**.

**Table 10.14.1** (taken from **MUTCD**) gives the criteria for the lengths of the various taper types.

**Table 10.14.1 Taper Length Criteria for Work Zones**

Type of Taper	Taper Length
<b>UPSTREAM TAPERS</b>	
Merging Taper	L Minimum
Shifting Taper	1/2 L Minimum
Shoulder Taper	1/3 L Minimum
Two-way Traffic Taper	100 ft. Maximum
<b>DOWNSTREAM TAPERS</b>	
	100 ft. per lane (use is optional)

Formulas for L are as follows:

For speed limits of 40 mph or less:

$$L = WS^2/60$$

For speed limits of 45 mph or greater:

$$L = WS$$

"L" is the length of the taper in feet

"W" is the width of lateral transition in feet

"S" is the posted regulatory speed for the work zone.

## 10.14.2 Intersecting Road Signing and Signals

Signing for the control of traffic entering and leaving work zones by way of intersecting highways, roads and streets shall be adequate to make drivers aware of work zone conditions. Under no condition will intersecting leg signing be less than a "Road Work Ahead" sign. The designer should remember to include these signs in the estimated quantity for Construction warning signs.

Existing traffic signal operations that require modification in order to carry out work zone traffic control shall be as approved by the District Traffic Operations Engineer (DTOE). If lane shifts occur, signal heads may have to be adjusted to maintain proper position. The DTOE should also determine the need for temporary traffic detection for traffic actuated signals. The TCP should include all necessary signal adjustments.

### **10.14.3 Sight Distance to Delineation Devices**

Merging (lane closure) tapers should be obvious to drivers. If restricted sight distance is a problem (e.g., a sharp vertical or horizontal curve approaching the closed lane), the taper should begin well in advance of the view obstruction. The beginning of tapers should not be hidden behind curves.

### **10.14.4 Pedestrians and Bicyclists**

#### **10.14.4.1 Pedestrian Considerations**

Where an existing pedestrian way is located within a work zone, it must be maintained.

There are three threshold considerations in planning for pedestrian safety in work zones on highways and streets:

1. Pedestrians should not be led into direct conflicts with work site vehicles, equipment or operations.
2. Pedestrians should not be led into direct conflicts with mainline traffic moving through or around the work site.
3. Pedestrians should be provided with a safe, convenient travel path that replicates as nearly as possible the most desirable characteristics of sidewalks or footpaths.

Pedestrian accommodations through work zones must include provisions for the disabled. Temporary traffic control devices for vehicular traffic should not be allowed within the pedestrians' travel path.

At transit stops, provisions should be made to ensure passengers have the ability to board and depart from transit vehicles safely.

Signing should be used to direct pedestrians to safe street crossings in advance of an encounter with a work zone. Signs should be placed at intersections so pedestrians, particularly in high-traffic-volume urban and suburban areas, are not confronted with midblock crossings.

## 10.14.4.2 Bicycle Considerations

When an existing bicycle way is located within a work zone, it must be maintained.

There are several considerations in planning for bicyclists in work zones on highways and streets:

1. Bicyclists should not be led into direct conflicts with mainline traffic, work site vehicles, or equipment moving through or around traffic control zones.
2. Bicyclists should be provided with a travel route that replicates the most desirable characteristics of a wide paved shoulder or bike lane through or around the work zone.
3. If the work zone interrupts the continuity of an existing shared use path or bike route system, signs directing bicyclists through or around the work zone and back to the path or route should be provided.
4. The bicyclist should not be directed onto the same path used by pedestrians.

## 10.14.5 Superelevation

Horizontal curves constructed in conjunction with temporary work zone diversions, transitions, and crossovers should have the required superelevation. Under conditions where superelevation is not used, the minimum radii that can be applied are listed in the **Table 10.14.2**. Superelevation must be included with the design whenever the minimum radii cannot be achieved.

**Table 10.14.2 Minimum Radii for Normal 0.02 Cross Slopes**

SPEED (mph)	MINIMUM RADIUS (feet)
65	3130
60	2400
55	1840
50	1390
45	1080
40	820
35	610
30	430

## 10.14.6 Lane Widths

Existing lane widths of through roadways should be maintained through work zone travel ways wherever practical. The minimum widths for work zone travel lanes shall be 10 ft. for all roadways other than Interstate. On Interstate highways the minimum width for work zone travel lanes shall be 11 ft. except at least one 12 ft. lane in each direction shall be provided.

## 10.14.7 Lane Closure Analysis

The lane closure analysis is a process used by designers to calculate the peak hour traffic volume and the restricted capacity for open road and signalized intersections. The analysis will determine if a lane closure should or should not be allowed and the time of day or night a lane closure could occur without excessive travel delay.

For all projects under reconstruction, the existing number of lanes shall remain open to traffic when construction is not active.

For construction on Limited Access facilities, the Traffic Control Plan will keep the existing number of traffic lanes open at all times throughout the duration of the construction project.

No lane closures in excess of one work day shall be permitted on Limited Access construction where only two traveled lanes in one direction exist. If it becomes necessary to have a long-term lane closure on a four lane Interstate, sufficient documentation shall be provided to the District Secretary for her/his approval.

**Exhibit 10-A** includes the lane closure analysis work sheets and two sample analyses. The sample **Lane Closure Work Sheet (Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 3 of 11)** has been cross-referenced to the **Lane Closure Symbols and Definitions** sheets (**Exhibit 10-A, Sheets 1 & 2 of 11**) with circled numbers. The circled numbers correspond to the numbers of the symbols and definitions. The symbols and definitions sheets show the designer where to find the necessary information to fill out the lane closure work sheet.

Fill out the top part of the lane closure work sheet and complete the formulas to calculate the hourly percentage of traffic at which a lane closure will be permitted (see **Exhibit 10-A, Sheets 6 & 8 of 11**). Transfer these percentages to the graph on the **Lane Closures 24 Hour Counts** sheet (**Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 5 of 11**). Draw a line across the graph representing the percentage for both open road and signalized intersections (see **Exhibit**

**10-A, Sheets 7 & 9 of 11).** Plot the hourly percentages (hourly volume divided by total volume) on the graph. Any hourly percentage extending above the restricted capacity percentage lines for open road or signalized intersections indicated lane closure problems. The bottom of the graph gives times for AM and PM. By coordinating the lane closure problem areas to the time of day, a designer knows when to restrict lane closure.

Many of Florida's roadways have directional peak hour traffic volumes, with inbound morning traffic, and outbound afternoon traffic. Doing a composite lane closure analysis would in many cases require night work. However, if a separate lane closure analysis is calculated for inbound and outbound separately, a lane closure may be allowed and the contractor could work in daylight hours, (See **Exhibit 10-A, Sheets 10 & 11 of 11**).

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Exhibit 10-A Lane Closures Sheet 1 of 11

### Symbols and Definitions

1. **ATC** = Actual Traffic Counts. Use current traffic counts. Traffic counts can be obtained from the Office of Planning, or you may need to get traffic counts done. The designer needs hourly traffic volumes with a total traffic volume for a 24-hour period (see *Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 7 of 11*).
2. **P/D** = Peak Traffic to Daily Traffic Ratio. Highest hourly volume divided by the total 24-hour volume. Convert the percentage to a decimal on the Lane Closure Worksheet (see *Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 7 of 11*).
3. **D** = Directional Distribution of peak hour traffic on multilaned roads. This factor does not apply to a two-lane roadway converted to two-way, one-lane. The directional distribution can be obtained from the Office of Planning.
4. **PSCF** = Peak Season Conversion Factor. Many counties in Florida have a significant variance in seasonal traffic. The designer should use the PSCF for the week in which the actual traffic count was conducted. The Office of Planning has tables showing Peak Season Conversion Factors for every county in Florida. (See sample table of values on *Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 4 of 11*).
5. **RTF** = Remaining Traffic Factor is the percentage of traffic that will not be diverted onto other facilities during a lane closure. Convert the percentage to a decimal on the Lane Closure Worksheet. This is an estimate that the designer must make on his own, or with help from the Office of Planning. Range: 0% for all traffic diverted to 100% for none diverted.
6. **G/C** = Ratio of Green to Cycle Time. This factor is to be applied when lane closure is through or within 600 ft. of a signalized intersection. The Office of Traffic Engineering has timing cycles for all traffic signals.
7. **V** = Peak Hour Traffic Volume. The designer calculates the peak hour traffic volume by multiplying the actual traffic count, times peak to daily traffic ratio, times directional factor, times peak seasonal factor, times remaining traffic factor. This calculation will give the designer the expected traffic volume of a roadway at the anticipated time of a lane closure.



## Exhibit 10-A Lane Closures, Sheet 2 of 11

### Symbols and Definitions (Continued)

8. **C** = Capacity of a 2L, 4L or 6L roadway with one lane closed, and the remaining lane(s) unrestricted by lateral obstructions. The capacity of a 4L or 6L roadway is based on lane closure in only one direction (see Lane Closure Capacity Table on **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 3 of 11**).
9. **RC** = Restricting Capacity of the above facilities by site specific limitations detailed in the Traffic Control Plans (TCP) which apply to travel lane width, lateral clearance and the work zone factor. The work zone factor only applies to two lane roadways (see the tables on **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 4 of 11** to obtain the Obstruction Factor and Work Zone Factor).
10. **OF** = Obstruction Factor which reduces the capacity of the remaining travel lane(s) by restricting one or both of the following components: Travel lane width less than 12 ft. and lateral clearance less than 6 ft. (see TCP and Obstruction Factor Table in **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 4 of 11**).
11. **WZF** = Work Zone Factor (WZF) is directly proportional to the work zone length (WZL). The capacity is reduced by restricting traffic movement to a single lane while opposing traffic queues. The WZF and WZL only apply to a two lane roadway converted to two way, one lane (see the Work Zone Factor Table on **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 4 of 11**).
12. **TLW** = Travel Lane Width is used to determine the obstruction factor (see TCP and the Obstruction Factor Table on **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 4 of 11**).
13. **LC** = Lateral Clearance is the distance from the edge of the travel lane to the obstruction. The lateral clearance is used to determine the obstruction factor (see MOT plans and Obstruction Factor Table on **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 4 of 11**).

**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 3 of 11**

**LANE CLOSURE WORK SHEET**

FINANCIAL PRODUCT ID \_\_\_\_\_ FAP NO.: \_\_\_\_\_  
 COUNTY: \_\_\_\_\_ DESIGNER: \_\_\_\_\_  
 NO. EXISTING LANES: \_\_\_\_\_ SCOPE OF WORK: \_\_\_\_\_

Calculate the peak hour traffic volume (V)

$$V = ATC \text{ (1)} \times P/D \text{ (2)} \times D \text{ (3)} \times PSCF \text{ (4)} \times RTF \text{ (5)} = \text{(7)}$$

**LANE CLOSURE CAPACITY TABLE**

Capacity (C) of an Existing 2-Lane – Converted to 2-Way, 1-Lane = 1400 VPH  
 Capacity (C) of an Existing 4-Lane – Converted to 1-Way, 1-Lane = 1800 VPH  
 Capacity (C) of an Existing 6-Lane – Converted to 1-Way, 2-Lane = 3600 VPH

Factors restricting Capacity:

TLW (12) LC (13) WZL (11) G/C (6)

Calculate the Restricted Capacity (RC) at the Lane Closure Site by multiplying the appropriate 2L, 4L, or 6L Capacity (C) from the Table above by the Obstruction Factor (OF) and the Work Zone Factor (WZF). If the Lane Closure is through or within 600 ft. of a signalized intersection, multiply the RC by the G/C Ratio.

$$RC \text{ (Open Road)} = C \text{ (8)} \times OF \text{ (10)} \times WZF \text{ (11)} = \text{(9)}$$

$$RC \text{ (Signalized)} = RC \text{ (Open Road)} \text{ (9)} \times G/C \text{ (6)} = \text{(9)}$$

If  $V \leq RC$ , there is no restriction on Lane Closure

If  $V > RC$ , calculate the hourly percentage of ADT at which Lane Closure will be permitted

Open Road % =  $\frac{RC \text{ (Open Road)} \text{ (9)}}{\text{(ATC (1)} \times D \text{ (3)} \times PSCF \text{ (4)} \times RTF \text{ (5)})}$  = \_\_\_\_\_ %

Signalized % = Open Road % \_\_\_\_\_  $\times G/C \text{ (6)}$  = \_\_\_\_\_ %

Plot 24 hour traffic to determine when Lane Closure permitted. (See **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 5 of 11**)

NOTE: For Existing 2-Lane Roadways, D = 1.00.  
 Work Zone Factor (WZF) applies only to 2-Lane Roadways.

For  $RTF < 1.00$ , briefly describe alternate route \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 4 of 11**  
**Lane Closures – Capacity Adjustment Factors**  
**Peak Season Conversion Factor (PSCF) Sample**

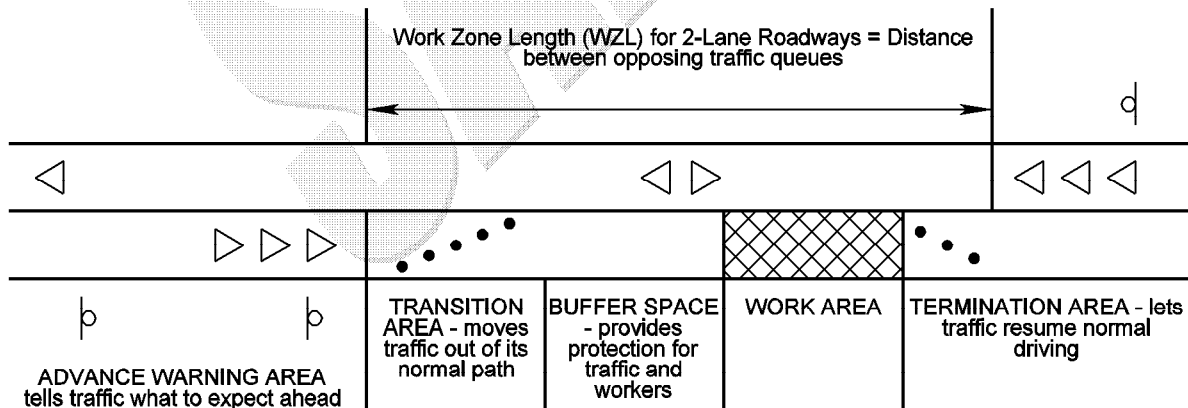
1998 Peak Season Factor Category Report for Tropic County							
WK	Dates	SF	PSCF	WK	Dates	SF	PSCF
9	02/22 – 02/28/98	1.14	1.48	15	04/05 – 04/11/98	0.86	1.12
10	03/01 – 03/07/98	1.04	1.35	16	04/12 – 04/18/98	0.87	1.13
11	03/08 – 03/14/98	0.94	1.22	17	04/19 – 04/25/98	0.90	1.17
12	03/15 – 03/21/98	0.83	1.08	18	04/26 – 05/02/98	0.93	1.21
13	03/22 – 03/28/98	0.84	1.09	19	05/03 – 05/09/98	0.96	1.25
14	03/29 – 04/04/98	0.85	1.11	20	05/10 – 05/16/98	0.99	1.29

**Obstruction Factors (OF)**

Lateral Clearance (LC) (feet)	Travel Lane Width (TLW) (feet)			
	12	11	10	9
6	1.00	0.96	0.90	0.80
4	0.98	0.94	0.87	0.77
2	0.94	0.90	0.83	0.72
0.0	0.86	0.82	0.75	0.65

**Work Zone Factors (WZF)**

WZL (ft.)	WZF	WZL (ft.)	WZF	WZL (ft.)	WZF
200	0.98	2200	0.81	4200	0.64
400	0.97	2400	0.80	4400	0.63
600	0.95	2600	0.78	4600	0.61
800	0.93	2800	0.76	4800	0.59
1000	0.92	3000	0.74	5000	0.57
1200	0.90	3200	0.73	5200	0.56
1400	0.88	3400	0.71	5400	0.54
1600	0.86	3600	0.69	5600	0.53
1800	0.85	3800	0.68	5800	0.51
2000	0.83	4000	0.66	6000	0.50



**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 5 of 11**

LANE CLOSURES  
 24 HOUR COUNTS

TIME	AM HOURLY VOLUME	ATC %	PM HOURLY VOLUME	ATC %	DATE
12 - 1	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
1 - 2	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2 - 3	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
3 - 4	_____	_____	_____	_____	DESIGNER
4 - 5	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
5 - 6	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
6 - 7	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
7 - 8	_____	_____	_____	_____	PROJECT NO.
8 - 9	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
9 - 10	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
10 - 11	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
11 - 12	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
		TOTAL	_____	_____	LOCATION

HOURLY VARIATION OF DAILY TRAFFIC

- CONCLUSION -  
 ROUND TO THE NEAREST 1/2 HOUR CONSERVATIVELY

OPEN ROAD LANE CLOSURE

SIGNALIZED LANE CLOSURE

**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 6 of 11**

**LANE CLOSURE WORKSHEET**

FINANCIAL PRODUCT ID: 123456-7-89-10

FAP NO.: NA

COUNTY: Tropic

DESIGNER: Yates

NO. EXISTING LANES: 2

SCOPE OF WORK: Widen

**and Resurface**

Calculate the peak hour traffic volume (V)

$$V = ATC \underline{15000} \times P/D \underline{0.083} \times D \underline{NA} \times PSCF \underline{1.17} \times RTF \underline{0.75} = \underline{1092}$$

**LANE CLOSURE CAPACITY TABLE**

Capacity (C) of an Existing 2-Lane – Converted to 2-way, 1-Lane = 1400VPH  
Capacity (C) of an Existing 4-Lane – Converted to 1-way, 1-Lane = 1800VPH  
Capacity (C) of an Existing 6-Lane – Converted to 1-way, 2-Lane = 3600VPH

Factors restricting Capacity:

$$TLW \underline{10} \quad LC \underline{4} \quad WZL \underline{2100} \quad G/C \underline{0.64}$$

Calculate the Restricted Capacity (RC) at the Lane Closure Site by multiplying the appropriate 2L, 4L, or 6L Capacity (C) from the table above by the Obstruction Factor (OF) and the Work Zone Factor (WZF). If the Lane Closure is through or within 600 ft. of a signalized intersection, multiply the RC by the G/C Ratio.

$$RC \text{ (Open Road)} = C \underline{1400} \times OF \underline{0.87} \times WZF \underline{0.82} = \underline{999}$$

$$RC \text{ (Signalized)} = RC \text{ (Open Road)} \underline{999} \times G/C \underline{0.64} = \underline{639}$$

If  $V \leq RC$ , there is no restriction on Lane Closure

If  $V > RC$ , calculate the hourly percentage of ADT at which Lane Closure will be permitted

$$RC \text{ (Open Road)} \underline{999}$$

$$\text{Open Road \%} = \frac{RC \text{ (Open Road)} \underline{999}}{(ATC \underline{15000} \times D \underline{1.00} \times PSCF \underline{1.17} \times RTF \underline{0.75})} = \underline{7.59} \%$$

$$\text{Signalized \%} = \text{Open Road \%} \underline{7.59} \times G/C \underline{0.64} = \underline{4.86} \%$$

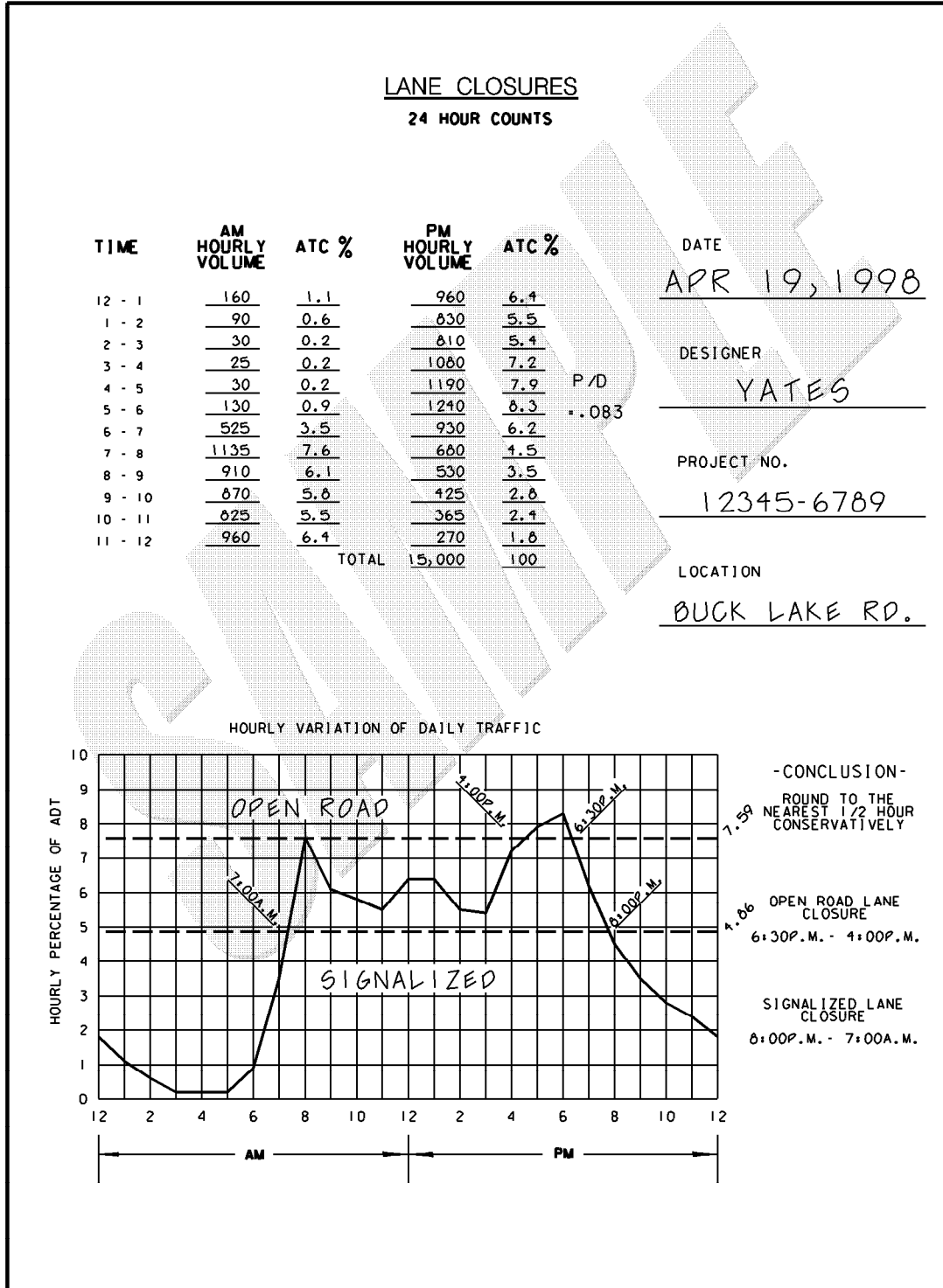
Plot 24 hour traffic to determine when Lane Closure permitted. (See **Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 7 of 11**)

NOTE: For Existing 2-Lane Roadways, D = 1.00.

Work Zone Factor (WZF) applies only to 2-Lane Roadways.

For  $RTF < 1.00$ , briefly describe alternate route: **25% of existing traffic diverted on Bullard Blvd., north on Newhall Lane, then east on Xanders Expressway.**

**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 7 of 11**



**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 8 of 11**

**LANE CLOSURE WORKSHEET**

FINANCIAL PRODUCT ID: 123456-7-89-10

FAP NO.: NA

COUNTY: Tropic

DESIGNER: Giddens

NO. EXISTING LANES: 2

SCOPE OF WORK: Resurface

Calculate the peak hour traffic volume (V)

$$V = \text{ATC } \underline{30000} \times \text{P/D } \underline{0.083} \times \text{D } \underline{0.55} \times \text{PSCF } \underline{1.17} \times \text{RTF } \underline{1.00} = \underline{1602}$$

**LANE CLOSURE CAPACITY TABLE**

Capacity (C) of an Existing 2-Lane – Converted to 2-way, 1-Lane = 1400VPH  
Capacity (C) of an Existing 4-Lane – Converted to 1-way, 1-Lane = 1800VPH  
Capacity (C) of an Existing 6-Lane – Converted to 1-way, 2-Lane = 3600VPH

Factors restricting Capacity:

$$\text{TLW } \underline{11} \quad \text{LC } \underline{6} \quad \text{WZL } \underline{NA \text{ for } 4L} \quad \text{G/C } \underline{0.74}$$

Calculate the Restricted Capacity (RC) at the Lane Closure Site by multiplying the appropriate 2L, 4L, or 6L Capacity (C) from the table above by the Obstruction Factor (OF) and the Work Zone Factor (WZF). If the Lane Closure is through or within 600 ft. of a signalized intersection, multiply the RC by the G/C Ratio.

$$\text{RC (Open Road)} = \text{C } \underline{1800} \times \text{OF } \underline{0.96} \times \text{WZF } \underline{1.00} = \underline{1728}$$

$$\text{RC (Signalized)} = \text{RC (Open Road)} \underline{1728} \times \text{G/C } \underline{0.74} = \underline{1279}$$

If  $V \leq \text{RC}$ , there is no restriction on Lane Closure

If  $V > \text{RC}$ , calculate the hourly percentage of ADT at which Lane Closure will be permitted

$$\text{RC (Open Road)} \underline{1728}$$

$$\text{Open Road \%} = \frac{\text{RC (Open Road)}}{\text{V}} = \frac{\underline{1728}}{\underline{1602}} = \underline{8.95\%}$$

$$\text{(ATC } \underline{30000} \times \text{D } \underline{0.55} \times \text{PSCF } \underline{1.17} \times \text{RTF } \underline{1.00} \text{)}$$

$$\text{Signalized \%} = \text{Open Road \% } \underline{8.95} \times \text{G/C } \underline{0.74} = \underline{6.62\%}$$

Plot 24 hour traffic to determine when Lane Closure permitted. (See *Exhibit 10-A, Sheet 9 of 11*)

NOTE: For Existing 2-Lane Roadways, D = 1.00.

Work Zone Factor (WZF) applies only to 2-Lane Roadways.

For  $\text{RTF} < 1.00$ , briefly describe alternate route: NA

**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 9 of 11**

LANE CLOSURES  
 24 HOUR COUNTS

TIME	AM HOURLY VOLUME	ATC %	PM HOURLY VOLUME	ATC %
12 - 1	320	1.1	1920	6.4
1 - 2	180	0.6	1660	5.5
2 - 3	60	0.2	1620	5.4
3 - 4	50	0.2	2160	7.2
4 - 5	60	0.2	2380	7.9
5 - 6	260	0.9	2480	8.3
6 - 7	1050	3.5	1060	6.2
7 - 8	2270	7.6	1360	4.5
8 - 9	1820	6.1	1060	3.5
9 - 10	1740	5.8	850	2.8
10 - 11	1650	5.5	730	2.4
11 - 12	1920	6.4	540	1.8
TOTAL			30,000	100

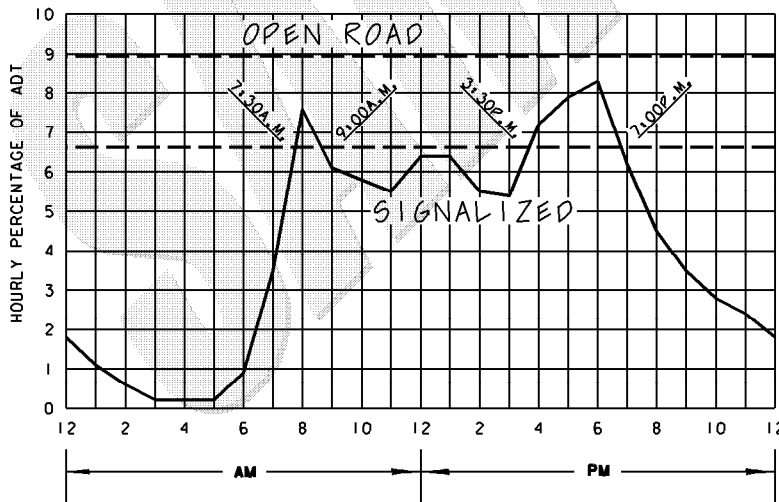
DATE  
APR 19, 1998

DESIGNER  
GIDDENS

PROJECT NO.  
12345-6789

LOCATION  
BUCK LAKE RD.

HOURLY VARIATION OF DAILY TRAFFIC



-CONCLUSION-  
 ROUND TO THE  
 NEAREST 1/2 HOUR  
 CONSERVATIVELY

OPEN ROAD LANE  
 CLOSURE

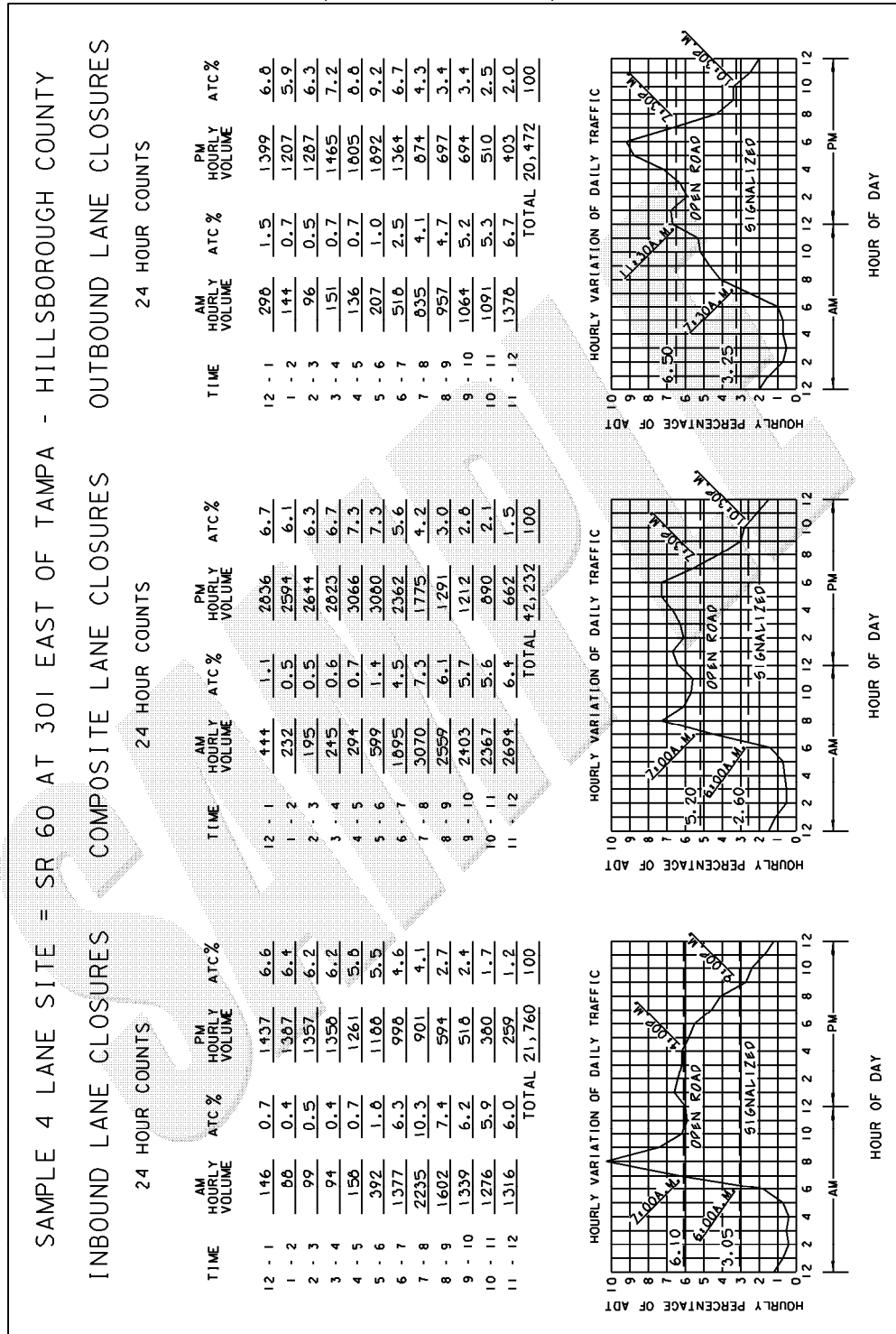
NO  
 RESTRICTION

SIGNALIZED LANE  
 CLOSURE

9:00A.M. - 3:30P.M.  
 7:00P.M. - 7:30A.M.



Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 10 of 11



**Exhibit 10-A, Lane Closures, Sheet 11 of 11**

<b>LANE CLOSURE WORKSHEET SUMMARY</b> <b>LANE SAMPLE WITH SIGNIFICANT AM-PM PEAKS</b> <b>SAMPLES = INBOUND (WB), COMPOSITE (EB &amp; WB), OUTBOUND (EB)</b> <b>SITE = SR 60 @ US 301 EAST OF TAMPA, HILLSBOROUGH CO.</b>			
COMPONENT	INBOUND	COMPOSITE	OUTBOUND
ADT	21,760	42,232	20,472
P/D	0.103	0.073	0.092
D	1.00	0.60	1.00
PSCF	1.17	1.17	1.17
RTF	1.00	1.00	1.00
V	2622	2164	2203
TLW	12	12	12
LC	0	0	0
C	1800	1800	1800
OF	0.86	0.86	0.86
RC (OPEN ROAD)	1548	1548	1548
G/C	0.50	0.50	0.50
RC (SIGNAL)	774	774	774
% OPEN ROAD	6.10	5.20	6.50
% SIGNAL	3.05	2.60	3.25
LANE CLOSURE	7:00 AM	7:00 AM	11:30 AM
(OPEN ROAD)	4:00 PM	7:30 PM	7:30 PM
LANE CLOSURE	6:00 AM.	6:00 AM	7:30 AM
(SIGNAL)	9:00 PM.	10:30 PM	10:30 PM

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 10.14.8 Detours, Diversions, and Lane Shifts

A **detour** is the redirection of traffic onto an alternate route, using state roads, county roads, or city streets, to bypass the work zone. A **diversion** is a special detour onto a temporary roadway adjacent to the existing or permanent roadway. A **lane shift** is the redirection of traffic onto a section of the permanent roadway or shoulder.

Detour signing is usually done under the direction of the traffic engineer who has authority over the roadway to be used. The detour should be signed clearly so drivers can traverse the entire detour and return to the original roadway. When detours are required, the geometry of the detour route should be compared against the type of traffic being routed through the detour. For example, detouring of traffic which includes large trucks and transit vehicles will require certain pavement widths, turning radius, and overhead clearance (including low power lines, span wires, and low hanging tree limbs). The structural capacity of the detour pavement should also be considered.

The designer has two methods of paying for diversions: by (1) using the "special detour" lump sum pay item or (2) using the lump sum Maintenance of Traffic (MOT) pay item. When the special detour pay item is used, the work and quantities included for pay under the item are to be tabulated and noted in the plans. The special detour pay item is intended to be used in all situations where traffic is shifted one lane width or more onto temporary pavement.

A Diversion, which is to be signed as a lane shift, may be paid for under Special Detour, Pay Item 102-2 (Lump Sum). The ***Basis of Estimates Handbook*** should be referenced to make sure that the appropriate items are included in this lump sum.

TCPs shall include sufficient detail for diversion geometry. Diversions should be designed with shoulders (2 ft. min.) whenever practical. The radius of curvature and taper lengths shall be shown. Diversions should be designed and operated as close to the normal speed as possible. When speed reductions are necessary, the reduction should be in accordance with the ***Design Standards, Index 600***. The recommended minimum radius of curvature (without superelevation) for diversions is shown in ***Table 10.14.2***.

### **10.14.9 Above Ground Hazards**

An above ground hazard is anything that is greater than 4 inches in height and is firm and unyielding or doesn't meet breakaway requirements. For treatment of an above ground hazard, see the *Design Standards, Index 600*.

### **10.14.10 Drop-offs in Work Zones**

Acceptable warning and barrier devices for traffic control at drop-offs in work areas are detailed in the *Design Standards, Index 600*.

The designer should anticipate drop-offs that are likely to occur during construction and provide the appropriate devices. For those projects where barrier wall would be needed and yet it is not practical, such as highly developed urban areas where numerous driveways exist, the designer should consider adding plan notes that require conditions be returned to acceptable grade by the end of the day's operation.

### **10.14.11 Narrow Bridges and Roadways**

Simultaneously working on both sides of a bridge (bridge widening, etc.) or roadway may be hazardous due to the narrow widths of some bridges and roads. Consideration should be given to specifying that work be done only on one side at a time, particularly on high speed roadways. In some situations, the installation of barrier wall on both shoulders can totally eliminate any shoulder or refuge area. The designer should consider whether or not this restriction of the effective width is acceptable and consistent with the desired operational ability of the facility.

### 10.14.12 Existing Highway Lighting

If the project has existing highway lighting, the designer shall prepare a specification that completely describes what is to be done with the existing lighting during all phases of construction. Give detailed information on any poles that have to be relocated or any new conduit or conductors that would have to be installed. A field survey should be conducted to establish the condition of the existing system and what responsibility the contractor will have in bringing the existing lighting system back to an acceptable condition.

The designer should use the appropriate pay items and quantities for all work to be done for maintaining existing lighting throughout construction.

### 10.14.13 Work Area Access

The TCP may need to include a work area access plan, if necessary. This is a constructibility issue in which the designer addresses the question of how the contractor is to get materials and equipment into the work area safely. This is a particularly critical issue on high speed facilities (such as the Interstate) where barrier wall is used to protect median work areas. Some consideration may be given to the design and construction of temporary acceleration and deceleration lanes for the construction equipment.

### 10.14.14 Railroads

Railroad crossings that are affected by a construction project must be evaluated to ensure that the Traffic Control Plan does not cause queuing of traffic across the railroad tracks. Evaluate the Plan's signal timing, tapers, lane closures and distance to intersections as compared to projected peak traffic volumes. The effects of the traffic control plan on interconnected traffic signals and railroad signals must be evaluated to avoid conflicting or ineffective signal controls.

### 10.14.15 Pay Items and Quantities

The *Basis of Estimates Handbook* contains detailed instructions on calculating many of the MOT quantities.

## 10.15 Speed Zoning

### 10.15.1 Regulatory Speeds in Work Zones

Regulatory speeds should be established to route vehicles safely through the work zone as close to normal highway speed as possible. Traffic Control Plans (TCPs) for all projects must include specific regulatory speeds for each phase of work. This can either be the posted speed or a reduced speed. The speed shall be noted in the TCPs: this includes indicating the existing speed if no reduction is made. By virtue of **Florida Statute 316.187**, all regulatory speeds must be established on the basis of a traffic and engineering investigation. Designers should only reduce speed when the temporary geometry requires it. The justification for establishing work zone regulatory speeds different from normal speed limits must be included in the project file. The TCP and the project file will suffice as the traffic and engineering investigation.

When field conditions warrant speed reductions different from those shown in the TCP, the contractor may submit to the project engineer for approval by the Department, a signed and sealed study to justify the need for further reducing the posted speed or the engineer may request the District Traffic Operations Engineer (DTOE) to investigate the need. It will not be necessary for the DTOE to issue regulations for regulatory speeds in work zones due to the revised provisions of **Florida Statute 316.0745(2)(b)**.

Regulatory speed signs in rural areas (Interstate and Non-Interstate) are to be preceded by a "Reduced Speed Ahead" sign positioned as follows:

Interstate (Rural)	-	1000 ft. in advance
Non-Interstate (Rural)	-	500 ft. in advance

Urban areas, ordinarily do not require an advance sign, however, the sign may be included at the designer's option.

The regulatory speed and "Reduced Speed" Ahead signs are to be paid for under the pay item for Construction Work Zone Signs (per each per day).

If the existing regulatory speed is to be used, consideration should be given to supplementing the existing signs when the construction work zone is between existing regulatory speed signs. For projects where the reduced speed conditions exist for greater than 1 mile in rural areas (Non-Interstate) and on Rural or Urban Interstate, additional regulatory speed signs are to be placed at no more than 1 mile intervals. Engineering

judgment should be used in the placement of additional signs. For urban situations (Non-Interstate), additional regulatory speed signs are to be placed at a maximum of 1000 ft. apart.

The regulatory speed should not be reduced more than 10 mph below the posted speed, and never below the minimum statutory speed for the class of facility, without the approval of the District Traffic Operations Engineer and the appropriate District Director (See the ***Design Standards, Index 600***).

To ensure credibility with motorists and enforcement agencies, temporary regulatory speed signs shall be removed or covered as soon as the conditions requiring the reduced speed no longer exist. Once they are removed or covered, the speed existing prior to construction will automatically go back into effect unless new speed limit signing is provided for in the plans. On projects with interspaced work activities (such a interstate resurfacing) speed reductions should be located in proximity to those activities which merit a reduced speed, and not “blanketed” for the entire project.

**The TCP phase notes shall indicate when to remove the regulatory reduced speed limit signs.**

When the regulatory speed is changed in a work zone, the permanent speed limit signs are to be removed or covered during the period when the work zone regulatory speed zones are in effect.



## 10.16 Law Enforcement Services

Work zones may require law enforcement services to protect both the workers and motorists during construction or maintenance activities. The need for these services should be considered during the development of the Traffic Control Plans. The service needed could involve a Speed and Law Enforcement Officer for speed and traffic law enforcement, a Traffic Control Officer for traffic control, or a combination of the two.

A contractual agreement between the FDOT and the Florida Department of Highway Safety and Motor Vehicles (DHSMV) was entered into for the use of Speed and Law Enforcement Officer (Central Office Statewide Contract) to exclusively enforce the speed limit in specified work zones. (REF. **Contract #B-8970**) Each district has also been encouraged to enter into contractual agreements with local law enforcement agencies to provide additional resources for the use of a Speed and Law Enforcement Officer (District Contract).

Traffic Control Officers are to be used for traffic control only as described in **Specification 102**. The Traffic Control Officer may be acquired from local law enforcement agencies or the Florida Highway Patrol. Such Traffic control law enforcement services shall not include patrolling or speed enforcement. The use of Traffic Control Officers may be called for on a project that also uses Speed and Law Enforcement Officers.

### 10.16.1 Use of Speed and Law Enforcement Officers

The Department has determined that construction or maintenance activities that divert, restrict, or significantly impair vehicular movement through work zones may require patrolling by a Speed and Law Enforcement Officer specifically for speed and law enforcement to provide a safer environment for both workers and motorists. A Speed and Law Enforcement Officer may also be warranted, for the safety of the motorists, through some work zones during times when construction or maintenance activities are not in progress.

Conditions to consider for the use of Speed and Law Enforcement Officer may include, but not be limited to:

1. A work zone requiring reduced speeds
2. Work zones where barrier wall is used adjacent to through traffic
3. Night time work zones

4. Areas with intense commuter use where peak hour traffic will require speed enforcement
5. A work zone in which workers are exposed to nearby high speed traffic
6. Work zones similar to the ***Design Standards, Indexes 609, 613, 616, and 651***

### **10.16.2 Use of Traffic Control Officer Law Enforcement**

There are certain construction activities that impede traffic flows such that supplemental traffic control is desirable. Uniformed law enforcement officers are respected by motorists; therefore, it may be in the best interest of the situation to utilize Traffic Control Officer law enforcement as a supplement to traffic control devices to assist the motorists and provide a safer work zone.

By specification, conditions for the use of Traffic Control Officer law enforcement shall be:

1. Traffic control in a signalized intersection when signals are not in use.
2. When ***Index No. 627*** of the ***Design Standards*** is used on Interstate at nighttime and required by the plans.
3. When pacing/rolling blockade is used.

### **10.16.3 Coordination, Documentation and Payment**

On each individual project, the designer and/or the project manager shall coordinate with the district construction office to determine if law enforcement services will be justified. If possible the associated law enforcement commander shall also be included in the coordination.

Once the determination has been made that law enforcement will be used on a project, the designer/project manager and the construction engineer shall develop supporting documentation for each MOT phase including the conditions requiring the law enforcement services, the number of personnel, the man-hours, and any other requirements that may be established. The supporting documentation for Speed and Law Enforcement Officer and Traffic Control Officer law enforcement will be kept separate.

The documentation for Speed and Law Enforcement Officer will be shown in the Computation Book only and there will be no reference made to these services in the plans except as shown on the Summary of Pay Items Sheet.

Speed and Law Enforcement Officer can be used on non-limited access highways provided that the District Director of Operations has approved its use.

Speed and Law Enforcement Officer will be paid for under pay item 999-102-xxa - Speed and Law Enforcement Officer (Do Not Bid) HR.

For Traffic Control Officer law enforcement, the TCP shall clearly indicate the intended use of the officer(s) during each phase of construction, the need for the service, the number of officers needed, and the required man-hours. Traffic Control Officer law enforcement will be paid for under pay item 102- 14 - Traffic Control Officer HR. Complete documentation that complies with the TCP shall be included in the Computation Book.

The initial coordination between the designer/project manager and construction shall take place prior to Phase II. The final determination of man-hours and final documentation shall be accomplished at the same time that construction days are set.

#### **10.16.4 Other Uses of Law Enforcement**

The contractor may choose to use law enforcement services beyond the details of the TCP for situations that assist with mobilization, demobilization, MOT setup, and other instances where he prefers the use of law enforcement.

The contractor is responsible for the coordination of these uses and will be included under the Lump Sum Maintenance of Traffic pay item. These contractor required services are not to be included in the Department's contract pay items for law enforcement services.

## 10.17 Motorist Awareness System (MAS)

The purpose of a Motorist Awareness System (MAS) is to increase the motorist awareness of the presence of active work and provide emphasis on reduced speed limits in the active work area. A MAS is created by using a combination of several different traffic control devices to draw attention to the legal speed and inform the motorist of his vehicle speed. Descriptions of some MAS devices are provided below. The ***Design Standards, Index 670***, provide details on the most effective combination and placement of MAS traffic control devices.

The MAS is intended for use on rural high-speed high AADT highways, which have lane closures with no more than two lanes open to traffic, and when the active work zone is less than one mile in length.

Designers should consult with experienced construction personnel on the likelihood of excessive speeds in the work zones for their projects. If the designer wants to modify the standard drawing for the MAS, special details on the setup of the MAS must be developed and included in the plans. In addition the designer must work with construction to perform and document a speed study prior to and after setting up the MAS. The results of the speed study shall be forwarded to Central Office Construction in accordance with ***Construction Project Administration Manual (CPAM), Section 5.7***. If a speed reduction is documented on several projects, a standard will be developed for the modified MAS setup.

The following is a list of some of the devices that are used as part of a Motorist Awareness System.

### 10.17.1 Portable Regulatory Signs (PRS)

The purpose of this device is to highlight the regulatory speed for the work zone. A portable regulatory sign is a portable trailer that has the regulatory speed sign mounted with flashing lights on each side of the sign. The lights are used to draw the driver's attention to the regulatory speed.

### 10.17.2 Radar Speed Display Unit (RSDU)

The purpose of this device is to display the motorist's work zone speed. A radar speed display unit is a portable trailer that displays the speed of approaching motorists on a LED

display panel. The radar mounted on the unit detects the speed. A regulatory sign with the posted speed is mounted above the LED display panel. The unit is fitted with a device, which counts the number of vehicles passing the Radar Speed Display Unit. The counter device is capable of:

1. Digital readout of the number of vehicles passing the radar speed display unit.
2. Digital readout of the number of vehicles exceeding the speed limit shown on the radar speed display unit.

The device can be set that only speeds greater than the work zone speed are displayed.

### **10.17.3 Highway Advisory Radio (HAR)**

This is a radio transmitter mounted on a portable trailer, which can be set up in the work zone to advise motorists through their car radio of work zone information. Notice of lane closures, reasons for delays, advance warning of work zones, etc. let motorists know what to expect while driving through the work zone. A Variable Message Sign (VMS) is used in conjunction with the HAR to inform the motorist of the AM frequency to tune to on their car radio. The HAR can generally transmit messages in a 2.5 mile radius. It is very important that the messages broadcast be up to date and reflects actual work zone conditions.

The HAR should be considered as a supplement to the MAS, not an integral device. Use of a HAR should be in accordance with the Department's *Highway Advisory Radio System User Manual*. This manual is available from FDOT Maps and Publications. HAR use is restricted to daytime hours, and to the immediate vicinity of areas identified in the HAR manual.

The District Public Information Officer should be consulted prior to use of this device on a project.

### **10.17.4 Safety Warning Transmitter (SWT)**

The purpose of the SWT is to transmit a message to drivers with radar detectors that have the capability of receiving messages from a transmitter. The SWT can transmit to a radar detector an audible alert such as a "beep", a LED text message, or a synthesized voice message, depending on the type of radar detector a motorist has. This device is a small unit, which can be attached to any other traffic control device within the work zone. The effectiveness of this device is limited to motorists with radar detectors so it is not considered an integral part of a motorist awareness system.

### **10.17.5 Speed and Law Enforcement Officer**

The use of moving officers on a random basis, in conjunction with the other MAS devices, has proven to be effective. See **Section 10.16** for additional information.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 11

### Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

11.1	General.....	11-1
------	--------------	------



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 11

### Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

#### 11.1 General

A Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) shall be developed and implemented for each FDOT construction project that disturbs one or more acres of total land area and discharges to waters of the United States.

The site specific SWPPP is a requirement of both the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) General Permit for Stormwater Discharges from Construction Activities and the State of Florida Department of Environmental Protection (DEP) Generic Permit for Stormwater Discharges from Construction Activities. In order to use these permits the FDOT must:

1. Prepare a plan that assures compliance with the terms and conditions of the General Permit(s). This includes obtaining a state stormwater quality permit, if appropriate.
2. File a Notice of Intent (NOI) which documents our intent to be authorized as a permittee under the terms and conditions of the General Permits.

Distribution of the NOI, SWPPP and signed certification statements will be in accordance with ***Environmental Management Procedure No. 650-040-003*** titled "***NPDES Permits for Stormwater Discharges from Highway Construction Sites***".

The objectives of the SWPPP are to:

1. Prevent erosion where construction activities are occurring
2. Prevent pollutants from mixing with stormwater
3. Prevent pollutants from being discharged by trapping them on-site, before they can affect the receiving waters

Note: For the purpose of preparing a SWPPP, a pollutant is anything that could cause or contribute to a violation of state water quality standards.

A complete SWPPP consists of several items: SWPPP sheets, other plan sheets and documents referenced in the SWPPP sheets, the contractor's approved Section 104

Erosion Control Plan, inspection reports, and documentation of field changes that were made to better address the objectives.

Preparing and implementing a SWPPP involves evaluating the site, selecting and describing control measures to address the objectives, and implementing, installing, inspecting, and maintaining the controls.

Evaluating the site and selecting and describing the controls are done during the design phase and are documented in the SWPPP sheets. The SWPPP sheets are prepared by the responsible design engineer under the direction of the District Design Engineer or District Consultant Project Management Engineer (if this person reports directly to the Director of Production). The SWPPP sheets should be prepared in consultation with Drainage, Construction and Environmental personnel, as required. The SWPPP sheets shall be sealed. Refer to **Volume II, Chapter 28** for guidelines for preparing the SWPPP sheets.

Implementing, installing, inspecting, and maintaining the controls is the responsibility of Construction and the contractor.

## Chapter 12

### Right of Way

12.1	General.....	12-1
12.2	Procedures for Establishing R/W Requirements .....	12-3
12.2.1	Open Cut and Fill Roadway Sections .....	12-3
12.2.2	Curb and Gutter Roadway Section .....	12-4
12.2.3	Access Management .....	12-5
12.2.4	Procedures for Decision Making.....	12-7
12.2.5	Transmittal of R/W Requirements.....	12-8
12.3	Process for Establishing Right of Way Requirements .....	12-9
12.3.1	New or Major Reconstruction Projects .....	12-9
12.3.2	Reconstruction Projects With Anticipated R/W Requirements .....	12-10
12.3.3	Projects Without an Identified R/W Phase.....	12-11

#### Figures

Figure 12.3.3	R/W Requirements Generalized Process Flow Diagram .....	12-13
---------------	--	-------

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 12

### Right of Way

#### 12.1 General

To assist the roadway designer's understanding of right of way (R/W) requirements, which must be addressed during the project development and design phases of projects, the following terms are briefly defined as an introduction.

**Right of Way** is real property or an interest therein, donated or acquired by purchase or condemnation, to accommodate transportation improvements. Fee simple is the strongest interest available to the Department and is sought for most permanent highway facilities. When improvements are designed which will fall outside of the existing R/W boundaries, additional lands must be identified and acquired. All necessary right of way and easements must be in Department ownership prior to advertisement of the project for letting.

**Limited Access R/W** is purchased for facilities such as Interstate and Expressways. This limits public access to interchange connection-points designed with entrance and exit ramps and limits access to motorized vehicular traffic. Pedestrians and bicycles are restricted in the interest of traffic capacity and safety.

**Controlled Access R/W** is acquired for the remaining State Highway System. This permits the general public and landowners along the corridors reasonable access, but in a controlled pattern that will facilitate the movement of through traffic.

**Perpetual Easements** (perpetual right of use over, under or through the property of another) are used when permanent structures or improvements are to be constructed and maintained on parcels where acquisition of fee title would be impractical, i.e., when acquisition of the fee would cause excessive severance damages due to green area or setback requirements or where underground structures are to be constructed which will not impair the surface utility of the land. A sight triangle or drainage facility are examples of features that may require a perpetual easement. Condemnation powers may be utilized to acquire necessary perpetual easements.

**Temporary Easements** (a temporary right of use over, under or through the property of another) are used when it is necessary to temporarily occupy a parcel for a specific purpose such as construction of temporary detours, stock piling materials or parking equipment. No improvement which requires maintenance by the Department beyond the term of the easement can be constructed on a temporary easement.

**License Agreements** (permission to do a particular thing which without the license would not be allowable) are used to gain access to adjoining properties for sloping, grading, tying in, harmonizing and reconnecting existing features of the licensor's property with the highway improvements to be constructed. This work is solely for the benefit of the property owner. The Department does not compensate for license agreements. If the owner refuses to execute the agreement, the Department will not perform the work.

Licenses are included here as real property interests for convenience, but they are not real property interests. A license, with respect to real property, is a privilege to go on the premises for a certain purpose but does not vest any title in the licensee.

## **12.2 Procedures for Establishing R/W Requirements**

The procedures for addressing R/W requirements require engineering analyses, economic comparisons and professional judgments. Consultation with the District R/W Surveyor and District R/W Manager is required. One excellent method of providing the consultation is the "R/W Partnering" concept with all parties that have a vested interest participating in the decision making process.

### **12.2.1 Open Cut and Fill Roadway Sections**

R/W requirements along the project boundaries are dictated by the actual construction limits plus a reasonable maintenance buffer. The roadway cut and fill slopes, drainage ditch slopes and other construction elements are used to define the construction limits, which are generally shown on the roadway cross sections. R/W requirements are determined by reviewing the plotted cross sections after the roadway and drainage design elements have been established and major revisions are highly unlikely.

The procedures should, at this point, include a joint review of the proposed R/W, including a field review if necessary. The design details and the property information must be reviewed by the designer, personnel from the R/W Office and the R/W Mapping Office. This review should be scheduled during the Phase II design process as defined in this manual and should address such issues as:

1. Will additional R/W be required for project access, maintenance of the facility, or transit facility needs? Check pond sites, high embankment slopes, bridges, outfalls, canals and similar sites.
2. Can acquisitions be avoided or design modified to avoid substantial damages to remainder property or businesses? Examples include designing retaining walls or by adjusting slopes or grades to reduce the difference in elevation between the remainder and the project grade at the R/W line.
3. Can the roadway grades be revised or connections relocated so access to the remainders can be constructed without damaging the use of the remainder, thereby minimizing or avoiding severance and business damages caused by altering the access?
4. Can drainage facilities (outfalls, ponds, ditches, etc.) be maintained without additional R/W space? Can uneconomic remainders be used for stormwater treatment?



5. Check the suitability and cost effectiveness of storm water treatment facilities and the status of permit approval.
6. What types of legal instruments are likely to be required to secure the appropriate property rights for the project?
7. Review the status of R/W activities by others in the project area. Avoid multiple acquisitions from the same owner at ramp terminals, intersections and by future FDOT projects.
8. Check for potentials of hazardous materials, "4F" parcels, utility easements, landlocked remainders and parcels, which could be eliminated.
9. Check for acquisitions involving existing treatment systems which could be mitigated within the FDOT system.
10. Discuss the possibility of advance acquisition of any parcel where development is imminent.
11. Check for incidental work which will fall outside of R/W such as trenching, wall forms, or equipment maneuvering space.
12. Check for availability of offsite property owned by FDOT which could be used for mitigation sites.
13. Discuss status of any R/W being claimed by maintenance pursuant to **Section 95.361, F.S.** (Maintenance Statute).

## 12.2.2 Curb and Gutter Roadway Section

Establishing R/W requirements in urban sections will generally follow very similar procedures as the open roadway section projects. The analysis and decision making is complicated by more property owners, generally higher property values, businesses, and more complex access management problems.

The roadway and drainage design must be developed to a point where all major elements of the project (including transit facilities, signalization poles, lighting poles and overhead sign foundations) are firmly fixed. On projects with sidewalks and driveway connections, the design elements can be accurately established **ONLY** if proper survey data has been obtained for the designer's use. Profile elevations along the proposed R/W line and back of sidewalk and half-sections or profiles at each driveway location should be obtained as a minimum standard practice.

The design engineer must perform the design work required to establish the project profile grades and the back of sidewalk grades to minimize the grade differences at the R/W line. Areas of superelevation must be analyzed very carefully. Split profile grades or other design strategies may be required to accommodate the proposed construction of the facility within minimum R/W limits.

The developed drainage and roadway design elements should be plotted on the plan sheets and the cross sections, which will establish the preliminary R/W requirements along the project boundaries as indicated by the construction limits. A good quality control review and a joint review with R/W appraisers and R/W Mapping personnel at this time will assist in determining the final R/W requirements. The same issues listed earlier in these procedures should be addressed.

The design engineer cannot assume the property owner's intentions or disposition with respect to his property. The designer must design the highway facility within the existing R/W or request acquisition of R/W to accommodate the project elements. The most economical means of constructing the project should always be the objective. Alternate design studies will be required in many locations to determine if additional R/W should be purchased, a retaining wall constructed or modified slopes and barrier system should be considered. A reasonable estimate of R/W costs or damages expected must be obtained from the R/W Office in order to make such a design study. Alternate construction methods may be shown on the plans as preferred and alternate methods.

### **12.2.3 Access Management**

Access to the Department's facilities is an important element of the design and R/W determination procedures. Access Management is discussed in **Chapter 1, Section 1.8** of this volume. The designer must understand and follow the **Access Management Rules (14-96 and 14-97)** and the procedures and directives adopted (**Topic Numbers 625-010-020 and 625-010-021**) to implement the objectives of those rules. Identification of access and median opening location in relation to individual parcels should be completed before appraisal.

The following activities should be accomplished by the Designer:

1. The access classification of the roadway segment and the connection category of the driveways must be determined. The designer must be aware of the nature, type, frequency of trips and number of vehicles utilizing the driveway.

2. The designer must make a determination as to which driveways are in conformance, which are to be maintained, which are to be closed and which are to be modified to bring them into compliance.
3. The designer must obtain sufficient field survey data to establish the highway grades, horizontal alignment and the existing ground elevations in the vicinity of the driveway location. The data necessary to accurately design the driveway connection and determine an acceptable tie-in with the existing surface should be obtained as a minimum.
4. The designer should develop the most economical driveway design which will conform to the standards and the requirements of the access management objectives. Alternate designs and locations may be required to meet the property needs. Generally, the best option can be reached by negotiating with the property owner and/or tenant in a give and take atmosphere.

Driveway connections must be addressed in consultation with R/W personnel, generally appraisers or review appraisers. This fact should not be overlooked on projects such as resurfacing, etc. on which there may not be any other R/W requirements. R/W related decisions to be made about driveway connections, probably on a case-by-case basis, include:

1. If the driveway can be harmonized without impacting the value or the utility of the property, the Department should make a good faith offer to provide a suitable connection, at FDOT expense, in exchange for the permission to enter the land during construction for the purpose of doing the construction.
2. If providing the driveway connection reduces the remainder value or utility of the property, and no other acquisition of that property is contemplated for the project, a temporary easement will be requested and shown on the plans. The Office of R/W will see that the proper instruments are executed to enter onto the property for purposes of construction and to compensate the owner for damages, if any are due. If other acquisition of that property is proposed, these instruments should include the entry and compensation, if any, for the driveway.
3. If it cannot be determined during design that the harmonization work will reduce the remainder value or utility of the property, the owner can negotiate or claim damages through inverse condemnation during construction. This is not a desirable position for the Department, therefore the decision to employ this approach should be carefully considered.
4. Design should always, in their consultation with R/W personnel, make a determination if a fee taking or permanent easement is in the public interest to protect the facility. If a permanent easement will protect the facility and still give the

owner some utility in the easement area, this may reduce the severance and business damages incurred.

## **12.2.4 Procedures for Decision Making**

To assist in the decision process related to R/W requirements and instruments to be used the following guidelines from the Office of Right of Way may be used during the joint review process.

1. License agreements should be used only if the following conditions can be met:
  - a. The improvements or changes contemplated are minor in nature and are for the benefit of the property owner;
  - b. No compensation will be offered to the property owner;
  - c. None of the improvements are required for the construction of the transportation facility and removal of, or change to the improvements will not be detrimental to the facility;
  - d. The property owner is or will be fully informed of the nature and extent of the proposed improvements and has no objections; and,
  - e. The transportation facility can be constructed without adverse impact on safety or operation.
  
2. Temporary Easements should be used under the following conditions:
  - a. Where grading, tying in and harmonizing are necessary to avoid or minimize damage to the property;
  - b. The contemplated improvements or uses of the property owner's land are required only during the period of construction of the transportation facility;
  - c. The changes or improvements to the property owner's land are temporary and removal or alteration of the improvements subsequent to construction would not be detrimental to the facility; and,
  - d. After construction is complete, there will be no need for periodic re-entry onto the property for maintenance or other purposes.
  
3. Fee Simple R/W purchase should be used when the following conditions exist:
  - a. The planned improvements to the property owner's land are required as a part of construction of the transportation facility;

- b. The improvement on that land must remain in place as a part of the facility; and,
- c. Periodic re-entry to the property is required for maintenance or repair.

Perpetual Easements may be considered as an alternative to fee simple purchase in the R/W process if the owner may continue to enjoy some benefits of the property without impairing the Department's use and the total acquisition costs to the Department are less than the cost of acquiring fee.

## **12.2.5 Transmittal of R/W Requirements**

R/W requirements should be finalized before transmitting them to the R/W Mapping Office for preparation of R/W maps. All R/W requirement transmittals should be in writing and clearly indicate in the memo and on the plans which parcels have been finalized and which parcels are still pending. An effort should be made to transmit final R/W requirements in usable segments. Priority should be given to the major, expensive or complex acquisitions that are going to require more time to acquire and complete the relocation of the occupants. Advanced design effort and final R/W requirement determination may expedite meeting production ready dates. It is desirable to transmit requirements as early as possible in the plans development.

All R/W requirements that are firm (primarily mainline construction limits) should be transmitted by Phase II. All other requirements that generally involve more detailed design completion (i.e., outfalls, pond locations, corner clips, access needs, etc.) must be submitted by the Phase III stage completion of the roadway design plans.

All R/W requirements must be transmitted by the completion of the Phase III roadway design plans.

## **12.3 Process for Establishing Right of Way Requirements**

Establishing right of way requirements is a design process, but requires close coordination with other functions that have input to the project development and design of the project.

The Engineer of Record is responsible and must ensure that representatives from the appropriate functional areas are involved in the determination process. They must also ensure that a review of the final R/W requirements is performed. The "R/W Partnering" concept is an excellent method of ensuring that the proper consultation and input is received.

Generally, the R/W needs-determination will involve Roadway, Bridge and Drainage Design, Permits, Utilities, R/W appraisers, R/W Mapping and Legal functions. On consultant designed projects, the project manager's role as lead coordinator is especially critical.

### **12.3.1 New or Major Reconstruction Projects**

These projects generally have Project Development and Environmental (PD& E) activities and Right of Way activities identified in the Work Program.

The project development process must address R/W requirements and perform sufficient preliminary engineering design to obtain preliminary cost estimates from the R/W Office. This may require that the PD& E consultant or in-house scope of services include work such as:

1. Preliminary roadway grades & geometric design.
2. Conceptual Drainage design and layout.
3. Analysis of major access management issues.
4. R/W Survey, property lines and limited topography.
5. R/W Mapping and property research activities.
6. Preliminary R/W cost estimates work.
7. Analysis of the transit, pedestrian/bicycle R/W needs.

This early identification of potential R/W requirements, approximate costs and work effort to complete R/W activities will greatly improve both cost estimates and schedules of projects. Also, involving R/W mapping and appraisers will assist in developing better project alternatives.

R/W requirements identified during the project development phase should not be considered firmly set. The R/W Office cannot be requested to begin R/W mapping or appraisal activities based on these requirements, without extraordinary efforts by the designer to support the acquisition process as in advance acquisition.

### **12.3.2 Reconstruction Projects With Anticipated R/W Requirements**

These projects may not have a formal PD& E study, but they were determined during Work Program development to require some R/W acquisition. Most projects will require some environmental re-evaluation effort and all projects should have some preliminary engineering to better define objectives, scope and R/W requirements. The following general process, as it relates to R/W requirements should be established by design:

#### **PHASE I**

1. R/W Mapping will provide preliminary maps showing properties and all existing R/W lines for the project. These should be requested by the designer or by the project manager, on consultant projects.
2. The roadway designer will define project horizontal and vertical alignment and relate the existing R/W lines to the project as necessary to set R/W limits.

#### **PHASE II**

1. The roadway designer will identify proposed R/W requirements as indicated by the completed design details such as the following:
  - a. Limits of construction slopes for roadway and bridges.
  - b. Cross section elements, transit facilities, ditches, curb returns and sidewalks.
  - c. Driveway and street connections.
2. The drainage designer will identify proposed R/W requirements as indicated by the completed drainage features:
  - a. Retention or Detention Ponds.
  - b. Mitigation of environmental issues.
  - c. Drainage outfalls, sediment basins, etc.

The designer will review all proposed R/W requirements with the R/W Mapping Office. This should be performed during the Phase II design activities in order to make decisions on how each parcel of proposed R/W will be acquired. These

decisions will impact which design approach is taken. The issues to be discussed and decisions to be considered are detailed in **Section 12.2** of these procedures.

3. As R/W requirements are determined, the information is furnished to the R/W Mapping Office by memo documenting clearly which R/W is final and which is pending. The R/W Mapping Office will use only the final requirements transmitted to prepare R/W maps. See **Section 12.2.5**.

### **PHASE III**

1. By the completion of Phase III design, all R/W requirements will be identified and transmitted to the R/W Mapping Office.
2. After transmittal of final R/W requirements to the R/W Mapping Office, design changes that affect R/W must be coordinated with the R/W Mapping Office, in a timely manner.

**The R/W shown on the roadway plans must be in exact agreement with the R/W Maps.**

It is essential that close coordination be maintained with R/W personnel in order to ensure that design changes affecting R/W are transmitted promptly.

### **12.3.3 Projects Without an Identified R/W Phase**

Many improvements to highway projects are intended to be accomplished within the existing R/W. The widening or widening and resurfacing projects are examples. Such projects must be evaluated very carefully and very early in the roadway design process.

The addition of R/W requirements can have a tremendous impact on the schedule and on the anticipated costs of a highway improvement project.

R/W Mapping should be consulted on all projects to ensure that the proposed construction lies completely within the existing R/W and no Trustees of the Internal Improvement Trust Fund parcels or maintenance surveys are required.

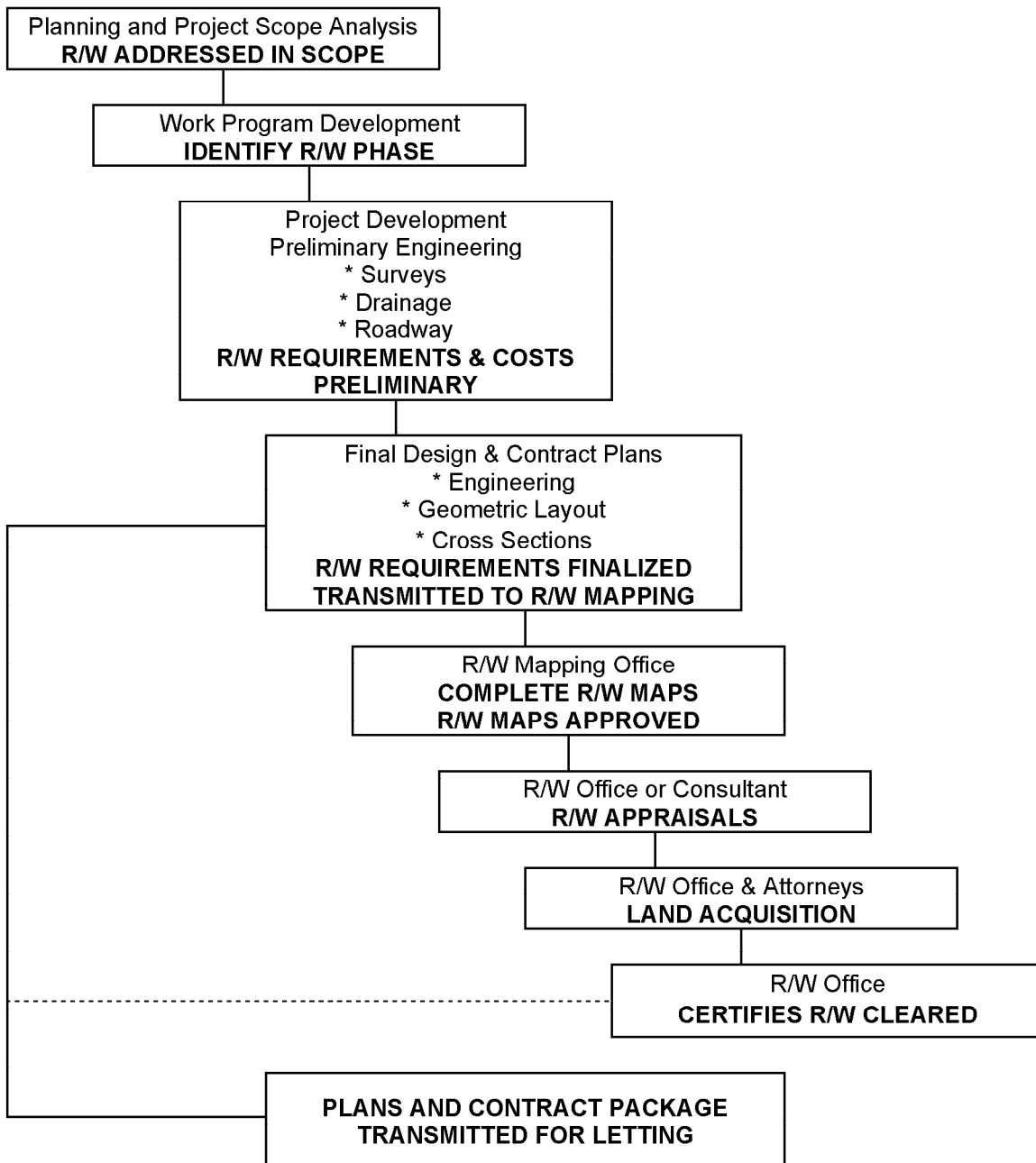
For all projects determined to be completely within existing R/W the project manager or District R/W Surveyor as appropriate, shall notify the District R/W Manager, in writing, that no R/W is required. This notification will serve as the basis for the District R/W Manager's certification that all necessary R/W is available for construction.



If unanticipated R/W requirements are identified during design, the production management staff and the R/W Mapping Office should be notified as soon as the requirements are determined. The production management staff will then give direction as to continuing with the design and acquisition. If acquisition continues, it will follow the previously discussed procedures.

### Figure 12.3.3 R/W Requirements Generalized Process Flow Diagram

(Each function must have well defined written procedures for the development, quality control, coordination and regular exchange of product evaluation.)



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 13

### Initial Engineering Design Process

13.1	General.....	13-1
13.2	Initial Engineering Design (Phase I) .....	13-2
13.3	Scope, Objectives, Schedule and Budget .....	13-3
13.4	Project Design Controls and Standards .....	13-4
13.5	Support Services .....	13-5
13.5.1	Aviation Office Coordination.....	13-6
13.5.2	Projects Involving Bridges With Lead Based Paint ...	13-7
13.6	Preliminary Geometry, Grades, and Cross Sections.....	13-9

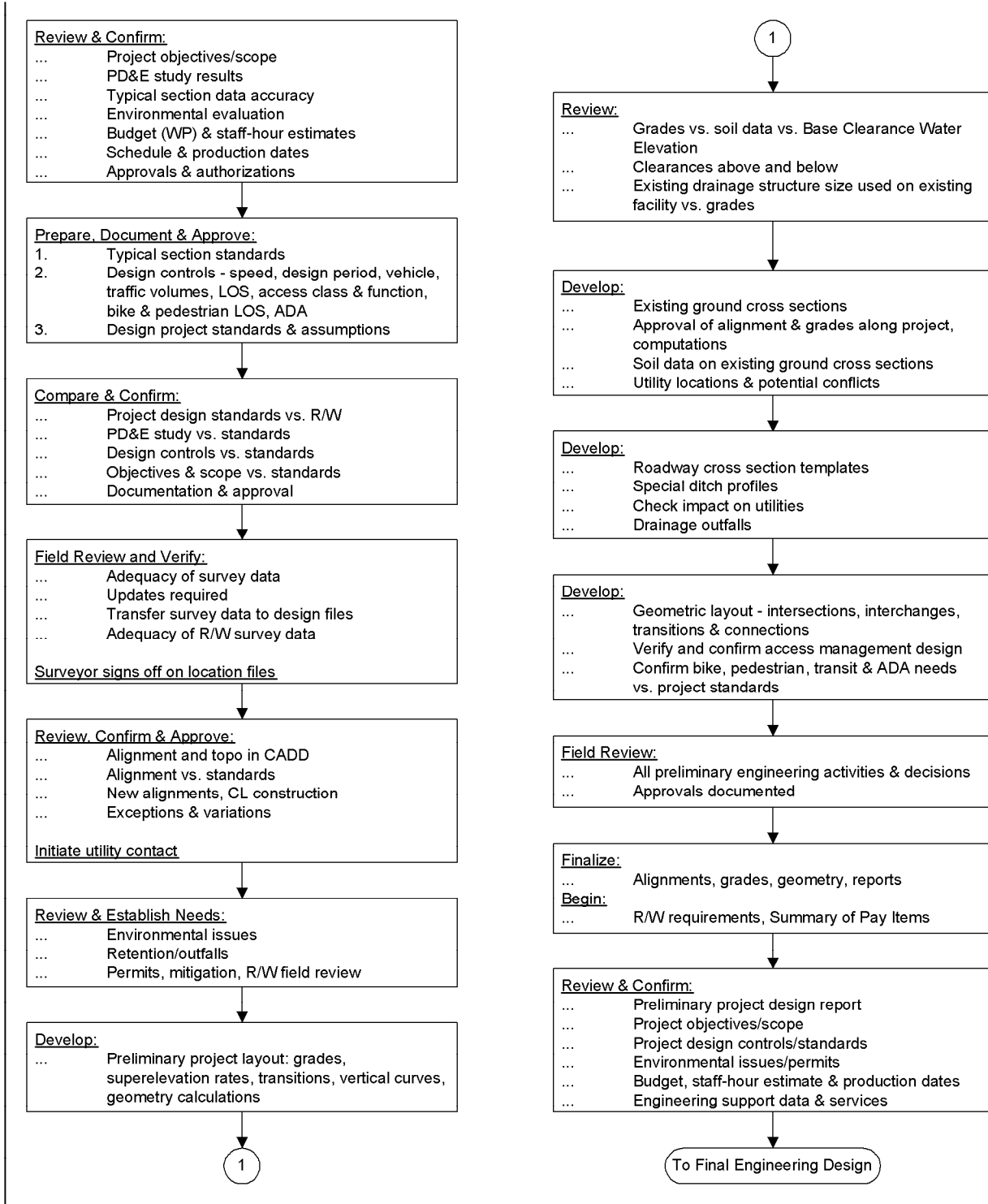
#### Tables

Table 13.5.1	Construction of Airspace Obstructions - Notification.....	13-6
--------------	--	------

#### Exhibits

Exhibit 13-A	Major Activities – Initial Engineering Process.....	13-ii
--------------	---	-------

### Exhibit 13-A Major Activities – Initial Engineering Process



## Chapter 13

### Initial Engineering Design Process

#### 13.1 General

The engineering design process (Final Design Phase), as discussed in this and following chapters, is the development and contract preparation phase of highway construction projects. It begins with the approval of the Project Location/Design and ends with the construction letting. It also includes the update process when the construction plans and specifications are ready and on hold in the district and require revising to make them contract ready. Throughout this design process, quality control will be exercised by those responsible for the engineering design and plans preparation activities by having a plan-do-check routine for each and every significant task or operation.

The engineering and design activities and the schedules depend on the type of project and the required effort to accomplish the desired objectives. Projects can be designated as three basic types:

1. **New Construction** - A highway or bridge project along a new corridor on new alignments, horizontal and vertical.
2. **Add Lanes and Reconstruct** - A highway project along an existing facility to add lanes, widen or add bridges, improve intersections, and, in general, upgrade and improve the capacity and safety of the facility.
3. **Other Projects** - May include Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation (RRR), Local Agency Program (LAP), or other projects such as a highway and/or enhancement projects - A highway and/or bridge project undertaken to extend the service life of an existing facility and to enhance the safety of the facility. These projects generally do not require a PD&E phase. The scopes are so varied that it is difficult to define them, except project by project. They can vary in magnitude from installing highway lighting for enhanced safety or resurfacing pavement to extend the service life, to minor lane and shoulder widening, bridge rail modification or intersection improvements. These projects may also include transit facilities, bike paths, sidewalks and landscaping projects.

## 13.2 Initial Engineering Design (Phase I)

It is important to distinguish the initial engineering design activities from planning and the preliminary engineering done during the Project Development and Environmental (PD&E) phase. If a PD&E phase has been completed, some of the activities discussed here may have been performed to varying levels during that phase. The information contained in the preliminary engineering report should be considered as the starting point for the initial engineering phase. In the case where there was not a PD&E phase, the initial engineering design activities must establish the project scope, controls and standards, right of way (R/W) needs, and major design elements necessary to determine that we have a viable project and R/W can be cleared.

**Generally**, the initial engineering process **should** accomplish or complete the following activities:

1. Completely and fully define and document the objectives of the project and the scope of activities to accomplish them. This will almost always require an on-site review.
2. Develop and document a realistic staff-hour estimate and production schedule to accomplish the scope of activities identified.
3. Establish and document the design controls, assumptions, project design standards, exceptions, and variations. Significant changes to previously approved PD&E elements may result in a re-evaluation of the environmental document. Discuss with the District Environmental Management Office.
4. Identify and document additional engineering and support services.
5. Determine and document the structural design requirements.
6. Determine and document if R/W is required.
7. Establish and document the review procedure and number of submittals, if different from guidelines provided in this manual.
8. Establish preliminary geometry, grades, and cross sections.
9. Identify and implement needed public involvement activities.

### 13.3 Scope, Objectives, Schedule and Budget

The project manager and other FDOT managers are responsible for the development, review and approval of the project objectives, scope of work, and schedule in accordance with the ***Project Management Guidelines***. They also must verify that required funds are in the work program.

The project objectives and scope are best confirmed and/or completed by:

1. Reviewing the PD&E study recommendations, conclusions and commitments, if they exist.
2. Performing a field review of the project with the project manager and personnel from other FDOT offices, such as Roadway Design, Traffic Operations, Safety, R/W Engineering, Utilities, Maintenance and Construction, as appropriate.
3. Requesting a review of the draft scope of services activities by FDOT offices, such as Maintenance, Construction, Design, Traffic Operations, Access Management, Public Transportation, Pedestrian and Bicycle, etc.
4. Developing the scope of services sufficient to advertise for professional services. After the scope of services is completed and approved, the schedule and budget may be confirmed and/or updated by the engineer/project manager and approved by the appropriate district manager.
5. After consultant selection or in-house assignment, the designer or consultant should review and confirm the scope by completing steps one through four above.



## 13.4 Project Design Controls and Standards

Among the activities the Engineer of Record will accomplish on a project are the identification of the given design controls and the selection of the appropriate design standards. These will be documented in the project file(s).

The design controls as addressed in this manual and AASHTO include such things as design speed, design vehicle, design period, traffic volume and service level, functional classification of the corridor, the access class, and other factors that control the selection of project standards that will ensure the facility will function safely at the level desired and expected by the motorists.

Establishing the project standards is one of the first requirements of the engineering design process. The decisions, assumptions and calculations for the design are based on these factors. All project standards shall be documented in the project file(s).

The preliminary engineering report (PD&E) or concept report may include some of the controls and standards to be used on the project. These values should be reviewed, confirmed as valid and consistent with the overall corridor or system, and documented. Significant changes to approved PD&E elements of design may require a re-evaluation of the environmental document.

If project standards must be used that do not meet recommended values, these must be documented and receive approval/concurrence by the appropriate FDOT and/or FHWA engineer. These are either exceptions or variations as described in **Chapter 23** of this volume and must be maintained in the project file(s).

When all project standards are selected, documented, and agreed upon, the engineer should get the District Design Engineer to concur that the appropriate standards are being used. The Typical Section package will include some of the project standards. Those not included, and all known exception/variation justification shall be documented in the project file(s).

## 13.5 Support Services

Any information or support services that have been provided must be reviewed by the Engineer of Record to determine the completeness of the information. Conditions and data may have changed drastically if they are not current.

Technical data required for the design of a roadway project can be available from various sources, such as:

1. Surveys - design, topographical, aerial, drainage, right of way location, soil, utilities
2. Traffic Data
3. Pavement Design
4. Environmental Documents
5. Original Plans
6. Accident Data
7. Access Management Classification

During the design process, the project will require coordination with different sections or departments. When engineering decisions, information, or other support services are required from FDOT functional areas, it is the project manager's responsibility to coordinate and facilitate the request and expedite a timely response. The functional areas include:

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Planning and Programs        | 10. Right Of Way                 |
| 2. Surveying and Mapping        | 11. FHWA                         |
| 3. Traffic Plans                | 12. Value Engineering            |
| 4. Geotechnical                 | 13. Traffic Operations           |
| 5. Drainage                     | 14. Environmental Mgmt. Office   |
| 6. Maintenance                  | 15. Access Management            |
| 7. Construction                 | 16. Structures                   |
| 8. Utilities                    | 17. Safety                       |
| 9. Estimates and Specifications | 18. Plans Review                 |
|                                 | 19. Public Transportation Office |

## 13.5.1 Aviation Office Coordination

If it is determined that an airspace obstruction exists (based on the criteria contained in **Table 2.10.5**), refer to **Table 13.5.1** for applicable FAA notification guidelines. For guidelines on airspace obstruction permitting, refer to **Chapter 333, Florida Statutes, "Airport Zoning"**, and **Chapter 14-60, Florida Administrative Code, "Airport Licensing and Airspace Protection"**.

While the responsibility for filing FAA notifications and permitting applications for FDOT Airspace Obstruction Permits or Variances to the local ordinance rests with the Engineer of Record, the FDOT Aviation Office is available to provide any requested technical assistance on planned projects that may impact the national airspace system in Florida. Please direct your request to the following:

FDOT Aviation Office  
Airspace and Land Use Manager  
605 Suwannee St., M.S. 46  
Tallahassee, FL 32399-0450  
Tel: (850) 414-4500 SC 994-4500  
Fax: (850) 922-4942  
Internet: <http://www11.myflorida.com/Aviation/>

**Table 13.5.1 Construction of Airspace Obstructions - Notification**

### FAA Notification

Federal law, **Title 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Federal Aviation Regulations (FAR), Part 77, "Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace"**, requires that prior notification must be given to the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) regarding any construction or alteration of structures that meet specific criteria (See **Table 2.10.5**, this volume).

If FAA notification is required, **FAA Form 7460-1, "Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration"** is submitted to the FAA Southern Regional Office in Atlanta. This notification must be submitted at least 30 days before the earlier of the following dates:

1. Date proposed construction or alteration is to begin.
2. Date an application for a construction permit is to be filed.

### FAA Emergency Notification

In the case of an emergency involving essential public services, public health, or public safety, that requires immediate construction or alteration, the 30-day advance notice requirement does not apply. In such a case, the required notification may be sent by telephone or any expeditious means to the nearest FAA Flight Service Station, and within 5 days thereafter, a completed copy of the **FAA Form 7460-1**, must be submitted to the FAA Southern Regional Office in Atlanta.

## **13.5.2 Projects Involving Bridges With Lead Based Paint**

For a project that involves the repair, repainting or replacement of a steel bridge which contains lead based paint, the Design Project Manager shall contact the State Corrosion Engineer in the State Materials Office to determine if the bridge contains lead or other hazardous elements. The State Corrosion Engineer will furnish a site specific specification for disposition of the lead based paint waste for that particular project.

The Design Project Manager must provide the site specific specification to the Engineer of Record who is preparing the contract plans and specifications. The Engineer of Record must ensure that the project specifications conform to the site specific specifications and that they prohibit the use of lead based paint. A mandatory pre-bid conference is not required unless special conditions exist and the district determines one is needed.

The Design Project Manager shall notify the Contracts office (State or District) that the project requires the contractor to show proof of qualification before receipt of the bid proposal if 51% or more of the project is painting or at the time of award if less than 51% of the project is painting. The Contractor must have a QP2 Category A certification, from the Society of Protective Coatings (SSPC), for painting projects. For structure removal projects, consult with the Construction Office (State or District) to determine if QP2 Category A certification will be required, or a less stringent qualification. The contractor will be required to present proof of qualification prior to beginning any structure removal work and not at award. Qualifications for both painting and structure removal projects must be noted in the advertisement and specification.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 13.6 Preliminary Geometry, Grades, and Cross Sections

To establish geometry, grades, and cross sections, the following activities should be accomplished or near completion:

1. Supporting data such as surveys, traffic and pavement evaluation data.
2. Typical sections and pavement design.
3. Standards, variations and exceptions.
4. PD&E and environmental commitments addressed and if necessary, re-evaluation.
5. Need for R/W phase addressed.
6. Utility initial contact and survey data.
7. Transit initial contact and facility location.

The initial engineering design activities to establish the preliminary project plans are:

1. Set and calculate the horizontal alignment.
2. Set the proposed profile grade lines.
3. Develop preliminary cross sections at selected intervals or control locations.
4. Develop preliminary layout of roadway, intersections, interchanges, transitions, and connections.
5. Field review all proposed preliminary engineering layout and decisions for conflicts, R/W needs, connections, updates and additional needs.

The initial engineering review (Phase I) is used to obtain confirmation and approval of the objectives, scope, standards, decisions, and assumptions to be used as the basis for the engineering and design. The Engineer now has the decisions and direction necessary to perform final engineering. If this is not the case, the necessary initial engineering activities must be accomplished before continuing to the final design process.

The results of the above activities should be that:

1. Structures can now be given the horizontal and vertical alignment and clearance requirements for bridges.
2. R/W Engineering can be furnished with mainline R/W requirements for the project.
3. Plan-profile sheets can be clipped.
4. Traffic plans development can be initiated.

5. Cross sections, grades and alignments, as required, can be provided to the drainage section.
6. Work sheets, as needed, can be provided to the permits section for initial evaluation.
7. Utility owners can be provided plans, profiles and cross sections as required to identify/verify and designate their existing utilities.
8. The TRNS\*PORT pay item listing can be initiated by identifying the items of work involved at this point.

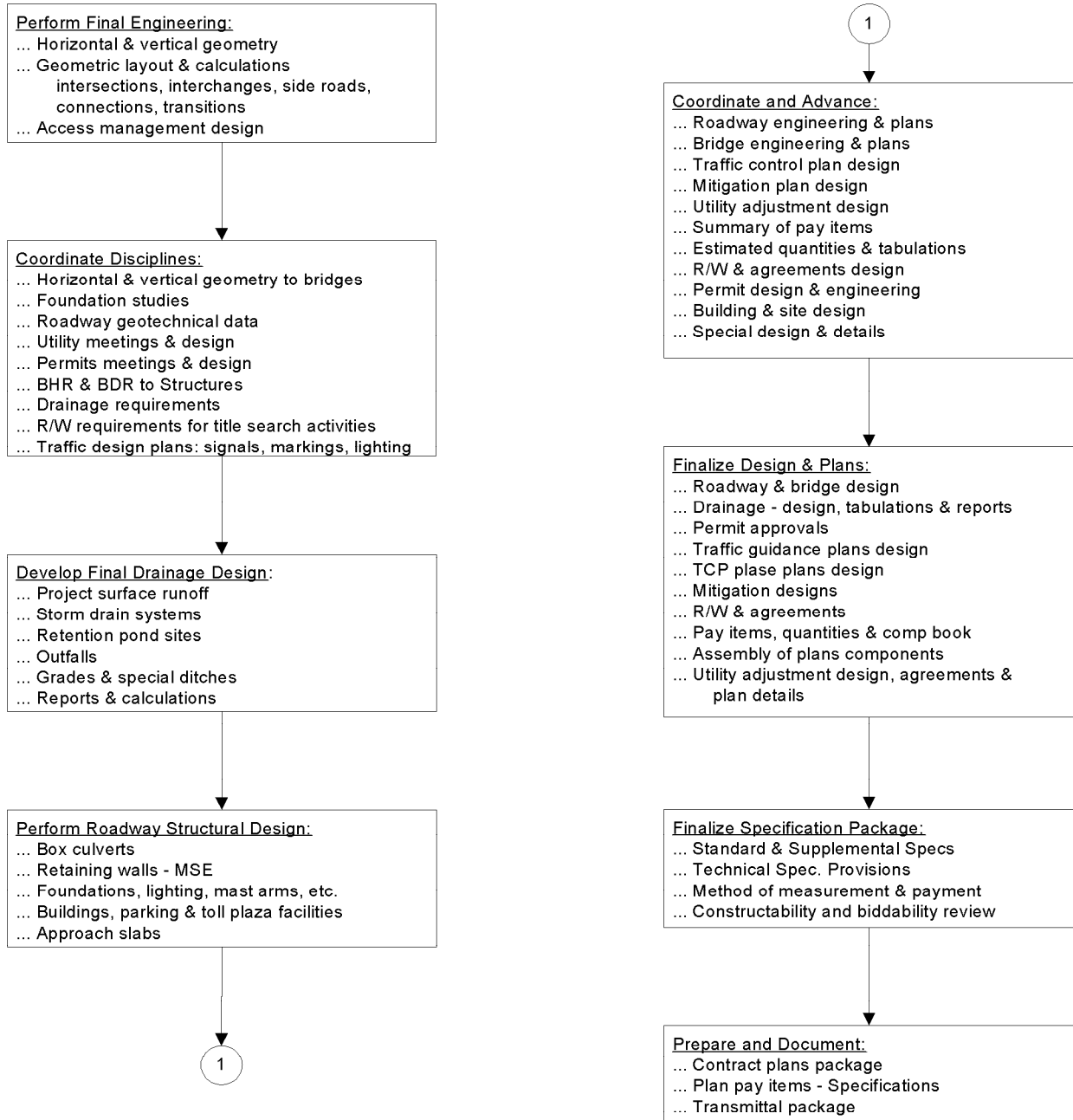
## Chapter 14

### Final Engineering Design Process

14.1	General.....	14-1
14.2	Final Engineering Design .....	14-1
14.3	Contract Plans Preparation .....	14-3
14.4	Specifications and Special Provisions .....	14-3
14.5	Pay Items and Summaries of Quantities .....	14-4
14.6	Assemble Contract Plans Package .....	14-4
Exhibits		
Exhibit 14-A	Major Activities – Final Engineering Design Process .....	14-ii



### Exhibit 14-A Major Activities – Final Engineering Design Process



## Chapter 14

### Final Engineering Design Process

#### 14.1 General

The final engineering design process follows the initial engineering design process and review (see **Chapters 13** and **16** of this volume). The final engineering design phase should be roughly 50% of the total effort. The primary objective of the final engineering design phase is to prepare contract plans and specifications that can be used to bid and construct the project with a minimum of field changes, delays, and cost overruns.

#### 14.2 Final Engineering Design

The Engineer and Project Manager must coordinate all activities to ensure that the quality, accuracy, and appropriate decisions go into the performance of each step. The project quality control should include a plan-do-check routine for each set of activities or operations.

The major design activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Pavement design
2. Drainage design
3. Structural (bridge) design
4. Structural (roadway) design
5. Roadway design including access management, earthwork, geometrics, etc.
6. Traffic plans design including signing, marking, signals, lighting, etc.
7. Utility adjustment design
8. Permit preparation design including ponds, mitigation, etc.
9. Traffic control plans (work zone) design
10. R/W requirements design
11. Building and site design including landscaping, ADA, etc.
12. Estimates and computation book preparation
13. Specifications and special provisions
14. Landscaping design

Project stationing information is to be checked and entered into the Work Program Administration (WPA) system during final engineering design. This information is important for tying construction records, such as material coring, sampling and testing to other databases. The information is entered by stations, which are related to roadway mile post for later information retrieval.

The project designer is responsible for finalizing the project stationing. The District Design Engineer should designate an individual to be responsible for coordinating the input of stationing information into the WPA system.

The station equations and begin/end stations are entered into the WPATS27A computer screen under IMS on DOTNET. Update access to this screen is granted through the Work Program Development Office in Tallahassee. While entering the station information, it is important to check to see if the milepost limits in WPA are still accurate. This can be accomplished by reviewing the WPATS27A computer screen. If the project length has changed, the District Work Program Office should be advised to correct the mileposts.

This information will become increasingly important as Geographic Information Systems increase in use and project locations are automatically mapped based on milepost limits.

## 14.3 Contract Plans Preparation

The outcomes of the engineering design activities are component sets of contract plans developed using CADD. The major component sets may include:

1. Roadway
2. Signing and Pavement Marking
3. Signalization
4. Lighting
5. Landscape
6. Utility Joint Participation Agreement Plans
7. Architectural Plans
8. Structures Plans

These component sets, the specifications package, and the TRNS\*PORT pay item listing and quantities are assembled and packaged as the construction contract letting documents.

## 14.4 Specifications and Special Provisions

The Engineer of Record must develop engineering designs that can be constructed, controlled, measured and paid for under the current edition of the FDOT **Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction**. In the event the work required is not covered by the standard specifications or the supplements and special provisions thereto, the Engineer must develop Technical Special Provisions to be made part of the contract for this project. The Engineer can obtain Department procedural guidance to assist with the preparation.

## 14.5 Pay Items and Summaries of Quantities

As the engineering plans and specifications are prepared, the quantities are calculated, tabulated, and summarized by Pay Item (of work) as stipulated by specifications and the ***Basis of Estimates Handbook***. The summary of pay items is updated as quantities are determined and summarized.

## 14.6 Assemble Contract Plans Package

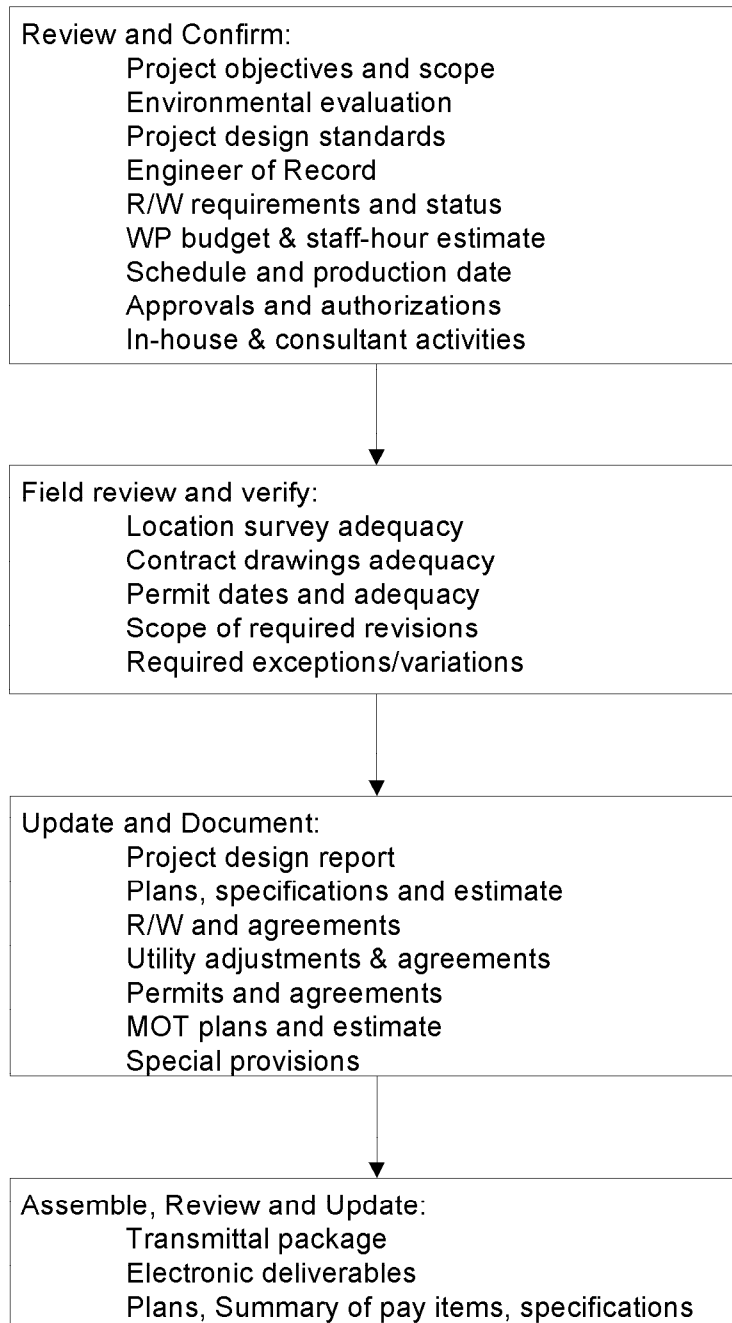
The completed plans, specifications, and District estimate are transmitted to the central office for letting or they are assembled and held in the district for district advertisement and letting. ***Chapter 20*** of this volume provides further guidance on the contents of the transmittal.

## Chapter 15

### Update Engineering Design Process

15.1	General.....	15-1
15.2	Design Update Review and Decision Process .....	15-1
15.3	Updating Engineering Design and Documents.....	15-2
15.4	Revised Contract Plans Package.....	15-2
Exhibits		
Exhibit 15-A	Major Activities - Update Engineering Design Process .....	15-ii

### Exhibit 15-A Major Activities - Update Engineering Design Process



## Chapter 15

### Update Engineering Design Process

#### 15.1 General

The update engineering design process begins when a final contract plans, specification and estimates (PS&E) package has been on the shelf for any significant period (approximately nine months). The update process depends on the type of project, the adequacy and appropriateness of the original design controls and standards, and the original scope and objectives. The extent of the update process should be determined based on both engineering and management input.

#### 15.2 Design Update Review and Decision Process

An engineering review of the PS&E and proposed contract documents must be made to determine the activities required to update the package and get it ready for letting.

1. The original project objectives, scope and standards must be reviewed and compared with current corridor conditions, as well as growth rate and patterns, to determine if the project design is still valid.
2. Original environmental evaluations and commitments must be weighed against current requirements.
3. Permit date and terms must be weighed against current requirements.
4. R/W certifications and agreements must be reviewed and the status of documents confirmed.
5. Contract plans must be reviewed for current requirements, including standard indexes, specifications, pay items and design criteria.
6. Agreements with outside entities such as utility owners, maintaining agencies and local agencies must be reviewed.

If the decision is that engineering updates are required, the scope, staff-hour estimate, schedule, cost estimate, and other activities described in **Chapter 13** of this volume should be followed to the extent necessary to define the scope and schedule for the update process.



## **15.3 Updating Engineering Design and Documents**

The actual engineering design activities necessary to update the plans package will vary from project to project. They must be fully described in the professional services contract, if one is to be used. If done in-house, a fully defined scope of work must be developed to determine resources and schedule needed for the update.

All reports, calculations, assumptions, and engineering decisions that support the changes to plans, specifications, or other documents must be signed and sealed by the Engineer updating the engineering plans, specifications and documents. All changes to the plans must be approved by the responsible engineer in charge of the work and receive the concurrence of the District Design Engineer, Structures Design Engineer, or Consultant Project Management Engineer, as appropriate for the type of change. Updated documentation of all approvals and concurrences shall be in the project file.

## **15.4 Revised Contract Plans Package**

In addition to the required engineering changes, which may be necessary, the contract transmittal package must be reviewed and updated to current status.

1. All component plans sets are made current and sealed.
2. Specifications and special provisions are made current.
3. The CADD electronic files are revised.
4. The computation book and pay item summaries are made current.
5. The contract file is made current.

## Chapter 16

### Design Submittals

16.1	General.....	16-1
16.2	Design Documentation Submittals .....	16-4
16.2.1	Field Survey Data.....	16-4
16.2.2	Project Traffic .....	16-4
16.2.3	Typical Section Package.....	16-5
16.2.4	Preliminary Drainage Design.....	16-9
16.2.5	Preliminary Geometry and Grades.....	16-9
16.2.6	Preliminary Traffic Control Plan.....	16-11
16.2.7	Pavement Selection and Design .....	16-11
16.2.8	Preliminary Utilities.....	16-11
16.3	Structures Submittals .....	16-12
16.3.1	Coordination of Structural Design - (Bridges and Retaining Walls) .....	16-12
16.3.2	Bridges .....	16-12
16.3.3	Other Structural Submittals and Reviews.....	16-13
16.4	Plans Phase Reviews.....	16-14
Exhibits		
Exhibit 16-A	List of Requests and Contacts .....	16-2
Exhibit 16-B	Typical Section Package.....	16-15

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

# Chapter 16

## Design Submittals

### 16.1 General

The design process will require various submittals to transfer technical information and decisions between the Engineer of Record (EOR), certain Department personnel, and functional areas. The Project Manager is responsible for the adequacy of the submittals or requests and for the coordination of reviews between the Department and the EOR. Each office head including the District Construction and Maintenance Engineers should assume direct responsibility for assigning reviewers and meeting the review schedules. To the extent practical, the contract scope of work should list the information to be furnished by FDOT functional areas and submittals (number and type) required of the EOR. **Exhibit 16-A** is a partial list of functional areas with typical submittals and requests.

During the design process, various items of information may be required from different sections or departments. The following is a list of some of those items and their source:

**Exhibit 16-A List of Requests and Contacts**  
**Sheet 1 of 2**

**A) Planning**

Request pavement design (18 Kip ESAL)  
Request project traffic  
Request turning movements for intersections  
Request updates of project traffic (as needed)  
Railroad contact (Phase I and III)  
Plans transmittal letter data (railroad)  
Notification that project is in vicinity of a traffic monitoring site

**B) Traffic Plans/Traffic Operations**

Request turns and counts for intersection design  
Notification that project includes milling  
Signing & pavement marking plans (Phase I, II, III)  
Traffic signal plans (Phase I, II, III) & signal warrant  
Lighting plans (Phase I, II) & justification report  
Pedestrian and bicycle project traffic  
Safety/crash analysis and recommendations  
Operational and capacity review of design plans

**C) Geotechnical**

Request pavement design soil information  
Request roadway soil survey  
Soils data  
Request foundation investigations  
Request dynaflect testing  
Phase III review, if unsuitable soils exist.  
Soils and foundation recommendations  
PH and soils resistivity for culvert material selection  
Request pavement composition and milling recommendations  
Review if any changes are made in alignment, grade or typical section.  
Bridge Geotechnical Report

**D) Surveying and Mapping**

Request survey

**E) Drainage**

Request grade and high water review  
Conceptual drainage plan & assumptions  
Bridge Hydraulics Report  
Request drainage design  
Request final drainage review  
Permit review  
SWPPP  
Erosion Control Plan

**F) Maintenance**

Pavement design comments  
Phase I Plans review & response  
Phase II Plans review & response  
Phase III Plans review & response

**G) Construction**

Pavement design comments  
Phase I Plans review & response  
Phase II Plans review (constructability) & response  
Phase III Plans review (biddability) & response  
Submit traffic control plan request  
Contract time

**H) R/W Surveying and Mapping**

Submit title search request  
Request existing right of way maps  
Transmit right of way requirements  
Final right of way check  
Plans transmittal letter data

**I) Utilities**

Preliminary (First) contact (Phase I)  
Pre-Design conference and contact (Phase II)  
Final contact (Phase III)  
Horizontal and vertical verification of utilities  
Plans transmittal letter data (utilities)  
Number of sets of final prints for utility companies

**Exhibit 16-A List of Requests and Contacts**  
**Sheet 2 of 2**

**J) Estimates and Specifications**

Preliminary estimate (LRE)  
Preliminary estimate (Phase I)  
Preliminary estimate (Phase II)  
Preliminary estimate (Phase III)  
Complete estimate (Phase IV)

**K) Right Of Way Department**

Project schedule updates as needed  
R/W estimates as needed  
Pre-Proposal appraisal conference  
Field questions from R/W agents as needed  
Plans transmittal letter data  
Phase I Plans Review (by Appraiser)  
Phase II Plans Review (by Appraiser)  
Phase III Plans Review (by Appraiser)  
Phase IV Plans Review (by Appraiser)

**L) FHWA (if not exempt)**

Phase I Plans review & response  
Phase II Plans review & response  
Phase III Plans review & response  
Phase IV Plans review & response  
Submit for typical section approval  
Submit for pavement design approval  
Submit exception request letters  
R/W review

**M) Value Engineering (\$2,000,000+)**

Phase I & II reviews

**N) Environmental**

Hazardous waste determination  
SWPPP  
Erosion Control Plan  
Mitigation Plans

**O) Materials**

Environmental Classifications  
Type of Structural Steel (existing)  
Existence of Lead-Based Paint

**P) Bridge**

Phase I, Bridge Analysis, review & response  
Phase II Plans review & response  
BDR/30% Plans review and response  
60% Plans review & response  
90% Plans review & response  
100% Plans review & response

## **16.2 Design Documentation Submittals**

During the engineering processes there is the need to submit information to specific Department personnel for the purpose of making timely decisions and confirming the project objectives. Preferably these submittals will take place as these activities are completed so that issues do not go unresolved before subsequent activities begin. The following are some submittals that should take place during initial engineering. Ideally these engineering type submittals should be done in lieu of traditional phase plans reviews.

### **16.2.1 Field Survey Data**

The following are typical field survey data, which should be evaluated by the designer for sufficient breadth and accuracy to complete the proposed design.

1. Design location survey data including horizontal and vertical control, alignments, reference points, utilities, natural and manmade features, and topography or general shape of the terrain.
2. Digitized aerial survey data, especially for large areas such as drainage maps.
3. Drainage design survey data from site inspection and historical records.
4. Right of Way and related property (land) survey data, including property owners and acreage.
5. Geotechnical studies and foundation and soils report, including physical properties and classifications of soils, together with recommendations related to foundations, pavement and drainage design.
6. Bridge data sheet surveys, channel alignment survey data and bathymetric data.

### **16.2.2 Project Traffic**

In the development of roadway plans, project traffic is primarily used to justify the number of through lanes, geometric improvements to intersections, traffic signal timings, and pavement design. The number of through lanes is usually determined during the project development phase, based on Average Annual Daily Traffic (AADT) and factors included in the typical section. Vehicular traffic data provided in the plans typical section includes AADT for the current year, opening year and the design year. Also included are the design hour factor (K is the proportion of AADT occurring during the 30th highest hour of the year), the directional distribution (D is the percent of two way peak hour traffic that occurs in the peak direction), and truck factors (T is the percent that trucks constitute of vehicular traffic)

for the peak hour and a 24 hour period. The source and methods used to produce this data must be documented.

Intersection improvements and signal timings require additional information on turning volumes. The ***FDOT Project Traffic Forecasting Procedure*** describes the input data required, explains the procedure to forecast turning volumes, and provides examples. A Project Traffic Report may be required. Manual and mechanical counts provide input on the number of vehicles and pedestrians using an intersection. At proposed (nonexisting) major intersections, turning volumes are estimated using transportation planning models or other means. Forecasts provide designers the information required to determine the need for turning lanes, turning bay length, signal timings, and pedestrian crossings. Also, the designer establishes right of way requirements based on documented needs to satisfy design year volumes.

In pavement design, the designer requires AADT forecasts for the year a project opens to traffic and for the design year. AADT, together with percent trucks (24 hour period) and other factors used by the Department, provides information on the pavement loadings used in pavement design. The ***FDOT Project Traffic Forecasting Procedure*** provides additional information.

### **16.2.3 Typical Section Package**

All projects that add or alter cross section elements, and all resurfacing projects, require the preparation and concurrence of a typical section package.

The typical section package shall be prepared and sealed by the responsible engineer.

The typical section package is the instrument for formal review and concurrence of the proposed project cross sectional elements by the appropriate FDOT District Design Engineer. Review and concurrence of the typical section package by the FHWA Transportation Engineer is required on projects that have FHWA oversight (see ***Chapter 24*** of this volume for determination of FHWA oversight).

The purpose of the typical section package review and approval process is to:

1. Establish typical transverse geometry
2. Consider safety related issues
3. Ensure compatibility between the bridge typical section and the roadway typical section



The typical section package consists of a Project Controls Sheet and Project Identification/ Proposed Typical Section Sheet. The Project Identification/ Proposed Typical Section Sheet should not be confused with the Typical Section Plan Sheet, which is part of the Contract Plans Set and is discussed in **Volume II, Chapter 6**. The Project Controls Sheet contains the project data, which serves as a basis for selecting criteria and establishing project standards for cross-sectional elements. The Project Identification/Proposed Typical Section Sheet contains: data which uniquely identifies the project; a detail of the proposed typical cross section with critical dimensions and cross sectional elements labeled; and signature blocks.

Usually, Project Identification/ Proposed Typical Section Sheets will be prepared for the main roadway and bridges. However, additional Project Identification/Proposed Typical Section Sheets:

1. **Shall** be required if:
  - a. A change in the number of through lanes occurs.
  - b. Flush shoulders change to curbing or vice versa.
  - c. A crossroad which may affect a structure exists.
  - d. Major work of significant length is being done on an intersecting roadway.
2. **May** be required if a change in design speed occurs within the project limits.

The proposed typical sections for roadway and bridges are to be submitted by the responsible engineer for concurrence by the District Design Engineer. Coordination with the District Structures Design Engineer is also required on all bridge typical sections. The roadway and bridge typical sections shall be submitted together to ensure compatibility.

The typical section package for both roadway and bridges shall be approved as part of the Project Development & Environmental (PD&E) process. Typical section package preparation, and coordination between the responsible PD&E engineer and the District Design Engineer, must occur during the development of project alternatives prior to preferred alternative selection. The responsible PD&E engineer shall prepare, seal and submit the typical section package for concurrence. Typical section package concurrence by the District Design Engineer shall be obtained after the preferred alternative is selected. A copy of the approved typical section package shall be included as part of the PD&E Final Preliminary Engineering Report.

For projects that do not contain a PD&E phase, the typical section package shall be prepared, sealed and submitted by the responsible engineer for concurrence by the District Design Engineer. The typical section package should be concurred with prior to the final engineering process.

**Exhibit 16-B** contains example typical section package sheets. The following is an outline of the information which is required as part of the typical section package submittal. This information is critical for proper evaluation by the District Design Engineer. Missing information may require a re-submittal of the typical section package.

**The following information is required on the project controls sheet:**

1. Financial Project ID
2. County
3. Project Description
4. Functional Classification
5. Highway System
6. Access Classification
7. Traffic Data (AADT, for Current, Opening and Design Year, Design Speed, Posted Speed; K, D, and T Factors)
8. Potential Exceptions and Variations related to the typical section elements
9. List Major Structures Requiring Independent Structures Design (including location and description)
10. List Major Utilities within project corridor
11. List other information pertinent to the design of the project

**The following information is required on the project identification/proposed typical section sheet:**

**Project Identification:**

1. Financial Project ID
2. State Project No. (if assigned)
3. Federal Aid Project No. (if assigned)
4. Work Program Item (if assigned)
5. Road Designation

6. County Name
7. Limits (In Milepost)
8. Project Description

**Proposed Roadway Typical Section Drawing:**

1. Design Speed
2. Limits (station limits of the typical section shown if available)
3. Lanes (dimension width, show cross slope of each lane, label bike and HOV lanes)
4. R/W Line (graphically show, label and dimension from centerline const.)
5. Shoulder (dimension width, show cross slope, paved shoulder is dimensioned and labeled separately)
6. Curb (graphically show curb, label curb type)
7. Median (dimension width, show slopes, graphically show whether median is typically depressed or raised)
8. Centerline Construction and/or Baseline Survey (graphically show and label)
9. Profile Grade Line (label)
10. Slopes (dimension and label)
11. Border Width (dimension and label for new construction)
12. Ditches (show typical front slope and typical back slope, dimension typical ditch width and depth, and label)
13. Natural Ground Line (graphically show and label)
14. Pavement and Roadbed (graphically show)
15. Barriers (graphically show, dimension, and label)
16. Sidewalk (graphically show, dimension, and label)

**Proposed Structure Typical Section Drawing:**

1. Design Speed
2. Bridge Description w/ Crossing Information
3. Lanes (dimension widths, and show cross slope of each lane, label bike or HOV lanes)
4. R/W Line (graphically show, label and dimension from centerline const.)

5. Shoulder (dimension, show cross slope, and label)
6. Gutter (dimension width, and graphically show)
7. Median (dimension width, show slopes, graphically show whether median is typically depressed or raised)
8. Centerline Construction and/or Baseline Survey (graphically show and label)
9. Bridge Deck (graphically show, dimension)
10. Profile Grade Line (label)
11. Barriers (graphically show including railing, dimension width, and label)
12. Sidewalk (graphically show, dimension width, and label)

The typical section package sheets are in the FDOT Engineering CADD Systems Software.

## **16.2.4 Preliminary Drainage Design**

On projects where the drainage design is a critical element the following items should require a preliminary submittal:

1. Determination of water elevations affecting the roadway grade. These include base clearance water elevations and design flood elevations.
2. Pond Siting Report
3. Documentation of preliminary drainage coordination with permitting agencies
4. Information that is essential to proper evaluation of drainage design concepts such as seasonal high ground water, soil types, existing cross drain peak design stages, historical pavement failure, flood plain elevation, present water elevations, drainage areas, etc.

## **16.2.5 Preliminary Geometry and Grades**

On projects where connections to the facility make grades a critical element, back of sidewalk profiles, project profile grades, determination of water elevations affecting the roadway grade, and driveway and side street geometry should require a preliminary submittal. The Districts may require the designer to present the project geometry and grade to a geometry and grade technical review team to encourage productive dialogue and proper communication regarding these design issues. If a bridge exists within the project limits, the early input of the structural designer as to approach grades and clearance needs should be coordinated to ensure proper bridge design.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 16.2.6 Preliminary Traffic Control Plan

On projects where the traffic control plan is a critical element the following items should require a preliminary submittal.

1. Typical sections of each construction phase with information that is essential to proper evaluation of each construction phase such as: location and nature of proper construction drainage; regulatory speed; location of work zone; proposed traffic control devices; number, width and location of maintained traffic; maximum drop-off; maintenance of existing lighting.
2. Documentation addressing possible innovative construction techniques; need for temporary detours, hazardous material excavation, temporary structures, etc.
3. Documentation of coordination with the local community: i.e., city and county transportation engineers, businesses, police, hospitals, civic centers or arena operations, fire department, schools, mass transit, etc.

## 16.2.7 Pavement Selection and Design

The pavement selection and design should be completed as early in the process as possible. The ***Rigid*** and ***Flexible Pavement Design Manuals*** are available through the Maps and Publications Sales Office.

## 16.2.8 Preliminary Utilities

On projects where utility coordination is a critical element the following early involvement activities should be required.

1. Before Phase I plans submittal, early involvement can be obtained by coordinating a review of the utility information in the topographic survey. This review may be accomplished by distribution of the topographic survey to all Utility Owners through the District Utility Office for mark-ups and confirmation of existing facilities.
2. Once the designer has reviewed the early topographic survey mark-ups a meeting should be held with the Utility Owners, District Utility Office and the designer to discuss errors, omissions, and future plans of the utilities already identified within the corridor. This will allow the designer the ability to prioritize which utilities will ultimately impact his design.

## 16.3 Structures Submittals

Structures design elements also go through decision-making reviews at various stages of the design as listed below:

### 16.3.1 Coordination of Structural Design - (Bridges and Retaining Walls)

All requests for structural design should include roadway plan and profile sheets showing horizontal and vertical alignment and cross sections within 500 feet of each end of the bridge or ends of retaining walls. Horizontal curvature that is on or near the end of the bridge or retaining wall must be shown. Nonstandard superelevation transition details or other special profiles must be included if any part or all of the transition is on the bridge or wall. The approved typical section is required.

Provisions for access to property near the end of bridges and adjustments to avoid costly right of way takings should be resolved.

### 16.3.2 Bridges

Bridge design begins when the Phase I bridge geotechnical report is complete and proceeds on a schedule which allows simultaneous review of the final (90%) bridge plans and the Phase III roadway plans. All structures design work is coordinated through the District Structures Design Engineer or the State Structures Design Office in the Central Office, depending on the category or complexity of the structure. A typical section of the facility crossing, horizontal and vertical clearances required and the profile grades shall be determined prior to beginning structures design. For complete details and requirements for structural designs and plans preparation, the reader is referred to **Chapter 26** of this volume and the **Structures Detailing Manual** issued by the State Structures Design Office.

Generally, the completion and review of bridge designs are accomplished in the following phases:

1. BDR/30% Structures Plans
2. 60% Structures Plans
  - a. (Foundation submittal for all Structures and full)
  - b. (Submittal for Category 2 or unusual structures only)
3. 90% Structures Plans
4. 100% Structures Plans

These reviews should be coordinated with the phase reviews of the roadway plans. The latest set of structural plans shall be submitted with the Phase II roadway plans submittal. This joint submittal at Phase II roadway plans review is to ensure that roadway and bridge structures plans are consistent, i.e., widths, superelevation transitions, vertical and horizontal alignment, and work zone traffic control agree. The precise number and type of plans submittals depends on the complexity of the design and/or the sensitivity of the project. Each submittal shall include written responses to the comments received on the previous submittal.

### **16.3.3 Other Structural Submittals and Reviews**

In addition to bridge plans, structures plans may include retaining walls, sheet piling, noise barrier walls, box culverts, pedestrian overpasses, temporary bridges, and special structural appurtenances.

For projects where bridges and other structures plans are involved, preliminary and final plan submittals (usually along with bridge plans) should be handled according to the instructions for structures plans submittals covered in **Chapters 26** and **30** of this volume.

For projects where retaining walls are required along with roadway plans only (no bridge in the project), the Engineer of Record shall follow the procedure outlined in **Chapter 30** of this volume. The submittal of detailed control plans should occur as early in the design process as possible.

Where the District Roadway Office cannot carry out the structural review or verify the review as proper by a consultant, such review may be requested from the District Structures Design Office or the State Structures Design Office.



## 16.4 Plans Phase Reviews

The number of submittals and phase reviews shall be determined on a project-by-project basis and shall be defined in the scope. Submittals allow functional areas to review the development of the project as contained in the scope.

Formal plans phase review requirements are covered in the District Quality Control Plan. Reviews should include Department personnel that can assist in making timely decisions and confirm that the requirements have been met for their discipline. Ideally, reviews should be driven by the engineering process and should occur when there is a need for input or a decision to complete a critical activity before progressing with the design. Some of these activities are discussed in **Section 16.2** of this chapter. Reviews are complete when the comments from all the various offices have been resolved and have been documented as required in **Chapter 24** of this volume.

Constructability and biddability reviews by the District Construction Office shall be included at appropriate stages of the phase review process. Procedures for these reviews are provided in the **Construction Project Administration Manual (Topic No. 700-000-000)**.

Minor projects, such as resurfacing, should typically have two plans phase reviews. The two reviews should consist of a decision-making phase review on the scope and intent of the project and a final plans phase review for constructability/biddability. One of these will be an on-site review.

On complex projects plans phase reviews may be required at the Phase I, II and III stages and a final check at Phase IV. Two on-site reviews will be required. Generally, one of the site reviews is held early in the initial engineering phase.

**Section 2.3** of **Volume II** outlines, in detail, the sequence for contract plans preparation and assembly required by the several design phase submittals. Also included in the chapter is information required to be presented on various plan sheets included with each submittal.

When the plans are in compliance with all phase review requirements and are considered final, they are to be submitted in accordance with the process described in **Chapter 20** of this volume.

**Exhibit 16-B Typical Section Package  
 Sheet 1 of 6**

<b>PROJECT IDENTIFICATION</b>																									
FINANCIAL PROJECT ID _____ COUNTY _____																									
PROJECT DESCRIPTION _____																									
<b>PROJECT CONTROLS</b>																									
<p align="center"><u>FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION</u></p> <p align="center"> <input type="checkbox"/> RURAL  <input type="checkbox"/> URBAN                 </p> <p> <input type="checkbox"/> FREEWAY/EXPWY.    <input type="checkbox"/> MAJOR COLL.  <input type="checkbox"/> PRINCIPAL ART.    <input type="checkbox"/> MINOR COLL.  <input type="checkbox"/> MINOR ART.        <input type="checkbox"/> LOCAL                 </p>	<p align="center"><u>HIGHWAY SYSTEM</u></p> <p>Yes No</p> <p> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> NATIONAL HIGHWAY SYSTEM  <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> FLORIDA INTRASTATE HIGHWAY SYSTEM  <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> STATE HIGHWAY SYSTEM  <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> OFF STATE HIGHWAY SYSTEM                 </p>																								
<p align="center"><u>ACCESS CLASSIFICATION</u></p> <p> <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - FREEWAY  <input type="checkbox"/> 2 - RESTRICTIVE w/Service Roads  <input type="checkbox"/> 3 - RESTRICTIVE w/660 ft. Connecting Spacing  <input type="checkbox"/> 4 - NON-RESTRICTIVE w/2640 ft. Signal Spacing  <input type="checkbox"/> 5 - RESTRICTIVE w/440 ft. Connection Spacing  <input type="checkbox"/> 6 - NON- RESTRICTIVE w/1320 ft. Signal Spacing  <input type="checkbox"/> 7 - BOTH MEDIAN TYPES                 </p>	<p align="center"><u>TRAFFIC</u></p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th align="center">YEAR</th> <th align="center">AADT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CURRENT</td> <td align="center">_____</td> <td align="center">_____</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OPENING</td> <td align="center">_____</td> <td align="center">_____</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DESIGN</td> <td align="center">_____</td> <td align="center">_____</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th align="center" colspan="2"><u>DISTRIBUTION</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DESIGN SPEED _____</td> <td align="center">K</td> <td align="center">%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>POSTED SPEED _____</td> <td align="center">D</td> <td align="center">%</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td align="center">T<sub>24</sub></td> <td align="center">%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		YEAR	AADT	CURRENT	_____	_____	OPENING	_____	_____	DESIGN	_____	_____		<u>DISTRIBUTION</u>		DESIGN SPEED _____	K	%	POSTED SPEED _____	D	%		T <sub>24</sub>	%
	YEAR	AADT																							
CURRENT	_____	_____																							
OPENING	_____	_____																							
DESIGN	_____	_____																							
	<u>DISTRIBUTION</u>																								
DESIGN SPEED _____	K	%																							
POSTED SPEED _____	D	%																							
	T <sub>24</sub>	%																							
<p align="center"><u>CRITERIA</u></p> <p> <input type="checkbox"/> NEW CONSTRUCTION/RECONSTRUCTION  <input type="checkbox"/> RRR INTERSTATE/FREEWAY  <input type="checkbox"/> RRR NON-INTERSTATE/FREEWAY  <input type="checkbox"/> TDLC/NEW CONSTRUCTION/RECONSTRUCTION  <input type="checkbox"/> TDLC/RRR  <input type="checkbox"/> MANUAL OF UNIFORM MINIMUM STANDARDS                      (FLORIDA GREENBOOK) (OFF-STATE HIGHWAY SYSTEM ONLY)                 </p>																									
LIST ANY POTENTIAL EXCEPTIONS AND VARIATIONS RELATED TO TYPICAL SECTION ELEMENTS :																									
LIST MAJOR STRUCTURES LOCATION/DESCRIPTION - REQUIRING INDEPENDENT STRUCTURE DESIGN:																									
LIST MAJOR UTILITIES WITHIN PROJECT CORRIDOR :																									
LIST OTHER INFORMATION PERTINENT TO DESIGN OF PROJECT:																									

Exhibit 16-B, Sheet 2 of 6

<p><b>PROJECT IDENTIFICATION</b></p> <p>FINANCIAL PROJECT ID _____ FEDERAL AID PROJECT NO. _____ FEDERAL FUNDS _____</p> <p>COUNTY NAME <u>HILLSBOROUGH</u> ROAD DESIGNATION <u>SR 99</u> LIMITS/MILEPOST <u>(MP 7.381 TO MP 10.535)</u></p> <p>PROJECT DESCRIPTION <u>MULTILANE RECONSTRUCTION OF SR 99 FROM CR 239 (CALHOUN BLVD.) TO I-10</u></p>		
<p><b>PROPOSED ROADWAY TYPICAL SECTION</b></p> <p>DESIGN SPEED = 50 mph              STA. 250+38.000 TO STA. 301+14.911</p>		
<p><b>APPROVED BY</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>Engineer Of Record _____</p>	<p><b>FDOT CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FDOT District Design Engineer _____</p>	<p><b>FHWA CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FHWA Transportation Engineer _____</p>

Exhibit 16-B, Sheet 3 of 6

<p><b>PROJECT IDENTIFICATION</b></p> <p>FINANCIAL PROJECT ID <u>000002-1-32-01</u> FEDERAL AID PROJECT NO. <u>FEDERAL FUNDS</u></p> <p>COUNTY NAME <u>HILLSBOROUGH</u> ROAD DESIGNATION <u>SR 99</u> LIMITS/MILEPOST <u>(MP 7.381 TO MP 10.535)</u></p> <p>PROJECT DESCRIPTION <u>MULTILANE RECONSTRUCTION OF SR 99 FROM CR 239 (CALHOUN BLVD.) TO I-10</u></p>	
<p><b>PROPOSED STRUCTURE TYPICAL SECTION</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">DESIGN SPEED = 50 mph                  SR 99 BRIDGE OVER TUCKER CANAL</p>	
<p><b>APPROVED BY</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>Engineer Of Record _____</p>	<p><b>FDDT CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FDDT District Design Engineer _____</p>
<p><b>FHWA CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FHWA Transportation Engineer _____</p>	<p><b>FHWA CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FHWA Transportation Engineer _____</p>

Exhibit 16-B, Sheet 4 of 6

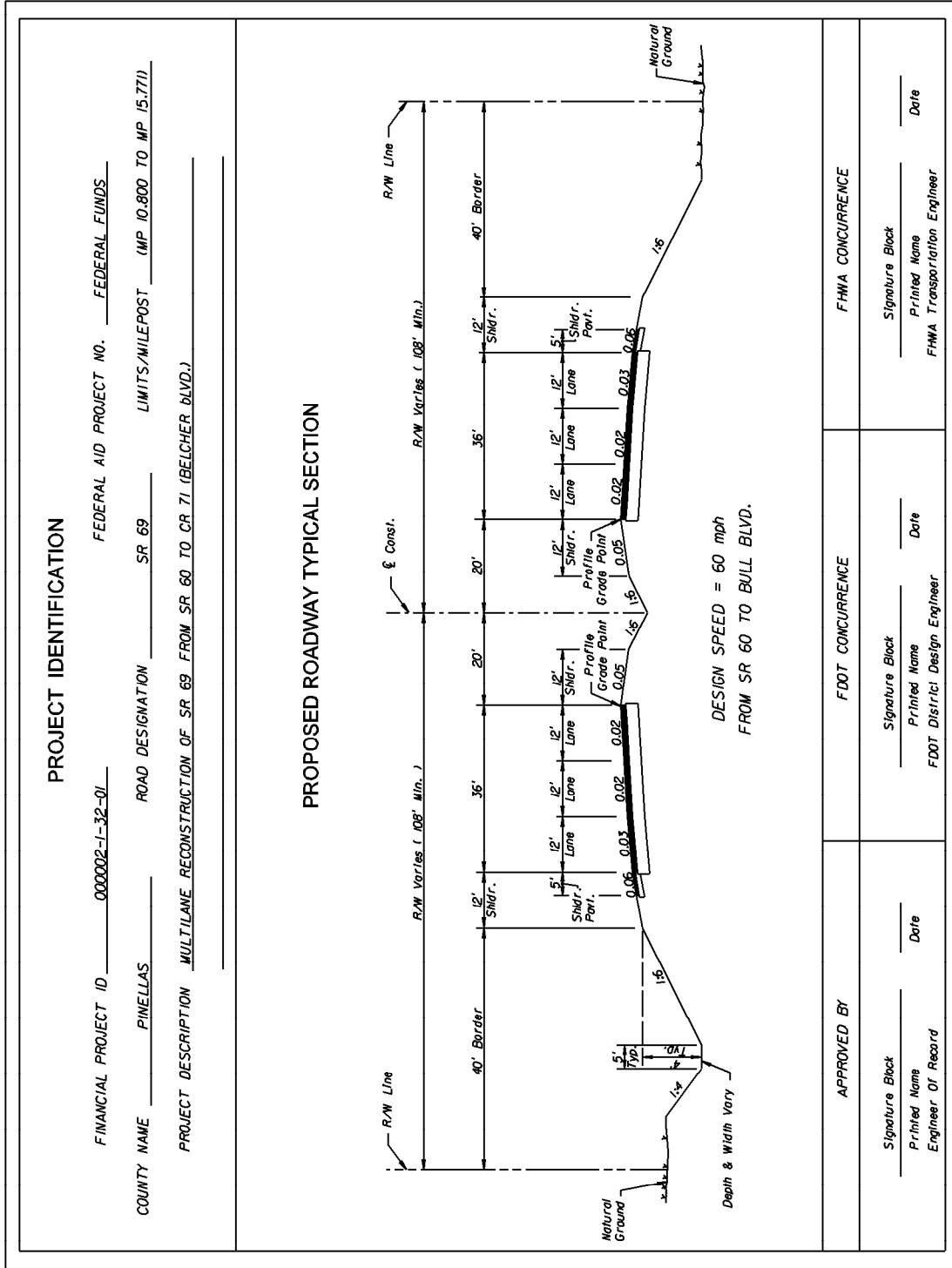


Exhibit 16-B, Sheet 5 of 6

<p><b>PROJECT IDENTIFICATION</b></p> <p>FINANCIAL PROJECT ID <u>000003-1-32-01</u> FEDERAL AID PROJECT NO. <u>FEDERAL FUNDS</u></p> <p>COUNTY NAME <u>PINELLAS</u> ROAD DESIGNATION <u>SR 69</u> LIMITS/MILEPOST <u>(MP 10.800 TO MP 15.771)</u></p> <p>PROJECT DESCRIPTION <u>MULTILANE RECONSTRUCTION OF SR 69 FROM SR 60 TO CR 71 (BELCHER BLVD.)</u></p>	
<p><b>PROPOSED STRUCTURE TYPICAL SECTION</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">DESIGN SPEED = 60 mph                  SR 69 BRIDGE OVER WHATCHAMACALLIT RIVER</p>	
<p><b>APPROVED BY</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>Engineer Of Record _____</p>	<p><b>FDOT CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FDOT District Design Engineer _____</p>
<p><b>FHWA CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FHWA Transportation Engineer _____</p>	<p><b>FHWA CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FHWA Transportation Engineer _____</p>

Exhibit 16-B, Sheet 6 of 6

<p><b>PROJECT IDENTIFICATION</b></p> <p>FINANCIAL PROJECT ID _____ FEDERAL AID PROJECT NO. _____ FEDERAL FUNDS _____</p> <p>COUNTY NAME _____ JACKSON _____ ROAD DESIGNATION _____ SR 71 _____ LIMITS/MILEPOST _____ (MP 1.941 TO MP 5.809)</p> <p>PROJECT DESCRIPTION _____ MULTILANE RECONSTRUCTION OF SR 71 FROM CR 481 (YONITZ RD.) TO BEAVER CREEK BRIDGE _____</p>		
<p><b>PROPOSED ROADWAY TYPICAL SECTION</b></p> <p>DESIGN SPEED = 55 mph              STA. 10+53.000 TO STA. 72+77.000</p>		
<p><b>APPROVED BY</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>Engineer Of Record _____</p>	<p><b>FDDT CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FDDT District Design Engineer _____</p>	<p><b>FHWA CONCURRENCE</b></p> <p>Signature Block _____ Date _____</p> <p>Printed Name _____</p> <p>FHWA Transportation Engineer _____</p>

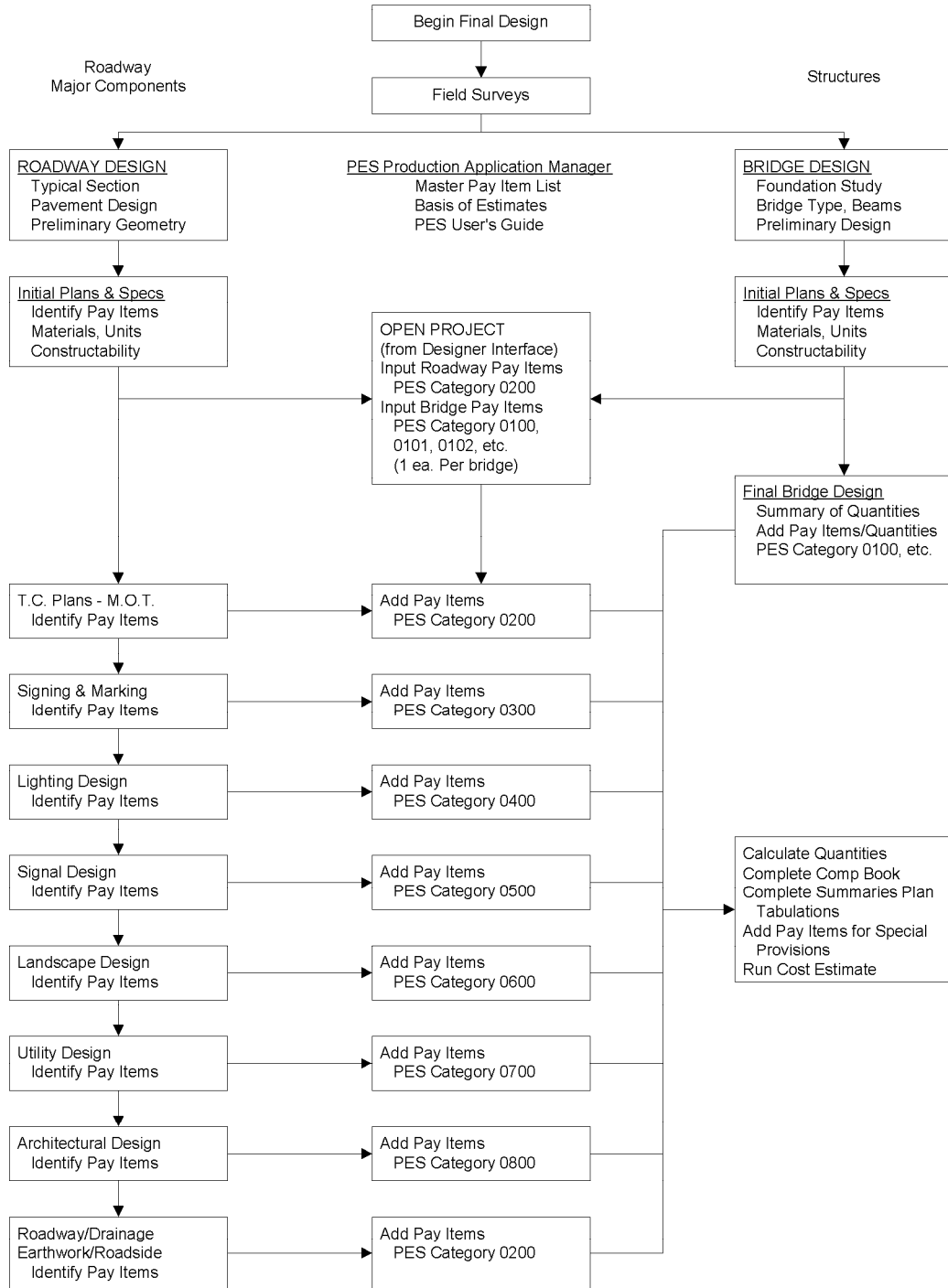
## Chapter 17

### Engineering Design Estimate Process

17.1	General.....	17-1
17.2	Pay Item List.....	17-2
17.3	Designer Interface for TRNS*PORT.....	17-3
17.4	Estimated Quantities .....	17-4
17.4.1	Computation Book and Summary of Quantities .....	17-4
17.4.1.1	Plan Quantity.....	17-4
17.4.1.2	Final Measurement Concept.....	17-4
17.4.2	Breakdown of Quantities .....	17-5
17.4.3	Utility Contract Plans (Joint Project Agreements) .....	17-5
17.4.4	Plan Notes.....	17-6
17.5	Specifications (Method of Measurement).....	17-7
17.6	Pay Items .....	17-7
17.7	Contract Time .....	17-8
17.8	Alternative Contracting Practices .....	17-8
Exhibits		
Exhibit 17-A	Major Activities - Engineering Design Estimate Process .....	17-ii



### Exhibit 17-A Major Activities - Engineering Design Estimate Process



## Chapter 17

### Engineering Design Estimate Process

#### 17.1 General

The engineer's estimate of construction cost and contract time is one of the last activities performed on roadway and structures design projects.

To do a quality cost estimate, the engineer must have available the following:

1. The complete contract plans set, including all component sets such as structures, architectural, etc.;
2. The complete specifications, including the supplemental specifications and technical special provisions;
3. The ***Design Standards*** booklet referenced on the key sheet of the contract plans;
4. The completed computation book for the roadway and structures plans; and
5. The current ***Basis of Estimates Handbook***.

## 17.2 Pay Item List

The Specifications establish the method of measurement, basis of payment and payment items for work specified for road and bridge construction. **The Master Pay Item List** contains a list of all the current “open” pay items. The **Basis of Estimates Handbook** contains design aids, notes, and computation information to aid the engineer in preparing the cost estimate. Both the **Master Pay Item List** and the **Basis of Estimates Handbook** are available on the Estimates Office web pages at: <http://www11.myflorida.com/estimates/>

Pay items for the various categories of construction work should be identified as those components are completed. For example, pay items for base and pavement work may be identified as the pavement design is completed. Signal pay items may be identified as the signal design is completed. The engineer doing the design and specifications is knowledgeable about what work is to be done and which pay items are needed. The quantity take-off is generally done at a later date when the plans are final and the tabulations and calculations are done. The persons doing the quantity take-off should also be alert to ensure all pay items have been identified.

The Master Pay Item List shall be utilized to identify payment items on all types of projects, including resurfacing, widening, safety, bridge, etc. If any work on a project is not covered by existing specifications, then a technical special provision and possibly a new pay item description, unit of measure, and basis of payment may be required. Establishing new pay items is highly regulated and before it is undertaken, the District Estimates Office where the project is located should be consulted. See **Section 17.6** of this volume for more details.

Participating and nonparticipating portions of work should be determined when identifying pay items so quantity summaries can be set up properly in the TRNS\*PORT and the computation book.

## **17.3 Designer Interface for TRNS\*PORT**

The Designer Interface website is used to build categories and to add pay items and quantities to categories. Procedures and training on this and other TRNS\*PORT programs are available from the Engineering Support Services section of the State Estimates Office in Tallahassee. Contact your District Estimates Office for more information.

## 17.4 Estimated Quantities

### 17.4.1 Computation Book and Summary of Quantities

Quantities for pay items are tabulated and computed by two methods. They are tabulated and totaled on Summary of Quantity sheets in the plans, or they are tabulated and calculated on standard computation forms. The computation book contains calculations and summary of quantities organized in pay item sequence for the project. Backup calculations that substantiate the summary should be filed directly behind the forms. Items calculated using the standard basis of estimate from the ***Basis of Estimates Handbook*** or from the ***Design Standards*** should be clearly shown in the comp book, especially if several intermediate computations are necessary to arrive at the total quantity. All nonstandard methods should be clearly and completely documented by showing all calculations and the basis of estimating the quantities and a pay item note should be shown in the plans indicating the basis of estimate used.

The documentation for quantities must be accurate and clear. Detailed information on the documentation required with the computation book can be found in the ***Computation Methods for Design, Construction and Final Estimates Handbook***.

#### 17.4.1.1 Plan Quantity

The designer is responsible for the final pay quantity for all plan quantity items. Generally, plan quantity items are calculated using lengths based on station-to-station dimensions and widths based on neat lines shown in the plans. With the neat lines shown in the plans, this allows the designer to utilize the computer to generate accurate quantities.

#### 17.4.1.2 Final Measurement Concept

The designer is responsible to estimate a quantity for all final measure items. Because there are many variables associated with these items, the final pay quantity will be determined by measurements performed in the field when the item is being used or constructed.

The original computation book, including the Structures computation book and all backup calculations for roadway and bridge quantities, shall be transmitted to the District Construction Office when the plans are sent for letting.

## **17.4.2 Breakdown of Quantities**

For projects that have partial federal funds, adequate distinction should be clearly made between participating (included in federal aid) and nonparticipating (not included in federal aid) items. All nonparticipating items with quantities should be identified in TRNS\*PORT and the Computation Book. The method of presenting this information must be of sufficient detail for project personnel to readily distinguish between participating and nonparticipating work, including its physical location on the project. Project personnel must be able to properly account for the necessary separation of quantities. These separated quantities should be properly identified as to participating and nonparticipating work when entered into TRNS\*PORT. In a few cases certain lump sum items such as mobilization, maintenance of traffic, etc., may be at least partially federal aid nonparticipating depending upon the nature of other nonparticipating items which must be separated. Where it is determined that certain lump sum items should be partially nonparticipating, the percentage assignment of nonparticipating should be negotiated with the FHWA. Upon mutual agreement, this percentage should be reflected when entering data into TRNS\*PORT. These items should be determined during early stages of project development. Coordinate TRNS\*PORT data entry of nonparticipating items with the District Estimates Office.

Where joint project agreements are involved between the Department and a City or County, appropriate participation information regarding this particular phase of the work should be so noted.

When a contract contains more than one Financial Project ID, with or without participating/nonparticipating quantities, the Summary of Pay Items and Summary of Quantities must show the separate quantities for each project. The computation book should clearly distinguish the location of each part of the work. The designer should also verify that the method of payment for an item of work agrees among all projects when projects are combined into a single contract.

## **17.4.3 Utility Contract Plans (Joint Project Agreements)**

When separate plans for utility construction are to be included in the contract, special attention should be given to establishment of pay items and loading the projects into TRNS\*PORT. Reimbursable work is indicated in the Financial Project ID by phase number 56 and nonreimbursable work is indicated by phase number 52.

For contracts with more than one project, the pay items for Mobilization and Maintenance of Traffic will be shown on each project's Summary of Pay Items. An exception to this is when the contract contains a Joint Project Agreement (JPA). The pay items for Mobilization and Maintenance of Traffic will not be shown on the Summary of Pay Items for the JPA. The cost of these items will be included in the lead project.

#### **17.4.4 Plan Notes**

Plan notes are intended to be used to clarify design detail, construction practices or method for payment. In general, plan notes should be kept to a minimum. Only those notes that are job specific should be used. Many of the "old" standard notes have been eliminated recently and incorporated into the specifications. Notes that restate the standard specifications or standard indexes shall not be used. This will help to place proper emphasis on those notes that are job specific and avoid discrepancy of documents.

## 17.5 Specifications (Method of Measurement)

The Department's current practice is to provide for final payment under the plan quantity concept for a large number of commonly used items. The specifications for each item identify which items are to be paid for as plan quantity. This concept requires that the estimated quantities be calculated and documented as accurately as possible. (See **Article 9-3.2** of the **Specifications**).

## 17.6 Pay Items

For information about requesting new pay items, or concerning the trial pay item process, see the **Basis of Estimates Handbook**.



## 17.7 Contract Time

After completion of the design project including the completion of the cost estimate, the plans package is submitted to the district construction office scheduling engineer for establishing the contract duration. Contract duration is the time required for the complete construction of the contract. A copy of the contract time is submitted to the Central Office in Tallahassee with the plans transmittal package. Certain large complex projects should have the desired contract duration established earlier in the design process.

## 17.8 Alternative Contracting Practices

It is the intent of the Department to use various techniques on a wide range of project types in order to determine which techniques work the best on each project type. The goal of this program is to reduce the cost and time overruns and thereby reduce the impacts of construction to motorists, businesses and homeowners within the transportation corridor. Most of the Alternative Contracting Practices involve financial incentives to expedite the work. For more detailed instructions refer to the Department's ***Alternative Contracting User's Guide***.

## Chapter 18

### Quality Assurance and Quality Control

18.1	General.....	18-1
18.2	Quality Assurance .....	18-2
18.2.1	Authority .....	18-2
18.2.2	Accountability .....	18-2
18.2.3	Critical Areas to be Monitored .....	18-3
18.2.4	Documentation .....	18-4
18.2.5	Training .....	18-4
18.3	Quality Control.....	18-5
18.3.1	Authority .....	18-5
18.3.2	Accountability .....	18-6
18.3.3	Critical Areas to be Monitored .....	18-6
18.3.4	Documentation .....	18-6
18.3.5	Training .....	18-6

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 18

### Quality Assurance and Quality Control

#### 18.1 General

**Quality Assurance** and **Quality Control** are two processes used to ensure the public receives a quality product. Quality Assurance is the responsibility of, and performed by the Central Office. Quality Control is a responsibility of the District Offices, and is performed by the Districts and their Agents (Consultants), as appropriate.

## 18.2 Quality Assurance

**Quality Assurance** is the planned, coordinated and continued activities performed to measure processes against predetermined critical requirements. The objective of Quality Assurance is the continual improvement of the total delivery process to enhance quality, productivity and user satisfaction.

### 18.2.1 Authority

**Florida Statutes Section 20.23(3)(a)** requires a **Quality Assurance Process**. It requires the Central Office to establish departmental policies, rules, procedures and standards and to monitor the implementation in order to ensure uniform compliance and quality performance by the District and Central Office units that implement transportation programs. Also, **Florida Statutes, Section 334.048** states the Legislative intent with respect to the Central Office role in the Department's management accountability and monitoring systems, including corrective actions when appropriate.

### 18.2.2 Accountability

The State Roadway Design monitoring plan identifies the process, critical areas, criteria used to measure compliance, report format, method of monitoring and tracking, and procedure for follow-up of unresolved issues. The results of the Quality Assurance monitoring activities are reported to management in exit interviews and reports. The reports identify areas needing improvement, provide feedback on the effectiveness and appropriateness of established policies, procedures and standards, and recognize areas of outstanding quality. The reports are also used to share improvement ideas between districts, and to maintain consistency in process and practice.

The Central Office shall furnish all the planned and systematic actions necessary to provide adequate direction to the Districts so that all design products will be the result of predetermined requirements. This involves the establishment of design policies, procedures, standards and guidelines, training, and the monitoring and review of District compliance with these items.

The Central Office shall review each design process and its associated components for assurance that the Districts have adequate control measures in place and are complying with policy, procedures, standards, guidelines and processes. It will also be used for identifying any areas of excellence, noncompliance and need.

### 18.2.3 Critical Areas to be Monitored

Critical areas to be monitored by the Central Office are based on well-established roadway design policy and practice. These policies, guidelines and accepted practices formulate the criteria used to measure compliance in the areas critical to quality. The minimum frequency of review for a critical area is three years. However, latitude is allowed for the depth and frequency of reviews, based on the individual District's observed performance, review findings or the needs of District management.

The State Roadway Design monitoring plan for Quality Assurance lists the following critical areas to be monitored.

1. Initial Engineering Design Process (See **Chapter 13**, this volume)
  - a. Quality Control Activities,
  - b. Scope Activities,
  - c. Standards Activities,
  - d. Design Support Activities,
  - e. Project Activities.
2. Final Engineering Design Process (See **Chapter 14**, this volume)
  - a. Quality Control Activities,
  - b. Review Initial Engineering Design Activities,
  - c. Engineering Activities,
  - d. Support Activities.
3. Update Engineering Design Process (See **Chapter 15**, this volume)
  - a. Quality Control Activities,
  - b. Scope Activities,
  - c. Standards Activities,
  - d. Engineering Activities,
  - e. Support Activities.

## 18.2.4 Documentation

The Quality Assurance findings and recommendations will be documented in a report that will be distributed to the District Secretaries and other affected offices. A brief summary of the data will also be entered in the Quality Assurance Reporting (QAR) database. Summaries of significant issues will be prepared quarterly for upper management.

## 18.2.5 Training

Training and assistance are also a mandated role of the Central Office units and the Quality Assurance program.

1. Development: The Central Office Roadway Design will formulate a training plan based upon District requests or needs as determined by the Quality Assurance reviews.
2. Delivery: The Central Office will manage or conduct training courses for District and Consultant personnel as requested, with schedules and locations sensitive to budgets and production schedules.

## 18.3 Quality Control

**Quality Control** is the process performed to ensure conformance with valid requirements. This process includes quality planning, training, providing clear decisions and directions, constant supervision, immediate review of completed activities for accuracy and completeness, and documenting all decisions, assumptions and recommendations.

Each District shall have a **District Quality Control Plan for Roadway Design** and the other production units, which addresses broad overall quality initiative. The **District Quality Control Plan** shall identify the organization, responsibility, and accountability used to perform and document overall quality control, including the requirement for a Project Quality Control Plan on all projects. All **Project Quality Control Plans** must address any project specific scope of service needs and be approved by the Project Manager or District Design Engineer as appropriate.

In-house and consultant designers and reviewers must recognize quality is the result of several processes. It requires many individuals performing many appropriate activities at the right time during the plans development process. Quality control does not solely consist of a review after a product is completed. Quality requires performing all activities in conformance with valid requirements, no matter how large or small their overall contribution to the design process. Good CADD techniques, attention to details and ensuring the plans are correct and useful to the contractor are also essential to quality.

### 18.3.1 Authority

**Section 20.23(4)(b), Florida Statutes**, requires a **Quality Control Process**. It requires that each District shall be accountable for ensuring their District's quality of performance and compliance with all laws, rules, policies, and procedures related to the operation of the department.



### **18.3.2 Accountability**

1. The **District** shall follow established design policies, procedures, standards and guidelines in the review and preparation of all design products; and review Consultant prepared individual engineering and design for compliance and good engineering practice.
2. The **Consultant** is an agent for the District with the primary responsibility for preparation of contract plans. Consultants must ensure quality and adherence to established design policies, procedures, standards and guidelines in the review and preparation of all design products for compliance and good engineering practice as directed Project Quality Control Plan by the District.

### **18.3.3 Critical Areas to be Monitored**

The District shall monitor the Quality Control efforts used by in-house staff and its consultant services units. The District shall assure project scopes include an adequate **Project Quality Control Plan**.

### **18.3.4 Documentation**

The Districts shall maintain a file containing the current District Quality Control Plan and shall furnish Central Office Design with a copy to be used as part of the critical areas to be reviewed. Every project file will contain a Project Quality Control Plan at the beginning of the Initial Engineering Design Process.

### **18.3.5 Training**

The District shall identify and coordinate training needs of in-house and Consultant services through the appropriate Central Office units.

## Chapter 19

### Sealing Design Documents

19.1	General.....	19-1
19.2	Sealing of Contract Plans/Record Set.....	19-2
19.2.1	Manual Sealing.....	19-2
19.2.2	Electronic Sealing.....	19-3
19.3	Sealing Other Engineering Documents.....	19-4
19.4	Sealing of Revisions.....	19-5
19.4.1	Plans.....	19-5
19.4.2	Other Engineering Documents.....	19-5
19.5	Support Documents.....	19-7
19.5.1	18 KIP Equivalent Single Axle Loads (ESAL).....	19-7
19.5.2	Project Traffic.....	19-8

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 19

# Sealing Design Documents

### 19.1 General

**Section 334.175, Florida Statutes**, requires that all design plans and surveys prepared by or for the Department be sealed by the professional engineer, surveyor, architect, or landscape architect in responsible charge of the project work. **Section 471.025, Florida Statutes**, requires that all final drawings, specifications, plans, reports, or documents prepared or issued by a licensed professional engineer and being filed for public record shall be sealed by the licensee. Such professional engineer must be duly licensed in the State of Florida.

Professional Engineers shall seal only those documents that conform to acceptable engineering standards and safeguard life, health, property and welfare of the public (**Rule 61G15-19.001, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.)**). A professional engineer may only seal an engineering report, plan, print or specification if that professional engineer was in responsible charge of the preparation and production of the engineering document (**Rule 61G15-23.002, F.A.C.**). Responsible charge means supervisory direction and/or control authority over engineering decisions made personally or by others (**Rule 61G15-18.011, F.A.C.**).

All landscape plans, specifications, and reports prepared by or for the Department shall be sealed by a registered landscape architect.

This chapter is based on **Florida Statutes** as well as the **Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.)**. Though the intent of this chapter is to contain current and accurate information, it is not all-inclusive. The Laws and Rules regarding the signing and sealing of engineering documents continue to be amended, and it is the engineer's responsibility to be aware of any changes. If there is ever a discrepancy between this chapter and the Laws and Rules regarding the sealing of engineering documents, the Laws and Rules will govern.

This chapter explains the Department's requirements for sealing/signing design plans and other design documents prepared by or for the Department. It is the District's responsibility to verify that all record sets and documents are properly sealed and/or signed.

## 19.2 Sealing of Contract Plans/Record Set

An original set of the Contract Plans shall be sealed by the Engineer(s) of Record (EOR). This becomes the Record Set. An EOR is a Florida licensed professional engineer in responsible charge for the preparation of engineering documents. Under the provisions of **Rule 61G15-23.002(2)**, each sheet of the Record Set must be sealed by an EOR. The key sheet must be prepared and sealed by the EOR who is the Prime Professional for that component. Other individual sheets of the Record Set may be sealed by a delegated engineer, who in turn becomes the EOR for that portion of the work.

In accordance with **Rule 61G15-23.002**, Engineers shall legibly indicate either (1) their name, address, and engineering license number on each sheet, OR (2) if practicing through a duly authorized engineering business, their name and engineering license number as well as the engineering business name, address, and certificate of authorization number. A title block on each sheet containing the printed name, address, and license number of the engineer or if applicable, the name and license number of the engineer and the name, address and certificate of authorization number of the engineering business will satisfy this requirement. Engineers working for local, State or Federal Government agencies shall legibly indicate their name and license number, and may indicate the name and address of the agency. See **Volume II, Section 1.4**.

### 19.2.1 Manual Sealing

To properly seal a document, the EOR will sign, write the date immediately under the signature, and seal over the signature and date. The location of this seal should be varied along the bottom of the sheet for convenient storage of a plans set, and to insure that the seal will not obliterate any critical information.

The **Interim Standards** that have not been altered and that are included in the plans shall not be sealed. The **Design Standards** and the **Interim Standards** have been previously sealed and the Record Set is kept in the Roadway Design Office.

Plans prepared by an employee of a Utility or other employees exempted under **Section 471.003, Florida Statutes**, that will be appended to Department plans, are not required to be sealed except as follows. Utility plans that modify or detail attachments to a bridge or other structure belonging to the Department must have the sheets affecting such structure sealed. Plans prepared by nonexempt parties for a Utility, that will be appended to Department plans, must be sealed. For detailed requirements refer to the **Utility Accommodation Manual, Topic No. 710-020-001**.

## 19.2.2 Electronic Sealing

Information stored in electronic files representing plans, specifications, plats, reports, or other documents which must be sealed under the provisions of **Chapter 471, Florida Statutes**, shall be signed, dated and sealed by the professional engineer in responsible charge.

Electronic files may be sealed by creating a "signature" file that contains the engineer's name and PE number, a brief overall description of the engineering documents, and a list of the electronic files to be sealed. Each file in the list shall be identified by its file name utilizing relative Uniform Resource Locators (URL) syntax described in the **Internet Architecture Board's Request for Comments (RFC) 1738, December 1994**, which can be obtained from the Internet Website:

<ftp://ftp.isi.edu/in-notes/rfc1738.txt>

Each file shall have an authentication code defined as an SHA-1 message digest described in **Federal Information Processing Standard Publication 180-1 "Secure Hash Standard," 1995 April 17**, which can be obtained from the Internet Website:

<http://www.itl.nist.gov/fipspubs/fip180-1.htm>

A report shall be created that contains the engineer's name and PE number, a brief overall description of the engineering documents in question and the authentication code of the signature file. This report shall be printed and manually sealed by the professional engineer in responsible charge. The signature file is defined as sealed if its authentication code matches the authentication code on the printed, manually signed, dated and sealed report. Each electronic file listed in a sealed signature file is defined as sealed if the listed authentication code matches the file's computed authentication code.

For those sheets that are electronically signed and sealed, the following note shall be placed legibly on the sheet:

**"NOTICE: THE OFFICIAL RECORD OF THIS SHEET IS THE ELECTRONIC FILE SIGNED AND SEALED UNDER RULE 61G15-23.003, F.A.C." \***

\* Note: The Rule number referenced is determined by the discipline of the professional that is signing and sealing (i.e. for Surveyors, this Rule is 61G17-7.0025, F.A.C.; for Geologists, this Rule is 61G16-2.005, F.A.C.).

## 19.3 Sealing Other Engineering Documents

Other engineering documents include related plans, reports, computations, specifications or criteria, as defined in **Rule 61G15-30.002 (4)**, and used in the development of design plans.

Bound engineering documents must be sealed on a signature page or cover letter by the EOR. If a document includes work by more than one EOR, the signature page or cover letter must have an index with sufficient information for the user to be aware of each portion of the document for which each engineer is responsible. To seal a document, the engineer will sign, date immediately under the signature, and seal over the signature and date. With the exception of specifications, any document, report or computations not bound shall have all sheets sealed. Specifications will be sealed in accordance with the **Specifications Package Preparation Procedure**.

The following engineering documents shall be kept in the district's Project File(s).

1. Specifications and Special Provisions
2. Pavement Design Package
3. Typical Section Package
4. Drainage Computations
5. Hydraulics Reports
6. Bridge Development Report
7. Traffic Engineering Reports and Recommendations
8. Environmental Reports and Recommendations
9. Soil Survey Reports and Geotechnical Report
10. Value Engineering Record
11. Other Engineering Reports
12. Permit Documentation
13. Design Exceptions and Variations
14. Design Exceptions for Utilities prepared by an Engineering Consultant

## 19.4 Sealing of Revisions

Revisions are a partial modification of an engineering document after a plans package is sent to Tallahassee for contract letting. Whenever practical, revisions should be prepared by the original EOR.

### 19.4.1 Plans

Revisions to a plans sheet prior to the contract letting shall be prepared as outlined in **Chapter 20** of this volume. Revised sheets will be appended to the plans set.

Any plans sheet revised after the contract letting will be sealed in accordance with the **Construction Project Administration Manual (CPAM), Topic No. 700-000-000**.

### 19.4.2 Other Engineering Documents

Each revised sheet shall be sealed by the EOR who prepared the revision and placed immediately behind the cover sheet of the sealed document. Specifications will be revised in accordance with the **Specification Package Preparation Procedure, Topic No. 630-010-005**.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 19.5 Support Documents

Engineering decisions are often made on the basis of support documents furnished by non engineering staff or offices. Two reports prepared in accordance with Department procedures will be attested as follows:

### 19.5.1 18 KIP Equivalent Single Axle Loads (ESAL)

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

County \_\_\_\_\_

I have reviewed the 18 KIP Equivalent Single Axle Loads to be used for pavement design on this project. I hereby attest that these have been developed in accordance with the FDOT ***Project Traffic Forecasting Procedure*** using historical traffic data and other available information.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Organizational Unit

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

## 19.5.2 Project Traffic

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

County \_\_\_\_\_

I have reviewed the Project Traffic to be used for design on this project. I hereby attest that it has been developed in accordance with the FDOT ***Project Traffic Forecasting Procedure*** using historical traffic data and other available information.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Organizational Unit

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

## Chapter 20

### Plans Processing and Revisions

20.1	General.....	20-1
20.2	Glossary .....	20-1
20.3	Plans Processing.....	20-2
20.3.1	District Activities .....	20-2
20.3.2	Submittal to Tallahassee .....	20-3
20.4	Revisions to the Contract Plans Package .....	20-5
20.5	Resubmittal of Withdrawn Project .....	20-8

#### Figures

Figure 20.1	District Revisions.....	20-7
-------------	-------------------------	------

#### Exhibits

Exhibit 20-A	Transmittal of Contract Plans Set.....	20-9
Exhibit 20-B	Contract File Index .....	20-11
Exhibit 20-C	Revision Memo.....	20-13
Exhibit 20-E	Plans, Specifications and Computation Book.....	20-17
Exhibit 20-F	Project Certification to Federal Standards.....	20-18
Exhibit 20-G	Preliminary Engineering Certification .....	20-19
Exhibit 20-H	Request for Control Group Change.....	20-20
Exhibit 20-I	Change Memo .....	20-21

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 20

### PLANS PROCESSING AND REVISIONS

#### 20.1 General

This chapter describes in general terms the critical activities required to process the contract plans, specifications and estimate for letting. It identifies the documents, transmittal forms and certifications prepared by the district and the various offices that process a plans package. This chapter also outlines the revision process, and the steps to resubmit a project withdrawn from letting.

#### 20.2 Glossary

Contract Plans - The plans prepared during the design phase, and used by construction personnel to build a project. When design is complete, the Engineer(s) of Record (EOR) seals a first generation plot of the set of plans and this becomes the legal Record Set in accordance with **Chapter 471** of the **Florida Statutes** (see **Chapter 19**, this volume).

Final Plans - The Contract Plans after construction is completed, all revisions have been included and with the title on the key sheet changed to Final Plans.

## 20.3 Plans Processing

### 20.3.1 District Activities

There are certain plans processing activities that must occur at the District level prior to submitting plans to Tallahassee. These activities have schedule implications which will vary by District. The following activities should be considered as a guide. Contact the District for specific requirements.

On the Plans to Specifications Date, the project manager submits to the District Specifications section, the contract file and a plans package consisting of the following items:

1. Original Request for Control Group Change (for Districts where Estimates has not been decentralized) (**Exhibit 20-H**).
2. Two copies of the plans (including all components).
3. One copy of the Computation Book.
4. Two copies of the Technical Special Provisions (if applicable).

The contract file consists of the Transmittal of Contract Plans Package memo (**Exhibit 20-A**) and the Contract File Index (**Exhibit 20-B**) with attachments.

The Specifications section forwards one copy of the plans and the copy of the Computation Book to the District Estimates section. Upon receipt of the plans, the Estimates section changes the Control Group.

Any modification to the plans or quantities after the Estimates Section changes the Control Group, and before the Plans are sent to Tallahassee, will be referred to as Plans Changes. These changes are not revisions.

A Change Memo (**Exhibit 20-I**) is required to notify the District Specifications and Estimates sections of any changes to the plans or quantities.

When changes are necessary, the project manager prepares a Change Memo listing all plan and quantity changes and submits a copy to the District Specifications and Estimates section. The Estimates section changes the Control Group back to the Designer for them to make the changes to the summary of pay items file and notifies the project manager, who then has twenty-four hours to make changes to the summary of pay items file. The

project manager submits the original Change Memo and two copies of all changed sheets to the Specifications section.

One week prior to the Plans to Tallahassee Date the Specifications section submits the following items to the project manager, or District Plans Processing Section, who assembles the Contract Plans Package for mailing:

1. Electronically Signed/Sealed Specifications Package accompanied by the Specifications Transmittal memo on a single CD.
2. Contract file.

### 20.3.2 Submittal to Tallahassee

Districts are responsible for preparing the Contract Plans Package and mailing it to Central Office so that it arrives in the Plans Processing Section of the Specifications Office no later than the due date assigned in the Work Program.

Before mailing plans to Central Office, the District will assemble the Plans Package and insure it is complete, as follows:

1. The Transmittal of Contract Plans Package (**Exhibit 20-A**) and applicable documents are attached. If FA Oversight, include certification that the project was designed to federal standards (**Exhibit 20-F**).
2. An original set of the Contract Plans is sealed in accordance with **Chapter 19**, this volume. All sheets are CADD produced first-generation plots or laser prints, size B (11x17), on good quality multipurpose (typewriter/printer) paper, legible and reproducible. Sheets are punched with two holes (standard holes are 8½ inches apart on the left edge of the sheet), and bound with fasteners such as Chicago Screw Posts. All sheet numbers match the key sheet index, and the Financial Project ID (or State Project number) is correct and consistent on all sheets. On strung projects, the lead key sheet shows the Financial Project IDs that go with the lead project. Also, on strung projects all Summary of Pay Items sheets are included in the lead project. If the project is FA Oversight, the Sealed Contract Plans Set plus one copy (copy can be from unsealed plans) are provided. If the project is not FA Oversight, only the sealed Contract Plans Set is provided. An additional copy of the Contract Plans set is required for the State Estimates Office for those Districts where the preparation of the Official Estimate **has not** been decentralized. The schedule\* for decentralization is as follows:

District 2 and Turnpike:	03-27-02
Districts 3 and 5:	11-27-02



Districts 4 and 6:	05-27-03
Districts 1 and 7:	11-25-03

\* Note: This schedule is preliminary and subject to change.

3. An electronically signed and sealed Specifications Package, accompanied by the Specifications Transmittal memo on a single CD is transmitted to the Plans Processing Section.
4. E-mail the "Intent and Scope" and "Specialty Work" information for each project to the Tallahassee Contracts Office using the group name "ISCOPE".
5. The Contract File Index (**Exhibit 20-B**) with all applicable documents attached.
6. Other components of the Plans Package such as Utility Certification, etc.

When submitting the Plans Package to Central Office, the Project Manager (or designated district person) sends a copy of the contract plans set, a copy of the specifications package, the original computation book and one copy of the computation book to the District Construction Engineer (**Exhibit 20-E**). The Project Manager keeps a copy of the transmitted documents in the project file(s).

Several activities are required by the units in Central Office to get a project ready for letting. Upon receipt of the Plans Package, the Plans Processing Section checks the package for completeness and stamps the date received on the Transmittal Memo. If incomplete, Plans Processing notifies the district Project Manager or District Plans Processing Section to provide the required items. Once verified as complete, the Plans Package is distributed.

After the project is awarded, the sealed Contract Plans Set and a copy of the Specifications Package on a single CD are sent to the District Construction Engineer. This sealed Contract Plans Set will be used during construction to show all significant revisions to the plans (including those affecting payments to the contractor).

The Contract Plans set plus all revisions made during construction becomes the Final Plans set. The sealed set (Record Set) of the Final Plans is used by District Final Estimates to make the final payout of a construction project. After the final payout, District Final Estimates mails the sealed Final Plans to the Department of State for microfilming. Once microfilmed, the Department of State destroys the paper based sealed Final Plans, archives the microfilm negative as the Record Set of the Final Plans, sends one copy of the microfilm to the District and another to Central Office.

## 20.4 Revisions to the Contract Plans Package

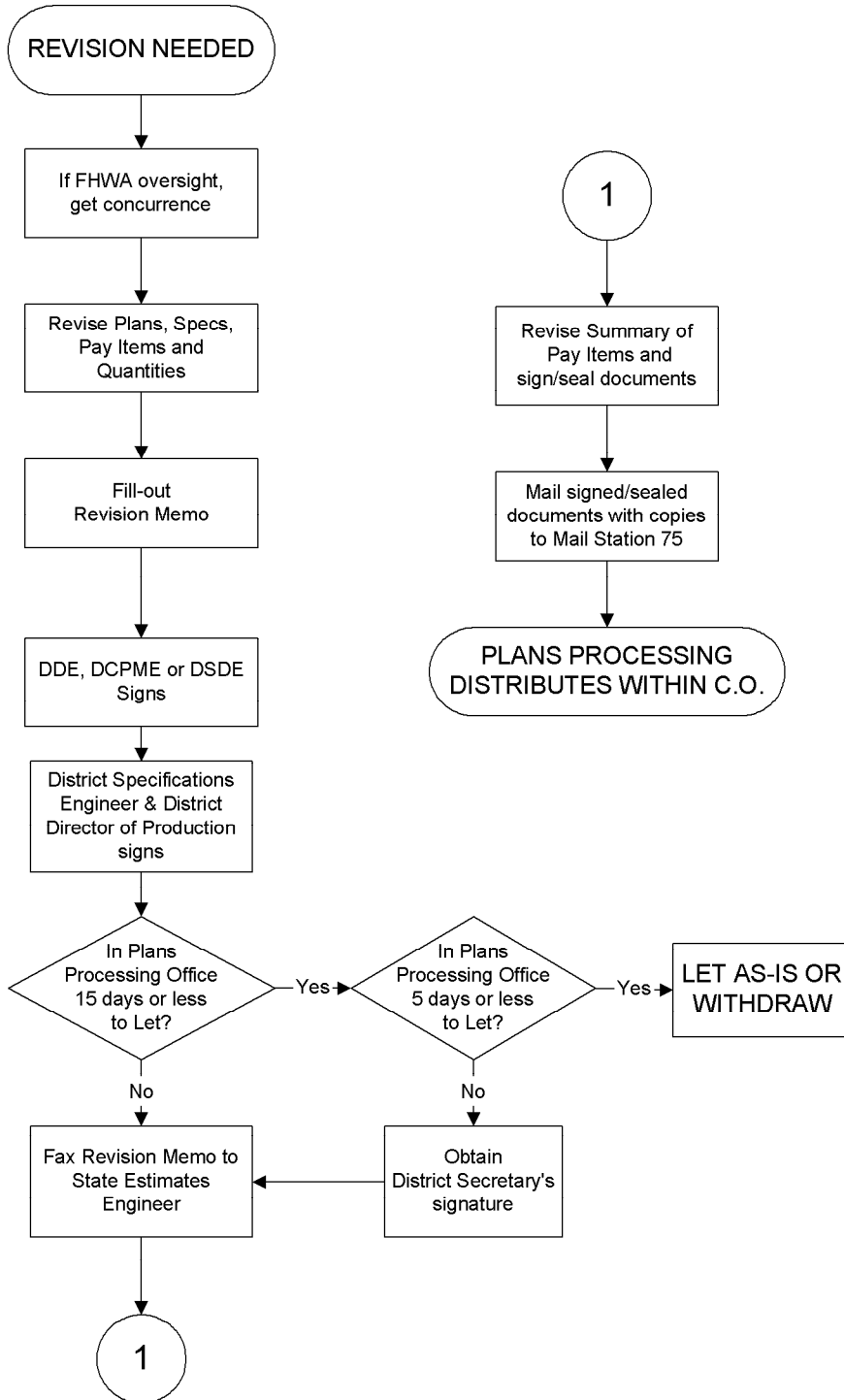
Design revisions are modifications to the Plans Package after it has been transmitted to Central Office but prior to bid opening. The Project Manager insures a revision is complete as follows (see **Figure 20.1**):

1. If the project is FA Oversight, obtain concurrence from FHWA prior to making revisions. Include the name of the FHWA contact who gave concurrence and the concurrence date on the revision memo. FHWA concurrence may not be required on minor changes such as in quantities or to relocate a driveway.
2. All plans revisions require sealed revised sheet(s). Revisions to plans sheets other than a key sheet are noted in the "revisions" block of each modified sheet, and noted on the lower left corner of the key sheet in the "Revisions" area. (See **Exhibit KS-1, Chapter 3, Volume II**). If the changes to a key sheet only involve notes in the Revisions area, no entry is made in the key sheet revisions block at the lower right corner. The Key Sheet Revisions Block is only used to record changes other than revisions notes. Revisions to component sets such as the Signalization Plans are noted in the revision block of the modified sheet and on the **lead** key sheet in the Revisions area. A newly sealed lead key sheet is required when any sheet is revised.
3. Prepare the Revision Memo (**Exhibit 20-C**) and describe modifications. Record the revision date for each revised sheet, using the date shown in the revision block on the sheet. The District Design Engineer, District Consultant Project Management Engineer or the District Structures Design Engineer, as appropriate, reviews and concurs with the revision.
4. The District Specifications Engineer reviews the revisions for any effect on the specifications and dates and signs the Revision Memo.
5. The number of revision packages submitted should be kept to a minimum. When more than one revision is expected, hold until all revisions are ready and submit as a package. Revision packages should be submitted by the Monday prior to Authorization for Advertisement, whenever practical. Revisions after this date should be coordinated with the District Estimates Engineer, as soon as possible.
6. Revisions Involving Pay Item Changes:
  - a. Send the Revision Memo to the District Estimates Staff for review.
  - b. The District Estimates Staff or appropriate person for the District is required to fax the Revision Memo to the State Estimates Office.
  - c. The State Estimates Office will determine who will make the Changes to the Pay Items (Central Office or District Office) and will pass control as required

- to the District. Note: Control will be passed to Decentralized Districts for revisions. When control is passed, the Revision must be completed within 24 hours.
- d. The District will complete the Revision and change the Control back to the State Estimates Office (within the 24 hours). The District will also notify the State Estimates Office that the revision is complete via email using the Distribution List CO-PRELEST.
7. Ensure that sealed plans sheets are attached to the Revision Memo. The Engineer of Record seals each revised document in accordance with **Chapter 19, Sealing Design Documents**, of this volume.
  8. Mail the signed original Revision Memo with attachments to Plans Processing at Mail Station 75. If a Supplemental Specifications Package is required, submit it as an electronically signed and sealed package accompanied by the Specifications Transmittal memo on a single CD. Send the revised original computation sheets and one copy to the District Construction Engineer. If the original Revision Memo will be received in Plans Processing between 15 and 6 working days prior to letting, the District Secretary must approve by signing the Revision Memo. Revisions within five work days of letting are not allowed since there is no assurance that all prospective contractors will get these documents on time to consider in their bids. After this date the project must be let as is, or must be withdrawn from letting. Withdrawing the Plans Package after advertisement requires approval by the District Secretary and the State Highway Engineer.
  9. The revision package includes the Revision Memo and as applicable:
    - a. sealed contract plans sheets including key sheet,
    - b. revised Summary of Pay Items,
    - c. electronically signed and sealed Supplemental Specifications Package on a single CD.
  10. Upon receipt of the signed original Revision Memo, Plans Processing checks the revision package for completeness. A copy of the Revision Memo and a copy of the revised sheets are delivered to the State Estimates Office for those Districts where the preparation of the Official Estimate has not been decentralized. If the Project is FA Oversight, submit one copy of the Revision Memo and a copy of the revised sheets the Federal Aid Office.

After contract award, revisions are done by district construction in accordance with the **Construction Project Administration Manual (CPAM), Topic No. 700-000-000**.

**Figure 20.1 District Revisions**



## 20.5 Resubmittal of Withdrawn Project

If prior to letting a district requests that the entire Plans Package be returned for major revisions, such project will be resubmitted as follows:

1. Resubmit Plans Package as a new transmittal with all required components. On the Transmittal memo, write this note by the Transmittal date "Plans completely revised". On the lead Key Sheet, write this note on the lower left corner: "Plans completely revised. (date)". All copies of project documents in Central Office from the previous submittal will be destroyed. This action requires a total reprint.
2. A project withdrawn for a significant period (nine months or longer) will be updated according to the process outlined in **Chapter 15**, this volume.

Plans rejected from letting by the Awards Committee or withdrawn for minor revisions may not need to follow the above process. District coordination with Central Office Production Management is required to reschedule a letting.

**Exhibit 20-A Transmittal of Contract Plans Set  
Sheet 1 of 2**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

TO: Director, Office of Design

Attn.: State Specifications Engineer, Mail Station 75

FROM: \_\_\_\_\_, (Project Manager or other title)

COPIES:

SUBJECT: **TRANSMITTAL OF CONTRACT PLANS PACKAGE** - Letting (mo./yr.) \_\_\_\_

Financial Project ID(s) \_\_\_\_\_

Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Aid No. \_\_\_\_\_

State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

Work Type \_\_\_\_\_

Sealed Contract Plans Set plus 1 copy\* if FA Oversight

Electronically Signed/Sealed Specifications Package accompanied by the  
Specifications Transmittal memo on a single CD

Contract File Index with Attachments

**This plans package is complete, has no known errors or omissions, has been reviewed for constructability and biddability, and is ready to advertise for construction.**

Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
District Director of Production

\* Add one additional copy for those Districts where the preparation of the Official Estimate has not been decentralized

**Exhibit 20-A Transmittal of Contract Plans Set  
Sheet 2 of 2**

**REMINDER**

1. The sealed Contract Plans Set is from first-generation CADD produced plots or laser prints, size B (11x17), on good quality multipurpose (typewriter/printer) paper.
2. Punch 2 holes (standard holes are 8 1/2 inches apart on the left edge of the sheet), and bind plans sheets with fasteners such as Chicago Screw Posts (do not staple).
3. Check that all components of the Contract Plans Set are included as listed on the lead key sheet.
4. Check that all sheets are included according to key sheet index(es).
5. Check that all sheets have the correct Financial Project ID.
6. Check that all sheets are legible and reproducible.
7. On strung projects, check that all Summary of Pay Items sheets from the Proposal/Contract ID go in the lead project and the Financial Project ID of the strung project is shown on the lead key sheet.
8. Check that bridge pay item sheets show bridge numbers and the quantity breakdowns.
9. Organize attachments in the order listed.
10. Mail all documents to Plans Processing at Mail Station 75.
11. COMPUTATIONS - Send original computation book and 1 copy to the District Construction Engineer.

**Exhibit 20-B Contract File Index  
Sheet 1 of 2**

**CONTRACT FILE INDEX**

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_

ATTACHMENTS (check or expected day of arrival in Central Office)

\_\_\_\_\_ Calendar Days Recommendation\*

\_\_\_\_\_ Preliminary Engineering Certification\*

\_\_\_\_\_ Utility Certification

\_\_\_\_\_ Status of Environmental Certification\*

\_\_\_\_\_ Permit Transmittal Memo

\_\_\_\_\_ Maintenance Agreement, if applicable\*; (number \_\_\_\_)

\_\_\_\_\_ Joint Project Agreement with engineer's estimate, if applicable; 2 copies

\_\_\_\_\_ Reimbursable (number \_\_\_\_)

\_\_\_\_\_ Non-reimbursable (number \_\_\_\_)

\_\_\_\_\_ District Cost Estimate\*

\_\_\_\_\_ FA Project Certification to Standards\*

Yes\_ No\_ Federal Authorization Request (FAR) Form has been electronically transmitted\*

Yes\_ No\_ Project exempt from FHWA oversight under agreement dated April 26, 1999\*

Yes\_ No\_ Right of Way Certification was mailed to State R/W Administrator

\* Include if federally funded.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Manager/Other Title



**Exhibit 20-B Contract File Index, Sheet 2 of 2**

**REMINDER**

**PROCESS:**

1. Organize attachments in the order listed.
2. Show the number of Maintenance and Joint Project Agreements.
3. Show anticipated date of arrival on any item not included in package.
4. Mail all documents to Plans Processing at Mail Station 75.

**Exhibit 20-C Revision Memo**  
**Sheet 1 of 3**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_ 1 of \_\_

TO: State Specifications Engineer  
Attn.: Plans Processing, Mail Station 75

FROM: \_\_\_\_\_, Project Manager

COPIES TO: District Specifications Engineer, District Construction Engineer (computation book sheets only)

SUBJECT: **Revision Memo** - Letting (mo./yr.) \_\_\_\_\_

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_ (Lead number only)

Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_ (Lead number only)

FA Oversight Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

County \_\_\_\_\_ State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

Concurred by: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
DDE, DCPME or DSDE

I have reviewed for effects on the Specifications Package and a package revision is \_\_\_ is not \_\_\_ required. \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
District Specifications Engineer

If FA Oversight, Authorized By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Print Name of FHWA Engineer

THE DISTRICT SECRETARY MUST APPROVE REVISIONS RECEIVED IN PLANS PROCESSING BETWEEN 15 AND 6 WORK DAYS BEFORE LETTING.

NO REVISIONS ALLOWED WITHIN 5 WORK DAYS BEFORE LETTING.

Approved By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
District Secretary

<u>Sheet No(s).</u>	<u>Rev. Date</u>	<u>Description</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

Central Office Use:  
Processed By: \_\_\_\_\_

## Exhibit 20-C Revision Memo, Sheet 2 of 3

### REMINDER

#### PROCESS:

1. Fill out headings.
2. On oversight projects, get FHWA concurrence. Print name of FHWA Engineer and date.
3. Get concurrence from the District Design Engineer, District Consultant Project Management Engineer or the District Structures Design Engineer, as appropriate.
4. Get signature of the District Specifications Engineer.
5. If revisions will be received in Plans Processing between 15 and 6 workdays before the letting date (bid opening), get approval from the District Secretary. Notify Plans Processing. No revisions are allowed within 5 workdays before letting.
6. Enter the sheet number or the Summary of Pay Items design group and:
  - a. Describe new pay item number with quantity, or
  - b. deleted pay item number only, or
  - c. revised quantities by entering pay item number with old and new quantities.
7. If a revision(s) will impact the utility plans, adjustments and/or schedules, provide a copy of the revision memo and affected plans sheets to the District Utilities Engineer.
8. If adding or deleting a pay item, revise the whole Summary of Pay Items design group to insure any pay item rollover between sheets is properly printed.
9. Fax the Revision Memo to the State Estimates Engineer at (850)-487-4584, Suncom 277-4584 to unlock the summary of pay items.
10. Make revisions to the Summary of Pay Items with an Addendum within 24 hours after changing of Control Group.
11. Mail Revision Memo with attachments to Plans Processing at Mail Station 75.

#### ATTACHMENTS:

1. Revised sealed plans sheets including Summary of Pay Items. One copy of revised plans sheets excluding Summary of Pay Items if FA Oversight Project.
2. Revised District Cost Estimate if FA Oversight.
3. If required, an electronically signed and sealed Supplemental Specifications Package accompanied by the Specifications Transmittal memo on a single CD.

#### COMPUTATIONS:

Show Financial Project ID on revised computation book sheets, and mail originals and one copy to the District Construction Engineer.



**Exhibit 20-D Status of Environmental Certification**  
**STATUS OF ENVIRONMENTAL CERTIFICATION**

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Aid No. \_\_\_\_\_

Project Description \_\_\_\_\_

This project is a Categorical Exclusion under 23 C.F.R. 771.117 (c):

\_\_\_\_\_ Type 1. It was reevaluated on \_\_\_\_\_, and the determination remains valid.

\_\_\_\_\_ Programmatic under current FHWA agreement. It was reevaluated on \_\_\_\_\_, and the determination remains valid.

The environmental document for this project was a (check one):

\_\_\_\_\_ Categorical Exclusion under 23 C.F.R. 771.117(d) (Type 2) approved on \_\_\_\_\_,

\_\_\_\_\_ FONSI under 23 C.F.R. 771.121 approved on \_\_\_\_\_,

\_\_\_\_\_ Final Negative Declaration approved on \_\_\_\_\_, or

\_\_\_\_\_ Final Environmental Impact Statement under 23 C.F.R. 771.125 approved on \_\_\_\_\_.

A reevaluation in accordance with 23 C.F.R. 771.129 was approved on \_\_\_\_\_.

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Environmental Administrator

**Exhibit 20-E Plans, Specifications and Computation Book**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_  
TO: \_\_\_\_\_, District Construction Engineer  
FROM: \_\_\_\_\_, Project Manager  
SUBJECT: **Plans, Specifications and Computation Book**  
Letting (mo./yr.) \_\_\_\_\_  
Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_  
Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_  
Federal Aid      Yes \_\_\_\_\_      No \_\_\_\_\_  
County \_\_\_\_\_ State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

Attached are a copy of the Contract Plans Set, a copy of the Specifications Package, the Original Computation Book and one copy of the Computation Book for use by Construction.

**Exhibit 20-F Project Certification to Federal Standards**  
**PROJECT CERTIFICATION TO FEDERAL STANDARDS**

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_  
Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_  
FA Project No. \_\_\_\_\_  
County \_\_\_\_\_ State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ The District Director of Production certifies that all work will meet or exceed the standards approved by the Secretary of The U.S. Department of Transportation under 23 U.S.C.109(c). I do, hereby, certify to the above statement:

\_\_\_\_\_ District Director of Production \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ The District Director of Production certifies that all work will meet or exceed, except as noted below, the standards approved by the Secretary of The U.S. Department of Transportation under 23 U.S.C.109(c). I do, hereby, certify to the above statement and listed below are the exceptions/variations to the standards:

\_\_\_\_\_ District Director of Production \_\_\_\_\_ Date

<u>Exceptions</u>	<u>Date of Request</u>	<u>Date of Approval</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**Exhibit 20-G Preliminary Engineering Certification**  
**MEMORANDUM**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

TO: \_\_\_\_\_, Federal Aid Programs Manager

FROM: \_\_\_\_\_, Design Project Manager

COPIES:

SUBJECT: **PRELIMINARY ENGINEERING CERTIFICATION** (Federal Aid Projects Only)

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Aid No. \_\_\_\_\_

Preliminary Engineering (design) was funded with:

\_\_\_\_\_ State Funds

\_\_\_\_\_ Federal Funds authorized under,

Federal Aid No. \_\_\_\_\_

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

The following projects, designed with the same Preliminary Engineering funds, will be strung to (awarded with) the subject project:

Federal Aid No. \_\_\_\_\_, Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_,

Federal Aid No. \_\_\_\_\_, Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_.

The Preliminary Engineering for the subject project is \_\_\_\_\_ open/ \_\_\_\_\_ closed. If open,

\_\_\_\_\_ it will be closed after PS&E authorization, or

\_\_\_\_\_ it will remain open for additional charges, as follows: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_.

The FDOT Project Manager may be contacted at (phone): \_\_\_\_\_



**Exhibit 20-H Request for Control Group Change**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

TO: District Specifications Engineer

FROM: \_\_\_\_\_, Project Manager

COPIES: District Estimates Engineer, Production Management, Construction

SUBJECT: **Request for Control Group Change**

Letting (mo./yr.) \_\_\_\_\_

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Aid Project Yes \_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_

State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

County \_\_\_\_\_

Enclosed is a copy of a complete plans set for use by the District Estimates Office. This project has entered the Specifications Phase.

**Exhibit 20-I Change Memo  
Sheet 1 of 3**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_ 1 of \_\_\_\_\_  
TO: District Specifications Engineer  
FROM: \_\_\_\_\_, Project Manager  
COPIES TO: District Estimates Engineer  
SUBJECT: **Change Memo**  
Letting (mo./yr.) \_\_\_\_\_  
Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_  
Proposal/Contract ID \_\_\_\_\_  
Federal Aid Project Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_  
County \_\_\_\_\_ State Road No. \_\_\_\_\_

Changes were made to the plans during the District Specifications Phase. Sheets included replace similar sheets in the Estimates Office's copy of plans. The changes listed below should be included in the specifications package as appropriate.

<u>Sheets No(s).</u>	<u>Description of Change</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Exhibit 20-I Change Memo  
Sheet 2 of 3  
REMINDER**

Changes are modifications to the plans during the Specifications Phase. Ensure that these are considered or incorporated into the Specifications and the Summary of Pay Items prior to mailing to the Plans Package to Tallahassee. Changes are not listed on the key sheet nor noted in the revision blocks of the plans sheets, unless done by other than the Engineer of Record.

1. Describe all changes in this Memo.
2. List all Summary of Pay Items changes to quantities, including additions and deletions.
3. Coordinate all changes with Specifications.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 21

### Transportation Design for Livable Communities

21.1	General.....	21-1
21.2	Planning .....	21-2
21.3	Application .....	21-3
21.4	Techniques.....	21-4
21.5	Design Criteria.....	21-5
21.5.1	Design Speed.....	21-5
21.5.2	Number of Lanes.....	21-5
21.5.3	Lane Widths .....	21-5
21.5.4	Horizontal Alignment.....	21-6
21.5.5	Medians.....	21-6
21.5.6	Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zones .....	21-6
21.5.7	Intersections .....	21-8
21.5.8	Lighting.....	21-8
21.5.9	Traffic Control.....	21-8
21.5.10	Landscaping .....	21-9
21.5.11	Parking .....	21-9
21.5.12	Alternative Roadway Paving Materials .....	21-9
21.5.13	Conversion to One-Way Pairs.....	21-10
21.6	Pedestrian and Bicycle Considerations.....	21-11
21.6.1	Sidewalks .....	21-11
21.6.2	Crosswalks .....	21-11
21.6.3	Curb Extensions (Bulb-Outs).....	21-11
21.6.4	Personal Security and Safety Amenities .....	21-12

21.6.5	Bicycle Facilities .....	21-12
21.7	Transit-Systems and Amenities.....	21-12

Tables

Table 21.1	Lane Widths .....	21-5
Table 21.2	Horizontal Clearance to Utility Installations .....	21-7
Table 21.3	Horizontal Clearance to Trees.....	21-7
Table 21.4	Horizontal Clearance to Other Roadside Obstacles..	21-7
Table 21.5	TDLC Clear Zone .....	21-7

Figures

Figure 21.1	Curb Extension.....	21-12
-------------	---------------------	-------

Exhibits

Exhibit 21-A	General Techniques .....	21-13
Exhibit 21-B	Techniques To Reduce Speed Or Traffic Volume...21-14	
Exhibit 21-C	Techniques To Support Shifts Between Modes .....	21-15
Exhibit 21-D	Area-Wide Techniques.....	21-16

## Chapter 21

### Transportation Design for Livable Communities

#### 21.1 General

It is the policy of the Department to consider Transportation Design for Livable Communities (TDLC) features on the State Highway System when such features are desired, appropriate and feasible. This involves providing a balance between mobility and livability. TDLC features should be based on consideration of the following principles:

1. Safety of pedestrians, bicyclists, motorists and public transit users.
2. Balancing community values and mobility needs.
3. Efficient use of energy resources.
4. Protection of the natural and manmade environment.
5. Coordinated land use and transportation planning.
6. Local and state economic development goals.
7. Complimenting and enhancing existing Department standards, systems and processes.



## **21.2 Planning**

TDLC features are to be considered when they are desired, appropriate and feasible. Incorporating TDLC features are contingent upon involvement of the local stakeholders in the planning and project development processes. Therefore, it is essential that all stakeholders are included from the initial planning phase of the project through design, construction and maintenance.

During the initial planning and scoping phases it is important to identify and assess the desires and willingness of the community or stakeholder to accept all of the ramifications of TDLC, including funding allocations and maintenance agreements of the TDLC features included in a project.

## 21.3 Application

A team approach is recommended to evaluate TDLC projects or features. Depending on the complexity and/or controversial TDLC features and the district resources available, the team may include representation from Planning, Traffic Operations, Environmental Management, Roadway Design, Right of Way, Public Transportation, Maintenance, Safety, Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator and the Community Impact Assessment Coordinator. This team should also include the respective Metropolitan Planning Organization(s), local governments/agencies, transit agencies, citizen groups and any others affected by the proposed projects or features.

TDLC projects require a concept report documenting the desired project features determined to be appropriate and feasible for implementation and the respective responsibilities of all involved stakeholders.

TDLC features can be incorporated into new construction, reconstruction, and resurfacing, restoration and rehabilitation (RRR) projects using existing design standards and criteria found in **Chapters 2** and **25** of this volume. When a concept report identifies TDLC features for a project or segments of a project, the criteria provided in this chapter may also be used with the approval of the District Design Engineer.

## 21.4 Techniques

Selected TDLC techniques applied by type of highway system are shown in **Exhibits 21-A, B, C and D** at the end of this chapter. These techniques are intended as guidance for balancing the need for mobility with the desire for livable communities, and not as standards, policies or procedures of the Department.

## 21.5 Design Criteria

The criteria in this chapter meets or exceeds **AASHTO** minimums. All TDLC projects are subject to the requirements for Design Exceptions and Design Variations found in **Chapter 23** of this volume.

### 21.5.1 Design Speed

Recommended design speeds are found in **Section 1.9** of this volume.

### 21.5.2 Number of Lanes

In developed urban areas, reducing the number of lanes may provide space for pedestrians, bicycles, parking, landscaping etc. This technique may be appropriate depending on the volume and character of traffic, the availability of right of way, the function of the street, the level of pedestrian crossing, the intensity of adjacent land use and availability of alternate routes.

The decision to reduce the number of lanes on a project shall be supported by an appropriate traffic capacity study. If transit vehicles and school busses are currently operating in the area of the project, appropriate local agencies should be consulted.

### 21.5.3 Lane Widths

Minimum lane widths for TDLC projects or segments are shown in **Table 21.1**.

**Table 21.1 Lane Widths**

Lane Types	Width (feet)
Through Lanes	11 <sup>1</sup>
Turn Lanes	11 <sup>1</sup>
Parking Lanes (parallel)	8 <sup>2</sup>
Bicycle Lanes	4 <sup>3</sup>

1. May be reduced to 10 feet in highly restricted areas with design speed < 40 mph having little or no truck traffic.
2. May be reduced to 7 feet (measured from face of curb) in residential areas
3. 5 feet adjacent to on-street parking.

## 21.5.4 Horizontal Alignment

A curvilinear alignment can be used to control vehicle speed by introducing a bend or curve on a tangent roadway. Design should meet criteria in **Chapter 2** of this volume.

## 21.5.5 Medians

Requirements for medians are provided in **Section 2.2** of this volume. Where continuous raised medians are not provided, such as on 5-lane sections, refuge areas should be provided at appropriate locations. These locations are typically near high pedestrian generators such as schools, park entrances, transit stops and parking lots. Refuge Islands must provide a large enough area for several pedestrians at once while at the same time be of sufficient size and spacing as to not create a hazard. For wheelchair accessibility, it is preferable to provide at-grade cuts rather than ramps.

For landscaping in medians see **Section 21.5.10**.

## 21.5.6 Horizontal Clearance and Clear Zones

Horizontal clearance is the lateral distance from a specific point on the roadway such as the edge of travel lane or face of curb, to a roadside feature or object. Horizontal clearance applies to rural and urban highways with either flush shoulders or with curbs. Horizontal clearance requirements vary depending on the type of roadway and the feature or object.

Clear zone is the roadside area available for safe use by errant vehicles. Clear zone is further described in **Chapter 4** of this volume.

Roadway horizontal clearances and clear zone widths for Utility Installations, Trees, and Other Roadside Obstacles are found in **Tables 21.2, 21.3, and 21.4**, respectively. For TDLC clear zone widths see **Table 21.5**. Requirements for other horizontal clearances and clear zone see **Chapters 2, 4 and 25** of this volume.

**Table 21.2 Horizontal Clearance to Utility Installations**

<p>Shall not be located within the limited access right of way, except as allowed by the <b>Telecommunications Policy, (Topic No. 000-625-025)</b></p> <p>Shall not be allowed in the median.</p> <p>Flush Shoulders:                  Not within the clear zone. Install as close as practical to the right of way line without aerial encroachments onto private property.</p> <p>Curb or Curb and Gutter:                  At the Right of way line as close to the right of way as practical. Must be 1.5 ft. clear from the face of curb. Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4 ft. or more (not including the width of the curb) is provided.</p> <p>See the <b>Utility Accommodation Manual, (Topic No. 710-020-001)</b> for additional information.</p>
---

**Table 21.3 Horizontal Clearance to Trees**

<p>Minimum Horizontal Clearance for new plantings shall meet new construction criteria.</p> <p>Minimum horizontal clearance to existing trees where the diameter is or is expected to be greater than 4 inches measured 6 inches above the ground shall be:</p> <p>Flush Shoulders:                  Outside the Clear zone.</p> <p>Curb or Curb and Gutter:                  1.5 ft. from the face of curb and 3 ft. from the edge of the inside traffic lane where median curb is present.</p>
--

**Table 21.4 Horizontal Clearance to Other Roadside Obstacles**

<p>Minimum horizontal clearance to other roadside obstacles:</p> <p>Flush Shoulders:                  Outside the Clear zone.</p> <p>Curb or Curb and Gutter:                  1.5 ft. from the face of curb.</p> <p>Note: Horizontal clearance to mailboxes is specified in the construction details contained in the <b>Design Standards, Index 532.</b></p>
--

**Table 21.5 TDLC Clear Zone**

Design Speed (mph)	Clear Zone Width (feet)
≤ 30	12
35	14
40	16

## 21.5.7 Intersections

Intersection designs must adequately meet the needs of motorists, transit riders, bicyclists and pedestrians. Large return radii increases the crossing distance for pedestrians while small return radii decreases a vehicle's ability to negotiate the turn. Return radii must balance the needs of the pedestrian and the design vehicle. See **Figure 21.1**.

## 21.5.8 Lighting

Lighting requirements are discussed in **Chapters 2** and **7** of this volume.

## 21.5.9 Traffic Control

Where traffic volumes are high enough to require traffic signals, they should be placed to allow good progression of traffic from signal to signal. Optimal spacing of signals depends on vehicle operating speeds and signal cycle lengths. At speeds of 35 mph and standard cycle lengths, signals must be at least a fourth of a mile apart. Such spacing is consistent with FDOT's requirements for state highways, and with its recommended minimums for local arterials and collectors.

Where traffic volumes are not high enough to warrant traffic signals, 4-way stop signs and roundabouts should be considered. Four-way stops are considered to have a traffic calming effect and cause minimal delays under light traffic conditions. Roundabouts allow traffic from different directions to share space in the intersection, while signals require traffic to take turns.

Where traffic volumes are high enough to warrant traffic signals but does not require them, roundabouts should also be considered.

If Roundabouts are being considered in a TDLC project, refer to **Florida Roundabout Guide** for requirements.

## 21.5.10 Landscaping

Landscaping on a TDLC project can be provided when a local agency or organization agrees to assume the maintenance of the landscaped area in accordance with all Department requirements. See **Chapter 9** of this volume and the **Florida Highway Landscape Guide** for landscape requirements.

Landscaping shall not interfere with the visibility of “permitted” outdoor advertising in accordance with **Rule 14-40** of the **Florida Administrative Code**. Landscaping shall provide required sight distances in accordance with the **Design Standards, Index 546**. Landscaping shall also comply with the horizontal clearance requirements found in **Section 21.5.5** of this chapter, and **Chapters 2, 4, and 25** of this volume.

## 21.5.11 Parking

On-street parallel parking is preferred over angled parking on low speed urban streets. Angled parking causes conflicts with cars and bicycles, since drivers have poor visibility when backing out. Parallel parking can provide space for bike lanes, medians and wider sidewalks. The design of parking facilities should be coordinated with local transit agencies. For parking lane widths see **Table 21.1**.

## 21.5.12 Alternative Roadway Paving Materials

Alternative paving materials such as stamped asphalt, colored asphalt, patterned concrete, and pavers may be used to accent the roadway.

The use of architectural pavers is not recommended on the state highway system. However, when the use of pavers is desirable for aesthetic purposes, they should be limited to areas with design speeds of 35 mph or less. Refer to the **Flexible Pavement Design Manual, (Topic No. 625-010-002)**.

Brick pavers must meet **ADA** requirements and are restricted to local side streets, medians and islands, curb extensions, sidewalk, borders, etc.



### **21.5.13 Conversion to One-Way Pairs**

Converting to one-way pairs is the conversion of 2 two-way corridors to 2 one-way corridors operating in opposite directions. This technique requires a great deal of consideration, planning and public involvement.

Advantages to one-way pairs are increased safety for pedestrians and motorists, increased traffic capacity, retention of on-street parking, and easier signal progression along the corridor. One-way pairs may allow enough space to create bus lanes, more bus stops and improve the safe boarding for transit riders.

Disadvantages to one-way pairs are, motorists are likely to drive faster, transit circulation is less direct, and signal progression for cross streets is difficult to achieve.

## 21.6 Pedestrian and Bicycle Considerations

### 21.6.1 Sidewalks

For criteria refer to *Chapter 2, Section 2.1.4* and *Chapter 8* of this volume.

### 21.6.2 Crosswalks

Marked crosswalks should be provided at signalized intersections. Marked crosswalks should also be provided at midblock crossing locations that are controlled by traffic signals and pedestrian signals, and school crossing locations that are controlled by guards during school crossing periods.

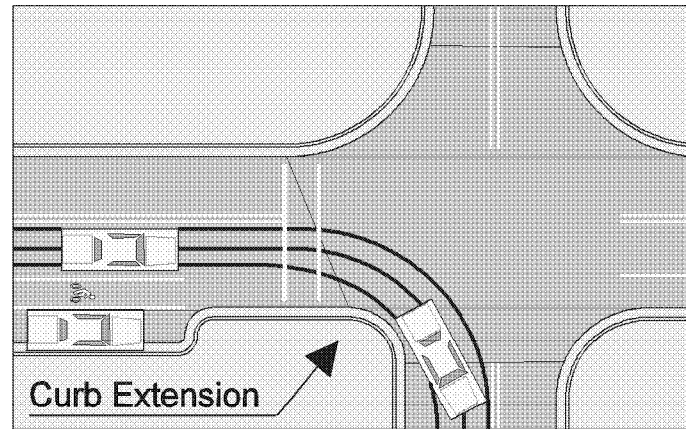
The use of unsignalized midblock crosswalks should be carefully considered. When used, midblock crosswalks should be illuminated, marked and outfitted with advanced warning signs or warning flashers. Pedestrian-activated, signalized midblock crosswalks are preferred, but locations must meet the warrants established in the *Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) Chapter 4C-2*. An engineering study should be required before they are installed at locations away from traffic signals or STOP signs. Refer to the *Traffic Engineering Manual, (Topic No.750-000-005)* and the *Design Standards, Index No. 17346*.

### 21.6.3 Curb Extensions (Bulb-Outs)

Curb extensions, sometimes called bulb-outs, may be used at intersections, or at mid-block locations where there is a marked crosswalk, provided there is a parking lane into which the curb may be extended. Curb extensions shorten the crossing distance, and provide additional space at intersections allowing pedestrians to see and be seen before entering a crosswalk. A curb extension is not generally used where there is no parking lane because of potential hazard to bicycle travel. The design must also take into consideration the needs of transit vehicles. See *Figure 21.1*.

Curb extensions affect drainage. The design must take into consideration runoff, and ponding. When retrofitting existing facilities, drainage structures may be affected.

**Figure 21.1 Curb Extension**



### **21.6.4 Personal Security and Safety Amenities**

Personal security and safety is promoted by maximizing visibility in and along parking areas, building entrances, transit stops, sidewalks and roadways. This can be provided by the following techniques:

1. Providing lighting.
2. Lowering vegetation heights.
3. Removing hiding places.

Examples for designing safer communities can be found in The National Crime Prevention Council's publication: ***Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design.***

### **21.6.5 Bicycle Facilities**

Refer to **Chapter 8** of this volume for design of bicycle facilities.

## **21.7 Transit-Systems and Amenities**

Transit accommodations should be developed in cooperation with the local jurisdictions and transit agencies.

### Exhibit 21-A General Techniques

TECHNIQUE	FIHS		SHS URBAN	SHS RURAL	NON- SHS
	LIMITED ACCESS	CONTROLLED ACCESS			
Improved location, oversized or redundant directional signs	A	A	A	M	M
Use of route markings/ signing for historical and cultural resources	M	A	A	A	A
Increased use of variable message signing	A	A	A	M	M
Landscaping	M	M	M	M	M
Sidewalks or wider sidewalks	N	M	A	M	M
Street furniture	N	M	M	N	M
Bicycle lanes	N	M	M	M	M
Independent Shared Use Paths	N	M	M	M	M
Conversion to one-way street pairs	N	M	M	N	M
Alternative paving materials	N	N	M	N	M
Pedestrian signals, midblock crossings, median refuge areas	N	M	A	M	M
Parking modifications or restoration	N	N	M	N	M
Safety and personal security amenities	M	M	M	M	M
Street mall	N	N	N	N	M

- A Appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- M May be appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- N Not appropriate for the system or facility indicated.

**Exhibit 21-B Techniques To Reduce Speed Or Traffic Volume**

TECHNIQUE	FIHS		SHS URBAN	SHS RURAL	NON-SHS
	LIMITED ACCESS	CONTROLLED ACCESS			
Lower speed limits	N	N	N	N	N
Increase use of stop or multiway stop signs	N	N	N	N	N
Speed humps	N	N	N	N	M
On-street parking to serve as buffer between travel and pedestrian areas	N	N	M	N	M
Curb bulb-outs at ends of blocks	N	N	M	N	M
Traffic “chokers” oriented to slowing traffic	N	N	N	N	M
“Compact” intersections	N	A	A	A	A
Traffic roundabouts to facilitate intersection movement	N	M	M	M	M
Curvilinear alignment (with redesign, chicanes, winding paths, etc.	N	N	M	N	M
Street closing or route relocation	N	N	M	N	M

- A Appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- M May be appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- N Not appropriate for the system or facility indicated.

**Exhibit 21-C Techniques To Support Shifts Between Modes**

TECHNIQUE	FIHS		SHS URBAN	SHS RURAL	NON-SHS
	LIMITED ACCESS	CONTROLLED ACCESS			
Sidewalks	N	M	A	M	M
“Pedestrian friendly” crosswalk design	N	M	A	M	M
Midblock pedestrian signals	N	M	M	M	M
Illuminated pedestrian crossings	N	M	M	M	M
Bicycle lanes/paved shoulders	N	M	A	A	M
Independent Shared Use Path	N	M	M	M	M
“Bicycle friendly” design	N	M	A	A	A
Transit system amenities	N	M	A	M	M
Transit user amenities	N	M	A	M	M
HOV/Exclusive lanes	A	A	A	M	M
Linking modal facilities	A	A	A	A	A
Lower speed limits	N	N	N	N	N
Removal of street parking	N	N	M	M	M

- A Appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- M May be appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- N Not appropriate for the system or facility indicated.

**Exhibit 21-D Area-Wide Techniques**

TECHNIQUE	FIHS		SHS URBAN	SHS RURAL	NON- SHS
	LIMITED ACCESS	CONTROLLED ACCESS			
Design the street network with multiple connections and relatively direct routes	N	N	N	N	M
Space through-streets no more than a half mile apart.	N	N	N	N	M
Use traffic calming measures	N	M	M	N	M
Limit local speed to 20 mph	N	N	N	N	M
Limit lanes	M	M	M	M	M
Align streets to give buildings "energy-efficient" orientations	N	N	M	N	M
Avoid using traffic signals wherever possible. Space them for good traffic progression	N	A	A	A	A
Incorporate pedestrian and bicyclist design features	N	A	A	A	A
Incorporate "transit-oriented" design	A	A	A	A	A
Use car pooling, flex-time and telecommuting	A	A	A	A	A
Design attractive "greenway" corridors	A	A	A	A	A
Design attractive storm water facilities	A	A	A	A	A

- A Appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- M May be appropriate for the system or facility indicated.
- N Not appropriate for the system or facility indicated.

## Chapter 22

### Lump Sum Project Guidelines

22.1	General.....	22-1
22.2	Project Selection .....	22-2
22.3	Plans Preparation .....	22-4
22.4	Preliminary Estimate.....	22-5
22.5	Specifications .....	22-6
22.6	Contracts Administration .....	22-7
22.7	Construction Contract Administration.....	22-7
22.8	Materials Sampling and Testing .....	22-8
Exhibits		
Exhibit 22-A	Items of Work .....	22-9



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 22

### Lump Sum Project Guidelines

#### 22.1 General

The purpose of Lump Sum projects is to reduce the costs of design and contract administration associated with quantity calculation, verification and measurement. This contracting technique requires the Contractor to submit a lump sum price to complete a project as opposed to bidding on individual pay items with quantities provided. The Contractor will be provided a set of bid documents (plans, specifications, etc.) and will develop a Lump Sum bid for all work specified in the contract drawings.

The decision to use the Lump Sum Contracting Technique on a project should be made by the District Design Engineer in consultation with the District Construction Engineer. Lump Sum Projects should be identified during the scope development process, rather than during or after the design process. Conversion of partially complete plans and completed "plans on the shelf" that were originally developed as conventional bid item type projects to the Lump Sum Technique may require significant rework and is generally not recommended.

The contingency pay item is recommended on a Lump Sum project. This tool is used to compensate the Contractor for any additional work requested, which is not covered in the contract documents. District Construction should be consulted for the contingency amount.

A 60-day advertisement is required to allow Contractors enough time to develop quantities. The decision to have a pre-bid conference will be determined through consultation with District Construction.

## **22.2 Project Selection**

Lump Sum contracting should be used on simple projects. "Simple" is defined by the work activity, not by the project cost. "Simple" projects are:

1. Projects with a well-defined scope for all parties (Design and Construction)
2. Projects with low risk of unforeseen conditions (i.e., projects that do not involve such things as significant underground utilities, earthwork variations, underground drainage pipes, bricks under pavement in urban areas, etc.)
3. Projects with low possibility for change during all phases of work – Design and Construction (i.e., limited possibilities for added driveways, median modifications due to developments, changes due to political involvement, etc.)

### **Examples of projects that may be good Lump Sum contracting candidates:**

1. Bridge painting
2. Bridge projects
3. Fencing
4. Guardrail
5. Intersection improvements (with known utilities)
6. Landscaping
7. Lighting
8. Mill/Resurface (without complex overbuild requirements)
9. Minor road widening
10. Sidewalks
11. Signing
12. Signalization

**Examples of projects that may not be good Lump Sum contracting candidates are listed below. Use of Lump Sum contracting on these type projects requires written approval by the State Roadway Design Engineer:**

1. Urban construction/reconstruction
2. Rehabilitation of movable bridges
3. Projects with subsoil earthwork
4. Concrete pavement rehabilitation projects
5. Major bridge rehabilitation/repair projects where there are many unknown quantities.

## 22.3 Plans Preparation

Plan content should conform to the requirements of **Volume II**, subject to the guidance provided herein. Designers should detail plans, either by detailed drawings or plan notes, to clearly describe the work to be performed by the contractor. Special care should be used to insure pay item notes and other notes and requirements such as “as directed by the Engineer” are deleted or replaced with specific direction and details that can be properly bid on by the Contractor. Following are some of the desired elements in a set of Lump Sum plans:

1. Typical Sections.
2. Milling details and Resurfacing details to show any cross slope corrections.
3. Summary Boxes to define work when work is not shown on the plan sheets (i.e., Summary of Side Drain and Mitered Ends, Summary of Guardrail/Removal, Summary of Mailbox replacement, etc.) The standard summary boxes contained in the FDOT CADD Cell Library should be used. Note -- Summary boxes should not have totals shown at the bottom of each box. Summary boxes are not required when plan details sufficiently describe the work.
4. Plan sheets to accurately depict existing conditions and detail all work to be performed by contractor. (i.e., show all limits of milling and resurfacing, pipe installations, limits of sod when different from typical section, all concrete work, guardrail removal/installation, etc.).
5. Details of work not covered by typical section or the **Design Standards** (i.e., curb and gutter installation, traffic separator limits, special curb ramps, modifications to storm inlets, etc.).
6. Cross sections when shoulder point is moved. When cross sections are provided, earthwork columns and earthwork summaries and totals should be left blank since earthwork quantities are not calculated.
7. Anticipated pile tip/drilled shaft elevations on bridge projects. Note: This is the predicted elevation to achieve axial capacity and satisfy all other design requirements and is usually deeper than the minimum tip elevation shown for piles.

No computation book is prepared.

Signing and Pavement Marking, Lighting, and Signalization plan sheets shall continue to contain pay item numbers to be used for reference purposes only. Conduit lengths on conduit pay items should not be shown. A note should be placed on each sheet that states, "Pay item numbers are provided only for the purpose of describing the work to be performed. Pay item descriptions are found in the Department's ***Basis of Estimates Handbook*** and the Project Specifications package." Signing and Pavement Marking, and Signalization plans should NOT have any Tabulation of Quantities sheets included in the contract plans. For projects that include new asphalt surfaces, a note should be placed in the Signing and Pavement Marking Plans that states, "All pavement markings shall be paint unless otherwise noted in the plans."

## 22.4 Preliminary Estimate

If there is only one project in the contract, the designer will code in the pay item for Lump Sum (Alternative Bidding) (999-2) and the Initial Contingency Amount (Do Not Bid) Pay item (999-25). If there is more than one project in a single contract (strung projects), the designer will code both pay items on each project.

The designer shall provide data to the District Estimates Office to be used in the estimate process. The data necessary for preparing the preliminary estimate may differ with project type and complexity. Preliminary estimates for Lump Sum projects may be determined in a number of ways: data from the designer, historic data, long-range estimate (LRE), and by reviewing data from similar, current projects. The intent of Lump Sum Contracting is not to shift the responsibilities or work involved in estimating quantities from the designer to the District Estimates Office. The cooperative effort of the designer in providing data in an electronic spreadsheet or other means acceptable to the District Estimates Office will be helpful in improving the Lump Sum Preliminary Estimate Process. Contact the appropriate District for specific requirements.

## **22.5 Specifications**

The Design Project Manager will provide an “Items of Work” checklist to the District Specifications Office. The Specifications Office will include the work items identified on the checklist in the “Intent and Scope” in the Specifications Package. The checklist shall include, as a minimum, the major work items shown in the sample included with these guidelines.

Lump Sum Projects require Special Provisions that modify the first nine articles of the Standard Specifications. These Special Provisions are in the Specifications Workbook and must be included as part of the Specifications package.

Article 9-2 of the Special Provisions for Lump Sum Projects shall be completed with predetermined unit prices for asphalt materials, concrete, and base when applicable. These unit prices will serve as a basis for calculating pay reductions for deficiencies accepted by the Engineer. In the case of asphalt overbuild, the predetermined unit price for the material used for overbuild will serve as a basis for pay adjustments for spread rates that differ from the spread rate shown in the plans. All predetermined unit prices should be based on an analysis of similar type projects let in the District and/or the District wide average of projects let within the six months prior to the letting date of the project.

For projects including bridges, Article 9-2 of the Special Provisions for Lump Sum Projects shall be completed with predetermined unit prices for piling and/or drilled shafts as applicable. These unit prices will serve as a basis for pay adjustments for the actual quantities installed as additions or deletions from the individual element lengths shown in the plans. All predetermined unit prices should be based on an analysis of similar type projects let in the District and/or the District wide average of projects let within the six months prior to the letting date of the project.

## **22.6 Contracts Administration**

Contracts Administration shall include the information provided in the Specifications Package “Intent and Scope” in the job advertisement. This information can be used by the contractors/subcontractors to determine what type of work is contained in the project, in lieu of a list of pay items.

## **22.7 Construction Contract Administration**

Monthly payments will be made based on a payout schedule mutually agreed upon by the Department and the Contractor. The payout schedule will include only major tasks similar to what has been used on design-build projects.

Lump Sum contracts are not fixed price. Changed conditions, extra work and unforeseen work must be negotiated and resolved with the Contractor utilizing Supplemental Agreements and/or Work Orders on Contingency Supplemental Agreements.

Construction inspection personnel should not be required to document quantities except for asphalt spread rates and other items subject to pay adjustments (items with predetermined unit prices). Measurement and completion of “Final” quantity for summary boxes on plan sheets is not required. Focus should be on inspection and achieving a quality final product. For example, the project engineer will not be concerned with how many square yards of sod it takes or the number of miles of final striping. The project engineer will be charged with ensuring that the sod, striping, embankment, pipe, etc., meets the lines and grades of the plans and specifications.



## 22.8 Materials Sampling and Testing

The Construction Quality Reporting (CQR) System relies on the pay items identified in TRNS\*PORT to generate a Job Guide Schedule based on the **Sampling, Testing and Reporting Guide (STRG)**. On Lump Sum projects, since there is no detailed pay item list to identify the various types of work, the CQR system will output a generic Job Guide Schedule that will address the 5 material areas common to most projects. These include Earthwork and Related Operations, Base Courses, Hot Bituminous Mixtures, Portland Cement Concrete, and Reinforcing Steel. Some of these materials will not actually be used depending on the project scope. Inspection personnel should use the Job Guide Schedule entries applicable to their project and input sample data and field test results into the (CQR) system in accordance with standard procedures. Materials not included on the Job Guide Schedule will be accepted in accordance with Section 6 of the Contract Specifications and/or other pertinent contract documents.

**Exhibit 22-A Items of Work**

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**TO:** \_\_\_\_\_, District Specifications

**FROM:** \_\_\_\_\_, Project Manager

**COPIES TO:**

**SUBJECT: ITEMS OF WORK**

Financial Project ID: \_\_\_\_\_ (GOES WITH \_\_\_\_\_)

County Section: \_\_\_\_\_

Description: \_\_\_\_\_

The plans package for the above referenced project has the following items of work to be performed:

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| _____ Milling & Resurfacing        | _____ Highway Signing        |
| _____ Base Work                    | _____ Guardrail              |
| _____ Rework Shoulders             | _____ Landscaping            |
| _____ Drainage Improvements        | _____ Box Culverts           |
| _____ Curb & Gutters               | _____ Bridges                |
| _____ Traffic Signals              | _____ MSE Walls              |
| _____ Lighting                     | _____ Sidewalks/Bicycle Path |
| _____ Other (Please Specify) _____ |                              |
| _____                              |                              |
| _____                              |                              |
| _____                              |                              |
| _____                              |                              |

Please include these items of work in the *Intent and Scope* so they may be added to the advertisement description.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 23

### Design Exceptions and Design Variations

23.1	General.....	23-1
23.2	Design Exceptions.....	23-2
23.2.1	Coordination and Conceptual Concurrence .....	23-2
23.2.2	Justification and Documentation .....	23-3
23.2.3	Approval and Concurrence.....	23-6
23.2.4	Sealing .....	23-6
23.2.5	Concurrence Review .....	23-6
23.2.6	Copies and Distribution .....	23-7
23.3	Design Variations .....	23-8
23.4	AASHTO Criteria for Critical Design Elements.....	23-9
Tables		
	Criteria Tables Cross Reference .....	23-9
Exhibits		
Exhibit 23-A	Sample Request Letter for Design Exception .....	23-19
Exhibit 23-B	Sample Request Letter for Design Variation .....	23-20
Exhibit 23-C	Design Exceptions Variations and Utility Exceptions Process .....	23-21

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 23

# Design Exceptions and Design Variations

### 23.1 General

The Department's roadway design criteria and standards are contained in this volume and are usually within the desirable ranges established by AASHTO. The values given in this volume have been accepted by FHWA and govern the design process. When it becomes necessary to deviate from the Department's criteria, early documentation and approval are required. There are two documentation and approval processes, Design Exceptions and Design Variations. When the Department's criteria are met, no Design Exception nor any Design Variation is required. However, when the Department's criteria are not met, a Design Exception or Design Variation is required. This requirement applies to all entities affecting planning, design, construction, maintenance and utility placement.

To expedite the approval and/or final concurrence of these deviations, it is important that the correct processes be followed. This chapter includes specific coordination, approval, concurrence and documentation requirements for both Design Exceptions and Design Variations. In both cases, the project file should clearly document the action taken and approval given. To aid in the identification and processing of Design Exceptions and Design Variations a process flowchart, **Exhibit 23-C**, has been provided.

When design criteria are not met for utilities, the process in the current **Utility Accommodation Manual (Topic No. 710-020-001)** is to be used.

Safety improvement projects are generally developed to address specific safety problems. Only items identified under the scope of work for the safety improvement project must meet design criteria and are subject to the design exception or design variation process. Existing features within the limits of the safety improvement project that do not meet design criteria and are not being addressed as part of the project do not require a design exception or design variation.

When the Department enters into an agreement with a Utility for joint use of a utility pole, and the Department requires the location of the pole to not be in compliance with the applicable clear zone or horizontal clearance requirements, the Department or Consultant Design Engineer is responsible for the design variation or exception.

## 23.2 Design Exceptions

Design Exceptions are required when neither the Department's criteria nor AASHTO's criteria can be met for any one of the following 13 Critical Design Elements, which are typically safety related issues:

- |                        |                       |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Design Speed        | 6. Vertical Clearance | 10. Horizontal Alignment    |
| 2. Lane Widths         | 7. Grades             | 11. Vertical Alignment      |
| 3. Shoulder Widths     | 8. Cross Slope        | 12. Stopping Sight Distance |
| 4. Bridge Widths       | 9. Superelevation     | 13. Horizontal Clearance    |
| 5. Structural Capacity |                       |                             |

### 23.2.1 Coordination and Conceptual Concurrence

In order to allow time to research alternatives and begin the analysis and documentation activities, it is critical that Design Exceptions be identified as early in the process as possible. This is preferably done during the PD&E process for major projects and the scope development process for minor projects. It is required that approval be obtained no later than the initial engineering phase.

When the need for a Design Exception has been determined, the District Design Engineer must coordinate with the State Roadway Design Engineer's Office. The appropriate Area Design Engineer will assist in obtaining conceptual concurrence and in identifying the necessary level of effort for justification and documentation.

For Design Exceptions requiring FHWA approval, the District Design Engineer must also coordinate with FHWA to obtain conceptual concurrence and any required documentation requested by FHWA. This is usually done by reviewing the Design Exception with the district's FHWA Area Engineer. It is good practice to review the Design Exception with both the FHWA Area Engineer and the Department's Area Design Engineer at the same time.

Design Exceptions impacting a structure require concurrence of both the State Roadway Design Engineer and the State Structures Design Engineer. Conceptual concurrence should first be obtained from the appropriate Area Engineer in the State Structures Design Office, and decisions or special conditions documented for Design Exception support.

This coordination effort will expedite the approval and concurrence process.

## 23.2.2 Justification and Documentation

Once conceptual concurrence of the Design Exception has been coordinated and completed, the justification must be documented. The objective of the justification of Design Exceptions is to demonstrate that the impacts on the operation and safety of the facility are acceptable, compared to the impacts and added benefits of meeting the criteria.

All Design Exceptions shall include documentation sufficient to justify the request and independently evaluate the operational and safety impacts. Design Exceptions must address the following issues unless otherwise agreed upon during conceptual concurrence:

1. Description
  - a. Project description (general project information, typical section, begin/end milepost, county section number, etc.).
  - b. Description of the Design Exception (specific project conditions related to Design Exception, Critical Design Element, acceptable AASHTO and Department value and proposed value for project).
  - c. The compatibility of the design and operation with the adjacent sections.
2. Operational Impacts
  - a. Amount and character of traffic using the facility.
  - b. Effect on capacity of the deviation (proposed criteria vs. AASHTO using an acceptable capacity analysis procedure and calculate reduction for design year, level of service).
3. Safety Impacts
  - a. Most recent five (5) year Crash History and Analysis (location, type, severity, relation to the Design Exception element). Crash locations must be identified on copies of the plans or straight line diagrams if plans are not available.
  - b. Impacts associated with proposed criteria (annualized value of expected economic loss associated with crashes).
4. Benefit/Cost Analysis

Calculate a benefit/cost analysis that estimates the cost effectiveness of correcting or mitigating a substandard design feature. The benefit is the expected reduction in future crash costs and the cost is the direct right of way, construction and maintenance costs associated with the design. These costs are calculated and annualized so a direct comparison of alternate designs can be made.

A benefit/cost ratio indicates the cost effectiveness of implementing a particular



design. However, the final decision is a management decision that considers all factors important to the successful implementation of the Department's mission.

- a. The key factors considered in the analysis are:
  - 1) Evaluation of crashes by type and cause,
  - 2) Estimate of crash costs,
  - 3) Selection of a crash reduction factor,
  - 4) Utilization of a discount rate of 5%,
  - 5) Estimate of construction and maintenance costs,
  - 6) Selection of life of the improvements,
  - 7) Period of time over which the benefits will be realized.
- b. Two acceptable methods for calculating a benefit/cost analysis are:
  - 1) Historical Crash Method

This method can be used for sites with a crash history. It is basically the ratio (benefit/cost) of the estimated reduction in crash costs to the estimated increase in construction and maintenance cost. The annualized conversion will show whether the estimated expenditure of funds for the benefit will exceed the direct cost, thereby lending support as to whether the improvement should be done or not.

The following table of **Highway Safety Improvement Program Guideline (HSIPG)** cost per crash by facility type is used for this method:

<b>*COST/CRASH BY FACILITY TYPE</b>				
<b>FACILITY TYPE</b>	<b>DIVIDED</b>		<b>UNDIVIDED</b>	
	<b>URBAN</b>	<b>RURAL</b>	<b>URBAN</b>	<b>RURAL</b>
<3 Lanes	\$68,800	\$152,200	\$78,000	\$218,900
3 Lanes	\$47,100	\$152,200	\$52,000	\$218,900
4 Lanes	\$74,500	\$181,200	\$53,500	\$76,400
5 Lanes	\$52,400	\$181,200	\$53,500	\$76,400
6 Lanes	\$63,300	\$181,200	\$53,500	\$76,400
Interstate	\$83,600	\$195,700	\$83,600	\$197,700
Turnpike	\$99,700	\$228,800	\$99,700	\$228,800

All State Roads Average Cost/Crash: \$83,070

\*The above values were derived from 1994, 1995, and 1996 traffic crash and injury severity data for crashes on state roads in Florida, using the formulation described in **FHWA Technical Advisory "Motor Vehicle Accident Costs", T 7570.1**, dated June 30, 1988 and updated injury costs provided in the companion **FHWA Technical Advisory, T 7570.2**, dated October 31, 1994.

2) **ROADSIDE 5.0** computer program

This program complements the **Roadside Design Guide** dated January 1996. The program computer disks are normally furnished with the text.

This method can be used where clear zone applies. Based on the input (offsets, traffic, slopes, crash history, traffic accident severity levels, etc.) of information available to the user, the program will offer results which can be used in comparing courses of action. The current **Roadside Design Guide** and the **FHWA Technical Advisory** titled **Motor Vehicle Accident Costs** and dated October 31, 1994 provides guidance for the benefit/cost analysis.

Using this method for Department projects, the accident severity level costs to be used, noted in the **Roadside Design Guide** are revised as follows:

<b>* Estimated Costs for Various Traffic Accident Severity Levels</b>	
Fatal Accident	\$2,600,000
Severe Injury Accident	\$505,000
Moderate Injury Accident	\$165,000
Slight Injury Accident	\$36,167
Property Damage Only Accident Level 2	\$10,469
Property Damage Only Accident Level 1	\$2,000

\*The above values were derived from the **FHWA Technical Advisory "Motor Vehicle Accident Costs", T 7570.1**, dated June 30, 1988 and updated injury costs provided in the companion **FHWA Technical Advisory, T 7570.2**, dated October 31, 1994.

5. Conclusions and Recommendations

- a. The cumulative effect of other deviations from design criteria,
- b. Safety mitigating measures considered and provided,
- c. Summarize specific course of action (Include conditional requirements such as projects in the work program that will fix deficiency).

### **23.2.3 Approval and Concurrence**

Design Exceptions on projects having full federal oversight (see **Chapter 24** of this volume) and involvement are recommended by the District Design Engineer for approval by the FHWA Division Administrator.

Any Design Exception that reduces vertical clearance over an interstate roadway to less than 16 feet requires FHWA to coordinate with Military Traffic Management Command (MTMC) before the District Design Engineer can recommend the Design Exception.

Any Design Exception for design speed on the FHWS system shall require concurrence from the State Highway Engineer. All other Design Exceptions require concurrence from the State Roadway Design Engineer.

Design Exceptions impacting a structure require concurrence from the State Structures Design Engineer and the State Roadway Design Engineer.

All other projects are recommended by the Responsible Professional Engineer for approval by the District Design Engineer and concurrence by the State Roadway Design Engineer.

### **23.2.4 Sealing**

All Design Exceptions are to be sealed in accordance with **Chapter 19** of this volume.

### **23.2.5 Concurrence Review**

After the documentation justifying the Design Exception is forwarded to the appropriate Area Design Engineer, the Design Exception will be reviewed for completeness and adherence to the requirements of this chapter.

If the Design Exception complies with all requirements, it will be signed by the appropriate engineer(s), signifying concurrence. When necessary, the Design Exception will be forwarded by the appropriate Area Design Engineer to FHWA for approval.

## **23.2.6 Copies and Distribution**

One (1) original is required by the State Roadway Design Engineer's Office (appropriate Area Design Engineer). Subsequent to obtaining all appropriate signatures for concurrence the following distribution is made:

1. The State Roadway Design Engineer's Office will return one (1) signed original to the District Design Engineer for files.
2. State Roadway Design Engineer's Office will return one (1) copy of the signed original to the District Design Engineer for submission to the Engineer of Record.
3. State Roadway Design Engineer's Office will retain one (1) copy of the signed original.
4. State Structures Design Engineer's Office will retain one (1) copy of the signed original for structure related Design Exceptions.

## 23.3 Design Variations

Design Variations are required when deviations from the Department's criteria occur. However, when both AASHTO and Department criteria for any of the 13 Critical Design Elements are not met, a Design Exception will be processed in lieu of a Design Variation.

A Design Variation request must address the following items:

1. Design criteria versus proposed criteria.
2. Reason the design criteria are not appropriate.
3. Justification for the proposed criteria.
4. Any background information which documents or justifies the request.

Requests begin with the Responsible Professional Engineer and are submitted to the District Design Engineer for approval. This approval shall be documented in the project file as per the sample request letter **Exhibit 23-B**.

Any Design Variation for design speed on the FIHS system shall require concurrence from the State Highway Engineer.

Issues impacting a structure require final concurrence from the District Structures Design Engineer for Category 1 structures or the State Structures Design Engineer for all other structures.

As with Design Exceptions, it is critical that Design Variations be identified early in the process in order to allow time to research alternatives and begin the analysis and documentation activities. This is preferably done during the PD&E process for major projects and the scope development process for minor projects. It is required that approval be obtained no later than the initial engineering phase.

All Design Variations are to be sealed in accordance with **Chapter 19** of this volume.

The District Design Engineer will retain the original and distribute one (1) signed copy to the Engineer of Record.

## 23.4 AASHTO Criteria for Critical Design Elements

As an aid to the designer, the following tables may be used as a reference for determining when a Design Exception is required based on AASHTO criteria, but are in no way intended to replace Department design criteria. The page numbers referenced are to AASHTO's *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets 2001* and are a starting point for researching project criteria.

**Criteria Tables Cross Reference**

Table Number	Title	Page
Table 23.4.1	AASHTO Design Speed (Minimum) .....	23-10
Table 23.4.2	AASHTO Lane Widths (Minimum) .....	23-12
Table 23.4.3	AASHTO Shoulder Widths (Minimum) .....	23-12
Table 23.4.4	AASHTO Bridge Widths (Minimum) .....	23-13
Table 23.4.5	AASHTO Structural Capacity (Minimum Loadings) .....	23-14
Table 23.4.6	AASHTO Vertical Clearance (Minimum).....	23-14
Table 23.4.7	AASHTO Grades (Minimum and Maximum).....	23-15
Table 23.4.8	AASHTO Cross Slope (Minimum and Maximum) .....	23-15
Table 23.4.9	AASHTO Superelevation (Maximum) .....	23-16
Table 23.4.10	AASHTO Horizontal Alignment.....	23-16
Table 23.4.11	AASHTO Vertical Alignment .....	23-17
Table 23.4.12	AASHTO Stopping Sight Distance .....	23-17
Table 23.4.13	AASHTO Horizontal Clearance (Minimum) .....	23-18

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

**Table 23.4.1 AASHTO Design Speed (Minimum)**

Type Facility	Other Factors	Design Speed (mph)	AASHTO	
Freeways	Urban	50	pg. 507	
	Rural	70		
Urban Arterials	Major	30	pg. 72	
	Other	30		
Rural Arterials	Rolling terrain	50	pg. 448	
	Level terrain	60		
Urban Collectors		30	pg. 434	
Rural Collectors	Level	ADT < 400	pg. 426, Exh. 6-2	
		ADT 400 - 2000		
		ADT > 2000		
	Rolling	ADT < 400		
		ADT 400 - 2000		
		ADT > 2000		
CBD	Major or Minor	30	pg. 434	
Ramps	Highway Design Speeds (mph)		pg. 830	
		30		15
		35		18
		40		20
		45		23
		50		25
		55		28
		60		30
		65		30
		70		35
Loop Ramps	150 ft. radius	25	pg. 829	
Connections	Direct	40	pg. 829	
	Semi-Direct	30		



**Table 23.4.2 AASHTO Lane Widths (Minimum)**

Type Facility	Lane Width (feet)	AASHTO
Freeways	12	pg. 508
Rural Arterials	11	pg. 452, Exh. 7-3
Urban Arterials	10	pg. 476
Urban Collectors	10	pg. 437
Rural Collectors	10	pg. 429, Exh. 6-6
Low Speed	10	pg. 316
Residential	9	pg. 316
Auxiliary	10	pp. 316, 437
Continuous TWLTL	10	pg. 316

**Table 23.4.3 AASHTO Shoulder Widths (Minimum)**

Type Facility	Other Factors	Right (feet)	Median (feet)	AASHTO
Freeways	4 lanes	10	4	pg. 509
	≥ 6 lanes	10	10	pg. 509
Rural Arterial	DHV > 200	8		pg. 452, Exh. 7-3
	ADT 400-2000	6		
	ADT < 400	4		
	Divided highway 4 lanes	8	4	pg. 459
	Divided highway 6 lanes	8	8	pg. 460
Urban Arterial	Low Type	2		pg. 318
	High Type	10		pg. 318
Heavily Traveled	High Speed (≥ 50 mph)	10		pg. 318
Rural & Urban Collectors	ADT > 2000	8		pg. 429, Exh. 6-5
	ADT 1500-2000	6		
	ADT 400-1500	5		
	ADT < 400	2		

**Table 23.4.4 AASHTO Bridge Widths (Minimum)**

Type Facility	Other Factors	Bridge Widths	AASHTO
Freeways	New Bridges	Approach Roadway Width	pg. 510
Rural Arterials	New Bridges (Short)	Approach Roadway Width	pg. 451
	Long Bridges ( $\geq 200$ ft.)	Travel Lanes + 4 ft. each side	pg. 451
	Remain in Place	Travel Lanes + 2 ft. each side	pg. 451
Urban Arterials	Long ( $\geq 200$ ft.), where shoulders or parking lanes are provided on the arterial	Travel Lanes + 4 ft. each side	pg. 485
	All new bridges	Curb to curb width of street	pg. 485

Type Facility	Other Factors	Bridge Widths		AASHTO
		New or Reconstruction	To Remain	
Rural and Urban Collectors	Under 400 ADT	Traveled Way + 2 ft. each side <sup>(1)</sup>	22 ft. <sup>(2)</sup>	pp. 430, 431
	ADT 400-1500	Traveled Way + 3 ft. each side <sup>(1)</sup>	22 ft. <sup>(2)</sup>	pp. 430, 431
	ADT 1500-2000	Traveled Way + 4 ft. each side <sup>(1),(3)</sup>	24 ft. <sup>(2)</sup>	pp. 430, 431
	ADT > 2000	Approach Roadway Width <sup>(1),(3)</sup>	28 ft. <sup>(2)</sup>	pp. 430, 431

1. If the approach roadway has paved shoulders, then the surfaced width shall be carried across the bridge.
2. Bridges longer than 100 ft. are to be analyzed individually.
3. For bridges  $\geq 100$  ft. in length, the minimum bridge width of traveled way plus 3 ft. on each side is acceptable.

**Table 23.4.5 AASHTO Structural Capacity (Minimum Loadings)**

Type Facility	Other Factors	Loading	AASHTO
Freeways	---	HS-20	pg. 510
Rural Arterials	---	HS-20	pg. 451
Urban Arterials	---	HS-20	pg. 451
Local Roads	New & Reconstruction Bridges	HS-20	pg. 390, Exh. 5-6
	Existing Bridges	H 15	pg. 390, Exh. 5-7
Collectors	New & Reconstruction Bridges	HS-20	pg. 430, Exh. 6-6
	Existing Bridges	H 15	pg. 431, Exh. 6-7

**Table 23.4.6 AASHTO Vertical Clearance (Minimum)**

Type Facility	Vertical Clearance (feet)	AASHTO
Freeways	16 <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	pp. 510, 511, 767, 768
Arterials: Rural	16 <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	pp. 451, 767, 768
Urban	16 <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	476, 767, 768
Other Highways	14 <sup>(2)</sup>	pp. 389, 511
Sign Trusses	17 <sup>(2)</sup>	pg. 511
Pedestrian Overpass	17 <sup>(2)</sup>	pg. 511
Tunnels: Freeways	16 <sup>(2)</sup>	pg. 359
Other	14 <sup>(2)</sup>	pg. 359
Highways		
Railroads	23 <sup>(2)</sup>	pg. 526

1. 14 feet allowed in highly developed urban areas if alternate route has 16 feet.
2. Minimum value that can be used without a Design Exception. An allowance of 6 inches should be added to vertical clearance to accommodate future resurfacing.

**Table 23.4.7 AASHTO Grades (Minimum and Maximum)**

**Maximum Grades**

Type Facility	Type Terrain	Grades (%) For Design Speed (mph)									AASHTO
		30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	
Freeway <sup>(1)</sup>	Level	---	---	---	---	4	4	3	3	3	pg. 510, Exh. 8-1
	Rolling	---	---	---	---	5	5	4	4	4	
Rural Arterial	Level	---	---	5	5	4	4	3	3	3	pg. 450, Exh. 7-2
	Rolling	---	---	6	6	5	5	4	4	4	
Urban Arterial:	Level	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	---	---	pg. 476, Exh. 7-10
	Rolling	9	8	8	7	7	6	6	---	---	
Rural Collector <sup>(2)</sup>	Level	7	7	7	7	6	6	5	---	---	pg. 427, Exh. 6-4
	Rolling	9	9	8	8	7	7	6	---	---	
Urban Collector <sup>(2)</sup>	Level	9	9	9	8	7	7	6	---	---	pg. 436, Exh. 6-8
	Rolling	11	10	10	9	8	8	7	---	---	

- Grades one percent steeper than the values shown may be used for extreme cases in urban areas where development precludes the use of flatter grades and for one-way downgrades.
- Short lengths of grade in rural and urban areas, such as grades less than 500 ft. in length, one-way downgrades, and grades on low-volume rural and urban collectors may be up to 2 percent steeper than the grades shown above.

**Minimum Grades for Urban Curb & Gutter**

Type Facility	Minimum %	AASHTO
Arterials	as required for adequate drainage	pg. 475
Collector Roads & Streets	0.30	pg. 435
Local Roads & Streets	0.20	pg. 395

**Table 23.4.8 AASHTO Cross Slope (Minimum and Maximum)**

Type Facility	Other Factors	Minimum	Maximum	AASHTO
Freeways	---	0.015	0.025 <sup>(1)</sup>	pg. 508
Arterials	Rural	0.015	0.02 <sup>(1)</sup>	pg. 450
	Urban	0.015	0.03	pg. 476
Divided Highways	---	0.015	0.02 <sup>(1)</sup>	pg. 459
Collectors	Rural	0.015	0.02 <sup>(1)</sup>	pg. 425
	Urban	0.015	0.03	pg. 435
Shoulders	Paved	0.02	0.06	pg. 320
	Gravel	0.04	0.06	pg. 320
	Turf	0.06 <sup>(2)</sup>	0.08 <sup>(2)</sup>	pg. 320

- Values given are for up to two lanes in one direction. Additional outside lanes may have cross slopes of 0.03.
- Shoulder cross slopes which meet FDOT criteria do not require a Design Exception.

**Table 23.4.9 AASHTO Superelevation (Maximum)**

Type Facility	Superelevation Rate	AASHTO
Highways (Rural)	0.12	pg. 141
Urban	0.06	pg. 142
Low Speed Urban w/severe constraints	None	pg. 142
Ramps and Turning Roadways at Intersections	0.10	pg. 643

**Table 23.4.10 AASHTO Horizontal Alignment**

**Minimum Radius (feet) with Superelevation** (page 145, Exh. 3-14)

Type Facility	Super-elevation e-max	Minimum Curve Radius (feet) for Design Speed (mph)											
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Rural Highways and High Speed Urban Streets	0.04	70	125	205	300	420	565	730	930	1190	1505	---	---
	0.06	65	115	185	275	380	510	660	835	1065	1340	1660	2050
	0.08	60	105	170	250	350	465	600	760	965	1205	1485	1820
	0.10	55	100	160	230	320	430	555	695	880	1095	1345	1640
	0.12	50	90	145	215	300	395	510	645	810	1005	1230	1490

**Minimum Radius (feet) for Section with Normal Cross Slope** (page 168, Exh. 3-26)

Type Facility	Minimum Curve Radius (feet) for Design Speed (mph)											
	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
All	960	1700	2460	3350	4390	5570	6880	8350	9960	11720	13180	14730

**Minimum Radius (feet) for Intersection Curves** (page 201, Exh. 3-43)

Design Speed (MPH)	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45
Minimum Radius (feet)	25	50	90	150	230	310	430	540
Assumed Minimum Superelevation Rate	0.02	0.02	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.10

**Minimum Passing Sight Distance (feet)** (page 124, Exh. 3-7)

Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Passing Sight Distance	710	900	1090	1280	1470	1625	1835	1985	2135	2285	2480

**Table 23.4.11 AASHTO Vertical Alignment**

(Taken from page 426, Exh. 6-2)

Design Speed (mph)	K Value <sup>(1)</sup> for Vertical Curves Rounded for Design	
	Crest	Sag
15	3	10
20	7	17
25	12	26
30	19	37
35	29	49
40	44	64
45	61	79
50	84	96
55	114	115
60	151	136

1. Rate of vertical curvature, K, is the length of curve per percent algebraic difference in the intersecting grades.

**Table 23.4.12 AASHTO Stopping Sight Distance**

(Taken from page 112, Exh. 3-1)

Design Speed (mph)	Stopping Sight Distance (feet) Computed for Design
15	80
20	115
25	155
30	200
35	250
40	305
45	360
50	425
55	495
60	570
65	645
70	730

**Table 23.4.13 AASHTO Horizontal Clearance (Minimum)**

Feature	Clearance	AASHTO
Bridges	See <b>Table 23.4.4</b>	---
Tunnels	2.5 ft. from edge of traffic lane	pg. 358
Underpasses	2-lane: Normal shoulder width (to edge of barrier) <sup>(1)</sup> Divided Roadway: Normal shoulder (outside or median) width (to edge of barrier) <sup>(1)</sup>	pg. 766, Exh. 10-6
Barrier Wall & Guardrail	Normal shoulder width	pg. 766, Exh. 10-6
Light Poles <sup>(2)</sup>	Rural (Flush Shoulders): Outside clear zone (if non-breakaway) Urban (Curb & Gutter): 1.5 ft. from face of curb	pg. 295 pg. 323
Sign supports	Outside clear zone (if non-breakaway)	pg. 299
Utility Poles <sup>(2)</sup>	Rural (Flush Shoulders): Outside clear zone Urban (Curb & Gutter): 1.5 ft. from face of curb	pg. 298 pp. 297, 323
Building Line	15 feet from elevated roadway (wall)	pg. 526
Signal Pole and Controller Cabinets	Rural (Flush Shoulders): As far from the roadway as practicable Urban (Curb & Gutter): 1.5 ft. from face of curb	pg. 4-13 <sup>(3)</sup> pg. 323

1. For metal guardrail, add deflection distance.
2. Exceptions for utility poles are to be in accordance with the current **Utility Accommodation Manual** exceptions procedure for horizontal clearance for utility poles.
3. **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.**





### Exhibit 23-B Sample Request Letter for Design Variation

To: \_\_\_\_\_, District Design Engineer      Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Subject:      **Design Variation**

Financial Project ID: \_\_\_\_\_

County Section Number: \_\_\_\_\_

State Road Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Aid Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Oversight: Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_

Project Description: \_\_\_\_\_

Begin Project MP: \_\_\_\_\_ End Project MP: \_\_\_\_\_

New Construction \_\_\_\_\_ RRR \_\_\_\_\_

A design variation is requested for the following element(s):

- Design Speed <sup>(2)</sup>       Lane Widths       Shoulder Widths       Bridge Widths
- Structural Capacity       Vertical Clearance       Grades       Cross Slope
- Superelevation       Horizontal Alignment       Vertical Alignment       Stopping Sight Distance
- Horizontal Clearance       Other

*Include a brief statement concerning the project and items of concern.*

*Indicate the design elements for which the Design Variation is being requested, along with a specific description of the Design Variation.*

*Address all issues and each of the Items listed under **Section 23.3**.*

*Attach all supporting documentation to this exhibit including crash history and plans identifying crash locations.*

Recommended by:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Responsible Professional Engineer (print or type)

Date \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Consultant Firm (print or type)

Approved by: \_\_\_\_\_

District Design Engineer

Date \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

Concurrence <sup>(1)</sup>: \_\_\_\_\_

State or District Structures Design Engineer

Date \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

Concurrence <sup>(2)</sup>: \_\_\_\_\_

State Highway Engineer

Date \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

1. Design variations impacting the geometry, vertical clearance, layout of structures, or superstructure cross slope require concurrence from the District Structures Design Engineer for Category 1 structures and from the State Structures Design Engineer for all other structures.

2. Design speed variations on the FIHS requires concurrence from the State Highway Engineer following a review with the State Transportation Planner.

## Exhibit 23-C Design Exceptions Variations and Utility Exceptions Process

### GOVERNING CRITERIA

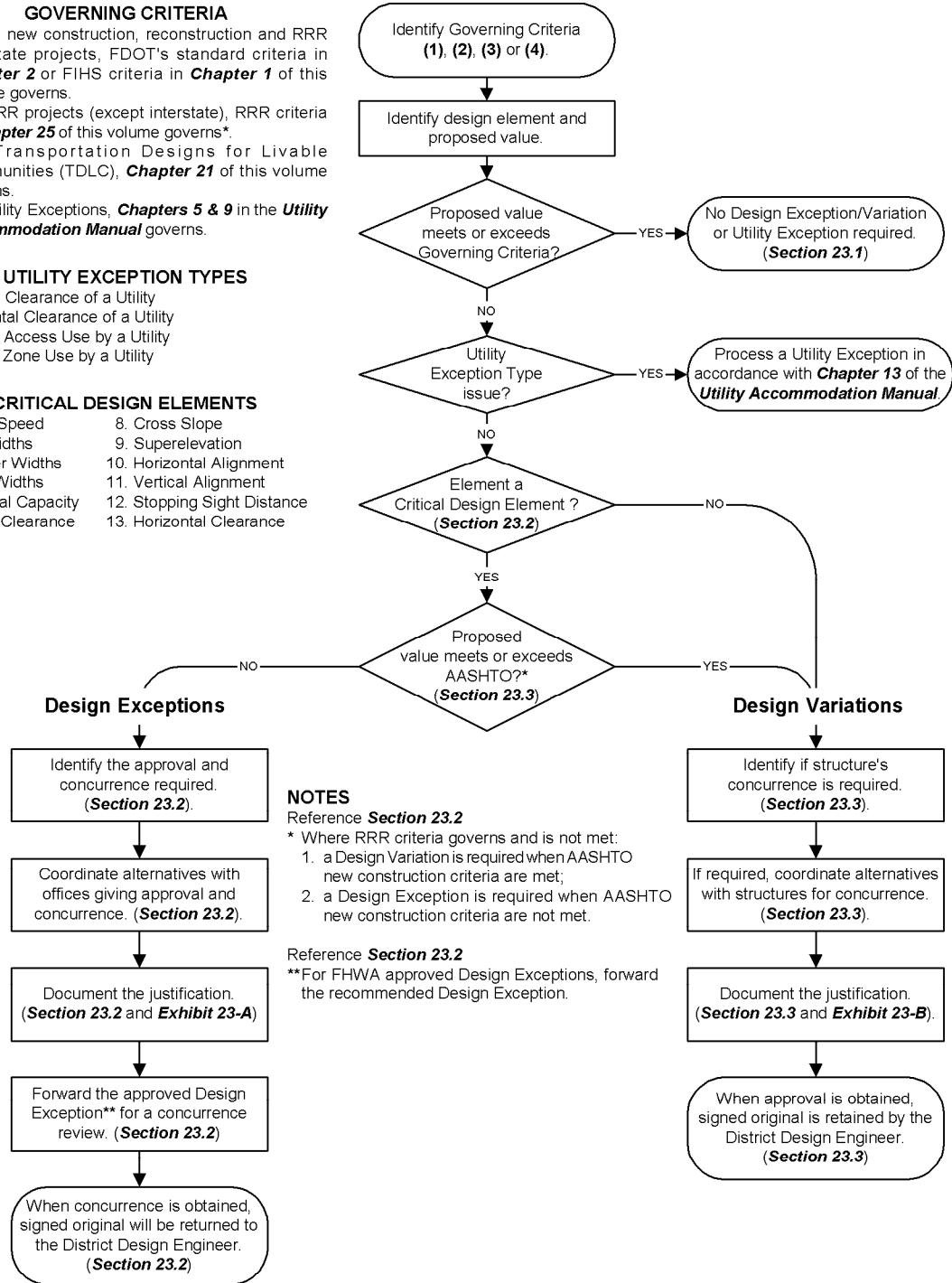
- (1) For all new construction, reconstruction and RRR interstate projects, FDOT's standard criteria in **Chapter 2** or FIHS criteria in **Chapter 1** of this volume governs.
- (2) For RRR projects (except interstate), RRR criteria in **Chapter 25** of this volume governs\*.
- (3) For Transportation Designs for Livable Communities (TDLC), **Chapter 21** of this volume governs.
- (4) For Utility Exceptions, **Chapters 5 & 9** in the **Utility Accommodation Manual** governs.

### UTILITY EXCEPTION TYPES

1. Vertical Clearance of a Utility
2. Horizontal Clearance of a Utility
3. Limited Access Use by a Utility
4. Control Zone Use by a Utility

### CRITICAL DESIGN ELEMENTS

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Design Speed        | 8. Cross Slope              |
| 2. Lane Widths         | 9. Superelevation           |
| 3. Shoulder Widths     | 10. Horizontal Alignment    |
| 4. Bridge Widths       | 11. Vertical Alignment      |
| 5. Structural Capacity | 12. Stopping Sight Distance |
| 6. Vertical Clearance  | 13. Horizontal Clearance    |
| 7. Grades              |                             |



### NOTES

Reference **Section 23.2**

\* Where RRR criteria governs and is not met:

1. a Design Variation is required when AASHTO new construction criteria are met;
2. a Design Exception is required when AASHTO new construction criteria are not met.

Reference **Section 23.2**

\*\*For FHWA approved Design Exceptions, forward the recommended Design Exception.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 24

### Federal Aid Project Certification

24.1	General.....	24-1
24.2	Exemption Coverage.....	24-2
24.2.1	Exclusions.....	24-2
24.3	Certification Responsibilities.....	24-4
24.4	Certification Documentation and Reviews.....	24-6
24.5	Certification Statement.....	24-7
Exhibits		
Exhibit 24-A	Approval and Concurrence Process.....	24-8
Exhibit 24-B	Design Plans Phase Review.....	24-9
Exhibit 24-C	Special Provisions.....	24-10

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 24

### Federal Aid Project Certification

#### 24.1 General

The Florida Department of Transportation has a formal agreement with the Federal Highway Administration to administer specific Federal Aid highway projects exempt from FHWA oversight. See **Exemption Agreement** and **23 USC 106 Exception Process, Topic Number 625-010-000**. Under this agreement FHWA accepts the Department's certification that the design and construction phases of specific Federal Aid highway projects on the National Highway System (NHS) have been carried out in accordance with all appropriate Department manuals, guidelines and procedures, and in compliance with all applicable Federal Statutes, Regulations, Executive Orders, and FHWA Directives and Standards. The Department assumes the oversight responsibilities and duties previously performed by FHWA during the final design, award and construction of these federally funded projects.

This agreement do not preclude FHWA access to and review of Federal Aid projects at any time, and does not replace the fundamental provisions of law in Title 23 with respect to the basic structure of the Federal Aid program. FHWA may at any time have access to and review project phases and records under the exemption agreement. In accordance with **23 CFR 17.5**, records will be retained for a minimum of three years or until litigation, claims or audit findings initiated before the three-year period have been resolved.

## 24.2 Exemption Coverage

The exemption process (permitted under **23 U.S.C. 106**) applies to the design and construction of all Federal Aid highway projects except new or reconstruction projects on the Interstate System with cost estimates greater than \$1 million. All Interstate RRR and National Highway System projects off the Interstate System are covered under the exemption process.

The Exemption Agreement does not prohibit FHWA's involvement, at the Department's request, in the review of design plans and subsequent participation in construction inspections of major, unusual or innovative structures on Non-Interstate Systems within the State. The Department is encouraged to include FHWA in such projects to the extent practical.

### 24.2.1 Exclusions

Full FHWA oversight procedures will be followed on all Federal Aid construction/reconstruction projects on the Interstate System with cost estimates greater than \$1 million. For these oversight projects, there are certain special features that will require special FHWA review and involvement in addition to normal FHWA reviews. These special features are:

1. Individual structures with an estimated total deck area greater than 125,000 square feet.
2. Major storm drainage systems designed to carry more than 200 cfs.
3. Storm drainage systems that have a surface detention storage with an accumulated volume greater than five acre-feet.
4. Storm water pumping facilities designed to discharge more than 20 cfs.
5. Unusual or moveable bridges, unusual hydraulic structures and unusual geotechnical structures.

Other areas not exempt from FHWA oversight and not covered under the exemption agreement include:

1. Activities for compliance with **Section 102 (2)(c)** of the **National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969 (42 USC 4321 et.set.)** and **23 CFR 771**. Project Evaluations must still be submitted to the FHWA for review and appropriate action as required in **23 CFR 771.129** in accordance with normal procedures as outlined in FDOT's PD&E Guidelines.

2. Activities for compliance with **Section 4(f)** of the **Department of Transportation Act of 1966, P.L. 89-665, 49 USC 303**.
3. Activities for compliance with any other federal law other than Title 23.
4. **Highway Safety, Title 23, Chapter 4**.
5. Public Transportation Projects not administered by the FHWA under Title 23.
6. **Civil Rights Act of 1964, 42 USC 2000(d) et.seq.** and **23 CFR 200 (Title VI)**, and **23 CFR 230 (EEO)**.
7. **Uniform Relocation and Assistance and Real Properties Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, 42 USC 4601, et.seq. 23 CFR Parts 710-740** and **49 CFR Part 24** (Administered under the Right of Way Certification Program approved by FHWA for statewide use on August 7, 1998).
8. **Executive Order 12372, Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs**.
9. Transportation Planning and Research, **23 USC 134 & 307**.
10. Buy America provisions, **23 CFR 635.10**.
11. Minimum wage provisions, Davis Bacon, **23 USC 113**.
12. Advertising and Award of construction contracts, **23 CFR 112**.
13. Procurement of consultant services, **23 CFR 172**.
14. The use of proprietary or sole source items or materials.



## 24.3 Certification Responsibilities

The final design documents, reports and plans for projects exempt from FHWA oversight will be developed in accordance with all applicable Department manuals, guidelines and procedures, and in compliance with all applicable Federal Statutes, Regulations, Executive Orders, and FHWA Directives and Standards. The Department is responsible for assuring that all appropriate criteria has been adhered to, and for documenting its findings in lieu of FHWA reviews. Several of the major areas and the method to be used by the Department to document the acceptability of various final design activities in place of an FHWA review and approval are:

1. Typical Section Package

The typical section package should be prepared as described in **Chapter 16, Sections 16.2.3** and **16.3.2** of this volume. Concurrence by the District Design Engineer documents the acceptability of the package. Concurrence from the District Structures Design Engineer may also be required on unusual bridge typical sections.

2. Pavement Design Package

The pavement design is developed and approved by the responsible professional engineer in accordance with Department pavement design procedures. Concurrence from the District Design Engineer is required to document the acceptability of the package in lieu of FHWA review and concurrence.

3. Bridge Hydraulics Report

The hydraulics report is developed and approved by the responsible professional engineer in accordance with appropriate design standards. Concurrence from the District Drainage Engineer is required to document the acceptability of the package in lieu of FHWA review and concurrence.

4. Bridge Development Report

The bridge development report is developed and approved by the responsible professional engineer in accordance with appropriate design standards. Concurrence from the District Design, Structures Design, or Project Management Engineer is required to document the acceptability of the report in lieu of FHWA review and concurrence.

5. Design Plans Phase Reviews

Plan reviews should be conducted as described in **Chapter 16** of this volume. Concurrence in the resolution of phase review comments from the District Design,

Structures Design, or Project Management Engineer is required to document the acceptability of the reviews in lieu of FHWA review and concurrence. (See **Exhibit 24-B.**)

6. Design Exceptions

Design Exceptions on projects not under full FHWA oversight require approval and concurrence as described in **Chapter 23** of this volume.

7. Special Provisions

Special provisions, which include project specific and technical special provisions, will be developed and approved by the responsible professional engineer. Concurrence from the District Specifications Engineer is required to document the acceptability of the special provisions in lieu of FHWA review and concurrence. (See **Exhibit 24-C.**)

8. Plans, Specifications and Estimate

The plans package, specification package and contract file will be transmitted to Tallahassee as described in **Chapter 20** of this volume. The District Production Director will sign the transmittal letter certifying that the design and plans have been prepared according to the appropriate certification procedures. The specifications package will be approved by the District Specifications Engineer. The Department's official estimate will be approved by the State Estimates Engineer.

9. Authorization to Advertise

The letter requesting FHWA authorization to advertise for bids and the PS&E package, including reimbursable utility agreements, will be submitted to FHWA by the Federal Aid Office. The Federal Aid Manager will certify in the letter to FHWA that the package was prepared under the appropriate certification procedures. An FHWA PS&E checklist (the Contract File Index, filled out by the District and submitted with the plans package) will be submitted to FHWA.

10. Revisions

Revisions to the PS&E will be processed as described in **Chapter 20** of this volume. Concurrence from the District Design, Structures Design, or Project Management Engineer is required to document the acceptability of the revision in lieu of FHWA review and concurrence.

In special cases where programs or projects are developed in the Central Office, an appropriate Central Office Manager will provide any necessary concurrences in lieu of a District Manager. **Exhibit 24-A** outlines the approval and concurrence procedures used in the exemption process.

## 24.4 Certification Documentation and Reviews

FHWA will perform periodic reviews of projects developed under the exemption agreements and may have access to review project phases and records at any time. To support the exemption program, adequate documentation throughout the design phase is critical. All approvals and concurrences outlined in the previous section must be sufficiently documented. A complete, well-organized design project file should be able to support a compliance review. All correspondence and documents must include the Federal Aid project number. The Quality Assurance procedures described in **Chapter 18** of this volume will be used by the Central Office to monitor district compliance with the certification requirements.

## 24.5 Certification Statement

The following statement will be furnished by the District (in the Contract File, see **Chapter 20 Exhibits**) when plans are transmitted for letting. The same statement will be included in the letter requesting authorization (PR1240/PR2).

"The District Director of Production certifies that all work will meet or exceed, except as noted below, the standards approved by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Transportation under **23 USC (109)(c)**."

A list of all design exceptions, the dates requested and the dates approved must be immediately below the statement. If there were no exceptions on the project, a statement to that effect must be shown immediately below the statement. Copies of the approved design exceptions may be requested, if the Central Office files do not contain copies.

**Exhibit 24-A Approval and Concurrence Process**

<p align="center"><b>TYPICAL SECTION PACKAGE</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: 3 or 4  <i>(PPM Vol. I, Section 16.2.3)</i></p>	<p align="center"><b>PAVEMENT DESIGN PACKAGE</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: 3  <i>(Pavement Design Manual)</i></p>		
<p align="center"><b>BRIDGE DEVELOPMENT REPORT</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: 3 4 5 or 7  <i>(PPM Vol. I, Chap. 26)</i></p>	<p align="center"><b>APPROVAL OF PHASE REVIEW PLANS (Roadway and Structures)</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: 3 4 5 or 7  <i>(PPM Vol. I, Chap. 16)</i></p>		
<p align="center"><b>ACCIDENT/SAFETY REVIEW</b></p> <p>Approved: District Safety Engineer</p>	<p align="center"><b>SPECIAL PROVISIONS</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: 9</p>		
<p align="center"><b>DESIGN CRITERIA</b></p> <p>DESIGN EXCEPTIONS                  Requested: 3 or 6                  Concurrence: 8, and 7 when needed.                  Approved: FHWA or 11  <i>(PPM Vol. I, Chap. 23)</i></p>	<p align="center"><b>BRIDGE HYDRAULICS REPORT</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: District Drainage Engineer  <i>(Drainage Manual, Chap. 4)</i></p>		
<p align="center"><b>PLANS, SPECIFICATIONS AND ESTIMATE</b></p> <p>PLANS PACKAGE                  Approved: 2</p> <p>SPECIFICATIONS PACKAGE                  Approved: 9</p> <p>OFFICIAL ENGINEERS ESTIMATE                  Approved: 10  <i>(PPM Vol. I, Section 20.3)</i></p>	<p align="center"><b>REVISIONS TO PS&amp;E</b></p> <p>Approved: 6                  Concurrence: 3 4 or 5  <i>(PPM Vol. I, Section 20.4)</i></p>		
	<p align="center"><b>ASSEMBLY OF PS&amp;E &amp; CERTIFICATION OF OTHER REPORTS AS REQUIRED</b></p> <p>Responsibility: FA Manager</p>		
<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 District Secretary</li> <li>2 District Production Director</li> <li>3 District Design Engineer</li> <li>4 District Structures Design Engineer</li> <li>5 District Project Management Engineer</li> <li>6 Responsible Professional Engineer</li> <li>7 State Structures Design Engineer</li> <li>8 State Roadway Design Engineer</li> <li>9 District Specifications Engineer</li> <li>10 State Estimates Engineer</li> <li>11 State Director of Design (for exempt projects)</li> </ol> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; padding-left: 20px;"> <p><b>NOTE:</b>                      In special cases where programs or projects are developed in the Central Office, an appropriate Central Office Manager will provide concurrence in lieu of the District Manager.</p> </td> </tr> </table>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 District Secretary</li> <li>2 District Production Director</li> <li>3 District Design Engineer</li> <li>4 District Structures Design Engineer</li> <li>5 District Project Management Engineer</li> <li>6 Responsible Professional Engineer</li> <li>7 State Structures Design Engineer</li> <li>8 State Roadway Design Engineer</li> <li>9 District Specifications Engineer</li> <li>10 State Estimates Engineer</li> <li>11 State Director of Design (for exempt projects)</li> </ol>	<p><b>NOTE:</b>                      In special cases where programs or projects are developed in the Central Office, an appropriate Central Office Manager will provide concurrence in lieu of the District Manager.</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 District Secretary</li> <li>2 District Production Director</li> <li>3 District Design Engineer</li> <li>4 District Structures Design Engineer</li> <li>5 District Project Management Engineer</li> <li>6 Responsible Professional Engineer</li> <li>7 State Structures Design Engineer</li> <li>8 State Roadway Design Engineer</li> <li>9 District Specifications Engineer</li> <li>10 State Estimates Engineer</li> <li>11 State Director of Design (for exempt projects)</li> </ol>	<p><b>NOTE:</b>                      In special cases where programs or projects are developed in the Central Office, an appropriate Central Office Manager will provide concurrence in lieu of the District Manager.</p>		

**Exhibit 24-B Design Plans Phase Review**

DATE:

TO: (See Below)\*

FROM:

COPIES:

SUBJECT: Response to \_\_\_\_\_ Phase Review

REF: Financial Project ID  
FA Project Number  
County

In content of letter include a statement confirming that all review comments have been responded to or satisfactorily resolved.

Include appropriate copies of review comments, responses and other pertinent data.

APPROVED:

CONCURRENCE:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Responsible Professional Eng.  
(Name of Consultant Firm)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\* District Design Engineer  
\* District Structures Design Engineer  
\* District Project Management Engineer

\* As appropriate

### Exhibit 24-C Special Provisions

DATE:

TO: District Design, Structures Design or  
Project Management Engineer

FROM:

COPIES: State Specifications Engineer

SUBJECT: Special Provisions

REF: Financial Project ID  
FA Project Number  
County

Include detailed information concerning special provisions required.

Appropriate section(s) of FDOT Standard Specifications should be referenced.

Questions concerning format and content should be directed to the Specifications Office of FDOT

APPROVED:

CONCURRENCE:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Responsible Professional Eng.  
(Name of Consultant Firm)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\* District Design Engineer  
\* District Structures Design Engineer  
\* District Project Management Engineer

\* As appropriate

## Chapter 25

# Florida's Design Criteria for Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation (RRR) of Streets and Highways

25.1	Introduction.....	25-1
25.1.1	General.....	25-1
25.1.2	Application.....	25-1
25.2	Planning and Programming RRR Projects .....	25-3
25.2.1	Projects Requiring Right of Way .....	25-3
25.2.2	Projects With Bridges Within Project Limits .....	25-3
25.2.3	Project Features Requiring Exceptions and Variations .....	25-3
25.3	RRR Project Design Process .....	25-4
25.3.1	Review of Project Purpose .....	25-4
25.3.1.1	Principal Reason(s) for the RRR Project...25-4	
25.3.1.2	General Nature of Proposed Improvements (Type of Work).....	25-5
25.3.1.3	Review Project Budget and Priority.....	25-5
25.3.2	Assessment of Conditions.....	25-6
25.3.2.1	Office Reviews .....	25-6
25.3.2.2	Field Reviews.....	25-7
25.3.3	Project Scopes .....	25-8
25.3.4	Survey Guidelines for RRR Projects .....	25-9
25.3.4.1	Types of Work for RRR Projects .....	25-9
25.3.4.2	Definition of Levels of Survey Effort .....	25-11
25.3.5	Review Project Plans .....	25-12
25.3.6	Document the Design Process.....	25-12



25.4	RRR Design Criteria .....	25-13
25.4.1	Design Period.....	25-13
25.4.2	Project Traffic Volume .....	25-13
25.4.3	Pavement Design .....	25-14
25.4.4	Design Speed.....	25-14
25.4.5	Lane and Shoulder Widths .....	25-15
25.4.6	Roadway Cross Slopes .....	25-16
25.4.7	Superelevation .....	25-17
25.4.8	Shoulder Treatment.....	25-17
25.4.9	Side Slopes .....	25-17
25.4.10	Vertical Alignment .....	25-18
	25.4.10.1 Vertical Curvature .....	25-19
	25.4.10.2 Grades .....	25-19
25.4.11	Horizontal Alignment .....	25-22
	25.4.11.1 Horizontal Curves.....	25-23
25.4.12	Stopping Sight Distance .....	25-25
25.4.13	Vertical Clearance .....	25-25
25.4.14	Horizontal Clearance.....	25-25
25.4.15	Control Zones.....	25-31
25.4.16	Border.....	25-32
25.4.17	Intersections .....	25-33
25.4.18	Drainage.....	25-34
25.4.19	Pedestrian, Bicyclist and Transit Needs.....	25-35
25.4.20	Utilities (Underground and Overhead).....	25-36
25.4.21	At-grade Railroad Crossings .....	25-36
25.4.22	Aesthetics and Landscaping .....	25-36
25.4.23	Highway Lighting .....	25-36
25.4.24	Highway Traffic Control Devices .....	25-37
25.4.25	Bridges .....	25-37

	25.4.25.1 Bridge Loading .....	25-38
	25.4.25.2 Bridge Width.....	25-38
	25.4.25.3 Bridge Railing.....	25-39
	25.4.25.4 Vertical Clearance.....	25-40
	25.4.25.5 Considerations .....	25-40
25.4.26	Roadside Safety Hardware .....	25-41
	25.4.26.1 Longitudinal Barriers, Guardrails, Median Barriers.....	25-41
	25.4.26.2 Guardrail to Bridge Rail Transitions .....	25-41
	25.4.26.3 Guardrail Terminals.....	25-42
	25.4.26.4 Crash Cushions and Attenuators .....	25-42
25.5	Design Exceptions and Variations.....	25-43
Tables		
Table 25.4.5.1	Lane and Shoulder Widths - Rural Multilane.....	25-15
Table 25.4.5.2	Lane and Shoulder Widths Two-Lane Rural and Urban, Without Curb and Gutter .....	25-15
Table 25.4.5.3	Lane Widths Urban Multilane or Two-Lane With Curb and Gutter .....	25-16
Table 25.4.5.4	Lane and Shoulder Widths Urban Multilane Without Curb and Gutter.....	25-16
Table 25.4.6	Roadway Cross Slopes .....	25-17
Table 25.4.10.1	K Values for Vertical Curvature .....	25-21
Table 25.4.11.1	Safe Criteria for State Highway System With Maximum Superelevation .....	25-24
Table 25.4.12	Stopping Sight Distance .....	25-25
Table 25.4.14.1	Clear Zone Width (feet) .....	25-27
Table 25.4.14.2	Horizontal Clearance for Traffic Control Signs .....	25-27

Table 25.4.14.3	Horizontal Clearance for Light Poles.....	25-28
Table 25.4.14.4	Horizontal Clearance for Utility Installations.....	25-28
Table 25.4.14.5	Horizontal Clearance to Signal Poles and Controller Cabinets for Signals .....	25-29
Table 25.4.14.6	Horizontal Clearance to Trees.....	25-29
Table 25.4.14.7	Horizontal Clearance to Bridge Piers and Abutments .....	25-29
Table 25.4.14.8	Horizontal Clearance to Railroad Grade Crossing Traffic Control Devices .....	25-31
Table 25.4.14.9	Horizontal Clearance to Other Roadside Obstacles .....	25-31
Table 25.4.25.1	Bridge Loading .....	25-38
Table 25.4.25.2	Clear Width Criteria for Bridges.....	25-38
Exhibits		
Exhibit 25-A	Control Zones.....	25-45

## Chapter 25

# Florida's Design Criteria for Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation (RRR) of Streets and Highways

## 25.1 Introduction

### 25.1.1 General

Resurfacing, restoration and rehabilitation (RRR) work is defined as work undertaken to extend the service life of an existing highway and/or enhance highway safety. This includes the placement of additional surface materials and/or other work necessary to return an existing roadway to a condition of structural and functional adequacy. Many of the RRR Standards used by the Department are derived from the *National Academy of Sciences "Special Report 214"*. This publication contains many of the methods necessary to make the safety and cost effective evaluations required by this chapter.

RRR projects must be designed and constructed in a manner that will comply with the accessibility standards and requirements set forth in the *Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA)*.

### 25.1.2 Application

The criteria included herein are for all RRR projects except Interstate, freeways, and Florida Intrastate Highway System (FIHS) facilities, and are not intended to apply to new construction or major modifications of existing facilities. Interstate and freeway RRR projects are designed using new construction criteria except that the requirements of *Section 25.4.25.3 Bridge Railing* and *Section 25.4.26 Roadside Safety Hardware* will apply and the standards used for horizontal alignment, vertical alignment, widths of median, traveled way and shoulders may be the AASHTO interstate standards that were in effect at the time of original construction or inclusion into the interstate system.

Projects on FIHS facilities are designed using new construction criteria. However, RRR criteria may be applied on controlled access FIHS facilities to the extent permitted by the FIHS Corridor Plan and consistent with the schedule for phased improvements to bring the facility up to new construction criteria.

The RRR criteria may be used for establishing the minimum requirements for intersection improvement projects with the understanding that when right of way is adequate, new construction criteria will be used to the maximum extent feasible.

## **25.2 Planning and Programming RRR Projects**

RRR projects must balance a number of competing objectives, the principal ones being the preservation of highways, improved service levels and enhancement of safety. The success in meeting these objectives depends on the quality of individual project designs and project programming decisions.

### **25.2.1 Projects Requiring Right of Way**

Facilities programmed for RRR projects should be given a review of the existing right of way, roadway, transit stops, access management, drainage design elements and other improvements to identify locations that require additional right of way. For such locations, the design should be expedited to determine actual right of way requirements. The designer must coordinate the requirements with the Right of Way Office so that necessary areas will be cleared before the project is ready for letting.

### **25.2.2 Projects With Bridges Within Project Limits**

Bridges must be reviewed in sufficient detail to clearly establish the cost effective and appropriate changes to be included in the project design effort.

### **25.2.3 Project Features Requiring Exceptions and Variations**

Projects may have features below criteria values which have not been programmed and/or which are determined not to be appropriate to accomplish under the design project. These usually require design exception or variation approval, as appropriate. See **Sections 25.3.5** and **25.5**.

## **25.3 RRR Project Design Process**

Significant improvements in overall safety can be brought about by a systematic safety conscious design process. The design process is a team effort that requires the expertise of persons familiar with design, safety, maintenance, traffic operations and others. To assure that safety issues are fully addressed on RRR projects, in addition to the usual design process, the following are also required:

1. A review of the purpose for which the RRR project was programmed.
2. An assessment of current safety conditions.
3. A final scope of work with recommendations for specific safety improvements.
4. Documentation of the safety design decisions.
5. Reviews of the design for safety issues.
6. Identify and implement needed public involvement activities.

### **25.3.1 Review of Project Purpose**

A RRR project is generated by specific needs or conditions. The designer must become familiar with these needs or conditions at the very beginning of involvement with the project in order to assure that the final scope of work and final design actually accomplish the original purpose of the project. This may involve research of background data or other information that provide the reason, the proposed improvements, estimated project cost and project priority.

#### **25.3.1.1 Principal Reason(s) for the RRR Project**

The following list indicates some, but not all, of the principal reasons that can generate a RRR project:

1. To preserve or extend the life of the existing pavement.
2. Improve capacity (without adding continuous through lanes).
3. Improve operating characteristics.
4. Site specific crash reduction.
5. Section wide crash reduction.
6. General safety modifications.

### **25.3.1.2 General Nature of Proposed Improvements (Type of Work)**

In addition to resurfacing, restoration and rehabilitation, a project may include one or more of the following types of work as a general improvement. The list is not all-inclusive.

1. Widen roadway and bridge lanes.
2. Widen or add roadway and bridge shoulders.
3. Provide disability access.
4. Provide clear zone.
5. Upgrade pavement markings.
6. Add, update or remove traffic signals.
7. Correct skid hazards.
8. Replace bridges rated "insufficient".
9. Upgrade bridge rail.
10. Upgrade to current Access Management requirements.
11. Provide non vehicular transportation needs.
12. Add or extend auxiliary lanes to a roadway.
13. Add turn lanes at an intersection or on a roadway.
14. Realign an intersection or roadway.
15. Replacement of bridges which cannot be widened economically.
16. Upgrade at-grade railroad crossings.
17. Intersection improvements.
18. Removal of parking lanes.
19. Other safety improvements.
20. Add or upgrade transit stops.

### **25.3.1.3 Review Project Budget and Priority**

The design and construction of a RRR project must be accomplished with expediency and at reasonable cost. Nevertheless, the project design must address all issues of safety, plus



preservation of investment, and service to the user. Conditions that are discovered but cannot be resolved within the programmed budget and schedule must be addressed and the decisions documented.

## **25.3.2 Assessment of Conditions**

Before beginning actual design of the project, the designer shall assess current conditions on the project. This assessment shall include both physical conditions and operating conditions plus a safety assessment. Office reviews and field reviews shall be performed as part of the assessment.

### **25.3.2.1 Office Reviews**

Office reviews shall be conducted to assimilate and analyze data that may be pertinent to the improvements that can be made on the project.

#### **1. Assess Physical Conditions**

This assessment should include:

- a. Geometrics.
- b. Radius, length, and superelevation of curves.
- c. Typical shoulder treatments.
- d. Cross drain and structure locations.
- e. Location and design of intersections, etc.

A review of old plans, as built drawings, Straight Line Diagrams, and other historical records will determine many of the existing conditions.

#### **2. Assess Operating Conditions**

This assessment should include:

- a. A summary of legal posted speeds on the project.
- b. Drainage and Maintenance section's verbal or written concerns of past, present and/or anticipated future problems.
- c. Conditions attributable to current control of access.

### 3. Assess Safety

A review of historical crash and travel statistics shall be performed by a qualified safety specialist. This assessment, with written recommendations, should include:

- a. Identification of significant crash locations, with:
  - 1) possible causes
  - 2) suggested corrective measures
- b. Review of correspondence files for letters of public concern.

## 25.3.2.2 Field Reviews

A field review shall be performed by a multi discipline team. This review should assess physical, operational and safety conditions.

1. Assess Geometric and Physical Conditions
  - a. Verify office review findings.
  - b. Check roadway features such as:
    - 1) alignment
    - 2) cross slope
    - 3) superelevation
    - 4) lane width
    - 5) existing traffic control markings and signs
    - 6) side slopes
    - 7) clear zones
    - 8) shoulder type and width
    - 9) intersection elements
    - 10) sight distances
    - 11) drainage (including erosion problems)
    - 12) pavement condition
    - 13) highway appurtenances
    - 14) transit stops
    - 15) other features

2. Assess Operating Conditions
  - a. Verification of posted regulatory speeds.
  - b. Verification of posted advisory speeds.
  - c. Verification of reported problems.
  - d. Observation of operating conditions.
  - e. Evaluation of access features.
3. Assess Safety Conditions
  - a. Observation of known crash locations.
  - b. Indications of unsafe operations, such as run-off-the-road indications or previous repairs.

### **25.3.3 Project Scopes**

Utilizing the office and field review findings, prepare a final scope of work by incorporating, where appropriate, other work including engineering and surveying services not identified in the original scope. Improvements other than resurfacing, restoration or rehabilitation to be considered are listed below. The list is not all-inclusive.

1. Remove, relocate or make crashworthy roadside obstacles.
2. Remove unwarranted guardrail.
3. Upgrade or replace non standard guardrail.
4. Replace or retrofit obsolete bridge rails.
5. Improve side slopes; slope flattening/stabilizing.
6. Correct shoulder drop-off.
7. Pave shoulders.
8. Improve pavement cross slope.
9. Provide side drain safety modifications.
10. Increase sight distance at intersections.
11. Improve pavement markings.
12. Improve pavement drainage.
13. Provide or upgrade sidewalks, transit stops and bikeways.

14. Upgrade railroad crossings.
15. Provide or upgrade signalization.
16. Provide or upgrade lighting.
17. Upgrade signing and other traffic control devices.
18. Provide or upgrade curb cuts, ramps and other disability access features.
19. Reconstruct or close driveways to comply with Access Management standards.

### **25.3.4 Survey Guidelines for RRR Projects**

#### **25.3.4.1 Types of Work for RRR Projects**

1. Mill and resurface only, EOP to EOP, no other improvements [Level 1].
2. Resurface with trench widening (Roadway only) [Level 1 if lump sum excavation].
3. Resurface adding turn lanes (spot improvements) [Level 2].
4. Resurface adding paved shoulders [Level 2].
5. Combination of numbers 2-4 [Level 2].
6. Resurface with access management improvements [Level 2].
7. Add paved shoulders only [Level 2].
8. (E) Extend drainage structures [Level 3].
9. (E) Guardrail, end treatments, etc. (safety) [Level 2].
10. (E) Side drain closure; mitered ends [Level 3].
11. Intersection improvements [Minor = Level 2; Major = Level 3].
12. (E) Correct horizontal and/or vertical alignment [Level 3].
13. (E) ADA compliance [Level 2].
14. Approaches to structures [Level 4].
15. RRR with Right of Way acquisition [Level 3].

(E) = Element of an item

(See also **Section 25.3.1.2**)

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 25.3.4.2 Definition of Levels of Survey Effort

### 1. LEVEL 1

Review by District Surveyor to check for Public Land Corners. Check sections for cross slope at 1000 feet in tangents. For curves, check 50 feet before PC, at PC, 50 and 100 feet after PC and at middle of curve or 300 foot intervals. (Reverse at PT). May use assumed datum if approved by the District Location Surveyor and the Project Manager/Designer. The cross sections will have a common bench mark elevation throughout the curve. In other words, do not assume an elevation at the centerline of the highway for each cross section. A minimum of two (2) bench marks should be set off of the highway near the Right of Way (R/W) Line and may be on assumed elevations, NAVD 88 or NGVD 29 datum. If the surveyor elects to use temporary assumed bench marks, they must last throughout the life of construction and **cannot** be set in trees, power poles or concrete monuments. Establish begin and end points of project and reference.

### 2. LEVEL 2

Minor spot improvements such as turn lane at existing crossover, turn lane on 2-lane, etc. No additional Right of Way required. Where Right of Way is adequate, establish horizontal and vertical control in the improvement area. May use assumed vertical datum if approved by the District Location Surveyor and the Project Manager/Designer. The cross sections will have a common bench mark elevation throughout the curve. In other words, do not assume an elevation at the centerline of the highway for each cross section. A minimum of two (2) bench marks should be set off of the highway near the Right of Way Line and may be based on assumed elevations, NAVD 88 or NGVD 29 datum. If the surveyor elects to use temporary assumed bench marks, they must last throughout the life of construction and **cannot** be set in trees, power poles or concrete monuments. If Right of Way is constrained, re-establish existing R/W line. Level 1 required throughout other portions of project. Cross section level to be determined by Project Manager/Designer with input from the District Location Surveyor and Resident Engineer. TOPO with supplemental elevations in area of improvement. Reference control points outside R/W. Subsurface utility locates if required.

### 3. LEVEL 3

Continuous improvements through length of project such as widening and/or paved shoulder; or major spot improvements (structure replacement; major intersection improvement). May require Right of Way purchase. Horizontal Control baseline, centerline or network line. Vertical Control on NAVD 88 or NGVD 29. TOPO with

supplemental elevations (limits to be determined). Digital Terrain Model (DTM) at specified locations. Right of Way Control Survey and Maps (if Right of Way purchased). Subsurface utility locates.

4. **LEVEL 4**

Full Digital Terrain Model (DTM) and TOPO for entire project.

### **25.3.5 Review Project Plans**

RRR design plans are reviewed by other disciplines including a safety specialist. These reviews are detailed in **Chapter 16** of this volume.

### **25.3.6 Document the Design Process**

The designer shall include in the design file all documentation that substantiates the design process and decisions made, including the following information:

1. A short paragraph which states the overall project purpose. Factors such as principal reason for the project, anticipated project cost, principal work type, general right of way needs or provisions, and any special project priorities are appropriately addressed here.
2. Documents that detail the existing conditions on the project. Findings of office reviews, field reviews and surveys are assembled here, to document existing geometric and roadside features, operating conditions, traffic volumes, posted speeds, existing pavement markings, signing, safety, etc. A brief overall summary of findings is recommended.
3. Document the selected standards based on project intent and conditions. When RRR criteria cannot be met, a design exception/variation is required.
4. A summary of safety issues that have been identified for the project and the recommended solution of those issues.
5. Reviews of the project design for safety improvements, documenting what was finally accomplished or ruled out of the project subsequent to the scope of work having been completed.
6. Those items in the original scope of work for the project which cannot be reasonably accomplished and must be deleted or delayed.

## 25.4 RRR Design Criteria

Design values and decisions for roadway features should reflect the anticipated service life of the project. The designer has the responsibility to choose the specific design value to be used, taking into consideration its cost-effectiveness, which can range from the minimum RRR Criteria presented herein, to new construction criteria. Design values in the following sub-sections apply to RRR projects only. When specific values are not provided, the standards used in the original construction or subsequent enhancements may be retained except when an upgrade is identified in the project scope.

Designers are encouraged to make a deliberate selection of design values by explicitly addressing issues of safety cost-effectiveness, overall highway consistency in geometric design, design of adjoining segments and expected trends in traffic growth and truck use before specifying design values. The design values indicated in this chapter usually reflect a cost-effective basis for evaluating existing roadway characteristics to determine which features require upgrading.

The design values presented herein are the minimum to be used for a RRR project on the State Highway System without obtaining an exception or variation. See **Section 25.5** of this volume. Existing project features which were constructed to meet minimum metric design criteria, but are mathematically slightly less than equivalent minimum English design criteria, do not require design exceptions or variations to remain.

### 25.4.1 Design Period

Improvements should be evaluated using a design period which is consistent with the design period selected for the pavement rehabilitation. The design period (service life) for RRR projects should be from 8 - 20 years for projects without milling and 12 - 20 years for projects with milling. See the ***Flexible Pavement Design Manual, Topic No. 625-010-002*** for specific design periods. For skid hazard projects, where other improvements are not made, the design year is the expected year of construction.

### 25.4.2 Project Traffic Volume

The design year for traffic volume is the same design year as the year established for service life. Traffic data to be used for design:



AADT and DHV for mainline (current, post construction and design year),

1. K, D and T factors,
2. Peak turning movements at signalized and problem intersections and major traffic generators,
3. Movements for future traffic generators that are scheduled during the service life should be considered.

### **25.4.3 Pavement Design**

The pavement design procedures are found in:

1. ***Flexible Pavement Design Manual, Topic No. 625-010-002***
2. ***Rigid Pavement Design Manual, Topic No. 625-010-006***
3. ***Pavement Type Selection Manual, Topic No. 625-010-005***

### **25.4.4 Design Speed**

Most highway features are based on design speed. Design speed is the maximum safe speed that can be maintained when conditions are so favorable that the design features of the highway govern. Selection of the design speed must be logical for the type and location of the highway. Design speed must not be less than the legal posted speed. Design speed must not be dictated by an isolated geometric feature.

The design speed used in the original design of the highway should be used for RRR projects. If that is not practical, the design speed used should be consistent with comparable projects.

Regardless of the original design speed or posted speed, the following are the minimum design speeds:

1. Rural Facilities: 55 mph
2. Urban Facilities: 30 mph

**Note:** Values for design speeds less than these minimums have been provided in the following tables in the event that lower design speeds can be justified. Design speed values are provided for 40 and 65 mph in the design tables. These design speeds are to

be used to evaluate existing conditions. If reconstruction is indicated, the design speed used for design should be selected from those provided in **Chapter 2** of this volume.

## 25.4.5 Lane and Shoulder Widths

The minimum lane and shoulder widths allowed are provided in **Tables 25.4.5.1, 25.4.5.2,** and **25.4.5.3.**

On resurfacing projects, when the original construction was in metric units, hard convert typical section dimensions where existing conditions permit. Exception: Use direct mathematical (soft) conversion for existing pavement widths in curbed sections, existing right of way widths, and existing median widths.

**Table 25.4.5.1 Lane and Shoulder Widths - Rural Multilane**

Design Year AADT	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Lane Width (ft.)	Minimum Shoulder Width (ft.)
ALL	ALL	12	6

**Table 25.4.5.2 Lane and Shoulder Widths  
 Two-Lane Rural and Urban, Without Curb and Gutter**

Design Year AADT	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Lane Width ( ft. )	Minimum Shoulder Width ( ft. )
1 - 750	ALL	10 <sub>1</sub>	6
751 - 2000	< 50	11 <sub>2</sub>	6
	≥ 50	12 <sub>2</sub>	6
> 2000	ALL	12 <sub>2</sub>	6

1. For rural and urban projects without curb and gutter (regardless of traffic volume), when widening is required, a minimum lane width of 11 ft. is required.
2. May be reduced by 1 ft. if trucks < 10% of design year traffic.

**Table 25.4.5.3 Lane Widths  
 Urban Multilane or Two-Lane With Curb and Gutter**

Design Year AADT	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Thru Lane ( ft. )	Minimum Turn Lane ( ft. )	Minimum Parking Lane ( ft. )
ALL	ALL	10 <sub>1</sub>	9 <sub>2</sub>	7 <sub>3</sub>

1. 11 ft. if Trucks are >10% of Design Year Traffic.
2. 10 ft. for 2 Way Left Turn Lanes.
3. A minimum width of 7 ft. measured from face of curb may be left in place. Otherwise provide 8 ft. minimum, measured from face of curb.

**Table 25.4.5.4 Lane and Shoulder Widths  
 Urban Multilane Without Curb and Gutter**

Design Year AADT	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Thru Lane ( ft. )	Minimum Turn Lane ( ft. )	Minimum Shoulder Width ( ft. )
ALL	ALL	10 <sub>1</sub>	9 <sub>2</sub>	6

1. 11 ft. if Trucks are >10% of Design Year Traffic.
2. 10 ft. for 2-Way Left Turn Lanes.

## 25.4.6 Roadway Cross Slopes

The existing pavement cross slope shall be reviewed for compliance with criteria. Existing pavement cross slopes shall be field verified by the design location survey. Whenever practical, pavement cross-slope shall be constructed to new construction criteria. When new construction cross slope criteria cannot be met, documentation in the design file is required and the normal non-superelevated cross-slope used shall be consistent with the values in **Table 25.4.6**. Superelevation requirements are covered in **Section 25.4.7** of this volume.

When cross slope correction is necessary, the designer must work closely with the Pavement Design Engineer and the District Bituminous Engineer to determine the appropriate method of correction and ensure constructability. Special milling and layering details showing the method of correction shall be shown in the plans. For projects with superelevated sections, details shall address how the transition from normal cross slope to superelevation is to be achieved. Since this type work will often involve variable depth milling and/or asphalt layers, special care in estimating quantities for milling, overbuild, and structural courses will be necessary.

**Table 25.4.6 Roadway Cross Slopes**

Feature	Standard	Range
Travel Lanes	0.02	0.02 - 0.04 <sup>1</sup>
Shoulders	0.06	0.03 - 0.08 <sup>2</sup>
Parking Lanes	0.05	0.03 - 0.05

- Existing multilane curb and gutter sections originally constructed with a parabolic crown section may be resurfaced using a series of tangents with a cross slope range from 0.015 to 0.05.
- When existing shoulders are to remain, the algebraic difference between the shoulder slope and adjoining roadway pavement slope shall be  $\leq 0.07$ .

## 25.4.7 Superelevation

Roadway and shoulder superelevation shall be provided in accordance with the ***Design Standards, Index 510*** for rural curves and ***Index 511*** for urban curves, consistent with ***Section 25.4.11.1, Number 2, Superelevation***.

## 25.4.8 Shoulder Treatment

On projects with rural type (without curb) construction, shoulders, erosion control, sodding and reworking shoulders shall be provided consistent with the criteria for new construction. Paved shoulders shall be provided in accordance with new construction criteria; however the widening of existing 4 ft. paved shoulders is optional. For new construction paved shoulder criteria, refer to ***Chapter 2*** of this volume.

## 25.4.9 Side Slopes

The values selected shall be the flattest that are practical. On RRR projects where existing ditches can be modified for stormwater management purposes, the use of steeper than standard side slopes and additional depth may be cost-effective but would require a variation. Justification must fully address safety, water depth, frequency and duration, as well as cost-effectiveness. The decision to shield steep side slopes shall be made consistent with the guidelines in the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

#### Front Slopes:

1. 1:6 are desirable.
2. 1:4 may be constructed within the clear zone.
3. 1:3 may be constructed outside the clear zone.
4. Existing front slopes 1:3 or flatter may remain within the clear zone. Shielding may be required.
5. Steeper than 1:3 shall be shielded as per ***Design Standards, Index 400, General Notes***.
6. Consideration should be given to flattening slopes of 1:3 or steeper at locations where run-off-the-road type crashes are likely to occur (e.g., on the outsides of horizontal curves).
7. The proposed construction should not result in slopes steeper than the existing slopes in violation of the above values.

#### Back Slopes:

1. 1:4 are desirable.
2. 1:3 may be constructed in the clear zone.
3. 1:2 may be constructed outside the clear zone without shielding.
4. Existing back slopes 1:2 and flatter may remain.
5. Existing back slopes steeper than 1:3 within the clear zone may require shielding.

### 25.4.10 Vertical Alignment

Vertical alignment must be reviewed together with the horizontal alignment to assure that the necessary balance of standards is realized and that the combination is both safe and pleasing.

The alignment should be reviewed to see if the following principles are generally satisfied by the existing vertical alignment:

1. The sight distance provided meets or exceeds the values in ***Table 25.4.12***.
2. Grades do not significantly affect truck operations.
3. There are no hidden dips which could obscure traffic or hazards.

4. Steep grades and sharp vertical curves do not exist at or near an intersection.
5. Sufficient grades and, when necessary, special gutter grades exist to adequately drain urban projects.
6. Adequate sight distance exists for traffic signals (e.g., beyond overpasses, etc.).

When any of the above conditions do not exist, the designer should evaluate for hazardous conditions and determine if corrective measures are warranted.

### **25.4.10.1 Vertical Curvature**

The designer shall use the method given in **Table 25.4.10.1** to check the sufficiency of vertical curves and provide any indicated corrective measures. When an evaluation is required, it shall consider:

1. The nature of potential hazards hidden by a hill crest.
2. The location of the hazard in relation to the portion of the highway where sight distance falls below new construction criteria.
3. Effectiveness of other options such as relocating or correcting the hazard.
4. Providing warning signs.

### **25.4.10.2 Grades**

Grades which satisfied the standards in effect at the time of construction may be used provided the result is consistent with the design principles in **Section 25.4.10**. Grades which are not consistent with these design principles must be evaluated.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

**Table 25.4.10.1 K Values for Vertical Curvature**

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	K Values	
	Crest Vertical Curves	
	A <sup>(1)</sup>	B <sup>(2)</sup>
15	5	3.0
20	10	6.1
25	18	11.1
30	30	18.5
35	47	29.0
40	70	43.1
45	98	60.1
50	136	83.7
55	184	113.5
60	244	150.6
65	313	192.8
70	401	246.9

1. The "A" values are based on an eye height of 3.5 feet and an object height of 0.5 feet.  
 2. The "B" values are based on an eye height of 3.5 feet and an object height of 2.0 feet.  
 3. For the design speed, compare the K value to the tabulated values using the following formula:

$$K = \frac{L}{A}$$

Where: K = Rate of vertical curvature  
 L = Length of vertical curve, (feet)  
 A = Algebraic difference in grades, (percent)

a. If the K value is equal to or greater than the "A" value, the curve is satisfactory.  
 b. If the K value is equal to or greater than the "B" value, but less than the "A" value, a study **should** be made to evaluate possible mitigation of hazards requiring driver reaction and/or appropriate treatment (i.e. relocation of the hazard, hazard warning signs, reduced safe speed signs, etc.).  
 c. If the K value is less than the "B" value, **reconstruction** of the curve is required, or an exception must be obtained.



## 25.4.11 Horizontal Alignment

Vertical and horizontal alignment must be reviewed together to assure that the necessary balance of standards is realized and the combination is both safe and pleasing.

The designer should review the alignment to identify that the existing alignment generally adheres to the following guidelines:

1. Consistent with no sudden changes from easy to sharp curvature.
2. Sufficient tangent length between reverse curves.
3. Superelevation transitions provided.
4. Maximum curvature is not used:
  - a. On high fills or elevated structures;
  - b. At or near crest in grade;
  - c. At or near low points in grade;
  - d. At the end of long tangents;
  - e. At or near intersections or points of access or egress;
  - f. At or near decision points.

At all locations where the existing alignment does not adhere to these conditions, the designer should evaluate for hazardous conditions and determine if corrective measures are warranted.

## 25.4.11.1 Horizontal Curves

Horizontal curves shall be reviewed for horizontal curvature and superelevation. Review existing curves against the values in **Table 25.4.11.1**. Every practical attempt shall be made to upgrade curves which are below State Highway System (SHS) minimum values for new construction. The review should also include an on-site review for evidence of near crashes or operational problems.

### 1. Horizontal Curvature

**Condition #1** - Horizontal curves that meet or exceed the SHS minimum radius values are satisfactory unless there is a significant crash history (3 or more crashes within the most recent 5-year) or other evidence of safety or operational problems. If problems are identified corrective measures shall be included in the project.

**Condition #2** - Curves which are below the SHS minimum radius values but meet or exceed the RRR minimum radius values shall be reviewed for specific safety problems at the curve. If the review indicated significant operational or safety problems exist, the curve must be reconstructed. If problems are identified but reconstruction is not warranted, corrective measures shall be included in the project.

**Condition #3** - Those curves which do not meet the RRR minimum radius values must be reconstructed. Reconstructed curves shall meet the criteria for new construction contained in **Chapter 2** of this volume. Sufficient time and budget must be programmed into the RRR project to obtain any right of way necessary for reconstruction of the curve.

### 2. Superelevation

**Rural Curves** - Existing rural curves not having the indicated superelevation rate on the **Design Standards, Index 510** shall be corrected to that rate. Other measures appropriate to correct or improve identified safety or operational problems shall be provided.

**Urban Curves** - Existing urban (C&G) curves not having the indicated superelevation rate on the **Design Standards, Index 511** shall be corrected to that rate by reconstruction of the curve or, if practical, curb adjustment to accommodate overbuild. Other measures appropriate to correct or improve identified safety or operational problems shall be provided.

### 3. PIs Without Curves

Where alignments have PIs without curves that exceed the new construction values in **Table 2.8.1**, consideration should be given to reconstructing the roadway with suitable curvature.

**Table 25.4.11.1 Safe Criteria for State Highway System  
 With Maximum Superelevation**

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	e <sub>max.</sub> = 0.10				e <sub>max.</sub> = 0.05			
	SHS		RRR		SHS		RRR	
	D <sub>max</sub>	R <sub>min.</sub> (ft.)	D <sub>max</sub>	R <sub>min.</sub> (ft.)	D <sub>max</sub>	R <sub>min.</sub> (ft.)	D <sub>max</sub>	R <sub>min.</sub> (ft.)
30	24° 15'	231	30° 30'	188	20° 00'	286	25° 45'	223
35	17° 45'	323	20° 45'	276	14° 15'	402	17° 15'	332
40	13° 15'	432	14° 45'	388	10° 45'	533	12° 15'	468
45	10° 15'	559	11° 00'	521	8° 15'	694	9° 00'	637
50	8° 15'	694	8° 30'	674	6° 30'	881	6° 45'	849
55	6° 30'	881	6° 45'	849	N/A		N/A	
60	5° 15'	1091	5° 30'	1042	N/A		N/A	
65	4° 15'	1348	4° 30'	1273	N/A		N/A	
70	3° 30'	1637	3° 45'	1528	N/A		N/A	

## 25.4.12 Stopping Sight Distance

Stopping sight distance requirements are provided in **Table 25.4.12**.

**Table 25.4.12 Stopping Sight Distance**

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE (ft.)
15	80
20	115
25	155
30	200
35	250
40	305
45	360
50	425
55	495
60	570
65	645
70	730

## 25.4.13 Vertical Clearance

The following clearances apply to highway bridges and other roadway features over the entire roadway. Entire roadway includes lanes and shoulders.

**Underpass Clearance** - For roadways passing under existing bridges, vertical clearance shall be at least 14 ft. over the entire roadway. Signing and warning features shall be provided whenever vertical clearance is less than 14 ft. 6 inches.

**Signs and Traffic Control Devices** - Clearances shall be provided consistent with new construction standards.

**Bridges** - Vertical clearance requirements are provided in **Section 25.4.25.4**.

## 25.4.14 Horizontal Clearance

Horizontal clearance is the lateral distance from a specified point on the roadway such as the edge of the travel lane or face of curb, to a roadside feature or object. Horizontal clearance requirements vary depending on the type of roadway and the feature or object.

For roadways with flush shoulders, horizontal clearance requirements for certain features and objects are based on the clear zone width. That is, the feature or object is to be outside the clear zone. Clear zone is the roadside area available for safe use by errant vehicles. This area may consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, a nonrecoverable slope, and/or a clear runout area zone. Clear zone is further described in **Chapter 4** of this volume.

For roadways with curbs, the presence of curb conflicts with the clear zone concept and it is often not practical to provide full clear zone widths due to restricted right of way. Therefore, while there are specific horizontal clearance requirements for curbed roadways, these are not based on clear zone widths.

For RRR projects, horizontal clearance requirements and clear zone widths in Control Zones (See **Section 25.4.15**) are based on new construction criteria provided in **Chapter 2, Section 2.11** of this volume. In areas outside of Control Zones, new construction criteria shall be used where practical. When new construction criteria cannot be reasonably obtained, horizontal clearance and clear zone widths outside Control Zones shall be based on the greater of the following:

1. The criteria in **Tables 25.4.14.2** through **25.4.14.9**.
2. The original project criteria.

**Table 25.4.14.1 Clear Zone Width (feet)**

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	TRAVEL LANES & MULTILANE RAMPS	AUXILIARY LANES & SINGLE LANE RAMPS
< 45	6	6
45 <sup>6</sup>	14	8
> 45	18	8

GENERAL NOTES:

1. In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in **Chapter 2, Section 2.11** of this volume.
2. When relocation is required to meet minimum clear zone requirements, consideration should be given to providing new construction widths.
3. Clear zone widths are for side slopes 1:4 and flatter. For steeper slopes, provide a clear runout area at toe of fill according to **Chapter 4** of this volume.
4. When crash history indicates need, or where specific site investigation shows definitive crash potential, clear zone widths shall be adjusted on the outside of horizontal curves with flush shoulders in accordance with **Table 2.12.2**, of **Chapter 2**, this volume.
5. Clear zone width is measured from the edge of the traveled way.
6. May be reduced to <45 mph widths if conditions more nearly approach those for low speed (40 mph or less).

**Table 25.4.14.2 Horizontal Clearance for Traffic Control Signs**

<b>PLACEMENT</b>	Placement shall be in accordance with the <b>Design Standards</b> . Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4' or more (not including the width of curb) is provided.
<b>SUPPORTS</b>	Supports except overhead sign supports shall be frangible or breakaway. When practicable, sign supports should be located behind barriers that are justified for other reasons.  Overhead sign supports shall be located outside the clear zone unless shielded.
In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <b>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</b> of this volume.	

**Table 25.4.14.3 Horizontal Clearance for Light Poles**

<b>CONVENTIONAL LIGHTING</b>	<p>Not in the median except in conjunction with barriers that are justified for other reasons.</p> <p>Rural (Flush Shoulders):                  20' from the travel lane, 14' from auxiliary lane                  (may be clear zone width when clear zone is less than 20').</p> <p>Urban (Curb and Gutter):                  From right of way line to 4' back of face of curb (may be 1.5' back of face of curb when all other alternatives are deemed impractical). Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4' or more (not including the width of curb) is provided.</p>
<b>HIGH MAST LIGHTING</b>	<p>Outside of the clear zone unless shielded.</p>
<p>In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <b>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</b> of this volume.</p>	

**Table 25.4.14.4 Horizontal Clearance for Utility Installations**

<p>Shall not be located within the limited access right of way, except as permitted by the <b>Telecommunications Facilities on Limited Access Rights of Way Policy, (Topic No. 000-625-025)</b>.</p> <p>Shall not be located in the median.</p> <p>Flush Shoulders:                  Not within the clear zone. Install as close as practical to the right of way without aerial encroachments onto private property.</p> <p>Curb or Curb and Gutter:                  At the R/W line or as close to the R/W line as practical. Must maintain 1.5' clear from face of curb. Placement within sidewalks shall be such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4' or more (not including the width of the curb) is provided.</p> <p>See the <b>Utility Accommodation Manual, (Topic No. 710-020-001)</b>, for additional information.</p>
<p>In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <b>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</b> of this volume.</p>

**Table 25.4.14.5 Horizontal Clearance to Signal Poles and Controller Cabinets for Signals**

Shall not be located in medians. Flush Shoulders: Outside the clear zone. Curb or Curb and Gutter: 4' from face of outside curbs and outside the sidewalk. However, when necessary the Signal Poles may be located within sidewalks such that an unobstructed sidewalk width of 4' or more (not including the width of curb) is provided. Also, when site conditions make the 4' clearance impractical, clearance may be reduced to 1.5'.
In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <b>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</b> of this volume.

**Table 25.4.14.6 Horizontal Clearance to Trees**

Minimum Horizontal Clearance for new plantings shall meet new construction criteria. Minimum Horizontal Clearance to existing trees where the diameter is or is expected to be greater than 4" measured 6" above the ground shall be: Flush Shoulders: Outside the clear zone Curb or Curb and Gutter: 1.5' from face of outside curbs 3.5' from edge of inside traffic lane where median curb is present
In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <b>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</b> of this volume.

**Table 25.4.14.7 Horizontal Clearance to Bridge Piers and Abutments**

Minimum Horizontal Clearance to Bridge Piers and Abutments: Flush Shoulders: Outside the clear zone Curb or Curb and Gutter: 16' from the edge of the travel lane
In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <b>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</b> of this volume.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

**Table 25.4.14.8 Horizontal Clearance to Railroad Grade Crossing  
Traffic Control Devices**

Placement shall be in accordance with the <i>Design Standards</i> .
In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <i>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</i> of this volume.

**Table 25.4.14.9 Horizontal Clearance to Other Roadside Obstacles**

Minimum Horizontal Clearance to other roadside obstacles: Flush Shoulders: Outside the clear zone Curb or Curb and Gutter: 4' back of face of curb. May be 1.5' back of face of curb when all other alternatives are deemed impractical.
Note: Horizontal Clearance to mailboxes is specified in the construction details contained in the <i>Design Standards, Index No. 532</i>
In control zones, horizontal clearance widths shall be based on new construction criteria provided in <i>Chapter 2, Section 2.11</i> of this volume.

## 25.4.15 Control Zones

Control zones are areas in which it can be statistically shown that crashes are more likely to involve departure from the roadway with greater frequency of contact with above ground fixed objects. These are described as follows and shown in *Exhibit 25-A*.

1. An above ground fixed object having been hit more than 2 times within 3 consecutive years in the last 5 years, unless it can be determined that the problem can be remedied through the project scope.
2. Within the return radii of an intersecting street and the new construction horizontal clearance distance.
3. For 'T' intersections (on the non-intersection side) within the area defined by a line through the center of the return radii and return point of tangent extended across the street to the rights of way limits.
4. For a distance of 100 ft. measured downstream from the point of intersection of a right turn deceleration lane and where full lane width is achieved within the new construction horizontal clearance distance (It is assumed the edge of pavement is not constructed on a reverse curve. If it is, the measurement would be taken from the point of intersection of the trailing curve).

5. For a distance of 100 ft. measured downstream from the point of intersection of a full lane termination with a skewed merge section within the new construction horizontal clearance distance (It is assumed the edge of pavement is not constructed on a reverse curve. If it is, the measurement would be taken from the point of intersection of the leading curve).
6. For a distance of 3 ft. from a driveway flare within the new construction horizontal clearance distance at the intersection of a dedicated intersecting service facility such as an alley way or easement.
7. For a distance of 3 ft. from a driveway flare within the new construction horizontal clearance distance at the entrance turnout for use other than a private residence.
8. The area on the outside of a curve when the operating speed exceeds 35 mph or downstream of a kink in the alignment for a distance of 100 feet. In each case the area falls within the new construction horizontal clearance distance unless protected by a barrier. For curves, if the radius exceeds 3000 feet, no control zone exists and control zone requirements do not apply. For kinks in the alignment, if the kink is less than 5 degrees, no control zone exists specifically for the kink and therefore control zone requirements for kinks do not apply.

## **25.4.16 Border**

The minimum border width shall be the greatest of the following:

1. The border width used in the original project.
2. The border width required to satisfy ADA accessibility standards.
3. 8 feet.

When right of way is being acquired for other reasons, the minimum border width shall be that used for new construction projects; however, the minimum length of wider border width shall be a segment of sufficient length to provide reasonable continuity.

## 25.4.17 Intersections

Intersections shall be evaluated to determine those that need a traffic engineering study. The following items should be considered:

1. Addition of right and left turning lanes.
2. Realignment of intersection.
3. Adequate turning radii for left and right turning lanes.
4. Use of channelization to reduce excessive areas of conflict at large intersections.
5. Placement of crosswalks as related to sidewalks and stop bars.
6. Locations of pedestrian, bicycle, and transit facilities.
7. Locations of utilities, signal poles, controller cabinets, lighting poles and drainage structures as related to sidewalks and curb ramps.
8. Warrants for traffic control systems.
9. Installation of buried conduit for future traffic control systems.
10. Lighting for intersection illumination.
11. Adequate sight distance.
12. ADA needs.

Corrective measures shall be included in projects having T-intersections with significant crash histories (3 or more crashes within the most recent 5-year) or other evidence of safety or operational problems.

## 25.4.18 Drainage

The designer or drainage specialist must evaluate the hydraulic and physical adequacy of the existing drainage system. This requires examination of the existing drainage in the field and by consulting with maintenance personnel and records. If there are apparent problems with the existing drainage system, additional evaluation is required to determine the extent and type of improvements necessary to upgrade the system. The ***FDOT Drainage Manual (Topic No. 625-040-002)*** contains design criteria and methods which provide guidance in formulating suitable drainage features, either through modification or replacement.

Prior to selecting any plan of highway improvement, the designer should consult with drainage and environmental permitting specialists since almost all roadway modifications reduce storage and infiltration and increase discharge rates and volumes. Stormwater retention and detention for quality, rate and volume may be required. Theoretical evaluation of proposed changes to existing and new drainage features necessary to correct operational deficiencies should be referred to a drainage specialist. The drainage specialist will provide the necessary drainage design, flood data information, drainage related information for the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and any stormwater permit computations.

## 25.4.19 Pedestrian, Bicyclist and Transit Needs

Whenever a RRR project is undertaken, pedestrian and bicyclist needs must be addressed, and transit needs should be considered. Recommendations by the District Pedestrian/Bicycle Coordinator and the Public Transportation Office shall be obtained; local government and transit agency contact in developing these recommendations is essential. This should be part of the project scoping and programming effort.

### Pedestrian Needs

**Sidewalks** - Upgrading sidewalks to meet ADA accessibility standards shall be included.

**Medians** - Medians shall be evaluated to determine if modifications such as pedestrian refuge sections are necessary. 5-lane and 7-lane sections are restricted or eliminated under current policy, usually by the introduction of a raised or restrictive median, which enhances the opportunity to accommodate pedestrian needs. Traffic separators with a width sufficient to provide refuge should be used at intersections where possible. When adequate pedestrian refuge cannot be provided at the intersection, midblock islands should be provided.

Design details for disability access features including sidewalk, curb cuts and ramps are found in the ***Design Standards***. Additional standards for ADA are found in the regulations and design guidelines issued by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

**Bicyclist Needs** - Design criteria for bicycle lanes are found in other chapters of this volume. For existing curbed sections where no widening is planned, consideration should be given to reducing lane widths; e.g., 11 ft. through and 10 ft. turn lanes on sections with 14 or 15 ft. wide lanes.

### Transit Needs

**Sidewalks and Transit Facilities** – A 5-foot wide sidewalk that connects a transit stop or facility with an existing sidewalk or shared use path shall be included to comply with ADA accessibility standards.

## 25.4.20 Utilities (Underground and Overhead)

Horizontal clearance criteria are given in **Table 25.4.14.4** and in the **Utility Accommodation Manual**.

## 25.4.21 At-grade Railroad Crossings

When highway improvements are undertaken that include at-grade railroad crossings, the physical and operational characteristics shall be reviewed and upgraded to meet minimum standards. Recommendations shall be made by the District Railroad Coordinator for incorporation into the project.

See **Chapter 6** of this volume and the **Design Standards** for additional information.

## 25.4.22 Aesthetics and Landscaping

Landscaping, including median and intersection treatment, shall be consistent with the criteria in this manual and the **Design Standards, Index 546**.

## 25.4.23 Highway Lighting

Lighting may be installed at specific locations to improve safety. For example:

1. Reducing the effects of ambient light conditions.
2. Busy or high crash intersections.
3. Transit stops.
4. Channelized intersections.
5. Car pool parking lots.
6. Pedestrian and bicycle crossings.
7. Ramp terminals.

Any lighting, existing or proposed, shall be reviewed by the District Lighting Engineer to determine specific needs. Lighting shall meet new lighting criteria, found in **Chapter 7** of this volume.

## 25.4.24 Highway Traffic Control Devices

Traffic control devices such as signals, signing, and pavement markings shall be updated as required to comply with the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices*, the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Studies*, the Department's *Design Standards*, and the ADA design guidelines issued by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Transportation. The District Traffic Operations Engineer (or staff) shall determine any new or additional devices required.

## 25.4.25 Bridges

On each project, a determination must be made as to whether an existing bridge should remain as is, be rehabilitated or be replaced.

This determination must be supported by an engineering analysis/report and be based on an assessment of the bridge's structural and functional adequacy. The engineering report must include the project description, an operational impact evaluation, safety impacts, and a benefit/cost analysis. The safety impacts must include a detailed review of crash history, severity, contributing factors, etc. If the engineering analysis determines it is not feasible to bring the bridge in full compliance with minimum criteria, a design exception or variation addressing the feature(s) not meeting criteria must be processed in accordance with **Chapter 23** of this volume. The engineering analysis/report should be used to support the exception or variation.

If a bridge is found to be functionally obsolete but structurally sound, complete replacement is usually not warranted. For these type structures a full range of possible improvements must be considered, including improvements that enhance safety but do not necessarily bring the bridge into full compliance with minimum criteria. Improvements such as upgrading of connecting guardrail systems, approach roadway or shoulder widening, "Narrow Bridge Ahead" signing, or other appropriate feature modifications should be considered as appropriate. Widening of the structure itself, or rail retrofit, are also options that should be addressed. The designer should always review the Department's work program to see if a structure is scheduled for replacement in the near future, before determining short term improvements.

If the structure is on the Florida Intrastate Highway System (FIHS), the designer should also consider any improvements based on future alignment and possible lane additions required for an FIHS corridor. For example: if a bridge is to be replaced, the corridor is on



the FIHS, and the project will be multilaned in the future, the new bridge should be aligned to fit future typical sections.

### 25.4.25.1 Bridge Loading

Bridges shall have an Inventory Load Rating equal to or greater than the load requirements shown in the following table:

**Table 25.4.25.1 Bridge Loading**

Type	Load Requirement
Collector Facilities	HS-15
Arterial Facilities	HS-20

### 25.4.25.2 Bridge Width

Bridges shall meet or exceed the following clear width criteria. If lane widening is planned as part of the RRR project, the minimum useable bridge width shall be determined using the width of approach lanes after widening.

**Table 25.4.25.2 Clear Width Criteria for Bridges**

Design Year ADT		Minimum Usable Bridge Width (ft.)
<b>UNDIVIDED</b>	0 - 750	Total width of approach lanes + 4
	751 +	Total width of approach lanes + 8
<b>DIVIDED</b>	ALL	Total width of approach lanes + 5.5 (median separator) * Total width of approach lanes + 6.5 (median barrier wall)**
<b>ONE WAY BRIDGES</b>	ALL	Total width of approach lanes + 6.5 (2.5 Lt. and 4.0 Rt.)

\* 1.5 ft. median and 4 ft. outside shoulder

\*\* 2.5 ft. median and 4 ft. outside shoulder

If widening is required, it shall be in accordance with the **Structures Design Guidelines** and meet the geometric requirements for new construction.

### 25.4.25.3 Bridge Railing

Florida bridge railing must meet or exceed design strength specified in the **AASHTO "LRFD Bridge Design Specifications"**. In addition, FDOT is moving towards full implementation of **NCHRP Report 350** crash test criteria for bridge traffic railing, and FDOT policy is to bring all bridge traffic railing to current standards on bridges that are being widened or rehabilitated. Bridge traffic railings are required to be evaluated for conformance to current standards whenever any improvements are made to any bridge or its approach roadway. An existing obsolete bridge traffic railing within a RRR project must be brought up to current standards, or else a design exception must be obtained for the project, providing that railing replacement or retrofit, or entire bridge replacement, is scheduled within a reasonable time. Structures Design Office staff are available to advise Districts on options.

The Thrie Beam Guardrail Retrofit and Vertical Face Retrofit Structures Standards, **Index 770 and 780 Series** respectively, are suitable for retrofitting specific types of obsolete bridge traffic railings. These retrofits provide a more economical solution for upgrading obsolete traffic railings when compared with replacing the obsolete traffic railings and portions of the bridge decks that support them. As these retrofits do not provide for any increase in clear width of bridge deck, and in a few cases actually decrease clear width slightly, they should only be considered for use on existing bridges where adequate lane and shoulder widths are present. Detailed guidance and instructions on the use of these retrofits is included in the individual **Structures Standards**.

All FDOT Standard Traffic Railings conforming to the **700 Series, Structures Standard Drawings**, dated 2000 or later, and prior FDOT Standard "F-Shape" Traffic Railings conforming to superseded **Structures Standard Drawings, Indexes 700 and 14286** are both structurally and functionally adequate. Refer to **Structures Standard Drawings, Index I-799** for information on existing "F Shape" Traffic Railings.

Existing FDOT Standard "New Jersey Shape" Traffic Railings conforming to superseded **Structures Standard Drawings, Indexes 11407, 11460, 12670, 12931, 13857 and 14101** do not resist the equivalent loadings for **NCHRP Report 350** Test Level 4 when analyzed using the **AASHTO LRFD** methodology (**Section 13 - Appendix A**). Refer to **Structures Standard Drawings, Index I-799** for information on existing "New Jersey Shape" Traffic Railings. These Traffic Railings are not required to be replaced on RRR projects at this time. A design exception is not required for existing "New Jersey Shape" Traffic Railings that are to remain in place.

All other former FDOT bridge traffic railings not listed above and any other traffic railings that are not based on crash tested designs are inadequate and shall be replaced, retrofitted or excepted, as appropriate, using the criteria included in the **Structures Design Guidelines**.

For guardrail to bridge rail transition requirements, see **Section 25.4.26.2**.

### **25.4.25.4 Vertical Clearance**

The following clearances apply to existing bridges to remain or be modified only. Replacement structures shall be to new construction standards.

**Underpassing Clearance** - Vertical Clearance for roadways passing under existing bridges shall be at least 14 ft. over the entire roadway. The existing vertical clearance shall not be reduced by the RRR project if the existing clearance is 16 ft. or less.

**Low Member Clearance** - Existing bridges with sway bracing members over the bridge deck shall have at least 14 ft. clearance over the entire roadway.

Signing and warning features shall be provided whenever vertical clearance is less than 14 ft. 6 inches.

### **25.4.25.5 Considerations**

When evaluating bridge replacement or widening, the following should be considered:

1. Cost of replacing the existing bridge with a wider bridge designed to new bridge criteria.
2. Cost of widening the existing bridge (if widening is practical), including life cycle costs of maintaining a widened bridge.
3. The number of crashes that would be eliminated by replacement or widening.
4. The hydraulic sufficiency and the risk of failure due to scour and/or ship impact as well as the consequences of failure.

## 25.4.26 Roadside Safety Hardware

Roadside conditions must be reviewed to determine the need for roadside safety hardware. This review must include a review of existing roadside safety hardware for need and adequacy and whether upgrading or replacement is necessary. See **Chapter 4** of this volume for guidance on conducting reviews. All roadside safety hardware on RRR projects must comply with the following requirements.

### 25.4.26.1 Longitudinal Barriers, Guardrails, Median Barriers

Existing longitudinal guardrail sections must be upgraded or replaced unless they conform to the current **Design Standards, Index 400**. As an exception, existing guardrail constructed with steel offset blocks, but otherwise conforming to the current **Design Standards**, are not required to be upgraded or replaced.

Existing concrete barriers conforming to the current **Design Standards, Index 410**, New Jersey shape barriers, and approved vertical faced concrete barriers may remain in place. Other concrete barrier shapes must be replaced.

All replacements and new installations shall conform to the current **Design Standards**.

See **Section 25.4.25.3** for bridge rail requirements.

### 25.4.26.2 Guardrail to Bridge Rail Transitions

Existing guardrail to bridge rail transitions must be upgraded or replaced unless they conform to one of the following systems:

1. The nested three beam type transition shown as **Detail J** in the current **Design Standards, Index 400**.
2. The w-beam type transition shown as **Detail J** in the 1998 edition of the **Roadway and Traffic Design Standards, Index 400**. This detail is also shown in the 2000 edition of the **Roadway and Traffic Design Standards** in **Index 401**.

All replacements and new installations connecting to standard safety shape bridge rails shall conform to the current **Design Standards, Index 400**. For retrofits to existing bridge

rails, see ***Interim Index 402*** and ***Structures Standard Drawings, Indexes I-790, I-795, I-799, 770 Series*** and ***780 Series***.

See ***Section 25.4.25.3*** for bridge rail requirements.

### **25.4.26.3 Guardrail Terminals**

Existing guardrail terminals must be upgraded or replaced unless they conform to one of the systems identified in the current ***Design Standards***. As an exception, existing Type MELTs on high speed facilities are not required to be replaced.

All replacements and new installations shall conform to the current ***Design Standards***.

### **25.4.26.4 Crash Cushions and Attenuators**

Existing crash cushions and attenuators must be upgraded or replaced unless they conform to either the current ***Design Standards*** or one of the following systems:

1. G-R-E-A-T
2. Hex-Foam Sandwich System
3. Permanent Sand Barrel Arrays

All replacements and new installations shall conform to the current ***Design Standards***.

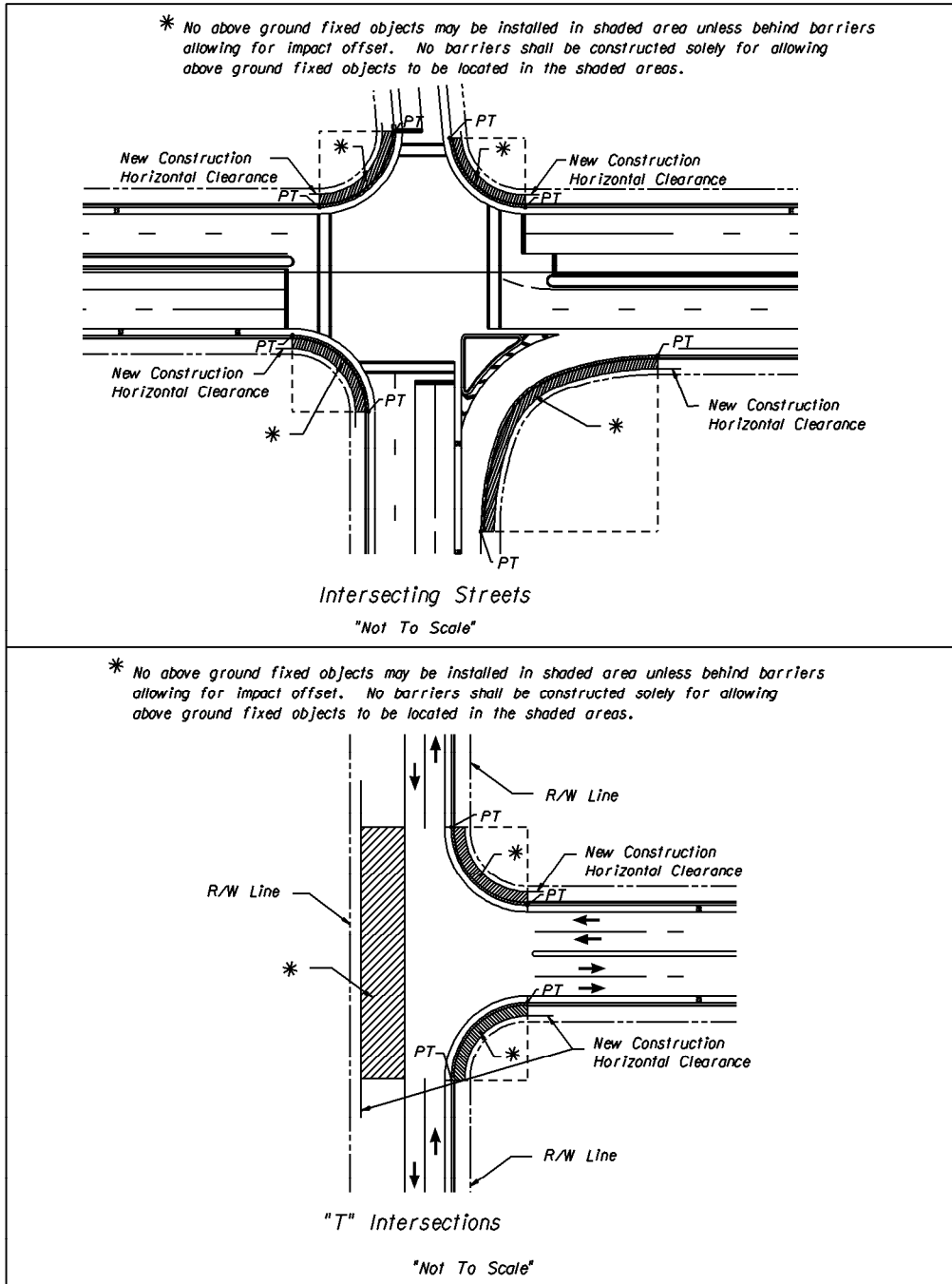
## 25.5 Design Exceptions and Variations

Every effort should be made to adhere to the desirable criteria stated herein. However, under unusual conditions, it may be necessary and appropriate to use values that are less than the minimum values shown. If lesser values are proposed for use, these shall be identified and the necessary approval and concurrence obtained at the earliest possible time, but not later than Phase II, so that the denial of any such request will not alter the project letting date. Refer to **Chapter 23** of this volume for the necessary procedure.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

### Exhibit 25-A Control Zones Sheet 1 of 5

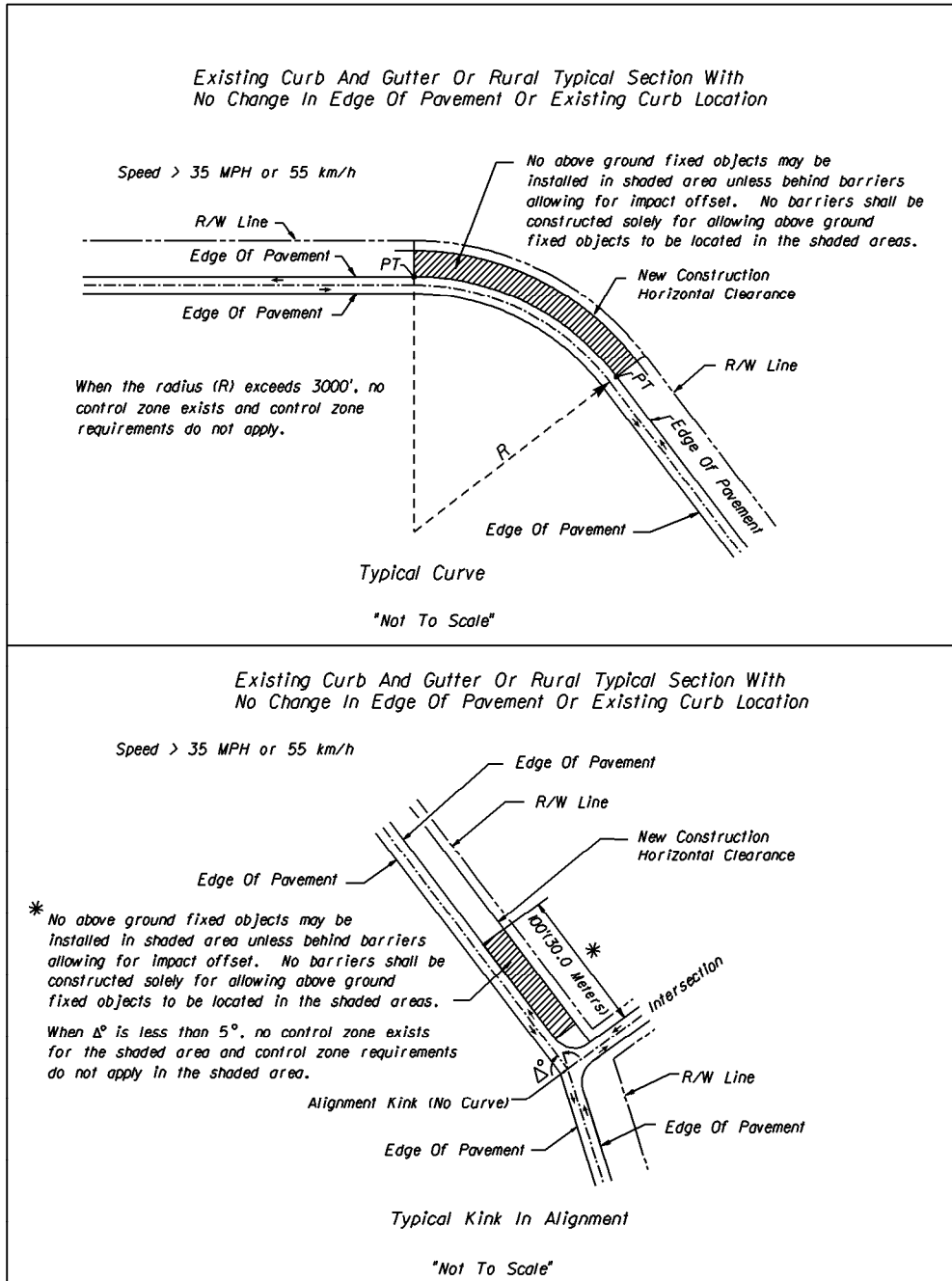
#### RESTRICTED LOCATIONS FOR ABOVE GROUND FIXED OBJECTS





### Exhibit 25-A Control Zones Sheet 2 of 5

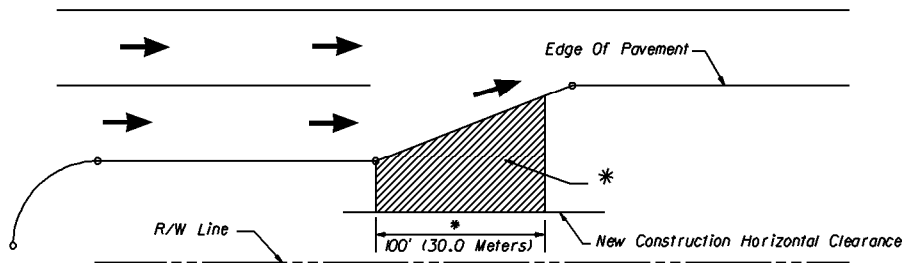
RESTRICTED LOCATIONS FOR ABOVE GROUND FIXED OBJECTS



### Exhibit 25-A Control Zones Sheet 3 of 5

#### RESTRICTED LOCATIONS FOR ABOVE GROUND FIXED OBJECTS

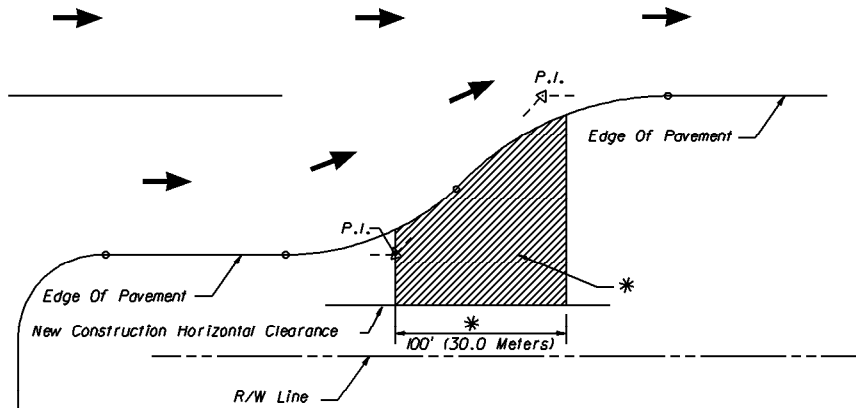
\* No above ground fixed objects may be installed in shaded area unless behind barriers allowing for impact offset. No barriers shall be constructed solely for allowing above ground fixed objects to be located in the shaded areas.



Lane Termination Using A Skewed Merge Section

"Not To Scale"

\* No above ground fixed objects may be installed in shaded area unless behind barriers allowing for impact offset. No barriers shall be constructed solely for allowing above ground fixed objects to be located in the shaded areas.

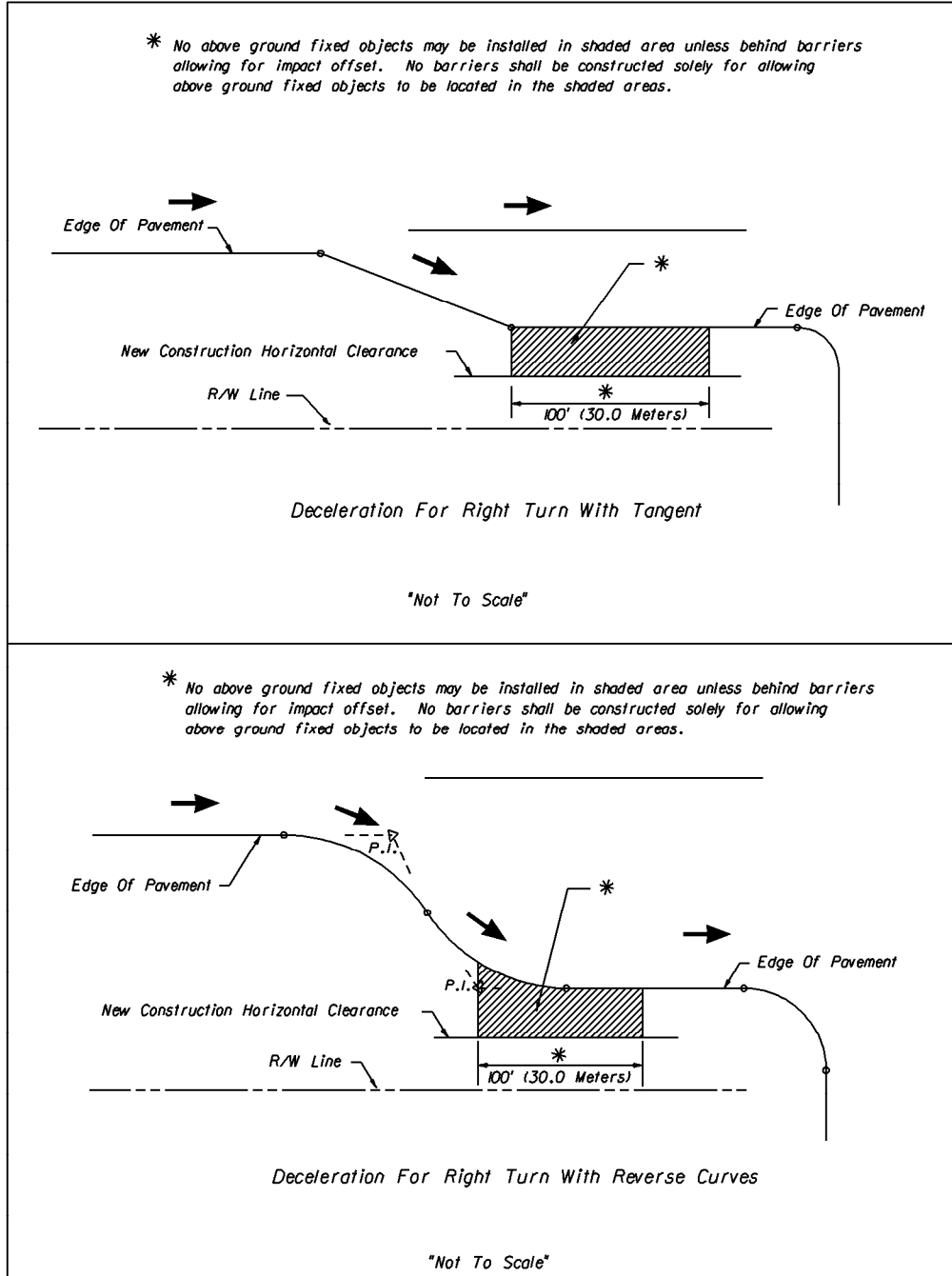


Lane Termination Using A Reverse Curve

"Not To Scale"

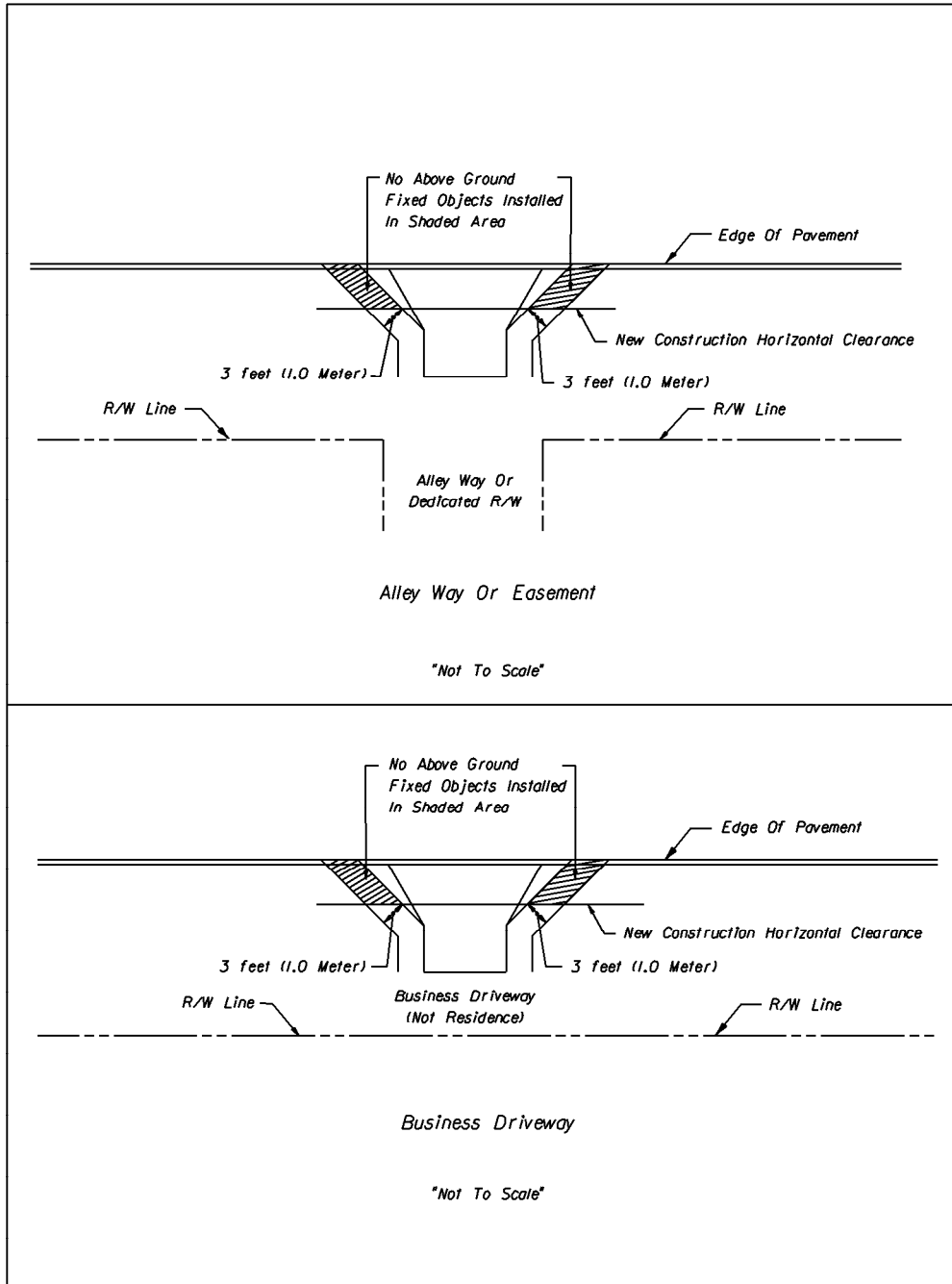
### Exhibit 25-A Control Zones Sheet 4 of 5

#### RESTRICTED LOCATIONS FOR ABOVE GROUND FIXED OBJECTS



### Exhibit 25-A Control Zones Sheet 5 of 5

RESTRICTED LOCATIONS FOR ABOVE GROUND FIXED OBJECTS



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 26

### Bridge Project Development

26.1	General.....	26-1
26.2	Organization .....	26-1
26.3	Definitions.....	26-2
26.3.1	Category 1 Structures .....	26-2
26.3.2	Category 2 Structures .....	26-2
26.4	Abbreviations Used in Structures Design.....	26-3
26.5	Responsibility .....	26-5
26.6	FHWA Oversight.....	26-5
26.7	Bridge Project Development.....	26-6
26.8	Bridge Analysis.....	26-7
26.8.1	General.....	26-7
26.8.2	Contents.....	26-7
26.9	Bridge Development Report (BDR)/30% Structures Plans.....	26-9
26.9.1	General.....	26-9
26.9.2	Contents.....	26-10
26.9.3	Format.....	26-12
26.9.4	Aesthetics.....	26-13
26.9.5	Construction and Maintenance Considerations.....	26-15
26.9.6	Historical Significance Considerations .....	26-15
26.9.7	Alternative Designs .....	26-15
26.9.8	Conclusions and Recommendations.....	26-16
26.9.9	30% Structures Plans.....	26-16

26.10	Bridge Development Report (BDR) Submittal Checklist.....	26-19
26.10.1	Typical Sections for Roadway and Bridge.....	26-19
26.10.2	Roadway Plans .....	26-19
26.10.3	Maintenance of Traffic Requirements .....	26-19
26.10.4	Bridge Hydraulics Report and Bridge Hydraulics Recommendation Sheet.....	26-19
26.10.5	Geotechnical Report.....	26-20
26.10.6	Bridge Corrosion Environment Report .....	26-20
26.10.7	Existing Bridge Plans .....	26-20
26.10.8	Existing Bridge Inspection Report .....	26-20
26.10.9	Utility Requirements .....	26-20
26.10.10	Railroad Requirements.....	26-21
26.10.11	Retaining Wall and Bulkhead Requirement.....	26-21
26.10.12	Lighting Requirements .....	26-21
26.10.13	Handicap Access Requirements .....	26-21
26.11	Final Plans and Specifications Preparation .....	26-22
26.11.1	General.....	26-22
26.11.2	60% Substructure Submittal / 60% Structures Plans.....	26-22
26.11.3	90% Structures Plans.....	26-24
26.11.4	100% Structures Plans and Specifications.....	26-24
26.12	Plans Assembly .....	26-26
26.13	Plans Submittal.....	26-26
26.13.1	Schedule .....	26-26
26.13.2	Submittal Schedule .....	26-26
26.14	Review for Constructability and Maintainability .....	26-27
26.14.1	Purpose .....	26-27
26.14.2	Responsibility .....	26-27

26.15	Review for Biddability .....	26-28
	26.15.1 Purpose .....	26-28
	26.15.2 Responsibility .....	26-28
26.16	Bridge Load Rating.....	26-28
26.17	Review of Non-FDOT Funded Projects (New Construction) ...	26-29
 Exhibits		
Exhibit 26-A	Bridge Development Report (BDR) Submittal Checklist.....	26-30



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 26

### Bridge Project Development

#### 26.1 General

All structural design for the Florida Department of Transportation (FDOT) is developed under the direction of the Structures Design Office (SDO) and/or the District Structures Design Offices (DSDO). All designs are to be developed in accordance with the ***Structures Design Guidelines (Topic No. 625-020-150)***, the ***Structures Detailing Manual (Topic No. 625-020-200)***, this Manual, the ***Standard Drawings (Topic No. 625-020-300)***, the latest edition of the ***AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*** or the latest edition of ***AASHTO-LRFD Bridge Design Specifications***, applicable FHWA Directives, and other criteria as specified by the Department.

Structures for other agencies or authorities such as the Jacksonville Transportation Authority, various Expressway Authorities, etc. may be designed to meet the Department's criteria or additional criteria as specified by the authority.

#### 26.2 Organization

The Structures Design Office (SDO) is a subdivision of the Office of Design under the direction of the State Highway Engineer and the Assistant Secretary for Transportation Policy. The SDO is under the direction of the State Structures Design Engineer (SSDE). Each District, including the Turnpike, has a staff of structural design engineers that comprise the District Structures Design Office (DSDO), and which is under the direction of the District Structures Design Engineer (DSDE).

## **26.3 Definitions**

All structures have been grouped into the following two categories based upon design difficulty and complexity:

### **26.3.1 Category 1 Structures**

Category 1 Structures consist of box culverts, short span bridges (continuous reinforced slabs and prestressed slabs), simple span bridges (steel and concrete), continuous straight steel plate girder bridges with spans less than 150 feet, bridge widenings for the above structure types, retaining walls, roadway signing, signalization and lighting supports, sound barrier walls, and overhead sign structures.

### **26.3.2 Category 2 Structures**

Category 2 Structures consist of steel box girders, curved steel plate girders, continuous straight steel plate girder bridges with span lengths equal to or greater than 150 feet, cast-in-place concrete box girder bridges, concrete segmental bridges, continuous post-tensioned concrete bridges with or without pretensioning, steel truss, cable stayed, movable bridges, vessel collision designs and any structure with design concepts, components, details or construction techniques with a history of less than five (5) years of use in Florida.

## 26.4 Abbreviations Used in Structures Design

Terminology used in the area of Structures Design for the Florida Department of Transportation often is written or spoken in the form of abbreviations and/or acronyms. Following is a list of those terms frequently encountered in this manual and in other references used in structures design and include those commonly used for offices, organizations, materials, systems, features, equipment, conditions, and expertise:

<b>AASHTO</b>	<b><i>American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials</i></b>
<b>ACI</b>	<b><i>American Concrete Institute</i></b>
<b>ACIA</b>	<b><i>Assigned Commercial Inspection Agency</i></b>
<b>ADA</b>	<b><i>Americans with Disabilities Act</i></b>
<b>AISC</b>	<b><i>American Institute of Steel Construction</i></b>
<b>ANSI</b>	<b><i>American National Standards Institute</i></b>
<b>AREMA</b>	<b><i>American Railway Engineering and Maintenance Association</i></b>
<b>ASTM</b>	<b><i>American Society for Testing and Materials</i></b>
<b>AWS</b>	<b><i>American Welding Society</i></b>
<b>BBS</b>	<b><i>Bulletin Board System</i></b>
<b>BDR</b>	<b><i>Bridge Development Report</i></b>
<b>BHR</b>	<b><i>Bridge Hydraulics Report</i></b>
<b>BHRS</b>	<b><i>Bridge Hydraulics Recommendation Sheet</i></b>
<b>CADD</b>	<b><i>Computer Aided Design and Drafting</i></b>
<b>CEI</b>	<b><i>Construction Engineering and Inspection</i></b>
<b>CIP (C-I-P)</b>	<b><i>Cast-in-Place (Concrete)</i></b>
<b>CPAM</b>	<b><i>Construction Project Administration Manual</i></b>
<b>CVN</b>	<b><i>Charpy V-Notch (Impact Testing)</i></b>
<b>DSDE</b>	<b><i>District Structures Design Engineer</i></b>
<b>DSDO</b>	<b><i>District Structures Design Office</i></b>
<b>DSFE</b>	<b><i>District Structures and Facilities Engineer</i></b>
<b>EMO</b>	<b><i>Environmental Management Office</i></b>
<b>EOR</b>	<b><i>Engineer of Record</i></b>
<b>FDOT</b>	<b><i>Florida Department of Transportation</i></b>
<b>FHWA</b>	<b><i>Federal Highway Administration</i></b>
<b>LRS</b>	<b><i>Low-relaxation Strands</i></b>
<b>LRFD</b>	<b><i>Load and Resistance Factor Design</i></b>
<b>MHW</b>	<b><i>Mean High Water</i></b>
<b>MSE</b>	<b><i>Mechanically Stabilized Earth (Walls)</i></b>
<b>MUTCD</b>	<b><i>Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices</i></b>
<b>NHS</b>	<b><i>National Highway System</i></b>
<b>NHW</b>	<b><i>Normal High Water</i></b>

<b>NOAA</b>	<b><i>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</i></b>
<b>OIS</b>	<b><i>Office of Information Systems</i></b>
<b>OSHA</b>	<b><i>Occupational Safety and Health Administration</i></b>
<b>PDA</b>	<b><i>Pile Driving Analyzer</i></b>
<b>PD&amp;E</b>	<b><i>Project Development and Environment</i></b>
<b>PPD</b>	<b><i>Plans Production Date</i></b>
<b>PPM</b>	<b><i>Plans Preparation Manual</i></b>
<b>QPL</b>	<b><i>Qualified Products List</i></b>
<b>RDR</b>	<b><i>Required Driving Resistance</i></b>
<b>SDO</b>	<b><i>Structures Design Office</i></b>
<b>SIP (S-I-P)</b>	<b><i>Stay-in-Place (Forms)</i></b>
<b>SRS</b>	<b><i>Stress-relieved Strands</i></b>
<b>SSDE</b>	<b><i>State Structures Design Engineer</i></b>
<b>TAG</b>	<b><i>Technical Advisory Group (SDO and DSDE=s)</i></b>
<b>TFE (PTFE)</b>	<b><i>Polytetrafluorethylene (Teflon)</i></b>
<b>UBC</b>	<b><i>Ultimate Bearing Capacity</i></b>
<b>UV</b>	<b><i>Ultraviolet</i></b>
<b>VECP</b>	<b><i>Value Engineering Change Proposal</i></b>

## 26.5 Responsibility

The District Structures Design Office has total project development responsibility for projects involving Category 1 Structures, upon release by the Structures Design Office. The Structures Design Office has total project development responsibility for projects involving Category 2 Structures.

The District Project Manager shall coordinate with the District Structures Design Engineer who shall review and concur with the bridge aspect of all projects during the PD&E process in accordance with **Chapter 9** of the **PD&E Manual**.

The District Structures Design Engineer or the State Structures Design Engineer, as appropriate, shall concur/approve all bridge related work after location design approval is granted.

## 26.6 FHWA Oversight

See **Chapter 24** of this volume for FHWA requirements.

## 26.7 Bridge Project Development

The following sections will define, clarify and list the information necessary to produce an acceptable and reproducible set of contract documents (special provisions, bridge contract drawings, etc.) ready for advertisement and construction.

Bridge project development normally includes five phases of development. The first phase of development, bridge analysis, occurs during the Project Development and Environment (PD&E) process. After location design approval is granted, the second phase, Bridge Development Report/30% Structures Plans, is initiated. After approval of the BDR, the final phases of work will begin. The third phase is the 60% Structures Plans which consists of the substructure foundation submittal for all projects and 60% Structures Plans for most Category 2 Structures. The fourth phase includes the 90% Structures Plans and specifications. The fifth phase includes the 100% Structures Plans and specifications. For efficiency, one engineering firm (one design team) should be responsible for the BDR and the final plans and specifications.

For Category 2 bridges and some Category 1 bridges, step negotiations are suggested. Step negotiations are desirable because the final bridge type cannot be determined until the BDR is complete. Utilizing this scenario, the first step of the negotiations would include the BDR/30% Structures Plans. After submittal of the BDR/30% Structures Plans, negotiations for final three phases of work (60% Structures Plans, 90% Structures Plans and 100% Structures Plans) would begin. Negotiations should not be finalized until the BDR/30% Structures Plans are approved by the DSDO or the SDO as appropriate.

## **26.8 Bridge Analysis**

### **26.8.1 General**

The Bridge Analysis is performed during the PD&E phase of work by qualified bridge engineers. The District Structures Design Engineer must concur with the findings of the bridge analysis, which is part of the preliminary engineering report. The function of the bridge analysis is to determine the general attributes for the recommended bridge. The specific attributes of the bridge will be defined in the BDR.

For bridges over water, a location Hydraulics Report will be prepared in conjunction with the bridge analysis. General site geotechnical knowledge is also required (usually from existing bridge plans) or, in some cases, it may be desirable to obtain borings.

### **26.8.2 Contents**

The bridge analysis shall provide conceptual guidance for the bridge design consultant. Conceptual guidance on how the bridge should fit into the uniqueness of the site should be provided. Bridge design and structure type should be left to the design team in the later phases of work. Bridge analysis shall include the following:

1. Environmental and site considerations.
2. Vertical and horizontal clearances (existing and proposed).
3. Disposition of existing structure.
4. Vertical and horizontal geometry.
5. Typical section.
6. Conceptual ship/barge impact data (sample of recreational and commercial traffic).
7. Identification of historical significance of bridge and surrounding structures.
8. Aesthetic level for bridge and bridge approaches.
9. Location Hydraulics Report.
10. Bridge deck drainage considerations.
11. Stream bottom profile.
12. Conceptual geotechnical data.



13. For sites with movable bridge options, a life cycle cost comparison will be prepared and compared to a fixed bridge
14. Phase Construction Impacts.
15. Construction time.

## 26.9 Bridge Development Report (BDR)/30% Structures Plans

### 26.9.1 General

The BDR is intended to establish all the basic parameters that will affect the work done in the Design and Plans Preparation phase. Initiation of the BDR shall occur after location design approval (For some sites only a programmatic categorical exclusion will be required before initiation of the BDR). Once approved, the BDR will define the continuing work by the Engineer of Record (EOR). It is mandatory that the EOR obtain and coordinate the information and requirements of the offices and engineering disciplines whose input is essential to the preparation of an effective BDR. Changes to the parameters after the BDR is approved could result in schedule delays and supplemental agreements; therefore, it is critical that District Offices, FHWA (if involved), the Structures Design Office and other involved agencies recognize the purpose and importance of the BDR. The BDR phase of work will contain sufficient detail for the justification of the proposed bridge type. For most projects, the 30% Structures Plans will be included as an appendix to the BDR. The BDR is developed from information outlined on the Bridge Development Report Submittal Checklist shown in **Exhibit 26-A**, located at the end of this chapter. This information is often provided by others; however, the EOR is responsible for insuring that all of the information is adequate and appropriate. If the data is not sufficient, the EOR must obtain the required information before the BDR can be completed and submitted.

When alternate designs are considered, consistency between the alternates is essential in ensuring equitable competition and optimum cost-effectiveness. This consistency includes uniformity of design criteria, material requirements and development of unit costs.

The BDR should contain only supportable and defensible statements. Subjective opinions or unsubstantiated statements are not acceptable. All arguments must be clearly and logically defensible with calculations, sketches or other technical data.

The quantity of work necessary to prepare the BDR depends upon the project's complexity; however, the usual work effort for bridge types normally encountered is:

1. **Minor Bridge Widening:** The BDR will be a minor work effort; however, viable structural possibilities and economical options should be thoroughly investigated to determine if replacement of the bridge would be more appropriate than its widening. This is particularly true at sites where the existing bridge condition is marginal, where there has been a record of serious flooding or scouring, when the widening is part of a route improvement with a high potential for attracting traffic, if the existing

- bridge has a history of structural problems (including ship impact), or the inventory rating is less than required by AASHTO and cannot be improved.
2. **Minor Grade Separations or Small Water Crossings:** The BDR shall be a thorough document that adequately addresses all viable structure types; however, the BDR will not usually be an extensive document since the viable types of superstructure and substructure are generally limited. Scour and ship impact shall be considered.
  3. **Major Bridges (including Movable) and Major Interchanges:** The BDR shall be an extensive and comprehensive document that thoroughly considers all viable structure types and considers all design parameters (such as vessel collision and scour).

## 26.9.2 Contents

The major items to be considered in the BDR are:

1. **General:** The bridge length, height and pier locations are subject to vertical and horizontal design clearance requirements such as those for clear zone, navigation and hydrology. After these considerations are met, span lengths are governed by economics and aesthetic considerations. Superstructure depths (grade separation structures in particular) shall be kept to the minimum that is consistent with good engineering practice. Recommended span/depth ratios for steel superstructures are shown in AASHTO.

The length of the bridge will be affected by:

- a. Opening required by the Bridge Hydraulic Report.
  - b. Environmental Considerations.
  - c. Railroad clearances and cross sections.
  - d. Width of waterway and/or width of cross section of roadway being spanned including the use of retaining walls.
2. **Statical System:** The economic and engineering advantages of both simple span and continuous spans shall be addressed.
  3. **Superstructure:** Some superstructure types that could be considered are prestressed concrete girders, double-tee sections, reinforced or prestressed concrete slabs, steel rolled sections or plate girders, steel or concrete box girders, and post tensioned slabs, bulb-tees or boxes.
  4. **Substructures:** Some substructure types that could be considered are pile bents and multi-column or hammerhead piers. Variations of column shapes may be appropriate for aesthetic or economical requirements. Precast substructures concepts shall be considered especially for large waterway crossings.

5. Foundations: Some foundation types that could be considered are steel and concrete piles, drilled shafts and spread footings.
6. Vessel Collision: Ship impact forces will often have a major effect on the structural configuration and overall economics. See vessel collision requirements in the ***Structures Design Guidelines***.
7. Scour: The 100 year and 500 year predicted scour elevations will often have a major effect on the foundation design. See the foundations and geotechnical requirements in the ***Structures Design Guidelines***.
8. Quantity estimates: For minor bridges rough quantities (such as reinforcing steel based on weight per volume of concrete) may be sufficient. For major and complex bridges the degree of accuracy may require more exact calculations keeping in mind that the intent is to establish relative and equitable costs between alternates and not necessarily to require the accuracy of the Final Estimate. Also, for major and complex structures it may be necessary to develop unit costs from an analysis of fabrication, storage, delivery and erection costs of the different components.
9. Unit costs: Data available from the FDOT or contractors and suppliers should be used to arrive at unit costs. The sources of all price data shall be recorded for later reference.
10. Develop cost curves: For each alternative establish the most economical span arrangement, i.e., minimum combined superstructure and substructure cost.
11. Retaining Wall Study: If retaining walls are present, a retaining wall study shall be included in the BDR. This study will conform with the work as specified in ***Chapter 30*** of this volume and ***Chapter 4*** of the ***Structures Design Guidelines***.
12. Movable Bridges: For movable bridges the BDR shall include information on the type of equipment for the machinery and electrical drive systems, together with a general description of the control system to be utilized. A written description and preliminary layouts of system components shall be included.

For rehabilitation project plans, the BDR stage shall include plans and written descriptions of those system components to be modified from the existing configuration, along with plans of the existing configuration. Submittal of information described in the previous paragraph is not required unless the electrical and mechanical configuration is modified from the existing configuration.

### **26.9.3 Format**

The report shall use standard, letter-size pages with any larger sheets or drawings folded to fit the report size. The report shall be neatly written and the contents presented in a logical sequence with narrative, as required, to explain the section contents. An Executive Summary shall compare the relative features and costs of the alternates considered and recommend alternate(s) to be carried forward into the Final Structures Plans Preparation phase.

The BDR shall be as self-contained as possible by including all arguments that establish, justify, support, or prove the conclusions. It is acceptable to make reference to other documents that will be included in the final submittal package; however, any documentation that will help emphasize a point, support a statement, or clarify a conclusion shall be included. Such documentation may include drawings, clear and concise views, or other such illustrated information.

The BDR shall address construction time requirements and the effect that components, systems, site constraints and conditions, or other site characteristics or criteria have upon the construction time, whether additive or deductive.

For most projects, the 30% Plans shall be an appendix to the BDR.

## 26.9.4 Aesthetics

1. General: Any bridge design must integrate three basic elements: efficiency, economy and elegance. Regardless of size and location, the quality of the structure, its aesthetic attributes and the resulting impact on its surroundings must be carefully considered. Achieving the desired results involves:
  - a. Full integration of the three basic elements listed above.
  - b. The EOR's willingness to accept the challenge and opportunity presented. A successful bridge design will then be elegant or aesthetically pleasing in and of itself and will be compatible with the site by proper attention to form, shapes and proportions. Attention to details is of primary importance in achieving a continuity of line and form. In general, the rule of "form following function" shall be used.

The designer must consider the totality of the structure as well as its individual components and the environment of its surroundings. A disregard for continuity or lack of attention to detail can negate the best intent. Formulas cannot be established; however, the ACI's ***Aesthetic Considerations for Concrete Bridges*** and the TRB's ***Bridge Aesthetics Around the World*** as well as authors such as David P. Billington can guide the designer. A book developed by the Maryland Department of Transportation entitled ***Aesthetic Bridges*** provides excellent guidance. In bridge aesthetics the designer is dealing with the basic structure itself; not with enhancement, additions or other superficial touches. The EOR is expected to be well read on the subject of bridge aesthetics and committed to fulfilling both the structural and aesthetic needs of the site.

The challenge differs for major and minor structures. Indeed, the challenge may be greater the smaller the project. Major structures, because of their longer spans, taller piers, or curving geometry often offer inherent opportunities not available for minor bridges.

Some basic guidelines where aesthetics may play a more important role are:

- a. Bridges highly visible to large numbers of users (maritime and/or motorists).
- b. Bridges located in or adjacent to parks, recreational areas, or other major public gathering points.
- c. Pedestrian bridges.
- d. Bridges in urban areas in or adjacent to commercial and/or residential areas.
- e. Multi-bridge projects, such as interchanges, or corridors should attain conformity of theme and unifying appearance. Avoid abrupt changes in structural features.

Considering the above, the District will determine the level of aesthetic effort warranted on a project early in its development. When significant aesthetic expense is proposed, such as is the case with Level Three below, Federally funded projects require legitimate written justification.

2. Levels of Aesthetics:

Normally the District will establish one of the following three general levels of aesthetic consideration and effort at each structure's site:

- a. **Level One:** Consists of cosmetic improvements to conventional Department bridge types, such as the use of color pigments in the concrete, texturing the surfaces, modifications to fascia walls, beams, and surfaces, or more pleasing shapes for columns and/or caps.
- b. **Level Two:** The emphasis is on full integration of efficiency, economy and elegance in all bridge components and the structure as a whole. Consideration should be given to structural systems that are inherently more pleasing, such as hammerhead or "T" shaped piers, oval or polygonal shaped columns, integral caps, piers in lieu of bents, smooth transitions at superstructure depth change locations, box-type superstructures, etc.
- c. **Level Three:** The emphasis in this level applies more to the overall aesthetics when passing through or under an interchange or at other sites such as historic or highly urbanized areas where landscaping or unique neighborhood features must be considered. The bridge itself shall comply with Level Two requirements. This level of work may require, at the District's option, a subconsultant (architect to consider adjacent building styles, and landscape themes) with the necessary expertise and credentials to perform the desired work.

The aesthetic levels described above are not exclusive. For example, where the EOR believes a specific landscape feature might significantly enhance bridge site elegance, even on a Level 1 design, the recommendation should be offered for the Department's consideration. For aesthetic Levels 2 and 3, public input into this issue may be appropriate. The EOR may recommend particular public involvement to the Department for consideration or the district might specify such efforts at specific times during the BDR and/or final plan development phase of the project.

The BDR shall include a summary of aesthetic considerations for the structure and the site. The summary shall consist of sketches, drawings, etc. of recommended treatment as well as the options considered in the aesthetic study but not recommended as appropriate. It shall also include an estimate of cost to implement the recommended aesthetic treatment.

## 26.9.5 Construction and Maintenance Considerations

All viable structure concepts shall be evaluated for constructability. Items such as member sizes, handling, fabricating, and transporting members as well as maintenance of traffic, construction staging, equipment access, equipment requirements, etc. must be considered. Special evaluation shall be made to insure against potential problems that may occur in obtaining permits and equipment to transport long and/or heavy members from point of manufacture to the project site. The Department's Road Use Permits Office shall be contacted for questions concerning the feasibility of transporting long and/or heavy structural components. Also, considerations for future maintenance inspection shall be taken into account in the structure's design. Such considerations shall include those described in **Article 26.14** of this Chapter and the bearings and joint requirements of the **Structures Design Guidelines**, or the need for 6'-0" minimum headroom inside steel or concrete box girder superstructures. The intent here being that all special construction and maintenance requirements are identified and appropriately considered in any concepts recommended for design. A design is properly inspectable when it permits safe inspector access to all portions of the structure using equipment available to District Structures and Facilities personnel.

## 26.9.6 Historical Significance Considerations

When an older bridge is considered for rehabilitation or replacement, the Environmental Management Office will evaluate the historical significance of the structure. A structure may be historically significant due to some of the following characteristics:

1. The structure may be an historic example in the development of engineering.
2. The crossing may be historically significant.
3. The bridge may be associated with an historical property or area.
4. The bridge might be associated with significant events or circumstances.
5. National Register of Historic Places or on a state or local historical register. If it is determined that the structure is historically significant, then the project should be developed to preserve the historic character of the structure.

## 26.9.7 Alternative Designs

The use of alternative designs for some larger or complex projects may result in more competitive bids and lower costs. Accordingly, the EOR shall evaluate benefits from alternatives for the particular structure being developed and provide a recommendation for or against preparing alternative designs. The alternative designs recommended shall be



supported by the evaluations included in the BDR. As a guide, the following should be considered in evaluating justification for alternative designs:

1. Alternative designs shall be considered for all structures that cost more than \$20 Million.
2. Consider alternative designs for structures that cost less than \$20 Million when project issues reflect possible advantages from competitive bids.
3. Alternate designs shall be evaluated when a new design concept is used until a bid history can be established.

## 26.9.8 Conclusions and Recommendations

With due consideration for all applicable data, the engineer shall recommend the final bridge design system for the site. Thorough justification for the selection will be presented which examines each element of data, and the total estimated construction cost of the recommended design shall be indicated in the BDR. For most projects, the recommended design shall be supported by thirty percent plans (preliminary) as an appendix to the BDR.

The following sections will define, clarify and list the information necessary to produce an acceptable and reproducible set of contract documents (special provisions, bridge contract drawings, etc.) ready for advertisement and construction. The production of a bridge project commences with the Bridge Development Report (BDR) and ends with complete Contract Documents.

## 26.9.9 30% Structures Plans

The 30% Structures Plans should be submitted with the Bridge Development Report for most structures. The consultant's scope of services should clearly state at what point are the 30% plans to be submitted. If the 30% Structures Plans are submitted separately, the BDR shall contain enough information and drawings to depict the information needed to properly determine the type, size and location of the bridge. The Phase 1 Geotechnical Report and the Hydraulic Report shall be included with the submittal containing the BDR.

The 30% Structures Plans should show, as a minimum, the following information:

1. General Notes Sheet: As many general notes as possible should be included on this sheet at this stage. Subsequent additions shall be made, when necessary, as the design progresses (for example of General Notes, see **Chapter 3** of the **Structures Detailing Manual**).

2. Plan and Elevation Sheet: provide contents as required by the **Structures Detailing Manual**.
3. Substructures: For piers or intermediate bents, show substructure elements and sizes including all deviations from the typical dimensions, foundation type including element spacing and the arrangement of piles or drilled shafts.
4. Superstructure: Include cross section showing lanes, shoulders, railings, slab thickness, beam type and spacing and web depth for steel girders. If applicable, show geometric changes in shapes of various components. Also show construction phases and maintenance of traffic data, outline of the existing structure and portions to be removed, and utilities (existing and proposed as available).
5. Retaining Walls: Preliminary control drawings shall be submitted when proprietary or standard cast-in-place walls are proposed. Include control drawings for all critical temporary walls.
6. Bridge Hydraulic sheet.
7. Report of core borings.
8. Preliminary bearing type(s).
9. Proposed construction sequence and methods, indicate construction easements and methods of construction access.
10. Preliminary aesthetic details.
11. Preliminary post-tensioning layouts.
12. Preliminary foundation layouts and installation table.
13. Any other special details required by the Engineer or details which are not normally used on Department projects.

In addition to the above requirements, the following items will be included for moveable bridges: preliminary electrical and mechanical equipment layouts in plan and elevation, submarine cable routing, and single line electrical diagrams including service voltage. All equipment shall be rough sized and supporting calculations shall be submitted.

Requests for design exceptions and/or variations for structural design criteria, shall be included in the 30% Structures Plans Submittal. Design exceptions and design variations shall be approved in accordance with **Chapter 23** of this volume with concurrence of the DSDO or SDO as appropriate.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## **26.10 Bridge Development Report (BDR) Submittal Checklist**

The Bridge Development Report (BDR) Submittal Checklist (*Exhibit 26-A*) contains a list of the key supporting elements that are required for the preparation, submittal and review of a BDR. This Checklist must be included with the BDR when submitted for review and consists of the following items:

### **26.10.1 Typical Sections for Roadway and Bridge**

The approved typical sections for both the bridge and roadway are required.

### **26.10.2 Roadway Plans**

Preliminary roadway plans covering the bridge vicinity are required.

### **26.10.3 Maintenance of Traffic Requirements**

The Maintenance of Traffic Plan must show the number of required lanes as well as lane widths of all affected roadways.

### **26.10.4 Bridge Hydraulics Report and Bridge Hydraulics Recommendation Sheet**

The Bridge Hydraulics Report (BHR) shall be prepared in accordance with the *FDOT Drainage Manual*. It shall include the Bridge Hydraulic Recommendations Sheet (BHRS) and address the required hydraulic opening, clearances, scour and deck drainage requirements. In addition to design water elevations normally shown, the BHRS shall include the Mean Higher High Water (MHHW) elevation. Concurrence of the BHR by the District Drainage Engineer with the District Structures Design Engineer for Category 1 Structures and State Structures Design for Category 2 Structures is required. The BHRS is required in the Final Plans of all bridges over water.

## 26.10.5 Geotechnical Report

The Bridge Geotechnical Report (Phase I) shall be prepared in accordance with **Chapter 4** of the **Structures Design Guidelines** and the Department's **Soils and Foundation Handbook**. The report shall document a thorough investigation of all viable foundation types for the bridge and retaining walls. Concurrence of the District Geotechnical Engineer is required for Category 1 Structures and of both the State and District Geotechnical Engineers for Category 2 Structures.

## 26.10.6 Bridge Corrosion Environment Report

A Bridge Corrosion Report shall be prepared to determine the environmental classifications for the structure in accordance with the **Structures Design Guidelines** and must be approved by the District Materials Office.

## 26.10.7 Existing Bridge Plans

A set of prints of the existing (preferably as-built) bridge plans should be included for replacement structures and widenings. This is of particular importance for widenings and phase construction. These plans are not usually necessary for completely separate alignments or new interchanges unless the existing structures either will be used for new construction activities or will infringe upon the Contractor's allowed work zone.

## 26.10.8 Existing Bridge Inspection Report

A copy of the latest existing Bridge Inspection Report and Structures Inventory and Appraisal Form is required for all widenings and rehabilitations and may be required for new structures. The existing paint system(s) on all significant metal elements of existing structures shall be identified. The presence of lead-based paint and/or asbestos shall be clearly delineated.

## 26.10.9 Utility Requirements

All proposed utility attachments to the structure as well as all existing and proposed utilities in the vicinity of the structure shall be identified. The requirements of the Department's **Utility Accommodation Manual (Topic No. 710-020-001)** shall be followed regarding attachments to the structure.

## **26.10.10 Railroad Requirements**

Existing as well as future railroad requirements must be identified. This will include all clearances as well as crash wall or other construction parameters. Copies of correspondence with the Railroad Agency shall be included.

## **26.10.11 Retaining Wall and Bulkhead Requirement**

All permanent and temporary retaining wall requirements shall be identified and the proposed type of wall shall be shown. The type, location and extent of temporary walls to accommodate phased construction and/or maintenance of traffic must be identified.

For water crossings where erosion and/or wave action is anticipated, the type, location and extent of bulkhead production shall be identified. The tie-back and anchor system proposed for use shall be included in the submittal.

## **26.10.12 Lighting Requirements**

All proposed lighting on or under the structure shall be identified.

## **26.10.13 Handicap Access Requirements**

Any handicap access requirements that affect the structure shall be identified.

## **26.11 Final Plans and Specifications Preparation**

### **26.11.1 General**

Within this phase of work, for both Category 1 and 2 Structures, there are three phases of work; viz., 60% Substructure submittal or 60% Structure Plans, 90% Structure Plans and 100% Structures Plans and Specifications. For projects requiring fully designed proprietary wall plans, approved control drawings shall be submitted to the appropriate proprietary wall companies as soon as possible and no later than the 60% substructure submittal. A copy of this submission shall be sent to the DSDO or SDO as appropriate. At any time during the project development, the reviewer may require submittal of design calculations.

After each of the phases, except the 100% Structures Plans Phase, review comments from the FDOT are sent to the EOR by letter and/or a marked-up set of prints. The EOR must address each of the comments in writing and resolve each comment prior to the next submittal. The FDOT 100% Structures Plans review comments are to be handled as described above; except that unresolved comments may be handled by telephone, in some instances, if confirmed in writing. Also, for any phase, items and drawings from a preceding phase must be included. These drawings shall reflect the comments resolved from the previous phase as well as the accumulated design and drafting effort required of the current phase.

### **26.11.2 60% Substructure Submittal / 60% Structures Plans**

This submittal phase is divided into two distinct parts; viz., the 60% Substructure Submittal (required for all projects) and the 60% Structures Plans for Category 2 Structures and some Category 1 Structures.

1. **60% Substructure Submittal:**

This submittal is required for every project and should be made a part of the 60% Structures Plans phase when that phase is part of the project. The submission is only a partial plans set the purpose for which is to communicate essential project information to the Geotechnical and Hydraulic Engineers so that all remaining calculations can be performed using actual structural shapes, loads, and dimensions. Plan sheets required for this submittal include: Plan & Elevation, Bridge Hydraulic Sheet, Boring Logs, Foundation layout, Substructure Plans, and draft technical specifications.

60% Substructure Submittal Contents:

- a. Foundation Layouts
- b. Foundation Installation Notes
- c. Pile/Drilled Shaft Installation Table
- d. Footing Concrete Outlines (All Variations)
- e. Pier Concrete Outline (All Variations)
- f. Wall Plans - Control Drawings
- g. Pile Details
- h. List of Pay Items
- i. Lateral Stability Analysis Completed
- j. Phase II Geotechnical Report
- k. Draft Technical Specifications
- l. Reinforcement of Footing and Column
- m. Post-Tensioning Details
- n. Plan and Elevation Sheet
- o. Hydraulic Data Sheet

2. 60% Structures Plans:

When a 60% Structures Plans submittal is required, all comments from earlier reviews shall have been resolved. At this phase, the design should be 90% complete and the plans, 60% complete. In addition to the documents required for the 60% Substructure Submittal described above, the 60% Structures Plans shall include a list of pay items to be used and plans containing the following details as applicable: final concrete outlines of all individual components, major reinforcing steel, final post-tensioning layouts, steel box/I-girder details, segmental concrete box details, bearing details, seismic details, details of congested areas, details of unique features, and other details as required. For moveable bridges the following additional information is required: electrical calculations (for generator size, service voltage drop, short circuit, service size, automatic transfer switch, etc.), single line diagram showing equipment sizes and utilities, conduit and wire sizes, panelboard schedules, and light fixture schedules.



### 26.11.3 90% Structures Plans

Upon approval of the BDR/30% Structures Plans or 60% Structures Plans, as applicable, (90% Structures Plans) shall begin. At this stage of plans development, the EOR shall have resolved the 30% and/or 60% Structures Plans review comments and developed the plans for completion. The design and plan production shall be 100% complete. This submittal shall include prints of the completed plans, Summary of Pay Items (complete with quantities), design calculations, Final Phase II Geotechnical Report, Addendums to Hydraulic Report and, if appropriate, Technical Special Provisions. No sheet or detail should be missing at this stage.

### 26.11.4 100% Structures Plans and Specifications

After resolution of the 90% Structures Plan comments, the EOR shall make all authorized changes necessary to complete the plans and Technical Special Provisions. The EOR shall provide a list of all changes made to the Plans or Specifications that were not directly related to the 90% Structures Plans review comments. The intent is to help minimize the Department's review time and to help the Department's review office to focus on only those new items or details proposed by the EOR. This will, in turn, help to expedite the project's authorization.

The 100% Structures Plans submittal is divided into two distinct phases. First, prints of the original drawings and technical special provisions are submitted 30 days prior to the District's Plans Production Date (PPD). Secondly, once notified by the FDOT, the original drawings and all other documents are submitted to the District.

Within the 30-day period allotted, the EOR will receive notification either of additional changes/corrections to be made or to submit the Final Plans as they are. If at anytime during the 30-day period the EOR finds additional changes/corrections that should be made, the Structures Design Office responsible for plans approval (either the District Structures Design Engineer (DSDE) or the Structures Design Office (SDO) as appropriate) must be notified for discussion and resolution.

Once all changes/corrections are made, or if no changes/corrections are necessary, the EOR shall submit all his work to the District prior to or on the PPD. Submittal of this stage of the work shall include the original drawings, one record set of prints with each sheet sealed in accordance with **Chapter 19** of this volume, quantities book assembled as specified in the Department's **Basis of Estimates Handbook**, sealed Technical Special Provisions (if required), and sealed Summary of Pay Items with estimated bridge quantities.

If included in the Scope of Services, original documents in electronic media such as CADD diskettes may also be required.

## **26.12 Plans Assembly**

The ***Structures Detailing Manual*** shall be consulted for plans assembly, materials, content of plans, and other drafting information which includes the following listed items and their respective chapters:

1. Drafting Material: ***Chapter 1***
2. Standard Drawings: ***Chapter 4***
3. Drawing Numbers: ***Chapter 4***
4. Sheet Numbers: ***Chapter 4***
5. Approach Slab Sheets: ***Chapter 4***
6. Financial Project ID: ***Chapter 2***
7. Bridge Numbers: ***Chapter 2***
8. Summary of Bridge Pay Items: ***Chapter 3***
9. Engineer of Record and Consultant Name: ***Chapter 2***
10. Scales: ***Chapter 2***

## **26.13 Plans Submittal**

### **26.13.1 Schedule**

The District Project Manager is responsible for establishing the schedule of submittals with input from the EOR and either the District Structures Design Engineer for Category 1 or Structures Design Office for Category 2 projects.

### **26.13.2 Submittal Schedule**

1. BDR/30% Structures Plans
2. 60% Substructure Submittal/60% Structures Plans
3. 90% Structures Plans
4. 100% Structures Plans

## **26.14 Review for Constructability and Maintainability**

### **26.14.1 Purpose**

The purpose of this review is to provide reasonable and practical use of fabrication and construction techniques and equipment without overloading and/or overstressing components, provide for proper material handling and transportation, provide safe maintenance of traffic and provide an appropriate construction sequence. Additionally, provide features which will retard bridge deterioration, permit reasonable access to all parts of the bridge for inspection and performance evaluation and provide features to facilitate replacement of damaged and/or deteriorated bridge components.

### **26.14.2 Responsibility**

For Category 1 and 2 Structures, it will be the responsibility of the project manager or his designee to coordinate a review of both the 30% and 90% Structures Plans submittals by the appropriate District Construction and Maintenance personnel for constructability and maintainability. For Category 1 Structures, technical issues shall be resolved by the appropriate DSDE.

Additionally, for Category 2 Structures, it will be the responsibility of the Structures Design Office to coordinate a constructability and a maintainability review of the 30% Structures Plans submittal.

The Construction and Maintenance Offices should be given adequate time to perform these reviews. All comments from these reviews shall be addressed prior to the next submittal and its subsequent review.

## **26.15 Review for Biddability**

### **26.15.1 Purpose**

To prevent construction problems, the District Construction Office will review the plans to make certain the plans are clearly understandable, contain all pertinent notes and have sufficient and correct pay items. During the biddability review, the Construction Office will check for the interface with the roadway segment of the project, utility agreements and environmental permits.

### **26.15.2 Responsibility**

For Category 1 and 2 Structures, it will be the responsibility of the project manager to coordinate a review of the 90% Structures Plan submittal. This review should occur at the same time as the Phase III Plans submittal for the roadway segments of the project.

Additionally, for Category 2 Structures, it will be the responsibility of the Structures Design Office to coordinate a review of the 90% Structures Plans submittal.

The Construction Offices should be given adequate time to perform these reviews. All comments from these reviews shall be addressed prior to the 100% Structures Plans Stage submittal.

## **26.16 Bridge Load Rating**

Generally the Engineer of Record shall load rate each structure design in accordance with Department procedures as provided by the Maintenance Office and shall be completed when required by the scope of services for the project.

## **26.17 Review of Non-FDOT Funded Projects (New Construction)**

FHWA review will be required whenever a privately funded structure crosses over an interstate route, or when such work otherwise affects such a route; i.e., land closures, access, R/W changes, etc. The extent of FDOT and FHWA review is that:

1. Plans must meet all current clearance requirements (vertical and horizontal).
2. Maintenance of traffic scheme for construction must be reviewed and approved.
3. All attachments to the structure over the highway must be securely fastened.
4. Design must be sealed by a licensed professional engineer.
5. Design must be in accordance with a nationally recognized code such as AASHTO, ACI, AISC, etc.
6. Plans must meet all District permit requirements and procedures.
7. Only projects over or affecting a NHS facility shall be submitted to FHWA for approval.
8. FDOT review for these structures shall be performed by the District Structures Design Engineer for Category 1 and 2 Structures.

**Exhibit 26-A Bridge Development Report (BDR) Submittal Checklist**

Project Name \_\_\_\_\_

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

FA No. \_\_\_\_\_ FHWA Oversight ( yes no) NHS ( yes no)

Date \_\_\_\_\_ FDOT Project Manager \_\_\_\_\_

ITEMS		STATUS <sup>(b)</sup>		
1.	Typical Sections for Roadway and Bridge <sup>(a)</sup> .....	P	NA	C
2.	Roadway Plans in Vicinity of Bridge <sup>(a)</sup> .....	P	NA	C
3.	Maintenance of Traffic Requirements <sup>(a)</sup> .....	P	NA	C
4.	Bridge Hydraulics Report <sup>(c)</sup> .....	P	NA	C
5.	Geotechnical Report <sup>(c)</sup> .....	P	NA	C
6.	Bridge Corrosion Environmental Report <sup>(c)</sup> .....	P	NA	C
7.	Existing Bridge Plans.....	P	NA	C
8.	Existing Bridge Inspection Report.....	P	NA	C
9.	Utility Requirements.....	P	NA	C
10.	Railroad Requirements.....	P	NA	C
11.	Retaining Wall and Bulkhead Requirements.....	P	NA	C
12.	Lighting Requirements.....	P	NA	C
13.	Handicap Access Requirements.....	P	NA	C
14.	Other.....	P	NA	C

(a) Must be approved by District before BDR submittal.

(b) Circle appropriate status:  
 P - Provided NA - Not Applicable C - Comments attached

(c) See approval requirements for these documents elsewhere in this chapter.

## Chapter 27

### Hydraulic Data and U.S. Coast Guard Permits

27.1	Bridge Hydraulic Report (BHR) .....	27-1
27.2	Bridge Hydraulic Recommendation Sheet (BHRS) .....	27-1
27.3	U.S. Coast Guard Permit.....	27-2
27.4	Scour Considerations .....	27-3
	27.4.1 Development of Scour Design Criteria .....	27-3
	27.4.2 Submittal Requirements for Scour Design .....	27-4
27.5	Debris Accumulation.....	27-5
27.6	Widenings.....	27-6
27.7	Scour Elevations .....	27-7
Exhibits		
Exhibit 27-A	Structural Plans Development.....	27-8



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 27

### Hydraulic Data and U.S. Coast Guard Permits

#### 27.1 Bridge Hydraulic Report (BHR)

A Bridge Hydraulic Report (BHR) package consisting of the BHR and, as applicable, the Bridge Hydraulics Recommendation Sheet, bridge hydraulic calculations, and scour calculations shall be prepared as specified in **Chapter 4** of the FDOT **Drainage Manual, Topic No. 625-040-002**. The BHR package shall be processed as specified later in this chapter.

#### 27.2 Bridge Hydraulic Recommendation Sheet (BHRS)

A Bridge Hydraulic Recommendation Sheet (BHRS) for new structures and widenings shall be prepared as specified in **Chapter 4** of the FDOT **Drainage Manual**. The BHRS package shall be processed as specified later in this chapter.

## 27.3 U.S. Coast Guard Permit

For Federal Aid projects, a U.S. Coast Guard Permit may be required for the construction of a bridge or causeway over navigable waters. If a water body is tidally influenced, a permit will probably be required. The FDOT District Permit Coordinator will determine when a permit is required for a particular site. If a determination is made that a permit is not required, FHWA concurrence is necessary (see, ***Project Development and Environment Manual, Topic Number 650-000-001***).

The permit shall be prepared in accordance with the ***U.S. Coast Guard Bridge Permit Application Guide***. The official instructions for preparing and handling the permit drawings will be issued by the District Permit Coordinator. Additional information is available in ***Environmental Management Office Procedure No. 650-040-001***.

Prior to preparation of the permit, the U.S. Coast Guard office having jurisdiction over the waterway for the project shall be notified of the intent to file a permit, and preparation of the permit shall be coordinated with that same office to minimize the chance for conflict, incorrect clearances, or other requirements not being shown.

## 27.4 Scour Considerations

Scour estimates shall be developed using a multi-disciplinary approach involving the Hydraulics Engineer, the Geotechnical Engineer, and the Structures Design Engineer. Bridges and bridge culverts shall be designed to withstand the design flood without damage and should withstand the 500-year flood (super flood) without failure. Refer to the **Structures Design Guidelines, Topic No. 625-020-150**, for specific foundation design steps.

### 27.4.1 Development of Scour Design Criteria

The extent and the mitigating steps needed to resolve scour problems should be resolved early in the design process. The Bridge Development Report (BDR), or 30% structures plans submittal when a BDR is not required, is a means of addressing and resolving all major design issues early in the total design process and should also define the need for scour considerations, establish the scour parameters, and arrive at possible solutions. This can be achieved through the concerted and cooperative efforts of the Hydraulics, Geotechnical, and Structures Design Engineers. The necessary steps are as follows:

1. The Drainage Design Engineer evaluates stream stability and scour potential based on all available data, assumed soil conditions, structure positioning, and foundation designs. The Drainage Design Engineer's assumptions (hydraulic, geotechnical, and structural) and design parameters should be discussed with both the Geotechnical and Structures Design Engineers. When evaluating stream stability and scour potential, the recommendations developed from FHWA's **Hydraulic Engineering Circular (HEC) 18 and 20** should be followed as well as the design requirements provided in **Chapter 4** of the FDOT **Drainage Manual**. This work should take place early in the PD&E study where changes in the alignment could affect the severity of general scour.
2. Given the scour potential and based on known subsoil conditions and where knowledge of the local variability of the subsoil is available, the Geotechnical Engineer will then consider the possible alignments. It may be necessary to conduct exploratory work if variability of subsoil conditions are suspected but not sufficiently defined. The results of exploratory investigations should be discussed with both the Hydraulics and Structures Design Engineer, and any previous scour assumption verified and/or modified.
3. The Structures Design Engineer should provide approximate span ranges, pier configurations, and pier locations necessary for the different alternates. In addition, possible foundation types and approximate size should be developed such that the

Drainage Design Engineer can estimate local scour potentials. Conditions to be considered are:

- a. The extent and severity of scour along the alignment must be developed. For example, for bridges over a wide body of water, general scour could vary in extent and severity. It may be reasonable, therefore, to consider fewer foundations in the most severe areas (i.e., span the problem), or take appropriate steps to assure the structural integrity of the foundation in those locations.
  - b. The pile driving resistance, which must be overcome at the time of construction, may be greater than the ultimate pile capacity at a later date due to subsequent scour activity.
  - c. Likewise, design drilled shaft capacity must account for the possibility that ultimate capacity will be reduced as a result of future scour activity.
4. The Drainage, Geotechnical and Structures Design Engineers shall develop the scour potential and rate each location and furnish the results to the District Environmental Management Office (DEMO) Engineer for consideration in establishing the recommended alignment(s).
  5. The preferred alignment is established by others.
  6. The Structures Design Engineer develops more detailed calculations showing possible span arrangements and types and sizes of foundations.
  7. The three engineers review the proposed configuration to assure that scour has been properly addressed. (The Drainage Design Engineer reviews both the general and local scour potential and recommends continuation or changes).
  8. The Structures Design Engineer finalizes his configuration and proceeds with an even more detailed analysis of the foundation including the anticipated pile tip elevations. All three Engineers shall review and concur. The final results are then incorporated into the BDR or 30% Plans Stage as applicable.

The eight (8) steps described above are shown as a flow diagram in **Exhibit 27-A**.

## **27.4.2 Submittal Requirements for Scour Design**

During the 30% and 90% structures plans stage reviews, the EOR shall coordinate the reviews of the design of both the Drainage and Geotechnical Engineers to assure compliance with the results of the scour calculations. This review activity is shown diagrammatically in **Figure 27.2**. The Scour Calculations shall be processed as specified hereinafter.

## 27.5 Debris Accumulation

Debris accumulation on the upstream side of substructure units can significantly affect the flow of water and cause significant scour. The designer shall evaluate the type of vegetation upstream from the bridge and consider the probability of debris accumulation in establishing types and locations of substructure units. Special consideration shall be given to mitigating debris accumulation on substructure units.

Debris clearance criteria are specified in the FDOT *Drainage Manual, Chapter 4*.

## 27.6 Widening

The design for scour described above must be included in the widening of an existing bridge structure classified as a major widening as defined in the FDOT **Structures Design Guidelines**.

The requirement to include scour potential in the design of the widening of an existing structure classified as a minor widening will be considered by the Department on an individual basis.

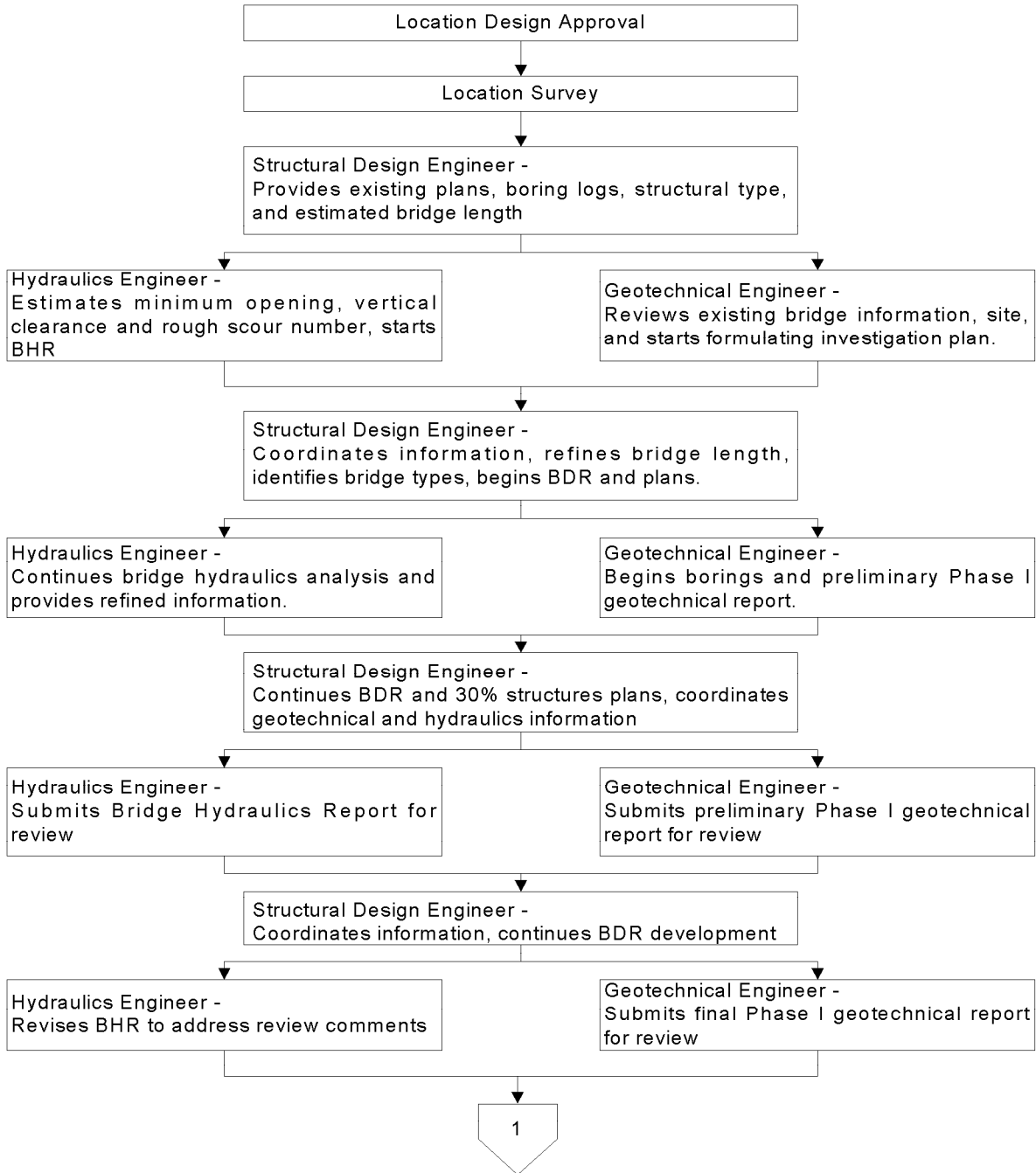
Hydraulic design procedures are specified in the FDOT **Drainage Manual, Chapter 4**.

## 27.7 Scour Elevations

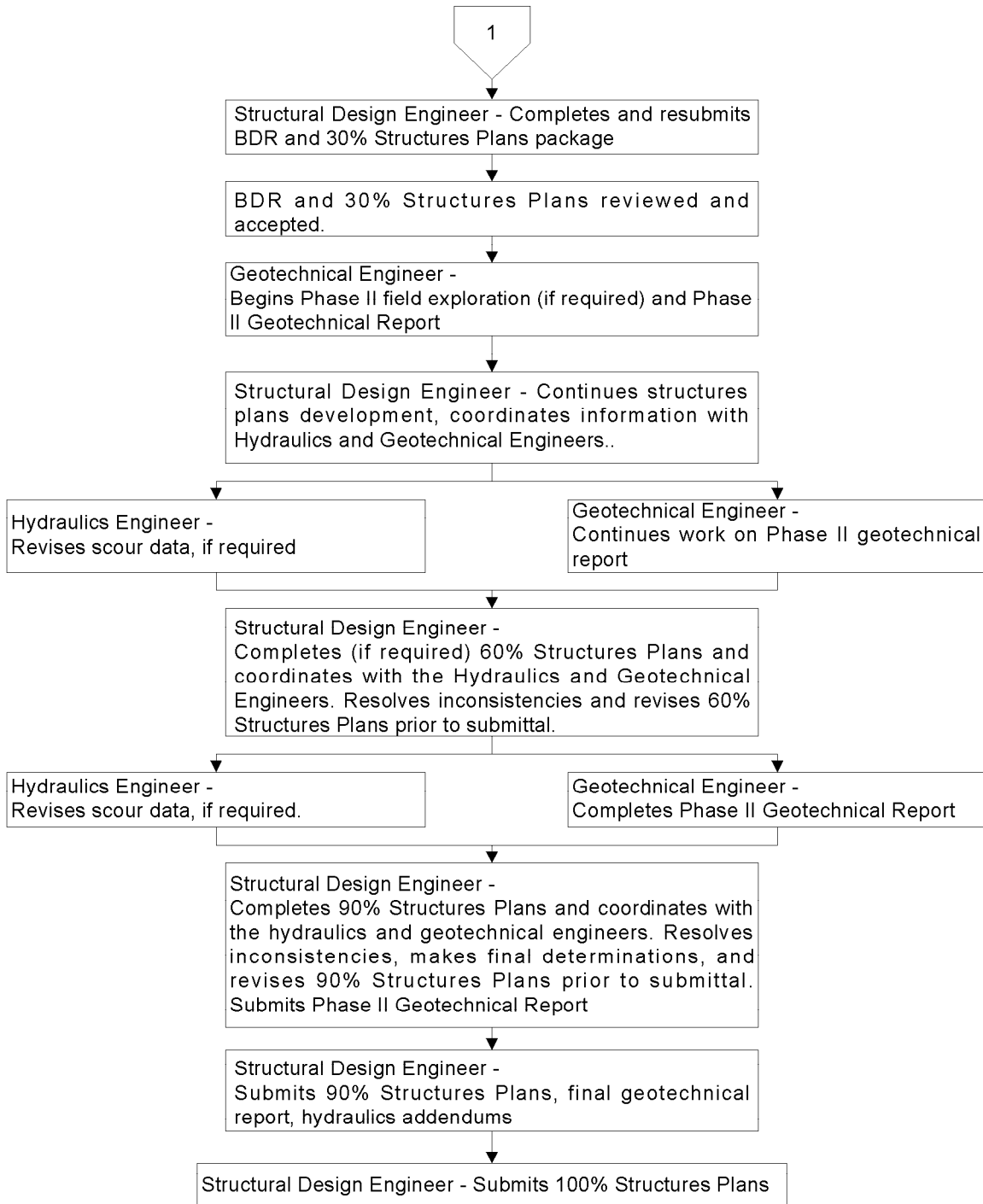
The 100-year and 500-year scour elevations are required for the design of all bridges over watercourses. In addition, the Long-Term Scour Elevation shall be established for bridge structures required to meet the extreme event vessel collision load. For more information on these scour elevations see the FDOT *Drainage Manual*.



### Exhibit 27-A Structural Plans Development Sheet 1 of 2



### Exhibit 27-A Structural Plans Development Sheet 2 of 2



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 28

### Shop and Erection Drawings

28.1	Introduction.....	28-1
28.2	Drawing Submittals Required .....	28-3
28.3	Contractor Information Required .....	28-5
28.4	Submittals Requiring a Specialty Engineer .....	28-6
28.5	Scheduling of Submittals .....	28-7
28.6	Transmittal of Submittals .....	28-8
28.6.1	General Submittal Requirements .....	28-8
28.6.2	Requirements for Department EOR .....	28-8
28.6.3	Requirements for Consultant EOR (Full Services) ....	28-9
28.6.3.1	Review by Engineer of Record only .....	28-9
28.6.3.2	Review by Engineer of Record and the Department .....	28-9
28.6.4	Requirements for Consultant EOR (Design Services Only) .....	28-10
28.6.5	Requirements for Architectural or Building Structures .....	28-10
28.6.6	Requirements for Roadway Submittal Items .....	28-10
28.6.7	Requirements for Overhead Sign Structures and Nonstandard Miscellaneous Structures.....	28-10
28.6.8	Miscellaneous Requirements and Assistance.....	28-10
28.7	Disposition of Submittals .....	28-11
28.7.1	Minor Modifications .....	28-13
28.7.2	Major Modifications .....	28-14

28.8	Segmental Bridges - Shop Drawing Checklist.....	28-15
28.8.1	Construction Methods and Sequence (Overall Scheme) .....	28-15
28.8.2	Casting Curves and Geometry Control .....	28-16
28.8.3	Post-Tensioning System and Computation .....	28-16
28.8.4	Segment Shop Drawings.....	28-18
28.8.5	Erection Equipment.....	28-19
28.9	Distribution of Submittals.....	28-21
28.10	Review of Prequalified Joint Welding Procedures.....	28-22
28.11	Submittal Activity Record (Logbook) .....	28-24
28.12	Archiving Record Shop Drawings.....	28-25

Tables

Table 28.1	FDOT Changes to Minor Modifications .....	28-13
Table 28.2	FDOT Changes to Major Modifications .....	28-14
Table 28.3	Shop Drawing Distribution Schedule.....	28-21

Figures

Figure 28.1	Record Shop Drawing Transmittal .....	28-29
-------------	---------------------------------------	-------

Exhibits

Exhibit 28-A	Shop Drawing Flow Diagram for Review by Consultant EOR Only (Structural Items) .....	28-26
Exhibit 28-B	Shop Drawing Flow Diagram for EOR & DOT Review (Structural Items) .....	28-27
Exhibit 28-C	Shop Drawing Flow Diagram for Review by DOT Only (Structural Items) .....	28-28

## Chapter 28

### Shop And Erection Drawings

#### 28.1 Introduction

Shop Drawings include all drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules, catalog data, material certifications, fabrication procedures, storage and/or transportation procedures, test results, design calculations, etc., required by the Contract Plans and Specifications and submitted by the Contractor to define some portion of the project work. While the Contract Plans and Specifications (including Supplemental and Special Provisions) define the overall nature of the project with many specific requirements, Shop Drawings provide a method for the Contractor to propose, under specification guides and for the Department to approve or reject, a particular material, product or system of accomplishing the work. Each Contractor knows best what materials and equipment can be provided more expeditiously and economically and, if an item proposed meets the contract requirements, the submission of Shop Drawings is the accepted method of approving an element of the structure while allowing flexibility in the Contractor's choice of materials and construction techniques.

It is mandatory, however, that Shop Drawings not be used to modify the construction contract time, the contract amount, the design intent nor in any way reduce the maintainability, structural integrity or load-carrying capacity of the structure or its components. Such modifications can only be administered by revised plan sheets or specifications.

Erection Drawings include all drawings, diagrams, design calculations, procedure manuals and other data required to depict in detail the proposed assembly and methods of installation of components into the project work. The work of construction is the expertise of the Contractor, who should be allowed some latitude in the use of construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures as are compatible with and will result in the project being completed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Plans and Specifications. Shop Drawings for items such as steel girders, precast/prestressed beams, miscellaneous steel, etc., usually include plan views and/or elevation views denoting the correct placement of a component in the structure. Additional Erection Drawings are required for major structures for items such as special precasting, handling and erection equipment, or the erection of concrete segmental bridges. The Engineer of Record must ensure that the Contract Plans and Special Provisions for the project clearly define all requirements for submittal of Erection Drawings.

The following are definitions used herein:

1. **Engineer:** As defined in *FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, Section 1*.
2. **Engineer of Record:** As defined in the *FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, Section 1*.
3. **Specialty Engineer:** As defined in the *FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, Section 1*.
4. **Consultant:** As defined in the *FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, Section 1*.
5. **Resident Engineer:** The Department's local area representative who reports directly to the District Construction Engineer and may be either a Departmental employee of the District or an employee of an engineering firm which is also serving as the Department's CEI (Construction Engineering and Inspection) Group. The Resident Engineer is the principal representative of the Department for a project at the District level. It shall be noted that neither the Resident Engineer nor the CEI Group is involved with the Shop/Erection Drawing review process but are recipients, only, of approved Shop/Erection Drawings.
6. **Architect of Record:** As defined in the *FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, Section 1*.
7. **"Ballooning":** The contractor's use of minimum 1/16 inch wide lines to "balloon" or "cloud" (encircle) notes or details on drawings, design calculations, etc., in order to explicitly and prominently call out any deviations from the Contract Plans or Specifications. The Engineer of Record may also use "ballooning" to make note of any limitations to their submittal review and disposition of shop and erection drawings.
8. **Record Shop Drawings:** The Department's official record copy of all Shop drawings, Erection Drawings, calculations, manuals, correspondence/ transmittal files and submittal activity record (logbook).
9. **Department Review Office:** The office or other Department entity responsible for performing the Department's review, record keeping, disposition and distribution of Shop and Erection Drawings.
10. **Final Review Office:** The Department Review Office or the Engineer of Record performing the final review and making final distribution of shop drawings which have been reviewed.

## 28.2 Drawing Submittals Required

Generally, Shop Drawings shall be required for items which require fabrication at a location other than the project job site.

Unless otherwise noted in the Special Provisions for the project, Shop Drawings are not required for reinforcing steel for cast-in-place concrete which is completely detailed and listed on the Contract Plans or on the Department's Standard Index Drawings. A copy of reinforcing bar lists shall be forwarded by the Contractor to the Department's Resident Engineer for record purposes.

Components such as traffic signal equipment, steel or aluminum light poles, concrete strain poles and high mast lighting may not require submittal of Shop Drawings due to having prior certification by the Department. The Contractor may contact the Department's Resident Engineer or the appropriate Department Review Office for clarification of any item.

Material certifications are typically submitted by the Contractor to the Resident Engineer whom forwards the certifications to the State Materials Engineer in Gainesville.

Except as otherwise stipulated in the Specifications, precast and/or prestressed concrete items other than those constructed from standard drawings require the submission of Shop Drawings.

Shop Drawing submittals for structural steel shall include complete shop and field details including a bill of materials, all dimensions, bolt and hole sizes, camber diagrams, web cutting diagrams, weld symbols, surface preparation and shop paint. Welding procedures and welder qualifications shall be submitted in conjunction with the drawings.

In general, drawing submittals for any item shall follow industry standards in regard to the quantity and quality of information contained. As a minimum, the information shown on approved shop drawings should be complete enough to allow for fabrication of the item without referencing any other document. The Department shall expect submittals to meet or exceed the quality level of previously approved submittals of a similar nature.

During component fabrication and construction phases of the project, the Contractor may elect to submit to the Engineer, for consideration or approval, repair procedures or disposition requests due to errors or omissions in the work. The information required and the procedure to be followed by the Contractor in initiating such requests shall be in accordance with the FDOT **Specifications** or as determined by the Engineer.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 28.3 Contractor Information Required

All Shop Drawings and Erection Drawings shall contain the following minimum information: the complete Financial Project Identification, drawing number, drawing title, a title block showing the name of the fabricator or producer and the Contractor for which the work is being done, the initials of the person(s) responsible for the drawing, and the date on which the work was performed.

The drawing shall also contain, adjacent to the title block, information which describes the location of the item(s) within the project. This information may consist of the Contract Drawing number, the station at which the item is positioned (as may be the case for sign structures or handrails), or the Site at which it is to be installed.

Before submission of each drawing, the Contractor shall have determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, specified performance criteria, installation requirements, materials, catalog numbers and similar data with respect thereto, and shall have reviewed and coordinated each drawing with other Shop Drawings and with the requirements of the Contract Plans and Specifications. The Contractor shall have stamped and initialed each sheet giving specific written indication of compliance with the above described specific responsibilities with respect to review of the submission.

The Contractor's approval signifies that the submittal meets the requirements of the Contract Plans and Specifications and conforms to field dimensions or other potential deviations from the established project documents. Drawing submittals received without stamping by the Contractor shall be returned for resubmittal.

At the time of each submission, the Contractor shall have given specific written notice (as in the transmittal letter) of each variation the Shop/Erection Drawings may have from the requirements of the Contract Plans and Specifications. In addition, the drawings shall contain a specific notation which explicitly and prominently calls out any deviation. Approval of Shop/Erection Drawings will not constitute nor be considered grounds for approval of a variation in which the project requirements are affected unless specifically so noted in the Department's approval comments as returned with the drawing submittal.

## **28.4 Submittals Requiring a Specialty Engineer**

In general, and when so permitted in the Specifications, if a Shop/Erection Drawing submittal reflects any changes in the design and/or details of the Contract Plans, the Contractor shall have had a Specialty Engineer seal one (1) print of each drawing affected as well as the cover sheet of one (1) copy of any design calculations required. The Contract Plans and Specifications (including Supplemental and Special Provisions) shall contain instructions regarding requirements of a Specialty Engineer for items such as concrete segmental bridge work, loads imposed on an existing structure, or certain construction procedures and/or equipment.

Submittals which introduce engineering input to the project, such as defining the configuration or structural capacity of prefabricated components or assemblies not contained in the Contract Plans, shall require the services of a Specialty Engineer. Drawings prepared solely as a guide for component fabrication/ installation and requiring no engineering input, such as reinforcing steel drawings and catalog information on standard products, do not require the use of a Specialty Engineer.

When required, the Specialty Engineer shall properly seal on one (1) record print of each drawing and the cover sheet of one (1) record copy of calculations or computer printouts. Computer printouts are an acceptable substitute for manual computations provided they are accompanied by sufficient documentation of design assumptions and identified input and output information to permit their proper evaluation. Such information shall bear the seal of the Specialty Engineer as verification that he has accepted responsibility for the results.

It is emphasized that a Specialty Engineer may not affix his seal to any item not prepared under his direct supervision and control.

When a submittal requires a Specialty Engineer, the sealed prints and calculations will ultimately be retained by the Department, as the official, record Shop Drawing. See also Transmittal of Submittals hereinafter.

## **28.5 Scheduling of Submittals**

Review of the submittal requirements and procedures at the outset of the construction contract is of benefit both to the Contractor and the Department. Therefore, the Contractor may have been requested by the Department to provide a Working Schedule for Shop/Erection Drawing submittals.

The preparation of a Working Schedule will bring to the attention of the Contractor the number of submittals required and at times may denote items about which the Contractor may wish the Department's advice as to the manner in which the design is to be implemented. Adherence to the Working Schedule will make for a smoother working relationship between all parties involved in the project, and proper planning should reduce the possibility of a large number of submittals being forwarded for review concurrently.

The Contractor is generally required to schedule submissions such that a minimum of 45 calendar days is allowed for review by the Department for routine work of which the first 30 calendar days are allotted to prime review by the Engineer of Record. However, for most routine submittals, a time period of 14 to 21 calendar days should be adequate. For work of more complexity, the review time may be adjusted proportionately to the complexity of the work. Allowance must also be made for potential resubmittals, and the Contractor normally is advised by the Department to consider a 75 to 90 calendar days total lead-time for submittals prior to the need for fabrication or construction work.

The Contractor must make submittals for approval with such promptness as to cause no delay in his fabrication and construction schedules. Only in emergency cases should special consideration be requested. If a submittal requires resubmission, an approximate additional 30 calendar days should have been scheduled by the contractor for approval of the resubmittal of which the first 15 calendar days are allotted to prime review by the Engineer of Record.

## 28.6 Transmittal of Submittals

Submittal of Shop/Erection Drawings shall be made to the designated office, as applicable, only by the Contractor for the project. In that the Department's legal contracts and documents are with the Contractor, submittals shall not be accepted directly from a subcontractor or fabricator. Situations may occur when a subcontractor or fabricator is allowed to make an advance submittal for review; however, the actual submittal to be stamped and approved must follow from the Contractor with the Contractor's stamp. Subcontractors and fabricators are encouraged to contact the appropriate Department Review Office for guidance or advice at any time. **Exhibits 28-A** thru **28-C** show the flow of submittals during the review process. All transmittals of submittals between parties shall be accomplished by OVERNIGHT DELIVERY.

The Special Provisions for the project may denote the amount of drawings, etc. to be submitted and the procedure to be followed. Furthermore, the office to which the Contractor shall transmit his submittal and the procedure to be followed may also be defined during the preconstruction conference for the project. In the absence of such instructions, the following generally applies:

### 28.6.1 General Submittal Requirements

On projects where the Engineer of Record is a Consultant to the Department, and unless otherwise directed at the project's preconstruction conference, the Contractor shall have submitted two (2) sets of xerographic reproduces directly to the consulting Engineer of Record. On projects where the Department is the Engineer of Record, the Contractor shall have submitted two (2) sets of xerographic reproduces directly to the appropriate Department Review Office. For design calculations, four (4) complete sets, including computer printouts, shall be submitted with the drawings. All drawings shall be on sheets not larger than 24" x 36". The Contractor's letter of transmittal should always accompany the drawings and a copy should always have been sent to the Department's Resident Engineer. On those projects where the Engineer of Record is a Consultant to the Department, and the Department will be reviewing the shop drawings, a second copy of the Contractor's letter should also have been sent to the Department's Review Office.

### 28.6.2 Requirements for Department EOR

On projects where the Engineer of Record is Department in-house staff, submittals shall have been transmitted to the appropriate Department Review Office as directed at the project's preconstruction conference. The Department's Review Office is the principal

contact group and "clearing house" for all construction submittals and information desired by the Contractor regarding structural, mechanical or electrical items.

## **28.6.3 Requirements for Consultant EOR (Full Services)**

### **28.6.3.1 Review by Engineer of Record only**

On projects where the Engineer of Record is a Consultant to the Department and has been retained by the Department to review construction items without follow-up review by the Department, the Consultant will assume the responsibility of the owner's agent. The reviewing consultant is encouraged to communicate with fabricators, contractors, specialty engineers and the Department's Structures Office to clarify concerns before returning the submittal to the contractor. The reviewing consultant shall also contact the Department's Structures Office if unsure of the Department's position on certain issues during the review. Submittals should not be stamped "resubmit" if "approved as noted" will suffice. Submittals (unless otherwise noted below) shall have been transmitted by the Contractor directly to the Consultant. Upon receipt of the submittal, the Consultant shall perform the review, note any comments directly on the sheets, make the appropriate numbers of copies, indicate his disposition by stamping the sheets as described hereinafter, retain one set of prints for his files and, finally, make distribution as described hereinafter. The original prints and calculations form the official, record Shop Drawing submittal and must be retained by the Engineer of Record and forwarded to the Department at the end of the project.

### **28.6.3.2 Review by Engineer of Record and the Department**

On projects where the Engineer of Record is a Consultant to the Department and has been retained by the Department to review construction items, submittals (unless otherwise noted below) shall have been transmitted by the Contractor directly to the Consultant. Upon receipt of the submittal, the Consultant shall perform the review, note any comments directly on the sheets, indicate his disposition by stamping the sheets as described hereinafter, retain one set of prints for his files and, finally, transmit the original sheets to the Department's Review Office for review and distribution. When submittals require a Specialty Engineer, the original prints and calculations form the official, record Shop Drawing submittal and must be retained by the Department. Upon completion of his review, the Consultant shall transfer his comments to the sealed sheets, indicate his disposition and transmit them to the Department as described above.

## **28.6.4 Requirements for Consultant EOR (Design Services Only)**

On projects where the Engineer of Record is a Consultant to the Department but has not been retained by the Department to review construction items, submittals (unless otherwise noted below) shall have been transmitted by the Contractor directly to the Department's Review Office as directed at the project's preconstruction conference.

## **28.6.5 Requirements for Architectural or Building Structures**

Submittals related to Architectural or Building Structures, such as Rest Area Pavilions and Maintenance Warehouses, shall have been made according to the requirements of the Special Structures Group, Structures Design Office, Florida Department of Transportation, 605 Suwannee Street, MS 33, Tallahassee, FL 32399-0450, Phone (850) 414-4285.

## **28.6.6 Requirements for Roadway Submittal Items**

All submittals related to roadway plans such as lighting, attenuators, retained earth systems, etc. (except bridge items such as poles and bracket arms, or as noted below) shall be distributed in accordance with the ***Construction Project Administration Manual (Topic No. 700-000-000)*** for the component involved or as otherwise directed at the project's preconstruction conference. Submittals related to bridge items shall have been transmitted to the Department as previously described in this section.

## **28.6.7 Requirements for Overhead Sign Structures and Nonstandard Miscellaneous Structures**

Submittals concerning overhead sign structures shall have been transmitted in accordance with the General and Structures Requirements above.

## **28.6.8 Miscellaneous Requirements and Assistance**

For items not specified above or for which questions may arise as to submittal requirements, the Contractor should be advised to contact the appropriate Department Review Office. For submittals of any type, the Contractor shall always have transmitted a copy of the letter of transmittal to the Resident Engineer.

## 28.7 Disposition of Submittals

The approval or disapproval of submittals by the Reviewer shall be indicated by one of the following designations: "APPROVED" (no further action required), "APPROVED AS NOTED" (make corrections noted - no further submittal required), "RESUBMIT" (make corrections noted and resubmit for approval), or "NOT APPROVED" (rejected - do not resubmit the concept or component as submitted).

The disposition designation shall be indicated on each and every drawing sheet, or on the cover sheet of calculations, by the use of a red ink stamp. Stamps shall identify the approving groups, such as the Engineer of Record - Consultant, the Department's assigned commercial inspection agency and/or Department personnel, and the date. All notations or corrections made on the approval prints shall be consistently marked on all drawings.

All Consultants reviewing submittals shall red ink stamp and initial each item as noted above with the firm's appropriate stamp. Consultants must declare any limitations to the extent of their review and approval by the terminology of their standard stamp and/or by additional written and "ballooned" notes on the submittal items. When the Engineer of Record is a Consultant and when he retains a Subconsultant to assist in the submittal review, the Engineer of Record shall signify disposition of the submittal as noted above with his firm's appropriate stamp prior to distribution or prior to transmitting it by overnight delivery to the Department. In this event it is the Engineer of Record's prerogative to also require a disposition stamp by his Subconsultant.

When a submittal contains deviations from the Contract Plans and Specifications, the Consultant and the Department shall determine as to whether or not a Supplemental Agreement or Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP) is required. If either procedure is required to be initiated, the submittal shall not be reviewed until a decision is finalized.

When the Engineer of Record receives a submittal that is not in accordance with the requirements of this chapter, the Contractor shall be advised to resubmit immediately with the corrections or additions necessary.

Review and approval by the Engineer of Record (Consultant and/or Department) shall be for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the Contract Plans and Specifications (including Supplemental and Special Provisions). The review and approval shall not extend to means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction (except where a specific means, method, technique, sequence or procedure of construction is indicated in or required by the



Contract Plans and Specifications) or programs incident thereto. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

Disposition of Shop Drawing submittals by the Engineer of Record for construction and erection equipment including beams and winches, launch gantry, erection trusses, forms, falsework, midspan and/or longitudinal closures, lifting devices, temporary bearing fixity devices, cranes, form travelers, segment carrying equipment and stability devices shall be either "NOT APPROVED" if deemed to be unacceptable or, if acceptable, shall be "APPROVED AS NOTED" with the following note included on the submittal drawings:

"Drawings are acceptable for coordination with, relationship to, and effects upon the permanent bridge; but have not been reviewed for self-adequacy. Adequacy and intended function remain the sole responsibility of the Contractor."

Unless otherwise specifically designated in a Consultant's Scope of Services or required by the Department, the Engineer of Record is not responsible for accepting or reviewing calculations or drawings pertaining to construction formwork. These documents should normally have been submitted to the Resident Engineer or, in the event they are erroneously transmitted to the Engineer of Record, should be immediately rerouted to the Resident Engineer.

On projects when the Engineer of Record is a Consultant to the Department and the Department will also be reviewing shop drawings the Department will perform a second, confirmation review of the submittal upon receipt of the Consultants transmittal of reviewed drawings which have been stamped for disposition as noted above. The primary purposes of the Department's review include: conformance with FDOT policy, standards, etc.; uniformity of disposition with similar submittals; accuracy and completeness of the Consultant's review; and attention to specific details, areas of work, etc. that have experienced recurring problems during fabrication and/or construction.

When the Specialty Engineer is required by the Contract Plans and specifications to perform a portion of the design of the project, the Engineer of Record shall confirm that:

1. The Specialty Engineer is qualified to design and prepare the submittal.
2. The specified number of submittals have been furnished.
3. A minimum of one (1) set of Shop Drawings and the cover sheet of one (1) set of calculations have been correctly sealed by the Specialty Engineer.

4. The Specialty Engineer has understood the intent of the design and has used the correct specified criteria.
5. The configuration set forth in the submittal is consistent with that of the Contract Documents.
6. The Specialty Engineer's methods, assumptions and approach to the design are in keeping with accepted engineering practices.
7. The Specialty Engineer's design does not contain any gross inadequacies that would jeopardize or threaten public safety.

A detailed review of design calculations is not required, and a detailed review of dimensions (other than at interface areas with other work) is not required.

When a submittal has been returned as "RESUBMIT", the Contractor shall have made corrections as required and shall have returned the required number of corrected copies for review. All revisions to a drawing, etc., shall have been noted with a symbol consisting of the revision number within a triangle located next to revised area. The Contractor must have directed specific attention in writing to revisions other than the corrections called for by the Department on previous submittals.

**Exhibits 28-A** thru **28-C** show the submittal and distributional flow of a shop drawing transmittal. When the Department concurs with the Consultant's review and disposition of the submittal, the Department will stamp and distribute the submittal including a record copy for the Consultant. Should the Department's review and/or disposition of the submittal differ from that of the Consultant, the final disposition of the submittal will be resolved in accordance with the following procedures:

### 28.7.1 Minor Modifications

The submittal will be processed when notations not involving design decisions are added, modified or deleted and when the disposition of the submittal remains unchanged or changed only in accordance with the following **Table 28.1**:

**Table 28.1 FDOT Changes to Minor Modifications**

From	To
Approved	Approved as Noted
Approved as Noted	Approved
Resubmit	Not Approved
Not Approved	Resubmit

In this event, the Department will notify the Consultant of the modifications, document the notification in the project's shop drawing file, process and distribute the submittal and furnish the Consultant with a record copy.

## 28.7.2 Major Modifications

The submittal will be returned to the Consultant for re-review when notations involving significant design decisions must be added, deleted or modified, when the submittal's review is deemed by the Department to be incomplete or require significantly more work or when the disposition of the submittal requires one of the following **Table 28.2**:

**Table 28.2 FDOT Changes to Major Modifications**

From	To
Approved or Approved as Noted	Not Approved or Resubmit
Not Approved or Resubmit	Approved or Approved as Noted

As above, the Department will notify the Consultant and document the notification. The submittal will be returned to the Consultant for re-review and return to the Department.

## **28.8 Segmental Bridges - Shop Drawing Checklist**

The following list is for guidance only. There may be occasions when particular details and needs are more or less than this list:

### **28.8.1 Construction Methods and Sequence (Overall Scheme)**

This should be the first submittal as it lays out the Contractor's philosophy and overall approach to the project. It should cover:

1. Overall construction schedule (program) for the duration of the contract. Milestone dates should be clearly shown - for example, the need to open a structure by a certain time for traffic operations.
2. Overall construction sequence. The order in which each of the structures is to be built and the sequence in which individual spans or cantilevers are constructed.
3. The general location of any physical obstacles to construction that might impose restraints to the sequence and an outline of how the Contractor intends to avoid or handle such obstacles as he builds the structure. Obstacles might include road and rail clearances, temporary diversions, transmission lines, pipelines, local property rights, etc.
4. The general location of any temporary construction obstacles and how these are to be handled. Such might include excavation or cofferdams for an adjacent structure, piling rig or other plant clearances, temporary haul road clearances, etc.
5. The appropriate location of any temporary stability towers or other falsework.
6. The approximate location of any special lifting equipment in relation to the structure including clearances required for operation of that equipment; i.e., crane positions and operating radii.
7. The conceptual position of any special construction devices such as launching girders, support trusses, pier brackets, stability devices, beam, and winch type equipment, etc. (with outline details only at this time) of how the Contractor intends to attach such equipment to the structure. (The precise details of such attachments would be covered under later detailed submittals).
8. Outline proposals for the lifting, handling and storage of segments. (Again, precise details and any extra reinforcement provisions, etc. would be covered under later detailed submittals.)

9. Any other information pertinent to the Contractor's scheme at this time.

The above information should be in as concise form as possible on one or two drawings. The intent is to provide an overall integrated picture of the Contractor's intentions. As such, these drawings are for information only and it should be made quite clear that the delivery and receipt of such drawings does not constitute approval to the details implied therein. They are to be accepted for information only and not approved. However, the Contractor's subsequent detailed submittals should comply with the overall concepts.

### **28.8.2 Casting Curves and Geometry Control**

Casting curves contain the superstructure geometry and compensations for deflections arising as a result of the construction sequence, methods, temporary loads, temporary supports, creep and shrinkage, etc. Camber diagrams are only the deflection compensation portions of the casting curves. Casting curves and camber diagrams may be presented in numerically tabular or graphic forms. The format is not critical, but the information given should be clear and concise, leaving no room for doubt or misinterpretation. Examples and illustrations should be shown to help clarify the data presented. Casting curves and camber should be generated according to the Contractor's proposed methods, sequence, schedule and equipment of the overall scheme. Changes to his overall scheme might require recomputation and submittal of new casting curves and camber.

Geometry control is the process of making field observations and measurements in the casting cell and combining these with the theoretical casting curve data to produce the required structural shape, segment by segment. It involves accurate instrument work and geometry calculations using graphical or computerized methods.

It is normal practice for the geometry control system to be explained in a manual prepared by or on behalf of the Contractor.

### **28.8.3 Post-Tensioning System and Computation**

Contractors usually sublet this work to specialty suppliers. There are some differences of detail between suppliers but, by and large, these are not significant. Usually the differences are only in the shape and size of anchorage devices and jacks for a given tendon size and load.

The Post-Tensioning proposals should show and be checked for:

1. Dimensions and details of anchorage devices.
2. Jack sizes and required clearances.
3. Special jack handling devices with all necessary inserts or fixtures.
4. Proposals for threading of tendons (i.e., use of steel wire pulling socks, welded pulling eyes, etc.).
5. Proposals for cutting off strand which has been affected by any heat from welding.
6. Proposals for cutting of surplus strand prior to and after stressing.
7. Information on the jacking equipment, pumps and dial gauges, etc.
8. The storage of materials and protection from corrosion.
9. Assumptions for the stressing operation, coefficient of friction, wobble factor, elastic modulus or stress - strain curve, anchorage draw-in (wedge set), etc.
10. A summary of the jacking loads, tendon forces, and extensions, before and after seating the wedges.
11. A stressing sequence and schedule for groups of tendons.
12. Post-tensioning duct profiles, vent locations, grout injection port locations and geometric layout used in the computations.
13. Proposed recording sheets.
14. Details, sequence, schedule, operations and stressing forces for any temporary post-tensioning.
15. Any special requirements for bursting rebar or extra rebar to restrain radial forces if the profiles are different from those shown in the contract plans.
16. Details for the means of securing the anchorage hardware in position until the concrete has been cast.
17. Details for the splicing of ducts to ensure that a smooth profile is maintained and that any connections are grout-tight.
18. Details of any special bar or tendon couplers such as those to show adequate clearance for couplers when the tendon elongates with stressing, etc.
19. Details for post-tensioning duct supports with regard to strength and frequency to maintain a good profile during concreting.
20. Details of grout joints such as the locations at all high points and at sufficiently close spacing to ensure a good grouting operation.

21. Information on proposed grouting procedures such as grout mix including admixtures, grout pump and delivery system, sequence of grouting (work "uphill" in one direction along a tendon), backup facilities, grouting pressures, etc.
22. Details of anchorage inspection, duct inspection, tendon and anchorage void repairs, anchorage protection systems, deck penetration repairs, etc.

The post-tensioning supplier might not be responsible for all of the above information. Some of it, particularly that relating to rebar, hardware, ducts, vents, etc. should be covered on the segment detail shop drawings. Also, the grouting operation (Item "U") might be by a separate subcontractor. Nevertheless, the Contractor is responsible for coordinating all this activity and for making sure that all the information and details are integrated. It should be noted that several items are more for the benefit of field personnel than part of the shop drawing review.

## **28.8.4 Segment Shop Drawings**

The main purpose of these drawings is to bring all the information together in a format from which the parts can be easily assembled. This involves the integration of diverse details from many areas. Typically the following should be checked:

1. Segment number and direction of erection.
2. All dimensions including widths, lengths, thicknesses, tapers, fillets, radii, working points, post-tensioning duct locations and profiles, clearances, rebar spacings, blockouts, positions of embedded items, holes, grout, vents, anchorage positions and orientations.
3. All reinforcement including bar sizes, shapes, locations, spacings, covers, clearances for the largest sized aggregate, clearances for cumulative tolerances on bending and fixing dimensions, avoidance of conflicts with post-tensioning ducts, anchorages and hardware including any special lifting or equipment connections. As a general rule, rebar should be adjusted to avoid post-tensioning and other important embedments.
4. Clearances for post-tensioning jacks, including temporary post-tensioning bar jacks. Make sure there is enough room to thread a jack onto a post-tensioning tendon remembering that most center hole jacks require 3 to 5 feet of strand projecting out beyond the anchorage. Likewise with bar tendons, especially in blockouts, there has to be room for the jack to be placed over and threaded onto the extended section of bar beyond its anchorage.

5. Clearances for lifting devices. Check that there is room to place anchor plates and nuts on the bottom side of any bars connecting through the slabs to a lifting device, etc.
6. Anchorage and Buttress Detail. Check that there is adequate rebar in these zones for any bursting and local radial forces. This should be covered on the design drawings but might have to be modified as a result of the Contractor's choice of post-tensioning system. The rebar should not cause congestion and there should be adequate spacing for concrete placement and compaction.
7. Casting of blockouts regarding material to be used, reinforcing to be extended from the segments, and time of casting in relation to erection stressing, etc.

### **28.8.5 Erection Equipment**

These drawings should be reviewed for procedure and structural effect on the structure. The shop and erection drawings shall be prepared by the Contractor's Specialty Engineer and will be reviewed as described in **Sections 28.4** and **28.7** of this chapter.



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 28.9 Distribution of Submittals

If the initial review and approval of a submittal is performed by a Consultant to the Department, the Consultant shall retain one (1) set of materials for his files and transmit the prints (or other sets of calculations or multiple sets of prints) to the Department's Review Office.

Distribution by overnight delivery is made in accordance with the following **Table 28.3**:

**Table 28.3 Shop Drawing Distribution Schedule**

DISTRIBUTION	FDOT - EOR	Consultant – EOR With Department Review	Consultant – EOR Without Department Review
FDOT Shop Drawing Review Office File	1 Set Original Prints + 1 Set Calcs	1 Set Original Prints + 1 Set Calcs	N/A
Engineer of Record	N/A	1 Set Prints+ 1 Set Calcs	1 Set Original Prints + 1 Set Prints + 1 Set Calcs
FDOT Resident Engineer	2 Sets Prints	2 Sets Prints	2 Sets Prints
Prime Contractor	3 Sets Prints + 1 Set Calcs	3 Sets Prints + 1 Set Calcs	3 Sets Prints + 1 Set Calcs

When precast/prestressed concrete components are involved, the Department's District Prestress Engineer is furnished two (2) sets and the Department's Materials and Research Office (Gainesville) is furnished one (1) set of prints. When structural steel components are involved, the Department's Assigned Commercial Inspection Agency (ACIA) is furnished two (2) sets.

The Contractor shall be responsible for transmitting a copy of the returned submittal to the appropriate subcontractor or fabricator.

When approval of a submittal is denied ("RESUBMIT" or "NOT APPROVED"), distribution of the submittal shall be made to the FDOT Review Office's File, when the Department is reviewing shop drawings, and the Prime Contractor only, with a copy of the transmittal letter to the Department's Resident Engineer.

## 28.10 Review of Prequalified Joint Welding Procedures

The shop drawing review process of all prequalified joint welding procedures will be a dual role of responsibility between the Engineer of Record and the Department's Assigned Commercial Inspection Agency (ACIA). The FDOT has now consulted with an ACIA to perform the review of all welding procedures. It is the intent that all Engineers of Record understand their role in the review process, the role of the ACIA, and the correct transmittal process of the welding procedures.

Upon receiving a submittal consisting of prequalified joint welding procedures from the Contractor, the Engineer of Record shall immediately transmit a copy by overnight mail to the ACIA. The EOR shall then review the procedures in conjunction with the drawings to which they pertain. The review shall determine whether or not the Fabricator's welding procedures conform with the concept of the original design described within the contract plans. A comparison shall be made of the plate sizes, types of welds, weld designations, weld sizes, grades of materials, etc. as described and illustrated in the Fabricator's prequalified joint welding procedures to those described in the contract plans. Determining whether or not these elements parallel those of the design intentions are the interests and responsibility of the Engineer of Record during his review.

Upon the completion of his review, the Engineer of Record shall indicate his disposition of procedures in accordance with the procedures in this chapter and, if the procedures are acceptable, transmit them by overnight delivery directly to the appropriate Department Review Office. If the stamp signifies the procedures as unacceptable, the Department will return them to the Contractor for resubmittal, and the same transmittal procedure will begin again. If the Department is not reviewing shop drawings, the Engineer of Record will make the distribution by overnight mail in accordance with **Section 28.9**.

When the Department is the Engineer of Record, approved procedures are transmitted to the ACIA for review and unacceptable procedures are returned to the Contractor for resubmittal.

Upon receiving a submittal of procedures from the Engineer of Record, the ACIA will perform a review of the proposed shop welding fabrication of the structural steel for general compliance with the **AASHTO/AWS Bridge Welding Code**. The ACIA's responsibility during their review will be to determine whether or not the Fabricator has provided the correct information needed to perform the weld called for on the procedures. Upon this determination, the ACIA will stamp the procedures accordingly and transmit them by overnight delivery to the appropriate Department Review Office or Engineer of Record making final distribution. If the ACIA determines the procedures to be unacceptable, the

FDOT/Engineer of Record will transmit the submittal back to the Contractor by overnight delivery for resubmittal and the same transmittal procedures will begin again.

It is extremely important that the Engineer of Record completes his review of the procedures as quickly as possible and promptly transmit them by overnight delivery to the appropriate Department Review Office, if applicable. Similarly, the ACIA shall complete its review of the procedures as quickly as possible and promptly transmit them by overnight delivery to the Final Review Office.

## 28.11 Submittal Activity Record (Logbook)

The Final Review Office is responsible for maintaining a Submittal Activity Record (Logbook) on each project reviewed by the office. The logbook shall be updated each day that any Shop Drawing submittal activity occurs.

The following minimum data shall be entered in the Logbook for each submittal:

1. Financial Project ID and State Project Number (if assigned).
2. Submittal Number.
3. Description of Submittal.
4. Number of Sheets in the Submittal.
5. Number of Pages of Calculations, in Reports, in Manuals, etc.
6. Date Transmitted by Contractor to the Engineer of Record.
7. Date Transmitted by Engineer of Record (when EOR is not the final reviewer ) to the Final Review Office.
8. Date Distributed by the Final Review Office to the Contractor.
9. Date Transmitted by the Department's ACIA to the Final Review Office.
10. Disposition as either "A" (Approved), "AN" (Approved as Noted), "R" (Resubmit) or "NA" (Not Approved).

The Logbook is an historical record of the activity devoted to an individual submittal as well as that for the project as a whole. It can serve as a verification of review time, to respond to inquiries of a particular submittal's status and as a record of manpower effort to aid in estimating and allocating future workload.

## 28.12 Archiving Record Shop Drawings

Upon completion and acceptance of a construction project by the Department (usually by receipt of a written Notice of Acceptance), the Final Review Office, within thirty (30) days, shall transmit the Record Shop Drawings to the appropriate offices, as dictated by district practice in the District in which the project is located. The Record Shop Drawings may include some or all of the following documents:

1. Shop Drawings
2. Erection Drawings
3. Calculations
4. Manuals
5. Project Files of Shop Drawing transmittal letters, etc.
6. Submittal Activity Record (Logbook printout)

The Final Review Office shall complete the Record Shop Drawing Transmittal (see **Figure 28.1**), Form No. 625-020-119-i, in triplicate, retaining one (1) copy and transmitting two (2) copies, along with the Record Shop Drawings described above, to the appropriate office. The Record Shop Drawing Transmittal describes all the Record Shop Drawing documents being transmitted.

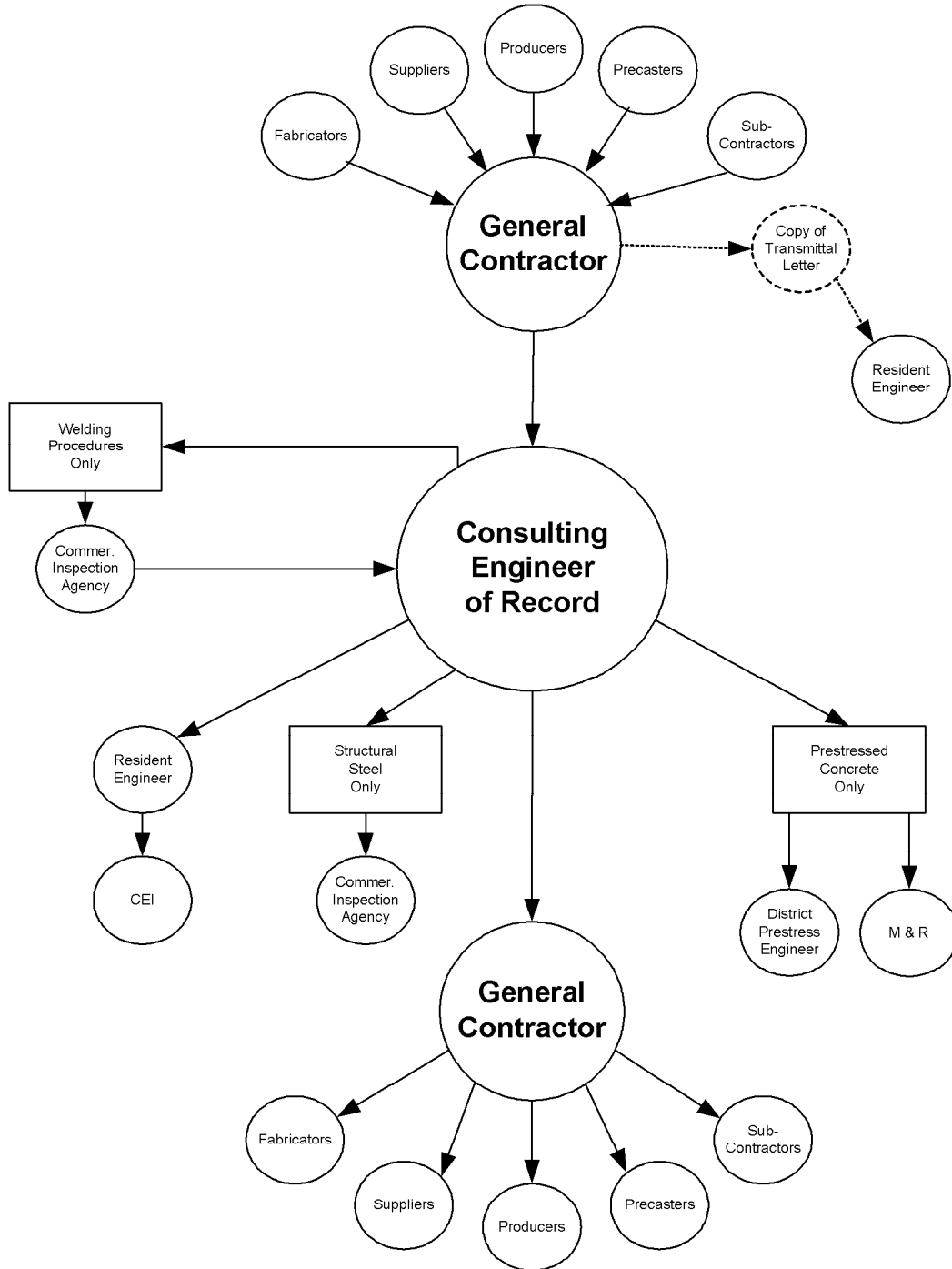
The Submittal Activity Record (logbook) is intended to serve as the listing of all Shop and Erection Drawings transmitted. Other transmitted material such as project files, samples, etc. should be listed individually on the Transmittal (Form No. 625-020-119-i) shown in **Figure 28.1**.

Upon receipt of the Record Shop Drawings, the offices receiving the transmittal shall verify the documents, material, etc. transmitted, sign and date both copies of the Record Shop Drawing Transmittal, retain one (1) copy for his files and return the second signed copy to the Final Review Office.

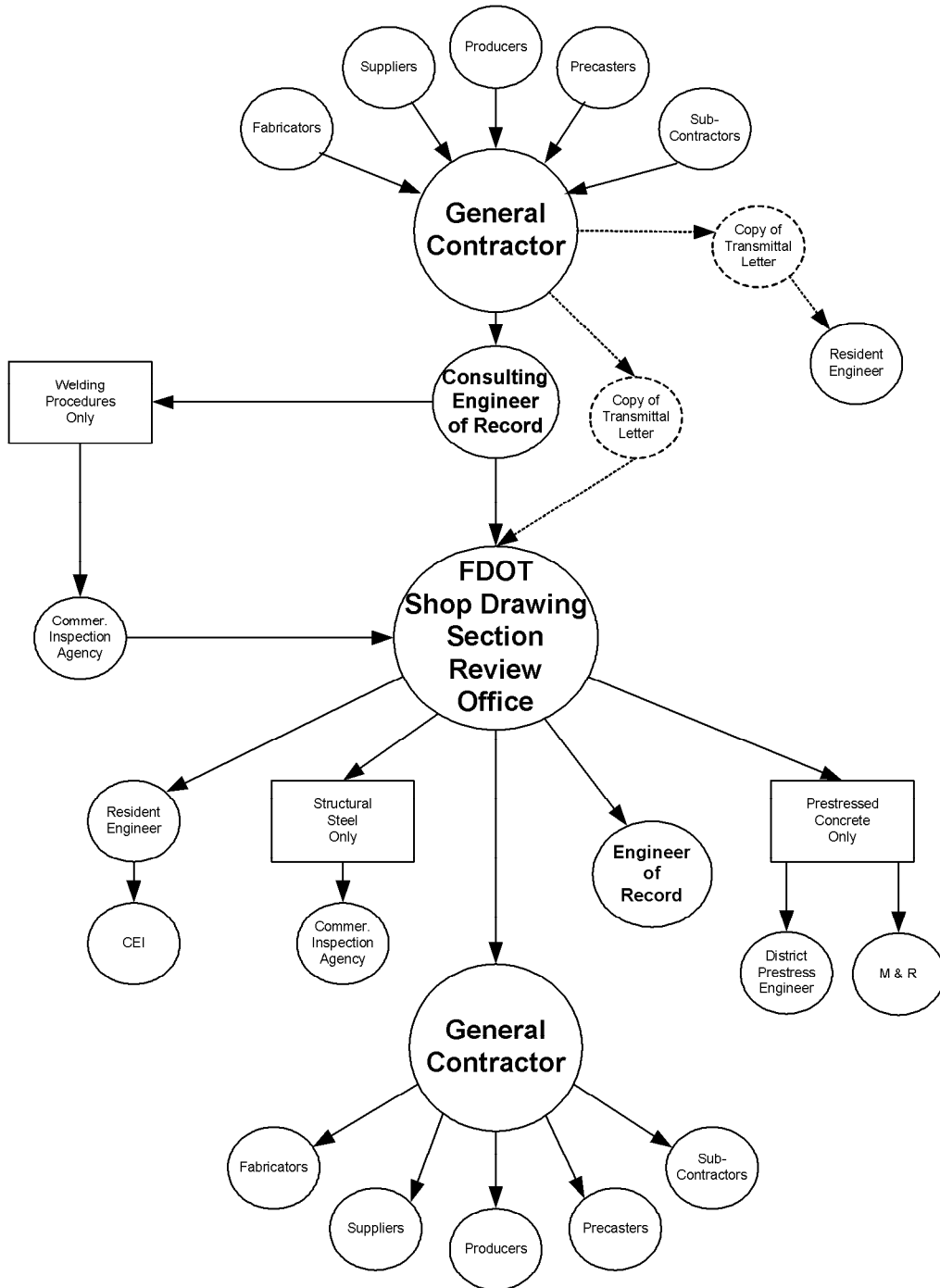
The Final Review Office shall maintain a file of Record Shop Drawing Transmittals (**Figure 28.1**) for future reference and use. Once the signed copy of the Record Shop Drawing Transmittal is received, the Final Review Office's initially retained Record Shop Drawing Transmittal may be discarded.

It should be noted that for Shop Drawing submittals requiring a Specialty Engineer, the Record Shop Drawing submittal normally will consist sealed prints.

**Exhibit 28-A Shop Drawing Flow Diagram for Review by Consultant EOR Only  
(Structural Items)**

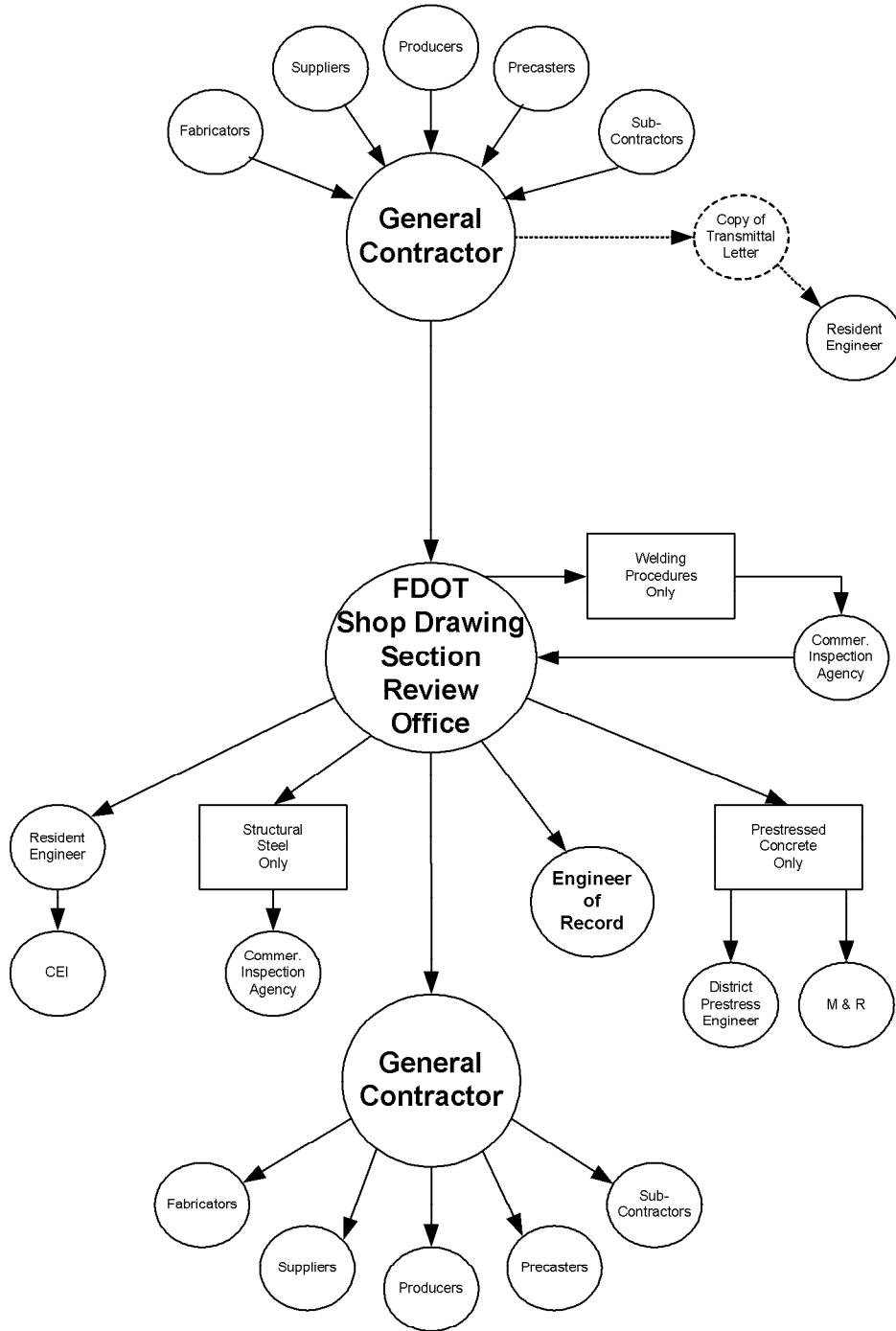


### Exhibit 28-B Shop Drawing Flow Diagram for EOR & DOT Review (Structural Items)





### Exhibit 28-C Shop Drawing Flow Diagram for Review by DOT Only (Structural Items)



**Figure 28.1 Record Shop Drawing Transmittal**

(Letterhead of Final Review Office)

**RECORD SHOP DRAWING TRANSMITTAL**

Date \_\_\_\_\_

TO: (Destination Office)

FROM: \_\_\_\_\_

(Final Review Office)

PROJECT NAME \_\_\_\_\_

FINANCIAL PROJECT ID \_\_\_\_\_

STATE PROJECT NO. \_\_\_\_\_

WPI NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_

FAP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_

BRIDGE NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_

CONTRACTOR \_\_\_\_\_

ENGINEER OF RECORD \_\_\_\_\_

We are transmitting herewith the following Record Shop Drawings for archiving:

1. Shop and Erection Drawing Submittals per attached Logbook.
2. Submittal Activities Record (Logbook)
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

For the Final Review Office: \_\_\_\_\_

(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_

(Date)

For the Receiving Office:

\_\_\_\_\_

(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_

(Date)

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 29

### Miscellaneous Structures

29.1	Design of Overhead Sign Structures and Foundations .....	29-1
29.1.1	Overhead Signs in Urban Locations.....	29-1
29.1.2	Overhead Signs in Rural Locations.....	29-3
29.1.3	Overhead Signs on Bridge Structures.....	29-3
29.2	Design of High Mast Light Poles and Foundations.....	29-4
29.3	Design of Mast Arm Assemblies and Foundations.....	29-5
29.3.1	General Requirements .....	29-5
29.3.2	Standard Mast Arm Assemblies .....	29-6
29.3.3	Standard Mast Arm Assemblies for Site Specific Loadings.....	29-7
29.3.4	Special Mast Arm Assemblies.....	29-7
29.3.5	Anchor Bolt Installation on Existing Foundations .....	29-9
29.3.6	Design of Monotube Signal Structures and Foundations.....	29-9
29.4	Structural Design of Aluminum Light Poles .....	29-11
29.4.1	General Requirements .....	29-11
29.4.2	Standard Aluminum Light Poles and Foundations ..	29-11
29.4.3	Special Aluminum Light Poles and Foundations .....	29-13
29.5	Design of Strain Poles and Span Wire Assembly.....	29-15
29.6	Design of Sound Barrier Walls .....	29-15
29.6.1	Geotechnical Investigation .....	29-17
29.6.2	Preparation of Control Drawings .....	29-17
29.6.3	Detail Drawings .....	29-17

Tables

Table 29.1      Design Wind Speeds (mph) .....29-19  
Table 29.2      Design Wind Speeds for Mast Arms .....29-20

Figures

Figure 29.1      (Showing Actual Signs) .....29-2  
Figure 29.2      (Showing Signs for Design Purposes).....29-2

Exhibits

Exhibit 29-A      Flowchart for Designing and Detailing Mast Arm  
Assemblies .....29-8

## Chapter 29

### Miscellaneous Structures

#### 29.1 Design of Overhead Sign Structures and Foundations

Unless otherwise directed by the Department, the design of all overhead sign structures whether ground mounted or supported on a structure (including bridge structures), shall be the responsibility of the Structures Design Engineer of Record (EOR). This responsibility is for the entire sign structure, including the supports and foundations, as well as all details necessary to fabricate and erect the sign structures. The EOR is also responsible for the shop drawing review in accordance with **Chapter 28** of this volume when sign structure shop drawings are required by the Contract Documents.

In general, the design criteria for the structural design of overhead sign structures and foundations shall be based upon this manual and **AASHTO's 1994 Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals**, with current addenda. However, the wind loads shall be based on the wind speeds shown on **Table 29.1** (50 year recurrence).

The designer may refer to applicable drawings (**Index Nos. 2001 thru S-2006 and 2011 thru S-2016**) of the **Structures Standard Drawings**.

##### 29.1.1 Overhead Signs in Urban Locations

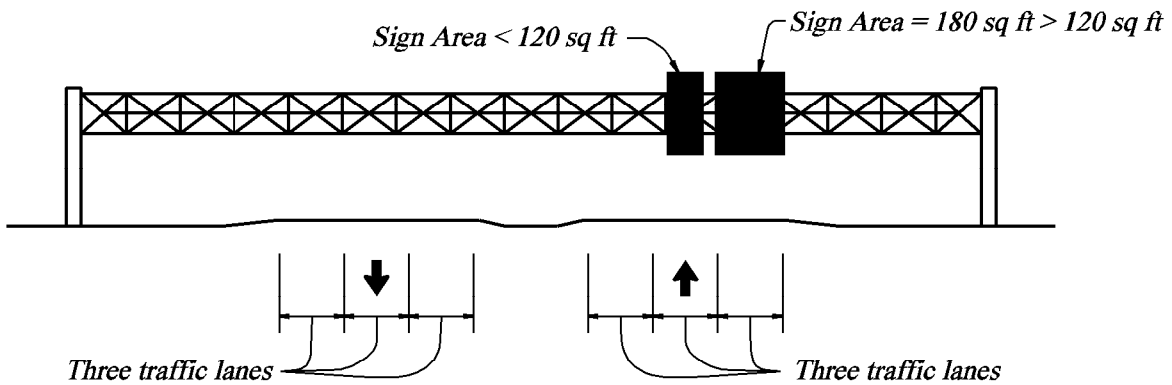
Span type overhead sign structures in urban locations shall be designed either for the actual signs shown on the signing plans or for a minimum sign area of 120 sq. ft. (12 ft. W x 10 ft. H) per lane, whichever is the greater. If the signing plans require signs for only one traffic direction, the minimum sign area per lane requirement applies to the traffic lanes in this direction only.

Cantilever type overhead sign structures shall be designed either for the actual signs shown on the signing plans or for a minimum sign 8 ft. wide by 10 ft. high located at the end of the cantilever, whichever provides the more stringent load or stress at the location under consideration.

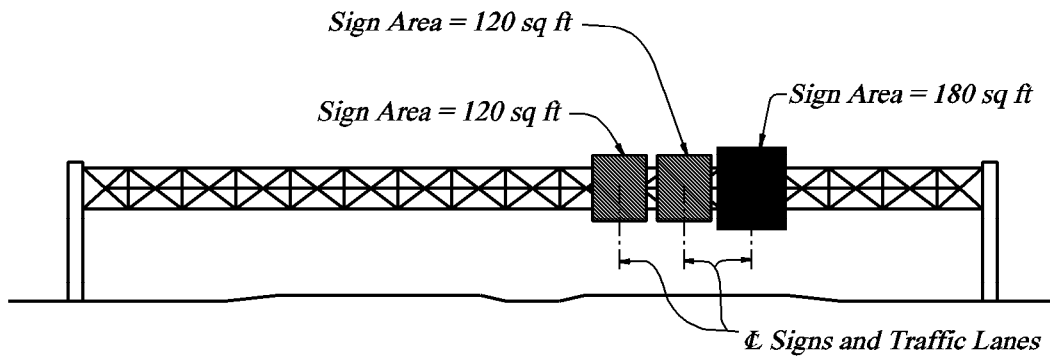
**Figures 29.1** and **29.2** show how to apply the above minimum sign areas for span type overhead sign structures in urban locations.

For additional design information, refer to **Chapter 7** of this volume.

**Figure 29.1 (Showing Actual Signs)**



**Figure 29.2 (Showing Signs for Design Purposes)**



## **29.1.2 Overhead Signs in Rural Locations**

Overhead signs in rural locations should be designed for the actual sign shown on the signing plans.

## **29.1.3 Overhead Signs on Bridge Structures**

The design of the attachment system for signs mounted on bridge structures shall be the responsibility of the Structures Engineer of Record. The design shall be included in the structures plans if bridge work is included in the project. If bridge work is not included in the project, design details shall be included in the signing plans.



## 29.2 Design of High Mast Light Poles and Foundations

In general, the design criteria for the structural design of high mast light poles and foundations shall be based upon this manual and **AASHTO's 1994 Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals**, with current addenda. However, the wind loads shall be based on the wind speeds shown on **Table 29.1** (50 year recurrence).

The EOR is responsible for the design and drawings of the foundations for high mast light poles and shall include the pole reactions in the drawings for the contract documents.

The Contractor is responsible for the design of the high mast light poles and will submit the design and details as shop drawings.

The design of the foundations shall consider the following:

1. Except for unusual circumstances, foundations shall be drilled shafts, 4 ft. in diameter.
2. The drilled shafts shall be designed in accordance with COM624 (see the **Structures Design Guidelines**) or by using Brom's procedure and hand calculations. Both of these methods consider lateral loading of the shafts, which is the primary concern.
3. A minimum safety factor of 1.5 against overturning shall be provided.
4. Wind loading for the shafts shall be based on the wind speeds shown on **Table 29.1** (50 year recurrence).

For additional design information, refer to **Chapter 7** of this volume.

## 29.3 Design of Mast Arm Assemblies and Foundations

### 29.3.1 General Requirements

In general, the design criteria for the structural design of Mast Arm Assemblies and Foundations shall be in accordance with the **AASHTO's 1994 Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals**, with current addenda, as modified by this manual.

Regardless of the design wind speed for the pole and arm, the torsional resistance of foundations for all Mast Arm Assemblies shall be based upon a service wind speed of 70 mph with a safety factor of 1.0.

The Designer may utilize a design wind speed of 110 mph for any site within the State or may specify the lower 90 mph wind speed in accordance with, and if permitted by, **Table 29.2**.

All Mast Arm Assemblies shall be designed for signals **with backplates** unless the Maintaining Agency for a County has a written policy that prohibits the use of backplates in that County. Such a written policy must be on file with the Department's District Office in which the County is located, and the policy must be included in the Scope of Services of both the Signal and Structures Design Engineers. To date, the only Maintaining Agency with a written policy prohibiting the use of backplates is Miami-Dade County.

Unique site circumstances may require the foundation variables to be modified from those shown on **Index Nos. 17742** and **17743** of the **Design Standards**. This shall be accomplished by completing the "Special Drilled Shaft Data" on **Structures Standard Drawing S-1700**. In this event, the Geotechnical Engineer shall justify the differing foundation criteria to the District Structures Design Engineer during the design phase of the project.

Mast Arm Assemblies shall be designed and detailed by one of the following three methodologies each of which has its distinct application advantages; however, Standard Mast Arm Assemblies shall be utilized whenever possible:

1. Standard Mast Arm Assemblies:

Mast Arms that utilize all pre-approved components listed on the Department's Qualified Products List (QPL) and that have been pre-designed for the selected Load Trees shown on **Index Nos. 17740 and 17741**.

2. Standard Mast Arm Assemblies for Site Specific Loadings:  
Mast Arms for unique loadings but which utilize all pre-approved QPL components.
3. Special Mast Arm Assemblies:  
Mast Arms for unique loadings and/or geometric constraints that contain any component (arm or pole) that is outside the range of those listed on the QPL.

For additional design information, see **Chapter 7** of this volume.

### **29.3.2 Standard Mast Arm Assemblies**

The distinct advantages of utilizing Standard Mast Arm Assemblies are that design time is limited to geometric and load tree confirmation only and Shop Drawings are not required.

Standard Mast Arm Assemblies comprise component parts that are listed on the Department's QPL by pre-approved suppliers. The Standard Mast Arm Assemblies must comply with all the requirements and design criteria shown on **Index Nos. 17742, 17743, 17744, and 17745** of the **Design Standards**, and **Index No. S-1700** of the **Structures Standard Drawings**. Furthermore, Standard Mast Arm Assemblies are limited to 90 or 110 mph design wind speeds with one of the load tree configurations shown on **Index Nos. 17740 or 17741**, and either single arm, single arm with luminaire, or double arms with arm orientations of 90° or 270° only.

Foundations and base plates for Standard Mast Arm Assemblies are pre-designed and require no further input from the designer. Foundations and base plates are mated to pole type and are shown on **Index Nos. 17742 and 17743**.

To use Standard Mast Arm Assemblies, the designer must confirm that the information furnished by the Signal Designer in the "Mast Arm Tabulation Sheet" for any of the Mast Arm Assemblies meets the geometric and load tree limitations shown on **Index Nos. 17740 or 17741**. Once confirmed, the designer shall follow the procedure described in the design examples on **Index Nos. 17740 or 17741** and complete the necessary information required in the "Mast Arm Assemblies Design Table" shown on **Index No. S-1700** of the **Structures Standard Drawings**. The "Mast Arm Assemblies Design Table," along with its notes, shall then be included in the Traffic Plans.

### **29.3.3 Standard Mast Arm Assemblies for Site Specific Loadings**

Standard Mast Arm Assemblies for site specific loadings that solely utilize QPL component parts shall be designed for the wind speeds shown in **Table 29.2** except for torsion on foundations as stipulated in **Section 29.3.1**. The Department's Mast Arm computer program will select component parts from those shown on **Index Nos. 17742** or **17743** for site specific load configurations differing from those shown on **Index Nos. 17740** or **17741**.

In order to be eligible for utilization of QPL component parts, the Mast Arm Assemblies must utilize only Arms and Poles from the components listed in the tables on **Index Nos. 17742** or **17743**. As for Standard Mast Arm Assemblies, the foundation design is included with the pole selection and needs no further information.

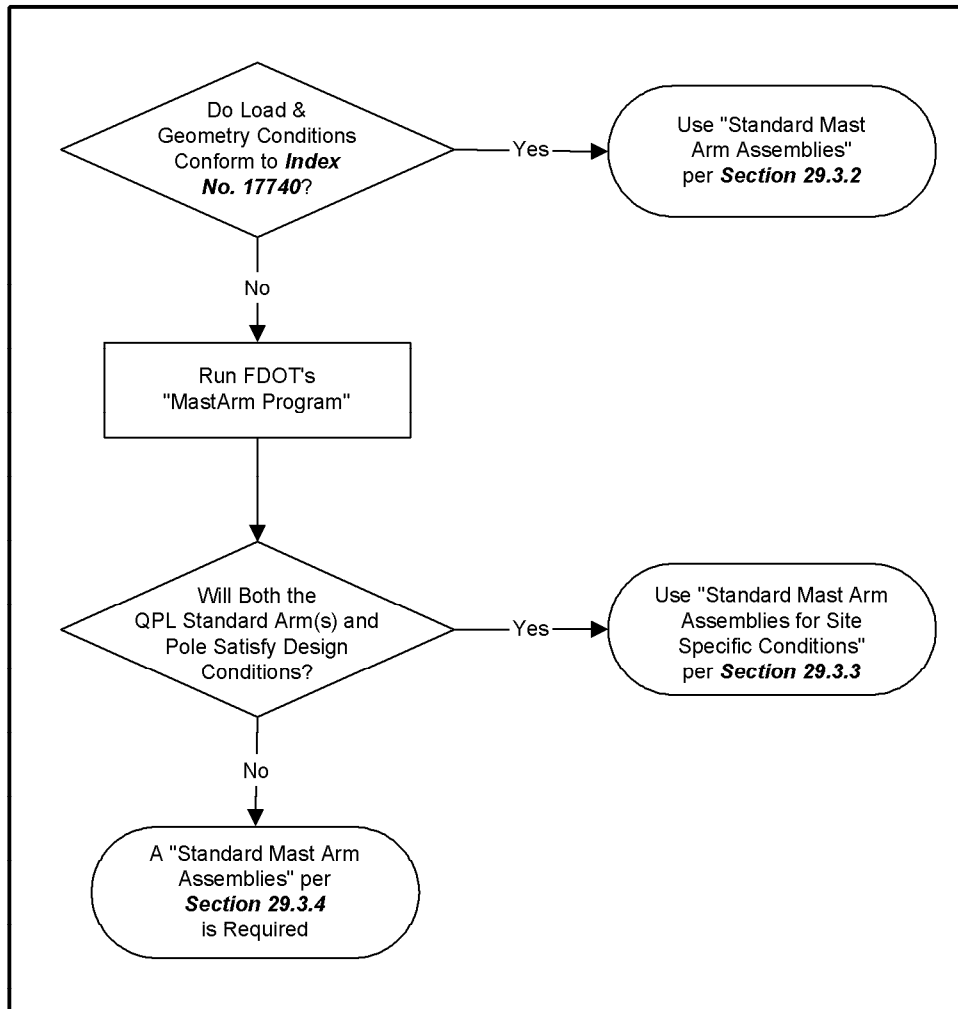
The design of, and details for, Standard Mast Arm Assemblies Utilizing QPL Component Parts shall be included in the plans in the same manner as for Standard Mast Arm Assemblies by use of the "Mast Arm Assemblies Design Table" shown on **Index No. S-1700** of the **Structures Standard Drawings**. Similarly, because all QPL component parts are used, Shop Drawings are not required.

### **29.3.4 Special Mast Arm Assemblies**

Special Mast Arm Assemblies shall also be designed for the wind speeds shown in **Table 29.2** with the exception of torsion on foundations as stipulated in **Section 29.3.1**. The Department's Mast Arm Computer Program will provide the necessary variables to be shown in tabular form by the use of **Index S-1710** of the **Structures Standard Drawings**.

All designs for Special Mast Arm Assemblies shall be included in the plans including the design of the foundations. The designer may refer to applicable drawings of **Index Nos. 17744** or **17745**. All Special Mast Arm Assemblies require the submittal of Shop Drawings for all components.

**Exhibit 29-A Flowchart for Designing and Detailing Mast Arm Assemblies**



### 29.3.5 Anchor Bolt Installation on Existing Foundations

Anchors used in the installation of a Traffic Signal Mastarm on an existing Foundation shall conform to ***Structures Design Guidelines 7.14 – Adhesive Anchor Systems*** and ***Sections 416 & 937*** of the ***Standard Specifications***.

The Engineer shall verify that the Foundation and strength of the Anchors are adequate for Mastarm applied loads. Anchors may be offset from center but must be placed such that all Anchors are within the Foundation reinforcing cage. A note shall be added to the plan sheet indicating the desired offset.

The Engineer shall field verify the existing condition of the drilled shaft.

### 29.3.6 Design of Monotube Signal Structures and Foundations

In general, the design criteria for the structural design of Monotube Signal Structures and Foundations shall be in accordance with ***AASHTO's 1994 Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals***, with current addenda, as modified by this manual.

Monotube Signal Structure arms, poles, and foundations are designed for a design wind speed of 110 mph.

Unique site circumstances may require the foundation variables to be modified from the minimum foundations shown on ***Index No. 17746, Sheet 2 of 4*** of the ***Design Standards***. If special designs are required, the Geotechnical Engineer shall provide the soil information to be used by the District Structures Design Engineer during the design phase of the project.

For additional design information, see ***Chapter 7*** of this volume.

The distinct advantages of utilizing Standard Monotube Signal Structures are that design time is limited to geometric and load tree confirmation only and Shop Drawings are not required.

Standard Monotube Signal Structures comprise component parts that are listed on the Department's QPL by a pre-approved supplier. Standard Monotube Signal Structures must comply with all of the requirements and design criteria shown on **Index No. 17746, Sheets 1 and 4 of 4**. Furthermore, Standard Monotube Signal Structures are limited to the single service design wind speed of 110 mph and the load tree configuration shown on **Index No. 17746, Sheet 2 of 4**.

Foundation and base plates for Standard Monotube Signal Structures are pre-designed and require no further input from the designer. Foundations and base plates are mated to monotube configuration type and are shown on **Index No. 17746, Sheet 3 of 4**.

To use Standard Monotube Signal Structures, the designer must confirm that the information furnished by the signal designer on the "Monotube Tabulation Sheet" for any of the Standard Monotube Signal Structures meets the geometric and load tree limitations shown on **Index No. 17746, Sheet 2 of 4**. Once confirmed, the designer shall select a monotube configuration and complete the necessary information required in the "Monotube Signal Structures Design Table" shown on **Index S-1720** of the **Structures Standard Drawings**. The "Monotube Signal Structures Design Table," along with its notes, shall then be included in the traffic plans.

When a Standard Monotube Signal Structure is used, the payment for the structure will be coded as "Standard" with appropriate Standard Components defined by the remaining coding of the payment item.

## 29.4 Structural Design of Aluminum Light Poles

### 29.4.1 General Requirements

In general, the design criteria for the structural design of light poles and foundations shall be in accordance with **AASHTO's 1994 Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals**, with current addenda. However, the wind loads shall be based on the wind velocities shown on **Table 29.1** (25-year recurrence for poles with heights up to 50 feet, and 50-year recurrence for poles exceeding 50 feet in height). The height of the pole for wind zone determination is the distance between the fixture elevation and the ground elevation at the roadway or the original ground elevation prior to embankment construction, whichever is greater.

For additional design information, see **Chapter 7** of this volume.

### 29.4.2 Standard Aluminum Light Poles and Foundations

Standard Aluminum Light Poles that utilize the QPL must comply with all of the detail requirements shown on **Index No. 17515, Sheets 1 through 8 of 8** of the **Design Standards**. Design wind speeds for the pole selection procedure shall be based upon **Table 29.1** as directed in **Section 29.4.1** and as modified by selection procedure numbers 4, 5, and 6.

#### SELECTION PROCEDURE

1. Determine the Design Mounting Height (40, 45, or 50 feet) and Fixture Arm Length (8, 10, 12, or 15 feet) required.
2. Determine the height difference between the top of foundation and the top of roadway used to set the fixture mounting height. If the top of foundation is within 2'-6" of the top of roadway, the Design Mounting Height equals the Fixture Mounting Height; otherwise use a Design Mounting Height that is 5'-0" greater or smaller as appropriate.
3. The Wind Height At Fixture equals the design mounting height for poles not on fill. For poles on fill, determine the height of the roadway above the surrounding terrain. The Wind Height At Fixture will equal the Design Mounting Height plus the fill height, rounded up to the next highest 5-foot increment.



4. For Standard Aluminum Light Poles (Design Mounting Height  $\leq$  50 feet) the Recurrence Interval is 25 years.  
Using the 25 year Recurrence Interval and the County in which the pole is located, choose the Design Wind Speed from **Table 29.1**.
5. For a 25-year Recurrence Interval and 70 or 80 mph Design Wind Speeds, use an 80 mph Design Wind Speed.
6. For a 25-year Recurrence Interval and 90 or 100 mph Design Wind Speeds, use a 100 mph Design Wind Speed.
7. Determine the pole design variables for each light pole.

Example: From design: The required Design Mounting Height is 40' and a 12' Fixture Arm Length is needed. The top of foundation is 1'-0" lower than the roadway and on a 12'-0" fill. The project is located in Miami-Dade County.

Aluminum light pole design requirements:

Design Mounting Height = 40'

Wind Height At Fixture = 55' (40+1+12)=53'; use 55'

Design Wind Speed = 100 mph

Fixture Arm Length = 12'

From **Index 17515, Sheet No. 4 of 7**, for a 12' Arm, Select Case No. 7.

From **Index 17515, Sheet No. 5 of 7**, for a 40' Mounting Height and 12' Arm, Select Case No. 7.

The Pay Item for this pole is then: 715-637-307

### LIMITATIONS

1. Fixture Arm Length of 8', 10', 12' or 15'. Single arm only.
2. Design Mounting Height of 40', 45' or 50'. (May differ from Fixture Mounting Height, see Selection Procedure item 2).
3. 25' maximum height above adjoining ground surface.
4. Design weight of luminaire assumed to be 51 lbs..
5. Equivalent projected area of luminaire for design is 1.5 sq. ft..
6. No bridge or wall mounting permitted.
7. Maximum fill slope at the pole of one vertical to four horizontal. Steeper slopes can be accommodated provided the face of the slope on a horizontal projection from the

foundation base is no closer than it would be if a 1:4 slope were projected from the top of the foundation.

Unique site circumstances where poorer soil conditions are encountered than shown on ***Index No. 17515, Sheet 3 of 6*** may require the foundation variables to be modified from those shown. If special designs are required, the Geotechnical Engineer shall provide the soil information to be used by the District Structures Design Engineer during the design phase of the project.

The distinct advantage of utilizing Standard Aluminum Light Poles is that design time is limited to the selection procedure and Shop Drawings are not required.

For additional design information, see ***Chapter 7*** of this volume.

### **29.4.3 Special Aluminum Light Poles and Foundations**

When Special Aluminum Light Poles are required, or otherwise specifically designated in the contract documents, the Contractor's Specialty Engineer is responsible for the structural design of the roadway light poles and foundations and the EOR is responsible for the review of the Shop Drawings.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## 29.5 Design of Strain Poles and Span Wire Assembly

In general, the design criteria for the structural design of these structures and foundations, including attached traffic signals and signs, shall be based upon this manual and **AASHTO's 1994 Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals**; with current addenda. However, the wind loads shall be based on the wind velocities shown on **Table 29.1** (25 year recurrence).

For additional design information, refer to **Chapter 7** of this volume.

## 29.6 Design of Sound Barrier Walls

Except as specified below, **AASHTO's Guide Specifications for Structural Design of Sound Barriers** and FDOT's **Structures Design Guidelines** shall be used for the structural design; however, the designer shall also refer to the **Department Specifications, Section 534** and the Structures Design Office's **Sound Barrier Evaluation Criteria** for specifications and general design requirements, the **Structures Standard Drawings** for guidance in the preparation of the drawings and the **Structures Detailing Manual** for conformance in detailing.

All sound barrier walls in the State of Florida shall be designed for a minimum wind velocity of 110 mph. If the sound barriers are not located on other structures, the wind pressures shown in **Table 1-2.1.2.C (Exposure B2)** of the referenced **AASHTO** guide specifications shall be used. If the sound barriers are located on bridge structures, retaining walls, or traffic barriers, the wind pressures shown in **Table 1-2.1.2.D (Exposure C)** of the referenced **AASHTO** guide specifications shall be used. For sound barriers located on embankments and structures, the height zone shall be determined by using the elevation of adjoining ground as being the approximate elevation of the original ground surface prior to embankment construction.

For panels, the maximum deflection due to service wind load shall not exceed the lesser of  $1/180^{\text{th}}$  of the post spacing or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch (deflection measured relative to posts). For posts or top of barrier, the maximum deflection due to service wind load shall not exceed the lesser of  $1/50^{\text{th}}$  of the wall height or 5 inches for sound walls on deep foundations or 3 inches for sound walls founded on shallow foundations, and measured from the following:

1. Sound barriers on deep foundations: the deflection shall be measured relative to the point of fixity in the soil. The lateral displacement at the base of the wall shall not exceed 1 inch.

2. Sound barriers on shallow foundations: the deflection shall be measured relative to the base of the wall system.

More restrictive panel and wall deflection limits may be required based on the specific wall system utilized.

Unless approved by the Department, the maximum post spacing for a precast ground mounted wall shall not exceed 20'-0".

On roadways with flush shoulders, sound barriers shall be located outside the clear zone unless shielded, and as close as practical to the right of way line. On roadways with curb or curb and gutter, sound barriers shall be a minimum of 4 feet back of the face of curb. However, additional setbacks may be required to meet minimum sidewalk requirements. Sound barriers may be combined with safety barriers on a common foundation if the combination meets the crash test requirements of NCHRP 350 Test Level 4 criteria.

Besides the structural integrity of the sound barrier wall, the structural engineer should also be concerned with aesthetics, maintainability, constructability, cost and durability.

Sound barrier walls should not be located on bridge structures where feasible alternative locations exist. Sound barrier walls on bridge structures cause an unproportionate increase in bridge cost because of strengthening of the deck overhang and exterior girder. In addition, sound barriers on bridges interfere with normal maintenance inspection access and detract from the aesthetic quality of the structure. Where feasible alternative locations do not exist and sound barrier walls must be located on bridges or retaining walls, they shall not be taller than 8 ft. unless specifically approved in writing by the State Structures Design Engineer or District Structures Design Engineer as appropriate. See **Structures Standard Drawings** for acceptable crash tested 8 ft. bridge and retaining wall mounted sound walls.

On bridges or on the top of retaining walls, where the sound barrier does not meet crash test requirements of NCHRP 350, Test Level 4, sound barriers shall be placed a minimum of 5 feet beyond the gutter line of the bridge traffic railing barrier. Sound barriers shall be combined with the traffic railing barrier as long as the structural system meets the crash test requirements of NCHRP 350, Test Level 4 criteria.

Normally, the design should proceed as required hereinafter.

## 29.6.1 Geotechnical Investigation

Once the wall location, alignments, height and minimum thickness are determined, the soil exploration should be undertaken. The geotechnical engineer should follow the **FDOT's Soils and Foundations Handbook** for exploration.

## 29.6.2 Preparation of Control Drawings

The initial set of drawings to be prepared by the EOR are referred to as Control Drawings. By preparation of these drawings, the EOR shall provide all control parameters, such as, alignments, limits, notes, etc., and shall provide all the information which is common to all wall types including but not necessarily limited to:

1. Wall alignments (horizontal and vertical)
2. Wall limits (beginning and ending)
3. Location of all existing utilities (overhead and/or underground in the vicinity of the proposed wall)
4. Location of fire-access openings
5. Location of drainage openings
6. Sound barrier graphics details
7. General Notes
8. "Report of Core Borings" (Soil Information Data)
9. Quantities (wall area as described below for payment purposes only; the itemized quantities such as concrete volume, etc., shall be provided in the specific drawings)
10. All other information that may be construed to be of general nature

NOTE: The wall area for bidding purposes shall be the area bounded by the wall limits (beginning and ending), the top of the wall, and the bottom of the lowest panel between posts. This is the vertical surface area that can be seen on an elevation view plus the portion of the lowest panel which is buried.

## 29.6.3 Detail Drawings

The EOR shall prepare Detail Drawings showing the specific details required for the implementation of the selected wall type. All wall components such as: foundations, posts, panels, etc. shall be fully detailed for construction. If standard or conventional (non-

proprietary) designs are to be implemented, then these drawings shall provide the specific information as shown in the applicable drawings (see the ***Structures Standard Drawings***).

Likewise, if proprietary designs are to be implemented, then the proprietary sound barrier wall drawings shall provide the specific information.

**Table 29.1 Design Wind Speeds (mph)**

County (Dist)	25-year Recurrence	50-year Recurrence	County (Dist)	25-year Recurrence	50-year Recurrence
Alachua (2)	80	90	Lee (1)	90	100
Baker (2)	80	90	Leon (3)	70	80
Bay (3)	80	90	Levy (2)	80	90
Bradford (2)	80	90	Liberty (3)	80	90
Brevard (5)	90	100	Madison (2)	70	80
Broward (4)	100	110	Manatee (1)	90	100
Calhoun (3)	80	90	Marion (5)	80	90
Charlotte (1)	90	100	Martin (4)	90	100
Citrus (7)	80	90	Miami-Dade (6)	100	110
Clay (2)	80	90	Monroe (6)	100	110
Collier (1)	90	100	Nassau (2)	80	90
Columbia (2)	70	80	Okaloosa (3)	90	100
DeSoto (1)	80	90	Okeechobee (1)	80	90
Dixie (2)	80	90	Orange (5)	80	90
Duval (2)	80	90	Osceola (5)	80	90
Escambia (3)	90	100	Palm Beach (4)	100	110
Flagler (5)	80	90	Pasco (7)	90	100
Franklin (3)	90	100	Pinellas (7)	90	100
Gadsden (3)	70	80	Polk (1)	80	90
Gilchrist (2)	80	90	Putnam (2)	80	90
Glades (1)	80	90	St. Johns (2)	80	90
Gulf (3)	90	100	St. Lucie (4)	90	100
Hamilton (2)	70	80	Santa Rosa (3)	90	100
Hardee (1)	80	90	Sarasota (1)	90	100
Hendry (1)	80	90	Seminole (5)	80	90
Hernando (7)	90	100	Sumter (5)	80	90
Highlands (1)	80	90	Suwannee (2)	70	80
Hillsborough (7)	80	90	Taylor (2)	80	90
Holmes (3)	70	80	Union (2)	80	90
Indian River (4)	90	100	Volusia (5)	90	100
Jackson (3)	70	80	Wakulla (3)	80	90
Jefferson (3)	70	80	Walton (3)	80	90
Lafayette (2)	80	90	Washington (3)	80	90
Lake (5)	80	90			



**Table 29.2 Design Wind Speeds for Mast Arms**

<b>110 mph Counties</b>	<b>90 mph Counties</b>
Bay	Alachua
Brevard	Baker
Broward	Bradford
Charlotte	Calhoun
Citrus	Clay
Collier	Columbia
Dixie	DeSoto
Duval	Gadsden
Escambia	Gilchrist
Flagler	Glades
Franklin	Hamilton
Gulf	Hardee
Hernando	Hendry
Hillsborough	Highlands
Indian River	Holmes
Lee	Jackson
Levy	Jefferson
Manatee	Lafayette
Martin	Lake
Miami-Dade	Leon
Monroe	Liberty
Nassau	Madison
Okaloosa	Marion
Palm Beach	Okeechobee
Pasco	Orange
Pinellas	Osceola
Santa Rosa	Polk
Sarasota	Putnam
St. Johns	Seminole
St. Lucie	Sumter
Taylor	Suwannee
Volusia	Union
Wakulla	Washington
Walton	

## Chapter 30

### Retaining Walls

30.1	Purpose .....	30-1
30.2	Conventional (CIP) Retaining Walls and Proprietary Retaining Walls (Permanent Walls) .....	30-3
30.2.1	Retaining Walls (Conventional Design) .....	30-4
30.2.2	Retaining Walls (Proprietary Design) (Design Required in Contract Plans) .....	30-6
30.2.3	Retaining Walls (Proprietary Design) (Design not Required in Contract Plans - Control Plans only) .....	30-8
30.2.4	Wall System Selection .....	30-8
30.3	Critical Temporary Walls .....	30-11
30.4	Experimental Wall Projects .....	30-12
30.5	Shop Drawing Review .....	30-13
30.6	Bidding Procedure .....	30-14
Figures		
Figure 30.1	Proprietary Retaining Walls .....	30-19
Exhibits		
Exhibit 30-A	Sample Invitation Letter .....	30-15
Exhibit 30-B	Sample Letter .....	30-17
Exhibit 30-C	Procedure for Wall System Selection .....	30-20

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

## Chapter 30

# Retaining Walls

### 30.1 Purpose

The purpose of this chapter is to give the designer an understanding of the procedure to develop retaining wall plans. A step-by-step method to develop and organize the retaining wall plans is presented. An example of retaining wall plans is included. This chapter should be used in conjunction with the ***Structures Design Guidelines***.

Prior to 1977 the types of retaining walls constructed for Florida Department of Transportation (FDOT) projects were somewhat limited. Reinforced cast-in-place concrete and steel sheet piles were the walls of choice and to a lesser extent concrete sheet piles were used primarily as bulkheads.

The advent of Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) walls brought many changes to the way FDOT designed and let the retaining wall contracts. After 1977 FDOT began almost exclusively utilizing MSE proprietary retaining walls due to their economic advantage and their ability to articulate and thus withstand a degree of settlement.

If the difference in height between the ground levels to be supported is 5 ft. or less, a gravity retaining wall is generally the most efficient structure to be used. For details of gravity retaining walls see the ***Design Standards, Index No. 520***.

When the difference in height between the ground levels to be supported exceeds 5 ft., then either a reinforced cast-in-place (CIP) concrete cantilever retaining wall or a proprietary retaining wall is required.

Roadside barriers are generally required to shield vertical drop-offs created by retaining walls in fill sections. See ***Chapter 4*** of this volume for guidance on roadside barrier requirements.

Handrails or fences for bicyclists and pedestrians are also generally required when retaining walls are located within the right of way. This requirement must be addressed for retaining walls in fill sections as well as at the top of retaining walls in cut sections. In cut sections, the character and use of the adjoining property shall be considered when selecting

the type of protection required. See **Chapter 8** of this volume for pedestrian and bicycle rail requirements.

In general, proprietary retaining walls should be utilized for projects when the exposed surface area of the walls exceed 1000 square ft. and sufficient room for the earth reinforcement system is available; however, site specific conditions must always be considered when determining the type(s) of wall to be designed. Proprietary precast walls other than MSE walls should be used as an alternate to CIP walls when sufficient room for soil reinforcement is not available.

The following sections refer to the structures submittal procedure. For projects where there are no bridges, the roadway designer shall adjust the procedure as required for the roadway project.

## 30.2 Conventional (CIP) Retaining Walls and Proprietary Retaining Walls (Permanent Walls)

The Department's policy is to provide either a set of conventional retaining wall plans or the "preapproved standard details" for all the proprietary walls that are technically appropriate for the site for all projects where walls are not supported on piles. Projects where walls are supported on piles only require a conventional pile supported wall design or a pile supported proprietary wall design. Omission of conventional retaining walls is possible if adequate justification is provided.

Proprietary retaining wall design plans are not required in the contract plans for normal uncomplicated wall projects. If the proprietary walls are experimental, exceed 40 ft. in height, are subject to unusual geometric or topographic features or, by the geotechnical report, will be subjected to excessive settlement, or environmental conditions, they may be required to have fully detailed design plans in the contract set.

The success of this method of producing and letting wall plans is highly dependent on complete, accurate and informative Control Plans. The importance of the Geotechnical Engineer's role in this scheme cannot be emphasized enough and shall include the following responsibilities:

1. Borings.
2. Soils Report.
3. Wall Type recommendation.
4. For Proprietary Walls: external stability analysis, minimum soil reinforcement length vs. wall height for external stability, maximum bearing pressure for each wall height and soil reinforcement length for each different wall height (1.5 ft. increments).
5. Review of internal stability design as provided by the wall companies.
6. Establishment of allowable bearing pressures.

The normal failure modes to be investigated are shown in **Figure 30.1**.

Step-by-step procedures for developing retaining wall plans follow.

## 30.2.1 Retaining Walls (Conventional Design)

### 1. Bridge Development Report (BDR) / 30% Plans

The BDR shall discuss and justify the use/non-use of conventional retaining walls. If the use of conventional retaining walls is applicable to the site and economically justified, it may be the only design required or it may be an alternate to a proprietary design. The 30% Plans submittal shall contain a location plan, plan and elevation of walls showing vertical and horizontal alignment, cross sections and details. The plans shall denote location of drainage inlets, utilities, sign structures, lights and barrier joints. Specifically the submittal package shall include:

#### a. Plan:

A plan view of the wall and footings which indicate pertinent dimensions, boring locations and horizontal alignment.

#### b. Elevation:

A front view of the wall which indicates pertinent dimensions and elevations, sign and lighting structures locations, drainage structure locations and flow line elevations, location of section views and vertical alignment.

#### c. Sections:

Sections taken through the wall to better indicate dimensions and elevations.

#### d. General Notes including:

- 1) Design Toe Pressure
- 2) Environmental Classification
- 3) Concrete - (Strength and Class)
- 4) Reinforcing Steel - (Grade)
- 5) Design Method
- 6) Soil Design Parameters for both the in situ and backfill materials
- 7) Load and Resistance Factors

### 2. 30% Plans:

The 30% Plans shall be submitted for approval and development of the plans continued towards the 90% Plans submittal.

### 3. 90% Plans:

The 90% Plans submittal shall be further developed to include, in addition to the information required for the 30% Plans, the following:

- a. Plan:  
A plan view of the wall and footings which indicates pertinent dimensions; reinforcing steel locations, cover and spacing in footings; and boring locations, back of wall drainage details and horizontal alignment.
- b. Elevation:  
A front view of the wall which indicates pertinent dimensions and elevations; location of section views; reinforcing steel location, cover and spacing; back of wall drainage and flow lines; vertical alignment; and locations of construction and expansion joints.
- c. Sections:  
Sections taken through the wall to better indicate dimensions, reinforcing steel locations, concrete cover for rebars and elevations.
- d. Estimated Quantities:  
Estimated quantities for items incorporated in the wall, reinforcing bar list and standard bar bending sheet.

The Structures Design Office has prepared standard drawings of conventional cantilever retaining walls ranging from 2000 psf to 6000 psf design toe pressure and in height from 6 ft. to 30 ft.. (See **Standard Drawings, Indexes I-1400, 1401, 1402, and 1403**). These Structures Standards may be obtained from the Structures Design web page: <http://www11.myflorida.com/structures/CADD/standards/standards.htm>



## **30.2.2 Retaining Walls (Proprietary Design) (Design Required in Contract Plans)**

The following procedure for plans preparation should be followed if the walls are required to be fully detailed in the contract plans.

### **1. BDR/30% Plans**

The BDR shall discuss and justify the use of proprietary retaining walls. The 30% Plans shall contain preliminary Control Plans. It will not be necessary for these Plans to contain pay items and standard drawings; however, they shall include, but not be limited to, the following information:

- a. Key Sheet
- b. General Notes Sheet
  - 1) General notes
  - 2) In situ soil characteristics
  - 3) Design parameters - safety factors
  - 4) Applicable wall systems
- c. Plan and Elevation Sheet:
  - 1) Horizontal and vertical alignment
  - 2) Limits of wall
  - 3) Utility locations
  - 4) Plan view of wall
  - 5) Elevation view of wall (showing existing and proposed ground lines, elevations at 30 ft. intervals at top of wall, wall embedment (maximum elevation at top of leveling pad) and beginning and end of wall stations)
  - 6) Boring locations
  - 7) Quantity (pay area of walls)
  - 8) Table showing soil reinforcement length vs. wall height (for external stability)
  - 9) Design parameters - Load and Resistance Factors
  - 10) Sections thru wall showing offset control point, pay area, ditches, sidewalks, superelevation and other unusual features

- 11) Ranges of wall systems applicable to the portion of the project defined by the plan and elevation sheet.
  - d. Soil Profile Sheet
  - e. General Details showing:
    - 1) Wall/end bent cap interface
    - 2) Barrier and coping to wall interface
    - 3) Pile, inlets and pipe conflicts with soil reinforcement and slip joint details
  - f. Preapproved Standard Drawings:

Standard drawings of each of the alternate companies are included in the ***Design Standards***.
2. Control Plans/Invitation Package

The Control Plans shall be reviewed by the Department and, upon approval, sent to all the appropriate preapproved proprietary wall companies. The companies shall be provided with a set of control plans, roadway plans and foundation report. The Control Plans shall be sent to the wall companies as soon as they are approved. This action shall be accomplished as soon as possible but not later than the 60% Plans. A copy of the transmittals to the wall companies shall be sent to the DSDO or SDO as appropriate. The proprietary companies shall acknowledge receipt of the invitation package. If they choose to participate they shall provide design plans for the retaining walls and submit the plans for review as prescribed in the invitation letter (see ***Exhibit 30-A***).
3. 90% Plans

Upon receipt of the proprietary design plans, the designer shall review the design and incorporate the wall plans into the contract set. The plans from the wall companies, control plans and wall company standard drawings shall constitute the 100% Plans.

### 30.2.3 Retaining Walls (Proprietary Design) (Design not Required in Contract Plans - Control Plans only)

Use the following procedure in preparing plans for normal, uncomplicated wall projects.

1. BDR/30% Plans

The BDR shall discuss and justify the use of proprietary retaining walls. The 30% Plans shall contain Preliminary Control Plans which shall include, but not be limited to the information previously shown in this Section.

2. Control Plans

The Control Plans shall be developed by the Engineer of Record and, upon approval, sent to all the appropriate preapproved proprietary wall companies.

3. 90% Plans

The Control Plans shall be incorporated into the 90% Plans submittal.

**NOTE:** The preapproved proprietary wall standard drawings are included in the **Design Standards**.

The Control Plans shall be sent to the wall companies as soon as they are approved. This action shall be accomplished as soon as possible but not later than the 90% Plans Approval Phase. A copy of the transmittals to the wall companies shall be sent to the DSDO or SDO as appropriate. The proprietary wall companies shall acknowledge receipt of the control plans package as prescribed in the transmittal letter (See **Exhibit 30-B**).

The design details shall be submitted in the shop drawings.

### 30.2.4 Wall System Selection

The Engineer of Record (EOR) in cooperation with the geotechnical engineer shall determine all viable and appropriate wall systems that may be used at the specific site. These systems will be denoted on the General Notes sheet of the Control Plans. These systems will be determined based on their technical applications. The EOR shall provide documentation of wall selection in the Retaining Wall Justification portion of the BDR.

When determining which proprietary wall systems are to be used, the EOR shall start with all the approved wall systems. The EOR shall first eliminate systems based on the environment (see **Exhibit 30-C**). All systems that are appropriate shall then be considered

based on their geotechnical applications. The geotechnical considerations may be complex and a geotechnical engineer familiar with all the wall systems should be a part of the team that determines wall systems. Some of the geotechnical considerations are: short term and/or long term settlement, differential settlement both longitudinal and from front of wall to end of concrete stems or soil reinforcement (rotation) and global stability. Flow chart **Exhibit 30-C** shows the procedure for final wall system selection.

**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

### 30.3 Critical Temporary Walls

A critical temporary wall is one that is necessary to maintain the safety of the traveling public or structural integrity of nearby structures and utilities for the duration of the construction contract.

Critical temporary walls shall be designed in accordance with this chapter, AASHTO LRFD Specifications, and the **Structures Design Guidelines** and shall include the soil reinforcement lengths, sizes, and stress level requirements for permanent walls.

The allowable reinforcement tension for temporary MSE walls using geogrid soil reinforcement shall be in accordance with the **Structures Design Guidelines**.

The design details of critical proprietary temporary walls shall be submitted in the shop drawings. The generic design details of critical temporary walls shall be included in the contract set of plans. The plans format shall be in accordance with **Section 30.2.2** and **30.2.3**.

## 30.4 Experimental Wall Projects

Proprietary wall companies must comply with the Department's ***Guidelines for Selection and Approval of Proprietary Retaining Wall Systems, Topic No. 625-A20-118*** (available in Central Office Structures Design) and prepare standards to be approved and adopted by the FDOT. One of the requirements is to build a wall that may, at the discretion of the Department, be instrumented and monitored. Special instruction for design and plans preparation shall be obtained from the State Structures Design Office.

## 30.5 Shop Drawing Review

Conventional CIP retaining walls do not require shop drawings; however, proprietary retaining walls require shop drawings in accordance with **Chapter 28**.

The shop drawing reviewer (EOR) shall be experienced in the requirements, design and detailing of proprietary wall plans. The EOR shall review but not be limited to the following items:

1. Verify vertical and horizontal geometry with contract plans.
2. Verify details with MSE wall suppliers standard details in contract plans.
3. Soil reinforcement placement in acute corners shall be detailed.
4. Slip joints shall be at all bin wall and standard MSE wall interface locations.
5. Soil reinforcement shall be detailed at all obstructions. Cutting or kinking of soil reinforcement shall not be allowed. Connection of soil reinforcement to piles or bearing against piles shall not be allowed.
6. Corner panels shall be used at all locations where walls are deflected horizontally 5 degrees or more.
7. Compare proposed reinforced fill characteristics with design fill characteristics. In-place moist density of backfill may vary by  $\pm 5$  pcf, and the internal friction angle may be 1E less than the design values (as shown in control plans) before a check of the wall design is required. If the internal friction angle is greater than the design value then a redesign is not required.
8. Review proprietary wall internal stability design calculations.
9. Verify soil reinforcement lengths for conformance to the **Structures Design Guidelines**, the external stability table on the plans, and the internal stability design calculations.
10. Confirm wall embedment.
11. Verify panel types and thickness are consistent with contract plans.
12. Soil reinforcement lengths shall be the same from top to bottom of wall at any section. The diameters of the longitudinal and transverse bars of any given mesh reinforcement shall be equal. The cross section of any soil reinforcement shall not vary along its length (i.e., "2WII" reinforcement shall not be spliced to "4WII").
13. Check stress level in soil reinforcement and connections.



## **30.6 Bidding Procedure**

The conventional CIP walls shall be bid as Concrete (Retaining Wall) and Reinforcing Steel (Retaining Wall). Conventional walls may be bid as an alternate to proprietary walls if the site conditions justify conventional walls.

Proprietary Walls shall be bid with Pay Item numbers;

548-\_\_\_ Retaining Wall System (Permanent)

548-\_\_\_ Retaining Wall System (Temporary)

**Exhibit 30-A Sample Invitation Letter**  
**Sheet 1 of 2**

(When Proprietary Designs are Included in Contract Plans)

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_

FAP No. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Attn: \_\_\_\_\_

Gentlemen:

The Florida Department of Transportation invites your company to participate in alternate designs for the retaining walls to be included in the subject project.

Your participation will involve submitting us three (3) sets of prints of your final design for our review, and upon our notification of acceptance, the submittal of drawings on xerographic print material for inclusion in the final plan assembly. The drawings shall be made and submitted via 11" x 17" sheets and electronic medium in Microstation format conforming to FDOT CADD standards.

The subject project has been scheduled for letting in \_\_\_\_\_; therefore, the final plans and design calculations shall be submitted not later than \_\_\_\_\_, and the 100% Plans submitted not later than \_\_\_\_\_ in order to meet this schedule.

We are enclosing the following material for your use:

1. Roadway plans of the area.
2. Foundation information and report.
3. Wall alignment (vertical and horizontal), special details and the locations of sign structures, drainage structures and utilities.

Your design must conform strictly with the above information.

In addition, the AASHTO LRFD code and the following criteria shall be used (as applicable):

**Exhibit 30-A Sample Invitation Letter  
Sheet 2 of 2**

SAND FILL (Statewide except Miami-Dade and Monroe Counties)

Overturning	= 2.0
Sliding	= 1.5
Internal pullout	= 1.5 (Allowable Deformation 3/4" )
Bearing capacity	= 2.5
Overall stability	= 1.5
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Bars and Straps)	= 0.55 Fy at end of design life, and 0.50 Fu at net section of bolted connection
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Grids and Bar Mats)	= 0.47 Fy at end of design life
Design Based $\phi$	= 30°
Backfill Unit Weight	= 105 pcf (Min) Moist wt. in place

Maximum Pullout Factors:

Ribbed Strips, $f^*_{max}$	= 1.5
Grids and Bar Mats, $N_{P_{max}}$	= 30

LIMEROCK FILL (Miami-Dade and Monroe Counties only)

Overturning	= 2.0
Sliding	= 1.5
Internal pullout	= 1.5 (Allowable Deformation 3/4" )
Bearing capacity	= 2.5
Overall stability	= 1.5
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Bars and Straps)	= 0.55 Fy at end of design life, and 0.50 Fu at net section of bolted connection
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Grids and Bar Mats)	= 0.47 Fy at end of design life
Design Based $\phi$	= 34°
Backfill Unit Weight	= 115 pcf Moist wt. in place

Maximum Pullout Factors:

Ribbed Strips, $f^*_{max}$	= 1.5
Grids and Bar Mats, $N_{P_{max}}$	= 30

Your acknowledgment of this invitation and acceptance/or rejection is required. In the event of nonacceptance, the enclosed material may be discarded. Also, your firm will not be considered for a Value Engineering Concept Proposal for this project at a later date.

If there are any questions, please advise.

Very truly yours,

Enclosures

**Exhibit 30-B Sample Letter  
Sheet 1 of 2**

(For Control Plans Only)

Financial Project ID \_\_\_\_\_  
FAP No. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Attn: \_\_\_\_\_

Gentlemen:

The Florida Department of Transportation is anticipating letting the subject project in \_\_\_\_\_.

The enclosed information is being transmitted for your information and bid preparation. If your company has any innovative methods or designs for this project, they should be submitted before \_\_\_\_\_ for our review.

We are enclosing the following material for your use:

1. Roadway plans of the area.
2. Foundation information and report.
3. Wall alignment (vertical and horizontal), special details, and the locations of sign structures, drainage structures and utilities.

The verbiage shown above is for information only and is subject to change. This information shall in no way be construed to be a bid document or to be binding either before or after the plans have been bid. Only the Contract Plans are binding.

In addition, the following criteria and minimum safety factors shall be used (as applicable):

**Exhibit 30-B Sample Letter  
Sheet 2 of 2**

SAND FILL (Statewide except Miami-Dade and Monroe Counties)

Overturing	= 2.0
Sliding	= 1.5
Internal pullout	= 1.5 (Allowable deformation = 3/4" )
Bearing capacity	= 2.5
Overall stability	= 1.5
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Bars and Straps)	= 0.55 Fy at end of design life, and 0.50 Fu at net section of bolted connection
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Grids and Bar Mats)	= 0.47 Fy at end of design life
Design Based $\phi$	= 30°
Backfill Unit Weight	= 105 pcf moist weight in place

Maximum Pullout Factors:

Ribbed Strips, $f^*_{max}$	= 1.5
Grids and Bar Mats, $N_{p,max}$	= 30

LIMEROCK FILL (Miami-Dade and Monroe Counties only)

Overturing	= 2.0
Sliding	= 1.5
Internal pullout	= 1.5 (Allowable deformation = 3/4" )
Bearing capacity	= 2.5
Overall stability	= 1.5
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Bars and Straps)	= 0.55 Fy at end of design life, and 0.50 Fu at net section of bolted connection
Steel Soil Reinforcement (Grids and Bar Mats)	= 0.47 Fy at end of design life
Design Based $\phi$	= 34°
Backfill Unit Weight	= 115 pcf moist weight in place

Maximum Pullout Factors:

Ribbed Strips, $f^*_{max}$	= 1.5
Grids and Bar Mats, $N_{p,max}$	= 30

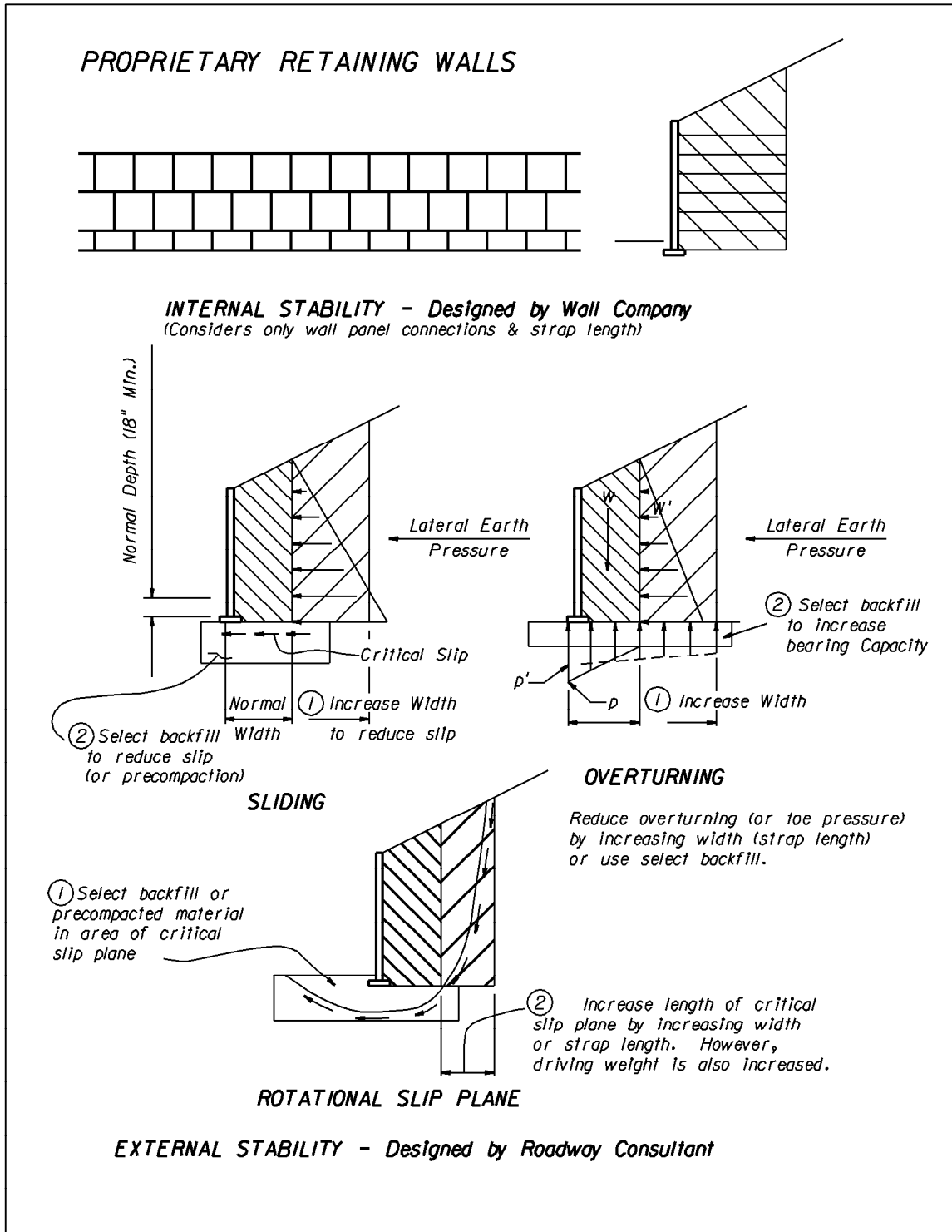
Your acknowledgment of receipt of this package and applicability of your wall for this/these site(s) is required. In the event that you do not wish to participate in this project, the enclosed material may be discarded. Also, your firm will not be considered for a Value Engineering Concept Proposal for this project at a later date.

If there are any questions, please advise.

Very truly yours,

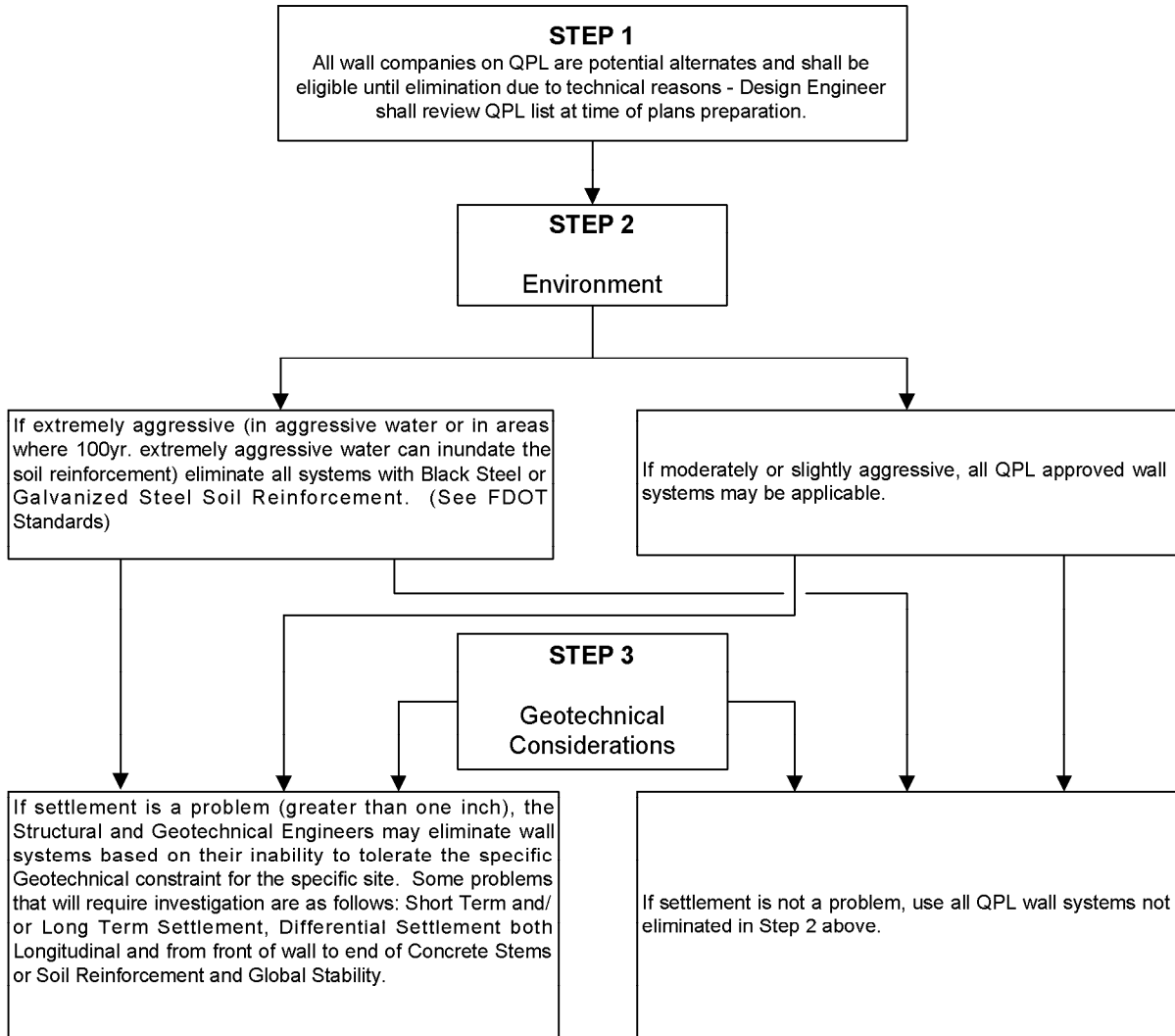
Enclosures

**Figure 30.1 Proprietary Retaining Walls**



**Exhibit 30-C Procedure for Wall System Selection**

**Flow Chart to Determine Wall Companies for Specific Sites**



**All wall systems not eliminated due to technical reasons shall be noted on the "Control Plans" as appropriate for the site.**

**The Engineer should use this flow chart as a guide. Specific site problems may fall outside the limits of this flow chart. Therefore, the engineers using this chart to determine the applicable wall systems must be knowledgeable of the approved wall systems capabilities and limitations.**

## Chapter 31

### Geosynthetic Design

31.1	Purpose .....	31-1
31.2	Contract Plans Content .....	31-2
31.3	Bid Procedure .....	31-2
31.4	Shop Drawings / Redesigns .....	31-3
31.5	Geosynthetic Reinforcement Design Methodology .....	31-4
31.5.1	Design Considerations .....	31-4
31.5.2	Requirements .....	31-4
31.5.3	Design Guidelines .....	31-7
Exhibits		
Exhibit 31-A	Geosynthetic Reinforced Soil Slopes .....	31-9
Exhibit 31-B	Geosynthetic Reinforced Foundations Over Soft Soils .....	31-10



**THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

# Chapter 31

## Geosynthetic Design

### 31.1 Purpose

The purpose of this chapter is to give the designer an understanding of the procedure to develop designs for geosynthetic reinforced soil slopes and geosynthetic reinforced foundations over soft soils. A step-by-step method to develop and organize the plans is presented.

Reinforced soil slopes should be utilized when the right of way is insufficient to construct embankments with normal slopes and retaining walls are not economical or are undesirable.

Reinforced foundations over soft soils should be utilized when the existing soils are too weak to support the anticipated loading without excessive settlement and excavation and backfilling is not an economical solution.

Approved products for these designs are included on ***Index No. 501*** of the ***Design Standards***.

## **31.2 Contract Plans Content**

Control drawings are required which depict the geometrics (plan and elevation view) of the area being reinforced. These designs are generic and are not based upon any one specific product or supplier. For reinforced slopes the designer shall design the slopes using the maximum reinforcement spacings allowed. For soft soils the designer shall design the reinforcement and provide the minimum total strength required.

The plans shall depict the required reinforcement strength based on the maximum allowed spacing of these materials, the extent and the number of layers of geosynthetic reinforcement, vertical spacing of geosynthetic reinforcement, orientation of geosynthetic facing details, details at special structures or obstructions, typical construction sequence, and top and bottom elevations of the geosynthetic reinforcement. Product names are not to be shown in the plans. Surface treatments and any other required design parameters or limitations shall also be shown in the plans.

## **31.3 Bid Procedure**

Geosynthetic Reinforced Soil Slopes shall be bid with Pay Item No.145-1.

Geosynthetic Reinforced Foundations Over Soft Soils shall be bid with Pay Item No. 145-2.

## 31.4 Shop Drawings / Redesigns

The contractor can choose to construct the reinforced soil structures either by: (1) using materials which meet or exceed the strength required in the plans and be placed at or less than the plan spacing(s) or (2) submitting an alternate design which optimizes the use of a specific material and revises the material spacing within the limits contained in the design methodology in **Section 31.5**. The properties of site specific backfill is seldom available at the design phase of a project. This being the case, subsequent alternate designs are encouraged after the backfill source is known. Using soil properties of site specific material allows for optimization of the materials resulting in a corresponding cost benefit to the Department. All designs shall meet the design methodology contained in **Section 31.5**.

The shop drawing reviewer shall be experienced in the requirements, design and detailing of these systems. The review shall consist of but not limited to the following items:

1. Verify horizontal and vertical geometry with the contract plans.
2. Soil reinforcement is listed in the **Design Standards, Index 501**.
3. Soil reinforcement material test results meet or exceed values in the **Design Standards, Index 501**.
4. Verify the material strengths and number of layers of the product selected meets or exceeds the design shown in the contract plans.
5. Soil properties for the material chosen by the contractor meet or exceed those used in the design shown in the Contract Plans.
6. If a redesign is proposed, verify the design meets the requirements of **Section 31.5** and the Contract Plans.

If a redesign is submitted, complete plans shall be provided which include: plan view, elevation view, and details in accordance with the Plans and Specifications. These shall show the extent, number of layers of geosynthetic reinforcement, minimum properties of each geosynthetic reinforcement layer, vertical spacing of geosynthetic reinforcement, orientation of geosynthetic facing details, details at special structures or obstructions, typical construction sequence, and top and bottom elevations of the geosynthetic reinforcement. Calculations shall be submitted to substantiate the design meets the requirements in this document and in accordance with the Contract Plans. As a minimum these shall clearly show the derivation of reinforcement requirements (i.e., type, spacing, length, etc.) and determination of all design parameters and factors. All plans and calculations are to be sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Florida.

## 31.5 Geosynthetic Reinforcement Design Methodology

This design methodology applies only for geosynthetic reinforced soil slopes and geosynthetic reinforced foundations over soft soils. Geosynthetic is a generic term for all synthetic materials used in Geotechnical engineering applications and includes geotextiles and geogrids.

### 31.5.1 Design Considerations

Only those geosynthetic products listed on the ***Design Standards, Index 501*** are eligible for use on FDOT projects. The geosynthetic reinforced systems shall be designed using comprehensive stability analyses methods that address both internal and external stability considerations by a professional engineer licensed in Florida who specialized in Geotechnical engineering. The following design guidelines and requirements should be used for the analyses and design.

### 31.5.2 Requirements

1. **Performance:** The design factors of safety used shall be adequate to cover all uncertainties in the assumptions and design. Required minimum stability factors of safety are:
  - a. 1.5 against pullout failure.
  - b. 1.5 against sliding of the reinforced mass.
  - c. 1.3 against external, deep-seated failure.
  - d. 1.3 against compound failure, i.e., failure behind and through the reinforcement.
  - e. 1.3 against internal failure.
  - f. 1.3 against local bearing failure (lateral squeeze).

2. **Allowable Tension:** The geosynthetic design shall be based on the following relationships:

$$T_a = \frac{T_{ult}}{F_c F_d F_j CRF}$$

Where:

$T_a$  = The allowable long term reinforcement tension. ( $T_a$  shall not exceed 19%  $T_{ult}$  for permanent applications or 29%  $T_{ult}$  for temporary applications).

$T_{ult}$  = The ultimate strength of a geosynthetic.

$F_c$  = Partial factor of safety for construction damage.

$F_d$  = Partial factor of safety for durability.

$F_j$  = Partial factor of safety for joint strength where geosynthetics are connected together or overlapped in the direction of primary force development. The values of  $F_j$  should be taken as the ratio of the unjointed specimen strength to the joined specimen strength. Use  $F_j = 1.0$ .

CRF = Creep reduction factor.  $CRF = T_{ult}/T_{creep}$

$T_{creep}$  = Serviceability state reinforcement tensile load based on minimum 10,000 hour creep tests.

These parameters can be found from the appropriate FDOT **Design Standards, Index 501.**

For applications involving reinforcing slopes with geosynthetic,  $T_{creep}$  shall be projected for a design life of 75 years.

3. **Soil Reinforcement Interaction:** Unless existing approved values are used, pullout resistance for design purposes shall be determined from pullout testing performed by an approved testing laboratory. The coefficient of interaction ( $C_i$ ) shall be determined from controlled strain rate pullout testing done in accordance with GRI GG5.  $C_i$  is defined by the following relationship:

$$C_i = \frac{T_p}{2L \sigma_n \text{TAN} \Phi}$$

Where:

- $T_p$  = Pullout capacity of reinforcement (lbs/foot of width).  
 $L$  = Geosynthetic embedment length (ft.).  
 $\sigma_n$  = Effective normal pressure (psf).  
 $\Phi$  = Effective friction angle of backfill.

The coefficient of interaction should be approximately constant for a given soil and geosynthetic material over a range of effective normal pressures. If a plot of  $C_i$  vs.  $\sigma_n$  indicates that  $C_i$  is approximately constant then that value shall be used for design. If the plot indicates a relatively wide variability of  $C_i$  over the anticipated range of normal stresses then either a single minimum value shall be used for  $C_i$  or a  $C_i$  corresponding to the effective stress at each expected grid elevation may be used.

The coefficient of interaction may be determined by any one of the following means:

- a. Pullout testing may be performed on the proposed geosynthetics and actual soil backfill being proposed for the construction.
- b. Pullout testing is required for geosynthetic products as part of the **Design Standards, Index 501** approval process. If, in the opinion of the Engineer, the existing approved pullout test data is representative of the proposed soil backfill and geosynthetic reinforcement, these corresponding  $C_i$  values may be used.

### 31.5.3 Design Guidelines

The design guidelines are excerpted from the FHWA Publications (a) **No. FHWA-SA-96-071 "Mechanically Stabilized Earth Walls and Reinforced Soil Slopes Design and Construction Guidelines"**, and (b) **No. FHWA HI-95-038, "Geosynthetic Design and Construction Guidelines"**. Designers should refer to these publications for details.

1. **Reinforced Slope** - see reference (a) **FHWA-AS-96-071**.

Step 1. Establish the geometry and loading - see **Exhibit 31-A**.

Step 2. Determine the engineering properties of the insitu soils.

Step 3. Determine the properties of the reinforced fill and the retained fill.

The following values for the backfill soil within the reinforced volume shall be used:

For sand backfill:  $\phi = 30^\circ$ ,  $\gamma = 105$  pcf,  $c = 0$ ;

For crushed limerock backfill:  $\phi = 34^\circ$ ,  $\gamma = 115$  pcf,  $c = 0$ .

Step 4. Evaluate design parameters for the reinforcement.

Step 5. Check unreinforced slope stability.

Step 6. Design reinforcement to provide a stable slope.

Step 7. Check external stability.

Step 8. Evaluate requirements for subsurface and surface water runoff control.

2. **Reinforced Foundation over Soft Soils** - see reference (b) **FHWA HI-95-038**.

Step 1. Define embankment dimensions and loading conditions- see **Exhibit 31-B**.

Step 2. Establish the soil profile and determine the engineering properties of the foundation soil.

Step 3. Obtain engineering properties of embankment fill materials.



- Step 4. Establish minimum appropriate factors of safety and operational settlement criteria for the embankment.

The factor of safety for:

Bearing capacity: 1.5

Global(rotational) shear stability at the end of construction: 1.3

Internal shear stability, long-term: 1.5

Lateral spreading (sliding): 1.5

Settlement criteria: depend upon project requirements

- Step 5. Check bearing capacity, global stability (both short and long term), and lateral spreading stability.

- Step 6. Establish tolerable geosynthetic deformation requirements and calculate the required reinforcement modulus, J, based on wide width tensile strength,  $T_{Is}$ , tested in according to (ASTM D 4595). The geosynthetic reinforcement should be designed for strain compatibility with the weak insitu soil, with creep being a non-design factor.

Based on type of filled materials, the strains are recommended as follows:

Cohesionless soils:  $\epsilon_{\text{geosynthetic}} = 5$  to 10%

Cohesive soils:  $\epsilon_{\text{geosynthetic}} = 2\%$

Peat:  $\epsilon_{\text{geosynthetic}} = 2$  to 10%

Reinforcement modulus is calculated as:  $J = T_{Is} / \epsilon_{\text{geosynthetic}}$

- Step 7. Establish geosynthetic strength requirements in the geosynthetic's longitudinal direction.

- Step 8. Establish geosynthetic properties.

- Step 9. Estimate magnitude and rate of embankment settlement.

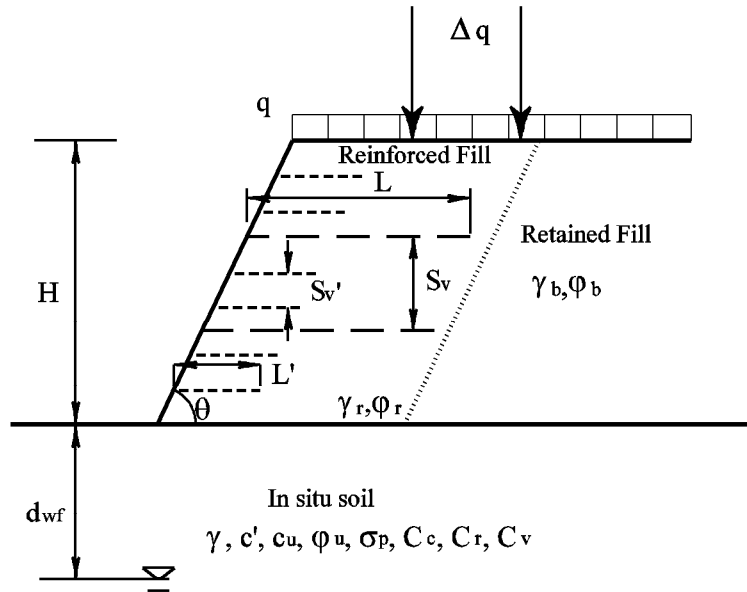
- Step 10. Establish construction sequence and procedures.

This includes stage construction, if needed, and all the stability analyses for each stage of constructions. The analysis should be based on the estimated strength of the subsoils at the end of the previous construction stage.

- Step 11. Establish construction observation requirements.

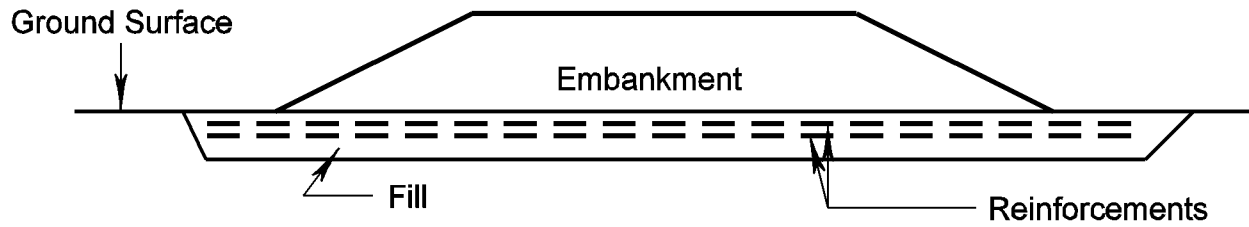
Instrumentations such as settlement plates, piezometers, and/or inclinometers should be designed to monitor the performance of the construction. The monitoring criteria, such as the maximum rate of piezometric and/or settlement change before the next stage of construction can proceed, etc., should also be established.

**Exhibit 31-A Geosynthetic Reinforced Soil Slopes**



- Notations:**
- $H$  = slope height
  - $\theta$  = slope angle
  - $L$  = length of primary reinforcement
  - $L'$  = length of secondary reinforcement, 4' minimum
  - $S_v$  = vertical spacing between primary reinforcements, 4' maximum
  - $S_v'$  = vertical spacing between secondary reinforcements, 1' maximum
  - $q$  = surcharge load
  - $\Delta q$  = temporary live load
  - $d_{wf}$  = depth to groundwater table in foundation
  - $\gamma_r, \gamma_b, \& \gamma$  = unit weights of soils in reinforced, retained and foundation, respectively
  - $\phi_r, \phi_b, \& \phi$  = friction angles of soils in reinforced, retained and foundation, respectively
  - $c', c_u$  = cohesion strength parameters of foundation soil

### Exhibit 31-B Geosynthetic Reinforced Foundations Over Soft Soils



The minimum spacing between two reinforcements shall be 6 inches but not larger than 12 inches.